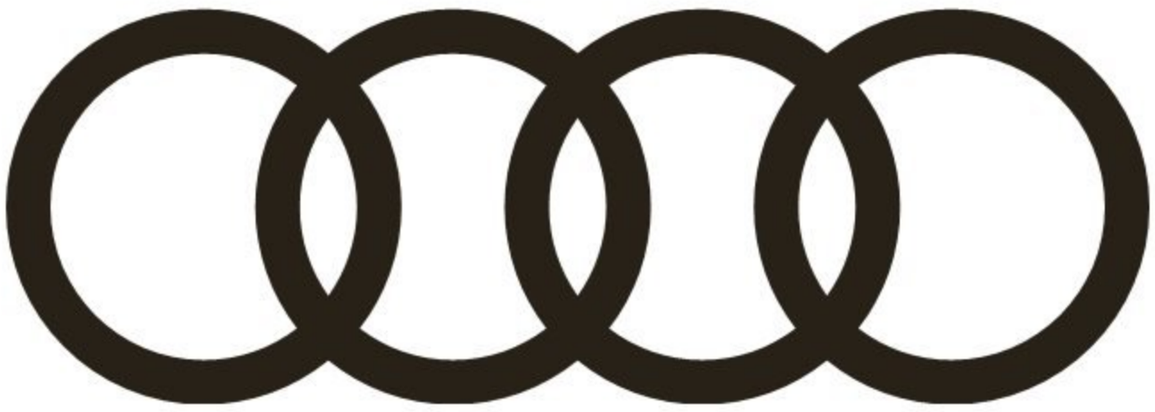


Owner's Manual

2019 A8

Audi Vorsprung durch Technik

Foreword

Thank you for choosing an Audi – we value your trust in us.

Your new Audi will allow you to experience the best in groundbreaking technology and premium quality equipment that a vehicle has to offer. We recommend that you read your Owner's Manual thoroughly so that you quickly become acquainted with your Audi and make use of all of its features.

In addition to explaining how the different features work, we provide many useful tips and information concerning your safety, how to care for your vehicle, and how to maintain your vehicle's value. We also give you useful tips and information on how to drive your vehicle more efficiently and in an environmentally-friendly manner.

We hope you enjoy driving your Audi and we wish you safe and pleasant motoring.

AUDI AG

WARNING

Operating, servicing and maintaining a passenger vehicle or off-highway motor vehicle can expose you to chemicals including engine exhaust, carbon monoxide, phthalates, and lead, which are known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. To minimize exposure, avoid breathing exhaust, do not idle the engine except as necessary, service your vehicle in a well-ventilated area and wear gloves or wash your hands frequently when servicing your vehicle. For more information go to www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle.

4N0012721BB

Table of contents

About this Owner's Manual 5

Summary 6

Quick access 6
- Cockpit 6
- Indicator lights overview 7

Display and operation 12

Instrument cluster 12
- Instrument cluster overview 12
- Loading a personal profile 12
- Operating 13
- Switching views 13
- Coolant temperature display 14
- Tachometer 14
- Odometer 14
- Outside temperature display 15
- Engine oil temperature indicator 15
- Vehicle functions 15

Touch displays 17
- General touch display operation 17
- Multi Media Interface 19
- Rear Seat Remote 24
- Rear Seat Entertainment (Audi tablet) . . . 28

Head-up display 36
- Description 36

Voice recognition system 37
- General information 37
- Operating 37
- External voice operation 38

Global functions 39
- Additional function buttons 39

Starting and driving 40

Personalization 40
- User 40

Opening and closing 42
- Central locking 42
- Keys 46
- Luggage compartment lid 50
- Child safety lock 53
- Power windows 54
- Panoramic glass roof 55
- Valet parking 56
- Garage door opener 57

Lights and Vision 60
- Exterior lighting 60
- Interior lighting 64
- Vision 65
- Windshield wipers 67
- Digital compass 69

Sitting correctly and safely 72
- Correct passenger seating position 72
- Front seats 73
- Rear seats 76
- Steering wheel 81
- Head restraints 81
- Safety belts 83
- Memory function 86
- Airbag system 87
- Child safety seats 91

Stowing and using 97
- Ashtray and cigarette lighter 97
- Power sources 97
- Cup holders 98
- Roof rack 99
- Storage and compartments 99
- Luggage compartment 101

Warm and cold 104
- Climate control system 104

Driving 109
- Starting the vehicle 109
- When driving 111
- Drive system 115
- Start/Stop system 116
- Brakes 117
- Electromechanical parking brake 119
- Special driving situations 122

Driving dynamic 124
- Audi drive select 124
- Suspension 125
- Steering 127

All wheel drive (quattro) 128
Electronic Stabilization Control 129

Trailer towing 132
Driving with a trailer 132
Retrofit installation 134

Assist systems 136
Assist systems 136
General information 136
Surrounding area detection 137
Switching the systems on and off 139

Driving information 141
Speed warning system 141
Camera-based traffic sign recognition . . . 141
Traffic light information 143
Night vision assist 144

Driver assistance 146
Cruise control system 146
Efficiency assist 147
Adaptive cruise assist 150
Distance warning 158
Lane departure warning 159
Audi pre sense 161
Side assist 165
Exit warning 167
Intersection assistant 168
Emergency assist 169

Parking and maneuvering 171
Introduction 171
Parking system plus 171
Rearview camera and peripheral cameras . 173
Rear cross-traffic assist 177
Adjusting the parking aids 178

Infotainment system 179
Telephone 179
Introduction 179
Setup 180
Disconnecting a mobile device 181
Using the Audi phone box 182
Using the telephone 184
Messages 188
Settings 191
Instrument cluster 193
Rear Seat Remote 193
Troubleshooting 196

Audi connect 198
Introduction 198
Audi connect Infotainment 198
Using a Wi-Fi hotspot 198
Audi connect Infotainment services 199
Audi connect vehicle control services 200
Settings 202
Troubleshooting 203

Emergency call 205
Overview 205
Emergency call 205
Online roadside assistance 206

Navigation 207
Opening navigation 207
myAudi navigation 208
Entering a destination 208
Stopping route guidance 213
Map 213
Personal route assistance 215
Alternative routes 216
Additional functions 216
Satellite map 218
Map update 218
Traffic information 219
Options and settings 221
Troubleshooting 222

Radio 224
Opening the radio 224
Radio functions 225
Options and settings 229
Troubleshooting 231

Media 232
General information 232
SD card reader 232
DVD drive 232
Bluetooth audio player 234
Online media 234
Multimedia connections 235
Playing media 237
Options and settings 242

4N0012721BB

Supported media and file formats 244
Troubleshooting 245

Audi smartphone interface 246
Setup 246
Troubleshooting 247

Additional settings 248
System settings 248
Connected devices 249
Legal information 250

Maintenance and Care 252
Checking and Filling 252
Fuel 252
Refueling 253
Catalytic converter 255
Engine compartment 256
Engine oil 259
Cooling system 262
Brake fluid 264
Electrical system 264
Battery 265
Windshield washer system 267
Service interval display 268

Wheels 269
Wheels and Tires 269
Tire pressure monitoring system 287

Care and cleaning 289
General information 289
Car washes 289
Cleaning and care information 290
Taking your vehicle out of service 294

Do It Yourself 295
Emergency assistance 295
General information 295
Equipment 295
Tire mobility kit 295
Changing a tire 297
Space-saving spare tire 301
Jump starting 301
Towing 303

Fuses and bulbs 306
Fuses 306
Bulbs 309

Customer information 310
Data privacy 310
Image recording 310
Data memories 310
Transmitted information 311

Accessories and technical changes 314
Warranty 314
Audi Literature Shop 314
Driving in other countries 314
Maintenance, repairs, and technical modifications 314
Accessories and parts 316
Reporting Safety Defects 316
Declaration of compliance for telecommunications equipment and electronic systems 317

Technical data 319
Identification data 319
Vehicle data 319

Index 321

This Owner's Manual applies to all versions of this model. It contains important information, tips, suggestions, and warnings for using your vehicle.

Keep this manual and any other applicable documents in your vehicle at all times. This is especially important if you loan your vehicle to others or sell it.

This owner's manual describes the **equipment range** specified for this model at the time of printing. Individual equipment options described may only be available at a later date or may only be offered in certain countries.

Some sections in this manual do not apply to all vehicles. When this is the case, the beginning of the section indicates the **validity**, for example “Applies to: vehicles with speed warning system”. Optional or vehicle-specific equipment is also identified with an asterisk “*”.

The **illustrations** in this manual are a guide. Some of the details in your vehicle may differ from the illustration.

All **directions**, such as “left”, “right”, “front” and “rear”, are based on the vehicle's direction of travel.

* Optional equipment or vehicle-specific equipment

▶ The section continues on the next page.

⇨ ⚠ Cross reference to a “WARNING” within a section. If a page number is indicated, the WARNING is located outside of the section.

Tips

Text with this symbol contains additional useful information.

WARNING

Text with this symbol contains information about safety and how to reduce the risk of serious personal injury or death.

Note

Text with this symbol contains information about reducing the risk of damage to your vehicle.

For the sake of the environment

Text with this symbol contains information on protecting the environment.

4N0012721BB

Quick access

Cockpit

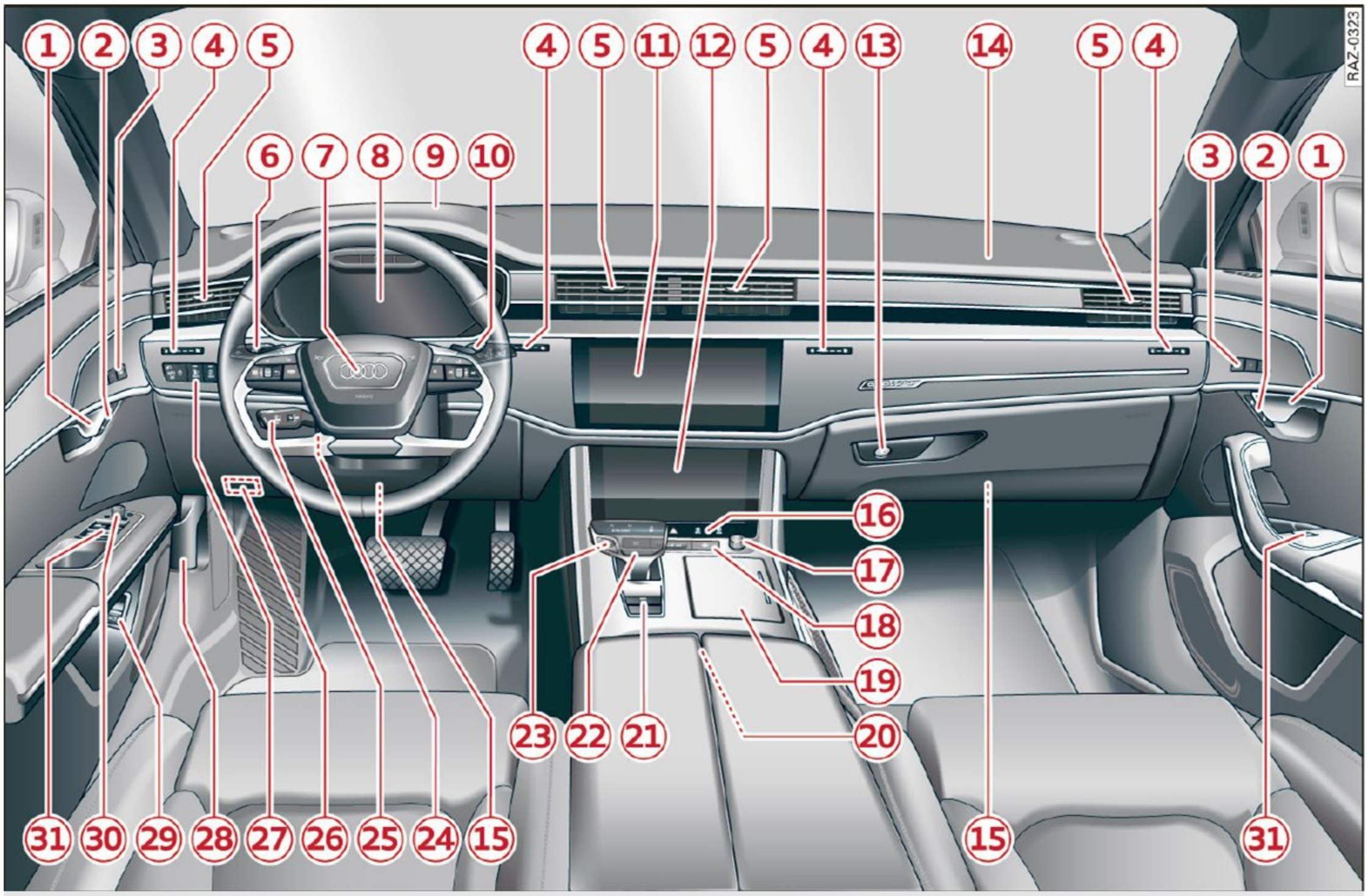


Fig. 1 Cockpit

① Door handle

② Central locking switch 44

③ Memory function buttons 86

④ Adjusting the air vents 107

⑤ Vent

⑥ Lever for:

– Turn signals and high beams 61

– High beam assistant 61

– Lane guidance 154

⑦ Multifunction steering wheel with:

– Horn

– Driver's airbag 87

– Driver information system controls 13

– Audio/video, telephone, navigation, and voice recognition controls 39

– Shift paddles 113

⑧ Instrument cluster 12

⑨ Head-up display 36

⑩ Windshield washer system lever . . 67

⑪ Upper display 19

⑫ Lower display 19

⑬ Lockable glove compartment with:

– CD/DVD drive 232

– Switch for cooled glove compartment 99

– Valet Parking function 56

⑭ Front passenger's airbag 87

⑮ Knee airbag 87

⑯ Depending on equipment, buttons for:

– drive select 124

– Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC) 130

– Emergency flashers 63

– Defrosting 104

– Rear window defogger 104

⑰ MMI On/Off button . . . . . 19, 39 ▶

⑱ Depending on equipment, buttons for:
– Parking system 171
– Driver assistance systems 139
⑲ Depending on equipment:
– Cup holders 98
– Socket 97
⑳ Starting the engine when there is a malfunction 110
㉑ Electromechanical parking brake button 119
㉒ Automatic transmission selector lever 111
㉓ START ENGINE STOP button 109
㉔ Steering wheel adjustment 81
㉕ Lever for:
– Cruise control system 146
– Adaptive cruise assist 150
㉖ Data link connector for On Board Diagnostic System (OBD) 310
㉗ Buttons for:
– Lights 60
– All-weather lights 60
– Rear fog lights 60
㉘ Hood release 257
㉙ Luggage compartment lid button . 50
㉚ Exterior mirror adjustment 65
㉛ Buttons for:
– Power windows 54
– Child safety lock 53

Tips

Some the equipment listed here is only installed in certain models or is available as an option.

Indicator lights overview

Description

The indicator lights in the instrument cluster blink or turn on. They indicate functions or malfunctions.

With some indicator lights, messages may appear and warning signals may sound. The indicator lights and messages may be covered by other displays. To show them again, select the second tab for messages with the multifunction steering wheel ⇨ *page 13*.

Some indicator lights in the display can display in several colors.

⚠ Central indicator light

If the ⚠ or ⚠ indicator light turns on, check the message in the instrument cluster.

Overview

Some indicator lights turn on briefly as a function check when you switch the ignition on. These systems are marked with a ✓ in the following tables. If one of these indicator lights does not turn on, there is a malfunction in that system.

The following indicator lights may be available, depending on the vehicle equipment:

Red indicator lights

⚠	Central indicator light ✓ ⇨ *page 7*
PARK	Electromechanical parking brake ⇨ *page 121*
(P)	Electromechanical parking brake ⇨ *page 121*
BRAKE	Brake system ✓ ⇨ *page 118*, ⇨ *page 121* ⇨ *page 264*
(!)	Brake system ✓ ⇨ *page 118*, ⇨ *page 121* ⇨ *page 264*
	Cooling system ⇨ *page 262*
	Engine oil pressure ⇨ *page 259*
MIN	Engine oil level (MIN) ⇨ *page 259*
	Electrical system ⇨ *page 264*
	Drive system ⇨ *page 116*, Electrical system ⇨ *page 264* ▶

	Safety belt ✓ ⇨ *page 85*
	Steering ✓ ⇨ *page 127*
	Steering lock ⇨ *page 127*
	Engine start system ⇨ *page 110*
	Transmission ⇨ *page 114*
	Hood ⇨ *page 258*
	Safe start monitor ⇨ *page 156*, Driver intervention request ⇨ *page 157*
	Distance warning ⇨ *page 158*
	Lane departure warning ⇨ *page 159*
	Audi pre sense ⇨ *page 162*, Intersection assist ⇨ *page 168*
	Night vision assist ⇨ *page 145*
	Night vision assist ⇨ *page 145*
	Air suspension ⇨ *page 126*
	Loose wheel warning ⇨ *page 284*

Yellow indicator lights

	Central indicator light ⇨ *page 7*
	Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) ✓ ⇨ *page 256*
	Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC) ✓ ⇨ *page 129*

	Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC) ✓ ⇨ *page 129*
	Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC) ⇨ *page 130*
	Anti-lock braking system (ABS) ✓ ⇨ *page 130*
	Anti-lock braking system (ABS) ✓ ⇨ *page 130*
	Safety systems ✓ ⇨ *page 88*
	Brake system ⇨ *page 118*
	Brake pads ⇨ *page 118*
	Electromechanical parking brake ⇨ *page 121*
	Door lock ⇨ *page 44*
	Tire pressure ⇨ *page 287*
	Tire pressure ✓ ⇨ *page 287*
	Loose wheel warning ⇨ *page 284*
	Drive system ⇨ *page 116*
	Engine speed limitation ⇨ *page 14*
	Engine oil level (MIN) ⇨ *page 259*
	Engine oil level (MAX) ⇨ *page 259*
	Engine oil sensor ⇨ *page 259*
	Engine warm-up request ⇨ *page 259*
	Electrical system ⇨ *page 264*
	Tank system ⇨ *page 254*

	Washer fluid level ⇨ *page 267*
	Windshield wipers ⇨ *page 69*
	Keys ⇨ *page 110*
	Battery in vehicle key ⇨ *page 48*
A/C	Climate control system ⇨ *page 108*
	Bulb failure indicator ⇨ *page 64*
	Adaptive light ⇨ *page 64*
	Light/rain sensor ⇨ *page 64*, ⇨ *page 69*
	Transmission ⇨ *page 114*
	Steering lock ⇨ *page 127*
	Engine start system ⇨ *page 110*
	Steering ⇨ *page 127*
	Air suspension ⇨ *page 126*
	Suspension control ⇨ *page 126*
	All wheel drive, Sport differential ⇨ *page 128*
	Adaptive cruise assist ⇨ *page 158*
	Distance warning ⇨ *page 158*
	⇨ *page 160*, Adaptive cruise assist ⇨ *page 152*
	Lane departure warning ⇨ *page 160*
	Audi pre sense ⇨ *page 164*

	Side assist ⇨ *page 166*
	Intersection assistant ⇨ *page 168*
SOS	Emergency assist ⇨ *page 169*
SOS	Emergency call function ⇨ *page 206*
	Night vision assist ⇨ *page 145*
P	Parking system plus ⇨ *page 172*
	Rear cross-traffic assist ⇨ *page 177*

Other indicator lights

	Turn signals ⇨ *page 61*
	Night vision assist ⇨ *page 145*
	Camera-based traffic sign recognition ⇨ *page 142*
CRUISE	Cruise control system ⇨ *page 146*
	Cruise control system ⇨ *page 146*
CRUISE	Cruise control system ⇨ *page 146*
	Cruise control system ⇨ *page 146*
	Rear safety belt ✓ ⇨ *page 85*
	Rear safety belt ✓ ⇨ *page 85*
	Adaptive cruise assist ⇨ *page 152*
	Adaptive cruise assist ⇨ *page 158*, Efficiency assist ⇨ *page 150*
	Adaptive cruise assist ⇨ *page 152*

	Adaptive cruise assist ⇨ *page 152*
	Adaptive cruise assist ⇨ *page 152*
	Adaptive cruise assist ⇨ *page 152*
	Adaptive cruise assist ⇨ *page 152*
	Adaptive cruise assist ⇨ *page 152*
	Adaptive cruise assist ⇨ *page 155*
	Efficiency assist ⇨ *page 147*
	Efficiency assist ⇨ *page 147*
km/h	Efficiency assist ⇨ *page 147*
MPH	Efficiency assist ⇨ *page 147*
	Efficiency assist ⇨ *page 147*
	Efficiency assist ⇨ *page 147*
	Efficiency assist ⇨ *page 147*
	Distance warning ⇨ *page 158*
	Lane departure warning ⇨ *page 159*
	Lane departure warning ⇨ *page 159*
	Lane departure warning ⇨ *page 160*
	Audi pre sense ✓ ⇨ *page 164*
	Side assist ⇨ *page 166*
	Intersection assistant ⇨ *page 168*
SOS 	Emergency assist ⇨ *page 169*

	Door lock ⇨ *page 44*
PARK BRAKE	Electromechanical parking brake ⇨ *page 121*
	Electromechanical parking brake ⇨ *page 121*
	Hill hold assist ⇨ *page 121*
	Start/Stop system ⇨ *page 116*
	Start/Stop system ⇨ *page 116*
	Transmission ⇨ *page 114*
	Keys ⇨ *page 110*
	Air suspension ⇨ *page 126*
MPH	Speed warning system ⇨ *page 141*
Km/h	Speed warning system ⇨ *page 141*
	Steering ⇨ *page 127*
	Rear cross-traffic assist ⇨ *page 177*
OLED	OLED tail lights ⇨ *page 64*
	Low beam headlight ⇨ *page 60*
	Parking light ⇨ *page 60*
	High beams ⇨ *page 61*
AUTO	High beam assistant ⇨ *page 61*
AUTO	High beam assistant ⇨ *page 61*

	Laser lights ⇨ *page 62*
	Child safety lock ⇨ *page 53*
	

Instrument cluster

Instrument cluster overview



Fig. 2 Instrument cluster overview (Audi virtual cockpit)

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the following items may appear in the instrument cluster:

① Display
– Engine coolant temperature 14

② Left dial
– Tachometer 14

③ Tab area 13

④ Central area 13

⑤ Status line (one or two lines)

⑥ Right dial
– Convenience display

⑦ Fuel level 254

⑧ Right additional display with speedometer

⑨ Left additional display with:
– Gear 111
– Audi drive select mode 124

Tips

– You can select the units used for temperature, speed, and other measurements in the Infotainment system ⇨ *page 248*.
– If there is a malfunction in the instrument cluster, **DEF** will appear in the trip odometer display. Have the malfunction corrected as soon as possible.
– Certain instrument cluster content can also be displayed in the head-up display* ⇨ *page 36*.
– Specific settings are stored automatically in the active personal profile.

Loading a personal profile



Fig. 3 Instrument cluster: loading a personal profile

You can manage personal profiles in the MMI ⇨ *page 40*. Before driving, you can select your personal profile in the instrument cluster and apply customized vehicle settings, such as the seat position.

Requirement: the driver's door must have been opened and the ignition must not be switched on.

▸ Confirm the displayed profile ①, or ▶

- ▸ To load another profile, select and confirm **Switch profile** (2).
- ▸ Select and confirm the desired profile. The user-specific settings will load.
- ▸ To cancel the seat, mirror, and steering column adjustment, select **Cancel**.

Tips

For more information and usage options for personal profiles, see ⇨ *page 40*.

Operating

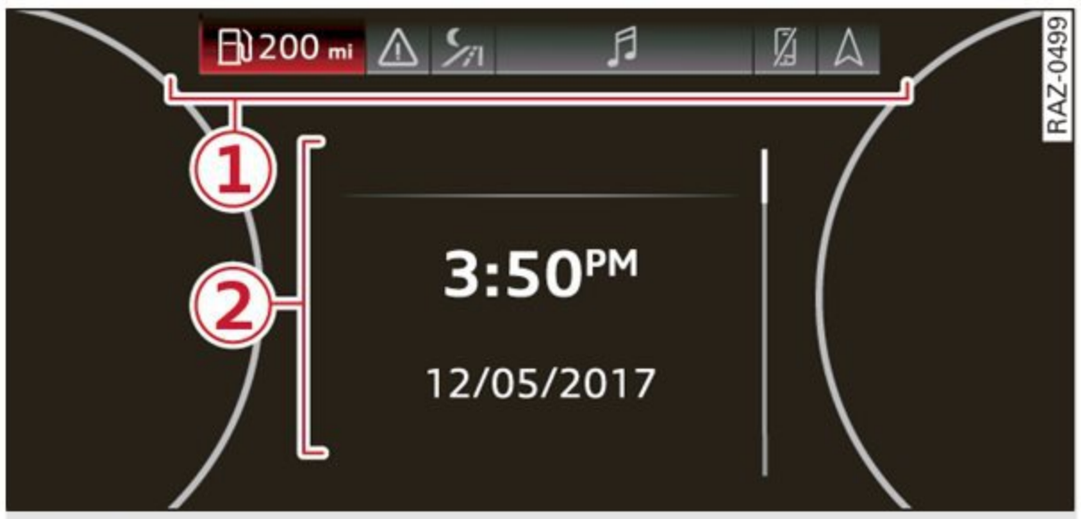


Fig. 4 Driver information system display

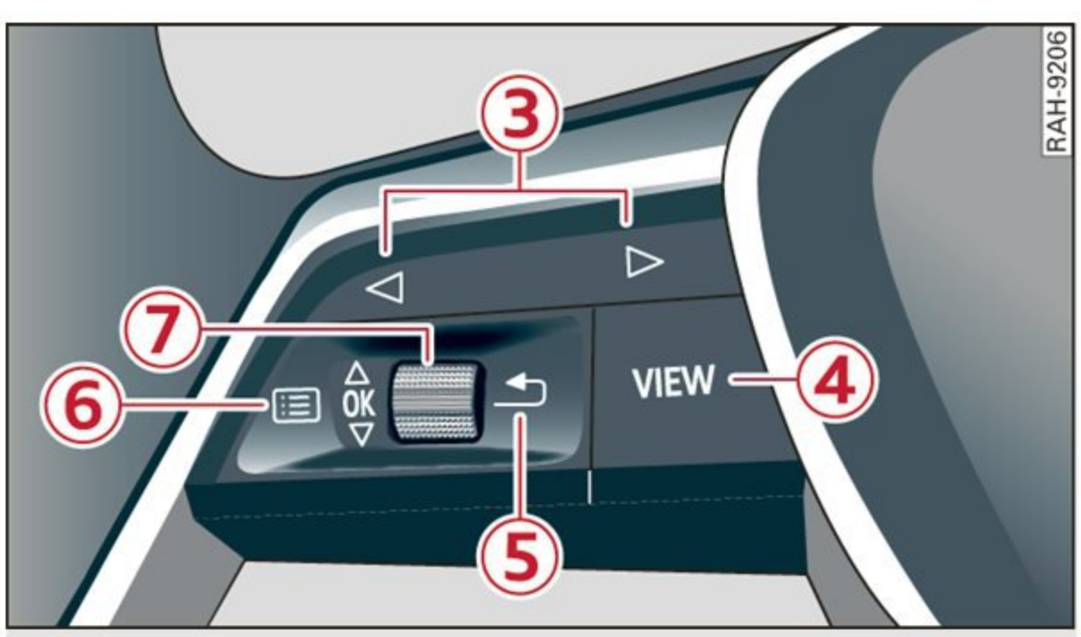


Fig. 5 Left side of multifunction steering wheel

Information is organized within various tabs (1) in the instrument cluster. The tab contents are displayed in the central area (2).

Requirement: the ignition must be switched on.

Selecting a tab

- ▸ Press the ◁/ ▷ button (3) repeatedly until the desired tab is selected.

Returning to functions at higher levels

- ▸ Press the ⮌ button (5).

Opening and closing the menu

- ▸ Press the ☰ button (6).

Selecting and confirming a function

Requirement: a menu or list must be displayed.

- ▸ To select a function, turn the left thumbwheel (7) to the desired function.
- ▸ To confirm a selection, press the left thumbwheel (7).

Change view

- ▸ Press the VIEW button (4) ⇨ *page 13*.

The following tabs may be available, depending on vehicle equipment:

First tab	Vehicle functions ⇨ *page 15*
Second tab	Driver messages (this is only displayed if at least one indicator light/message is being displayed)
Third tab	Night vision assist (this is only displayed if the night vision assist has been activated) ⇨ *page 144*
Fourth tab	Radio ⇨ *page 224*
	Media ⇨ *page 237*
Fifth tab	Telephone ⇨ *page 193*
Sixth tab	Navigation ⇨ *page 207*

Switching views



Fig. 6 Classic view



Fig. 7 Enhanced view

Change view

- Press the VIEW button to switch between the default view ⇨ *fig. 6* and the enhanced view ⇨ *fig. 7*.

Adjusting the additional display

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the additional displays that can be selected may vary.

- Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **Display & brightness** > **Virtual cockpit** > **Additional display**.
- Select the desired additional display.

Reducing the display

- Select on the instrument cluster: vehicle functions tab > ☰ button > **Reduced display**.

Coolant temperature display

The coolant temperature display ① ⇨ *page 12* only functions when the ignition is switched on. To reduce the risk of engine damage, please observe the following notes about the temperature ranges.

Cold range

If only the LEDs at the bottom of the gauge turn on, the engine has not reached operating temperature yet. Avoid high engine speeds, full acceleration, and heavy engine loads.

Normal range

The engine has reached its operating temperature once the LEDs up to the center of the gauge turn on. If the indicator light in the instrument cluster display turns on, the coolant temperature is too high ⇨ *page 262*.

Note

– Auxiliary headlights and other accessories in front of the air intake impair the cooling effect of the coolant. This increases the risk of the engine overheating during high outside temperatures and heavy engine load.
– The front spoiler also helps to distribute cooling air correctly while driving. If the spoiler is damaged, the cooling effect will be impaired and the risk of the engine overheating will increase. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Tachometer

The tachometer ② ⇨ *page 12* displays the engine speed in revolutions per minute (RPM). The beginning of the red zone in the tachometer indicates the maximum permissible engine speed for all gears once the engine has been broken in. Before reaching the red zone, you should shift into the next higher gear, select the "D" or "S" gear lever position, or remove your foot from the accelerator pedal.

Engine speed limitation

If the indicator light turns on, the engine will be automatically limited to the RPM displayed in the instrument cluster. This protects the engine from overheating.

The engine speed limitation deactivates once the engine is no longer in the critical temperature range and you have released the accelerator pedal.

If the engine speed limitation was activated by an engine control malfunction, the indicator light also turns on. Make sure the engine speed does not go above the speed displayed, for example when downshifting. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Note

The needle in the tachometer may only be in the red area of the gauge for a short period of time before there is a risk of damaging the engine. The location where the red zone begins varies depending on the engine.

Odometer

The trip odometer and odometer are displayed in the status line ⑤ ⇨ *page 12*. ▶

The trip odometer shows the distance driven since it was last reset. It can be used to measure short distances. The odometer shows the total distance that the vehicle has been driven.

Resetting the trip odometer

▸ Select on the instrument cluster: vehicle functions tab > ☰ button > **Reset mi**.

Outside temperature display

The outside temperature is displayed in the status line ⑤ ⇨ *page 12*.

If your vehicle is stationary or if you are driving at very low speeds, the temperature displayed in the instrument cluster may be slightly higher than the actual temperature outside due to heat radiating from the engine.

At temperatures below 41 °F (+5 °C), a snowflake symbol appears in front of the temperature display ⇨ ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

Do not assume the roads are free of ice based on the outside temperature display. Be aware that there may be ice on roads even when the outside temperature is around 41 °F (+5 °C) and that ice can increase the risk of accidents.

Engine oil temperature indicator

Applies to: vehicles with engine oil temperature indicator

The engine oil temperature is only displayed in the enhanced view.

When engine oil temperatures are low, the display --- °F (--- °C) appears in the instrument cluster. The engine has reached its operating temperature when the engine oil temperature is between 176 °F (80 °C) and 248 °F (120 °C) under normal driving conditions. The engine oil temperature may be higher if there is heavy engine load and high temperatures outside. This is not a cause for concern as long as the  ⇨ *page 259* or  ⇨ *page 259* indicator lights do not turn on.

Vehicle functions

Overview

The trip computer is displayed in the first tab of the driver information system. Additional vehicle functions can be accessed depending on the vehicle equipment.

▸ Press the ☰ button on the multifunction steering wheel.

– On-board computer ⇨ *page 15*
– Reduced display ⇨ *page 14*
– Reset trip odometer ⇨ *page 14*

On-board computer

Resetting values to zero

Requirement: the **Consumption**, **Short-term memory** ,or **Long-term memory** display must be selected.

▸ To reset the values in one of the memories to zero, press and hold the left thumbwheel on the multifunction steering wheel for one second, or
▸ Select on the instrument cluster: vehicle functions tab > ☰ button > **Reset mi**.

Displaying on-board computer information on the Audi tablet

Applies to: vehicles with Audi tablet

▸ Applies to Audi tablet: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Driving data**. Current trip data and information from the short-term memory will be displayed.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, you can call up the following displays in the on-board computer one at a time by turning the left thumbwheel on the multifunction steering wheel:

– Time and date ⇨ *page 248*
– Average consumption ⇨ *page 16*
– Short-term memory overview
– Long-term memory overview
– Energy consumers ⇨ *page 16*
– Driver assistance
– Traffic sign recognition ⇨ *page 141*

Short-term memory and long-term memory

The short-term memory collects driving information from the time the ignition is switched on until it is switched off. If you continue driving within two hours after switching the ignition off, the new values will be included when calculating the current trip information.

Unlike the short-term memory, the long-term memory is not erased automatically. You can select the time period for evaluating trip information yourself.

Average consumption

The current consumption can be shown using a bar graph. The average consumption stored in the short-term memory is also displayed. If the bar is green, your vehicle is saving energy using the following methods:

– **Recuperation**: electrical energy can be stored in the battery when the vehicle is coasting or driving downhill. The bar drops down into the negative part of the scale.

Energy consumers

The **Energy consumers** view lists other equipment that is currently affecting fuel consumption. The display shows up to three equipment items. The equipment using the most power is listed first. If more than three items using power are switched on, the equipment that is currently using the most power is displayed. A gauge also shows the current total consumption of all other equipment.

Tips

The date, time of day, and time and date format can be set in the Infotainment system ⇨ *page 248*.

Touch displays

General touch display operation

General information

Applies to: touch displays

The touch display is controlled through the touchscreen. Operation is very similar to operating a smartphone.

All touch displays in the vehicle can be operated with the gestures described in the following information.

Tips

Certain gestures may not be available on all touch displays or in every menu.

Pressing

Applies to: touch displays

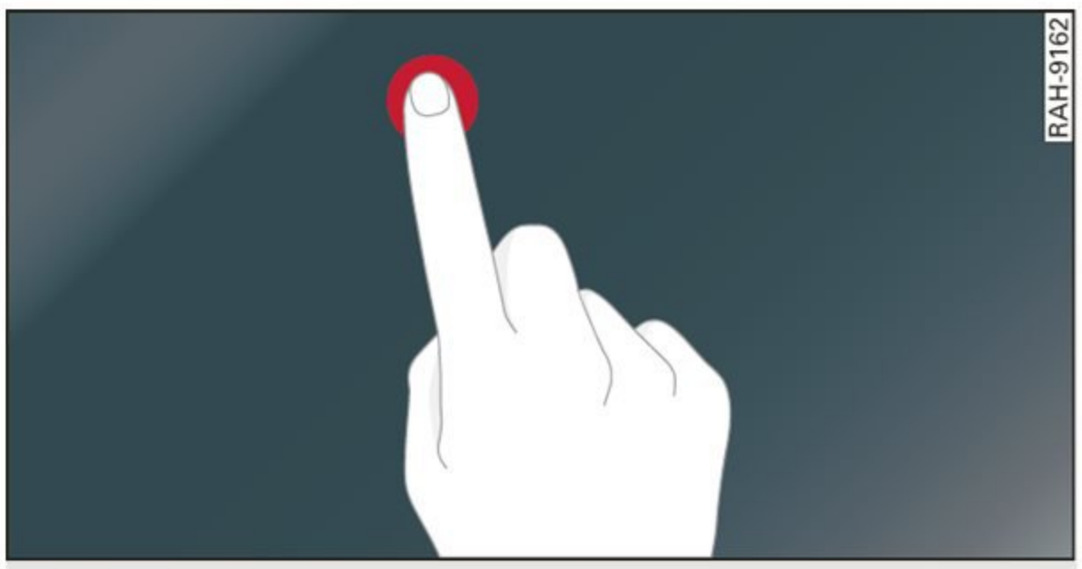


Fig. 8 Touch display: pressing

Selecting a function or button

▸ Press the desired function or button.

Pressing and holding

Applies to: touch displays

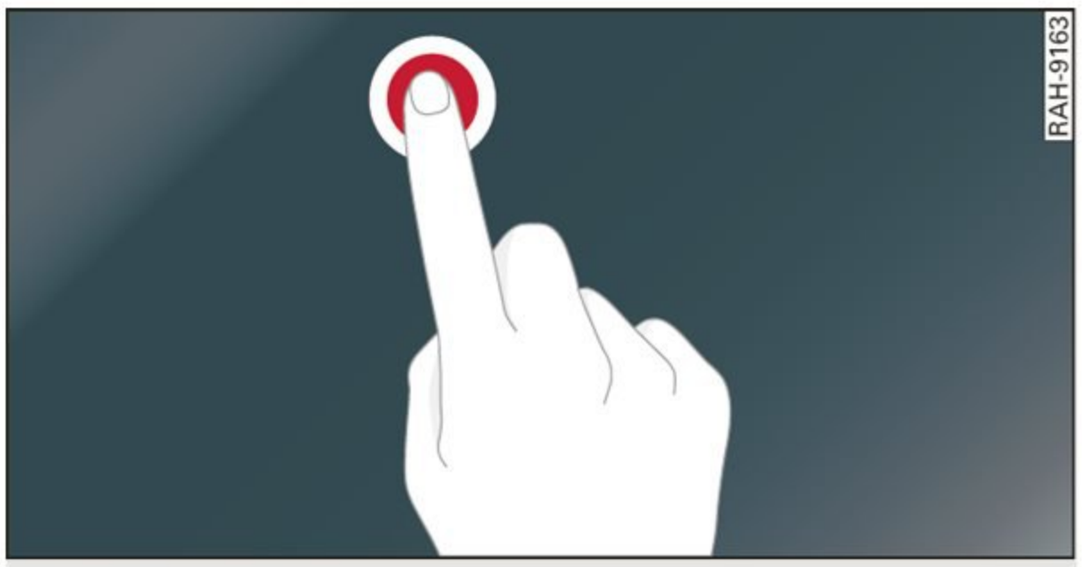


Fig. 9 Touch display: pressing and holding

Accessing options

For some items, you can access additional options that are not directly visible.

▸ Press and hold an item until the associated options are displayed.

Pressing and pulling

Applies to: touch displays

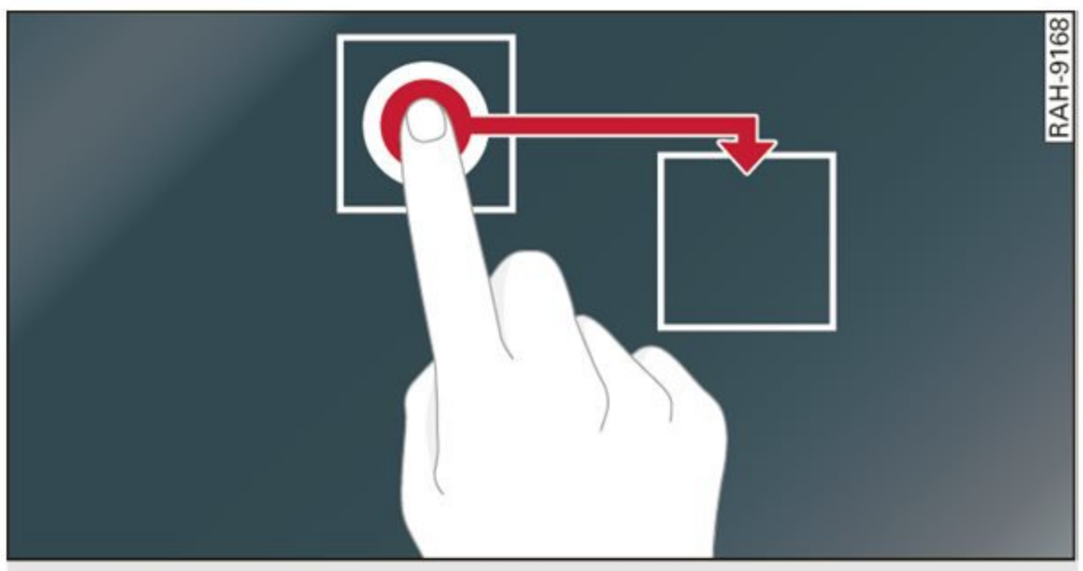


Fig. 10 Touch display: pressing and pulling

Moving an item

You can position some items at any location on the screen.

▸ Press and hold an item, and then use your finger to pull it to the desired location.

Pinching fingers together and pulling apart

Applies to: touch displays

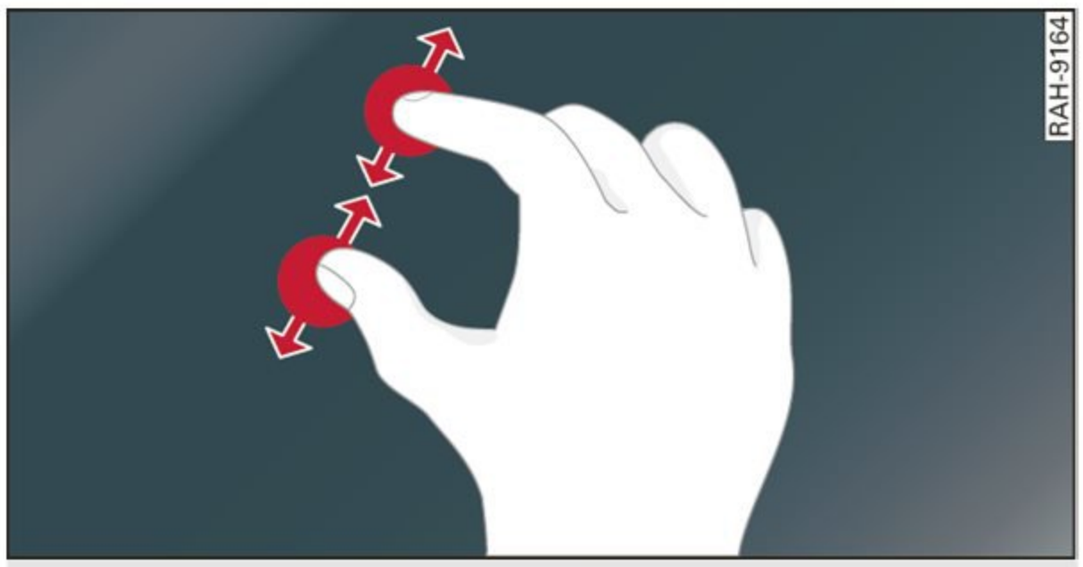


Fig. 11 Touch display: pinching fingers together and pulling them apart

Zooming in and out on an item

▸ To increase the size of an item, touch it with two fingers and pull your fingers apart.
▸ To decrease the size of an item, touch it with two fingers and pull your fingers together.

Rotating

Applies to: touch displays

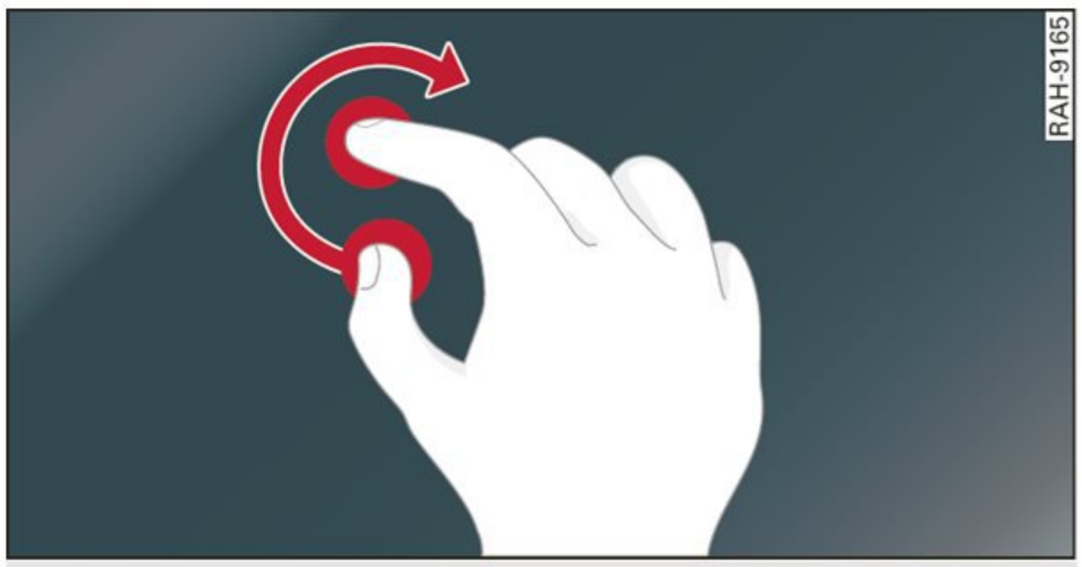


Fig. 12 Touch display: rotating

Rotating the view or perspective

- ▸ Rotate the item using two fingers.

Dragging

Applies to: touch displays

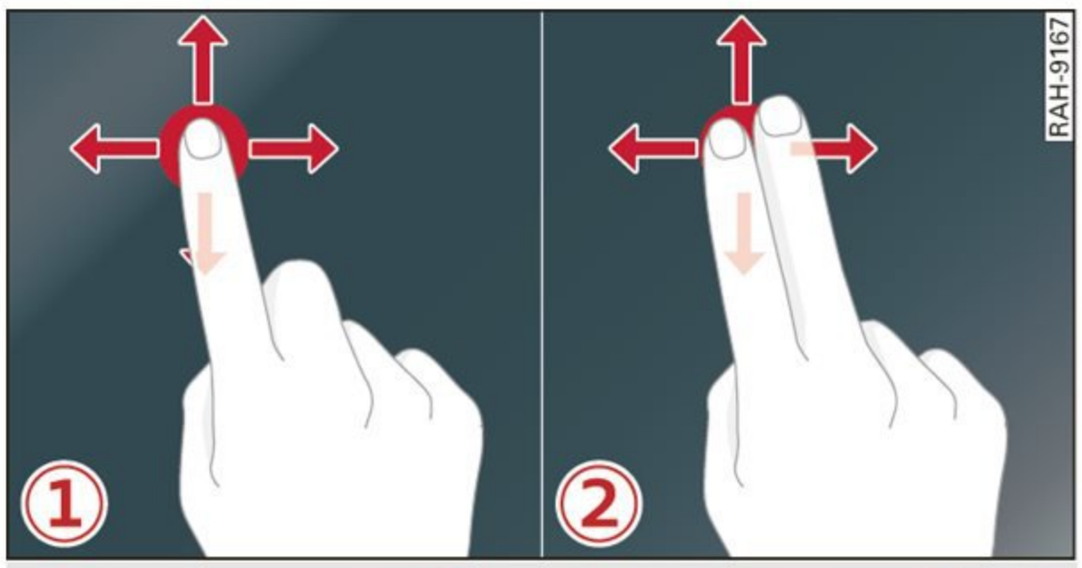


Fig. 13 Touch display: ① dragging with one finger, ② dragging with two fingers

Scrolling or browsing through menus/lists

- ▸ To scroll through menus and lists, swipe upward or downward with one finger.
- ▸ To browse through menus and lists, swipe to the right or left with one finger.

Tilting 3D displays

- ▸ Drag upward or downward with two fingers.

Dragging away from/toward the edge of the screen

Applies to: touch displays

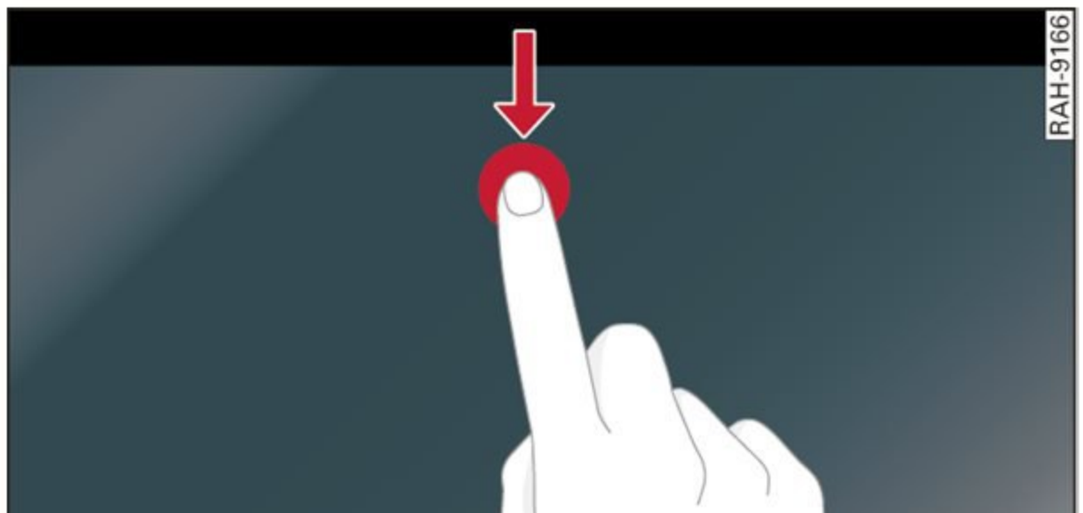


Fig. 14 Touch display: dragging away from the edge of the screen (example)

Opening hidden menus

The ▭ symbol indicates that there is a hidden menu.

- ▸ Use your finger to drag inward from the upper or lower edge of the screen, or
- ▸ Press the ▭ button.

Closing hidden menus

- ▸ Press within the menu and drag it toward the upper or lower edge of the screen.

Closing an element

- ▸ Press on an item and drag it toward the right edge of the screen.

Information about menu paths

This guide shows you at a glance the paths for opening a desired menu and its settings and functions.

Example of a path

- ▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **General** > **Date & time**.

Following the path

- ▸ The text *Applies to:* at the beginning indicates in which display the path should be followed.
- ▸ Applies to MMI: To open the home screen, press ⌂.
- ▸ Applies to Rear Seat Remote/Audi tablet: To open the home screen, close any open menus and press ⌂ if necessary. ▶

- ▸ If the **SETTINGS** button is not displayed, swipe toward the left or right with one finger until it appears.
- ▸ Press the **SETTINGS** button.
- ▸ If the **General** button is not displayed, swipe toward the left or right with one finger until it appears.
- ▸ Press the **General** button.
- ▸ If the **Date & time** button is not displayed, swipe upward or downward with one finger until it appears.
- ▸ Press the **Date & time** button.

Tips

If a menu or symbol is in parentheses in the path, for example, (**General**) or (⚙), then it is an optional menu item that does not need to be used in every system.

Settings

You can adjust or turn off the MMI touch display feedback.

- ▸ Applies to MMI: Select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **Display & brightness** > **MMI**.

Possible settings:

– **Brightness**
– **Touchscreen Feedback**

Multi Media Interface

Traffic safety information

Audi recommends performing certain Infotainment system functions, such as entering a destination, only when the vehicle is stationary. Always be prepared to stop operating the Infotainment system in the interest of your safety and the safety of other road users.

WARNING

Only use the Infotainment system when road, traffic, weather, and visibility conditions permit and always in a way that allows you to maintain complete control over your vehicle.

Tips

Certain functions are not available while driving.

Switching on or off

Switching the MMI on or off

- ▸ To switch the MMI off, press and hold the On/Off knob ⇨ *page 39, fig. 31* until the upper display and all Infotainment system functions are switched off.
- ▸ To switch the MMI on, press the On/Off knob.

Restarting the MMI

- ▸ Press and hold the On/Off knob for at least 10 seconds.

Switching displays on or off

- ▸ To switch the upper display off, press ⏻ on the lower display.
- ▸ To switch the upper display on, touch the upper display or press ⏻ on the lower display.
- ▸ To switch both displays on or off, press and hold ⏻ on the lower display.

Introduction

You can display and operate Infotainment system and vehicle functions using both of the Multi Media Interface (MMI) touch displays.

Configuration wizard

After starting for the first time, the configuration wizard helps you to set up the vehicle, for example to set the desired system language and connect a telephone.

- ▸ Follow the instructions in the display.
- ▸ Applies to: MMI: To access the configuration wizard at a later time, select on the home screen: **HELP** > **Configuration wizard**.

Tool tips

Tool tips are displayed on the upper display after starting for the first time. They introduce various MMI functions to you.

- ▸ Follow the instructions in the display. ▶

- ▸ Applies to: MMI: To access the tool tips at a later time, select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **Help** > **Show tool tips**.
- ▸ Applies to: MMI: To receive additional tool tips, select on the home screen: **HELP** > **Tool tips** > **Basic information** or **Expert information**.

Menus and symbols



Fig. 15 Upper/lower display: diagram

	Label	Description
①	**Quick access bar**	Return to the home screen or open a menu quickly ⇨ *page 20*
②	**Status bar**	Displays existing notifications ⑦ ⇨ *page 21*, status display ⑧ ⇨ *page 21*, time
③	**Display area**	Select a menu, apply settings, display content ⇨ *page 21*
④	**Function bar**	Activate functions or access attached content ⇨ *page 22*
⑤	**Shortcuts**	Using shortcuts ⇨ *page 22*
⑥	**Climate control settings**	Adjust the climate control system settings ⇨ *page 104*

Description of common symbols

You can operate the default functions using the symbols that follow. The symbols may be found in any menu, depending on the context.

Symbol	Description
⮌	Go back one level
✕	Close the menu
🔍	Search for content
ⓘ	Open explanations for a menu
⚙	Open settings for the selected menu
⊞	Open the submenu
✎	Adjust the settings
☆/★	Set as favorite
☐/☑	Switch functions on or off
⬭/⬭	Switch functions on or off
◯/◉	Switch functions on or off
•••	Open additional actions
>	Open additional information for the selected menu

Quick access

With quick access, you can return to the home screen and quickly switch between four menus that can be individually configured.

Returning to the home screen or opening a menu quickly

- ▸ Press ⌂ or one of the four buttons. ▶

Configuring quick access

- ▸ Press and hold a button on the home screen display area or in the quick access bar.
- ▸ To move a button to the quick access bar, pull it from the display area to the quick access bar.
- ▸ To adjust the placement of the buttons in the quick access bar, pull them to the desired position in the bar.

Tips

The position of ⌂ cannot be adjusted.

Display area

You can freely change the location of the buttons on the home screen display area.

Configuring the display area

- ▸ Press and hold a button on the home screen display area.
- ▸ To adjust the placement of the buttons, pull them to the desired locations.

Switching between menu pages

If a menu contains multiple menu pages, ▬▬ is displayed in the display area. The white bar shows the location of the current menu page.

- ▸ To switch between menu pages, swipe your finger to the right or left.

Status display

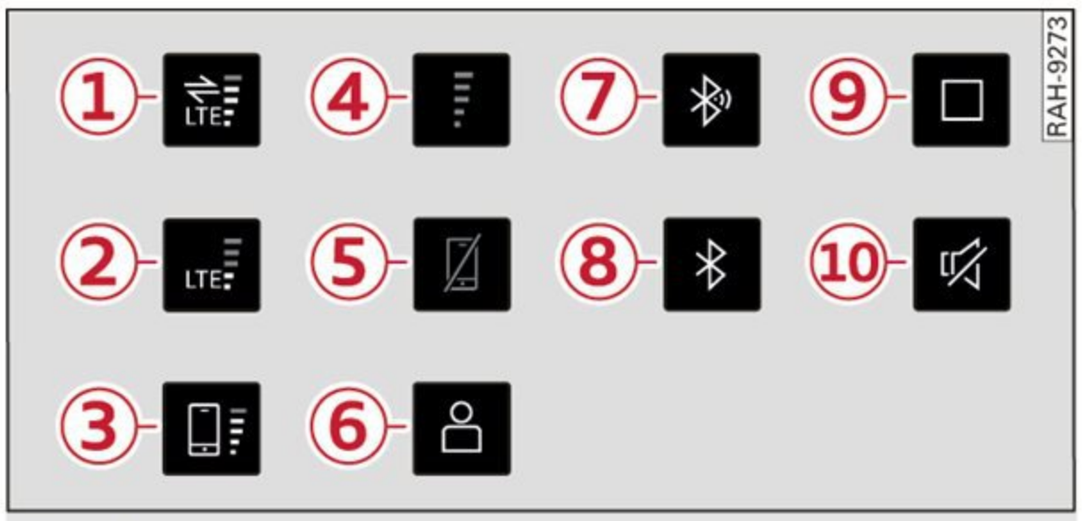


Fig. 16 Upper display: common symbols in the status bar

The symbols in the status bar show you information at a glance, such as if a mobile device is connected or if there is a data connection. The most common symbols are listed in the table.

	Description
①	There is a data connection. The bar indicates the signal strength of the data connection. Data is being transmitted now.
②	There is a data connection. The bar indicates the signal strength of the data connection. No data is being transmitted now.
③	A mobile device is connected. The bar indicates the signal strength of the cell phone connection.
④	There is no data connection.
⑤	An error occurred with the mobile device connection to the MMI.
⑥	The personal profiles are switched on. The digits **1** - **6** indicate which personal profile is currently active. The guest profile is active if there are no digits.
⑦	A Bluetooth device is connected.
⑧	Bluetooth is switched on, but no Bluetooth device is connected.
⑨	Audio playback was interrupted.
⑩	The audio source is muted.

Notification center

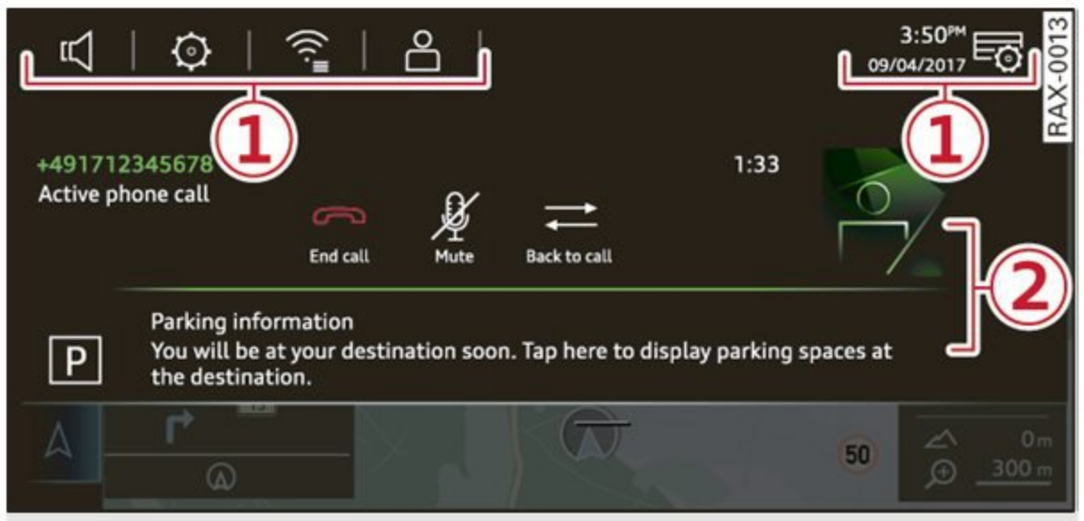


Fig. 17 Upper display: notification center diagram

Notifications can be displayed in the upper display. After a specified time, they will be hidden and a corresponding symbol will appear in the status bar ⑦ ⇨ *page 20, fig. 15*. In the notification center, you can view these notifications ② ⇨ *fig. 17* and apply quick settings ①.

Using the notification center

- ▸ To open the notification center, pull the status bar downward, or
- ▸ Press the ▭ button on the status bar. ▶

- ▸ To apply quick settings, press the respective symbol ①.
- ▸ To obtain additional information about a notification, press it.
- ▸ To delete a notification, pull it toward the right edge of the screen.
- ▸ If there are more than four notifications in the notification center, the older notifications will be hidden. To display the older notifications, drag your finger upward on the screen.

Setting displayed content

You can set whether some notifications should be displayed.

- ▸ To set the displayed content, press , or
- ▸ Applies to MMI: Select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **Notifications**.
- ▸ Select and confirm which notifications should be displayed.

Possible quick settings

Symbol	Description
	Apply sound settings
	Open menu settings
	Manage connected devices
	Manage personal profiles
9/4/2017	Set date and time
	Set displayed content in the notification center

Function bar

Depending on the vehicle equipment, you can operate various functions in the function bar.

Symbol	Description
OFF	Switch Start/Stop system on or off
OFF	Switches the lane departure warning on or off
	Opens the garage door opener function
	Press: adjust sunshade
	Press and hold: convenience opening and closing
OFF	**Press**: shows settings for the head-up display
	Press and hold: switches the head-up display on or off
	Press: switches the upper display on or off
	Press and hold: switches both displays on or off

Shortcuts

By creating shortcuts, you have quick access to various items, such as radio stations, frequently used contacts, or vehicle settings.

Adding shortcuts

The ••• buttons in the upper display indicate, for example, if a selected radio station can be added to the shortcuts. Depending on the context, you may also be able to add items from a list to the shortcuts.

- ▸ Press ••• or press and hold an item in a list.
- ▸ Press **Save as a shortcut**. The selected item will be added to the shortcuts on the lower display and displayed as a tile.

Using shortcuts

- ▸ Press the ④ ⇨ *page 20, fig. 15* button in the function bar on the lower screen. The saved shortcuts will be displayed or hidden.
- ▸ To access the stored function, press the respective tile.

Moving or deleting shortcuts

- ▸ Press and hold a shortcut on the lower display.
- ▸ To adjust the order of the shortcuts, drag a shortcut to the desired location.
- ▸ To delete a shortcut, press ⊗.

Text input

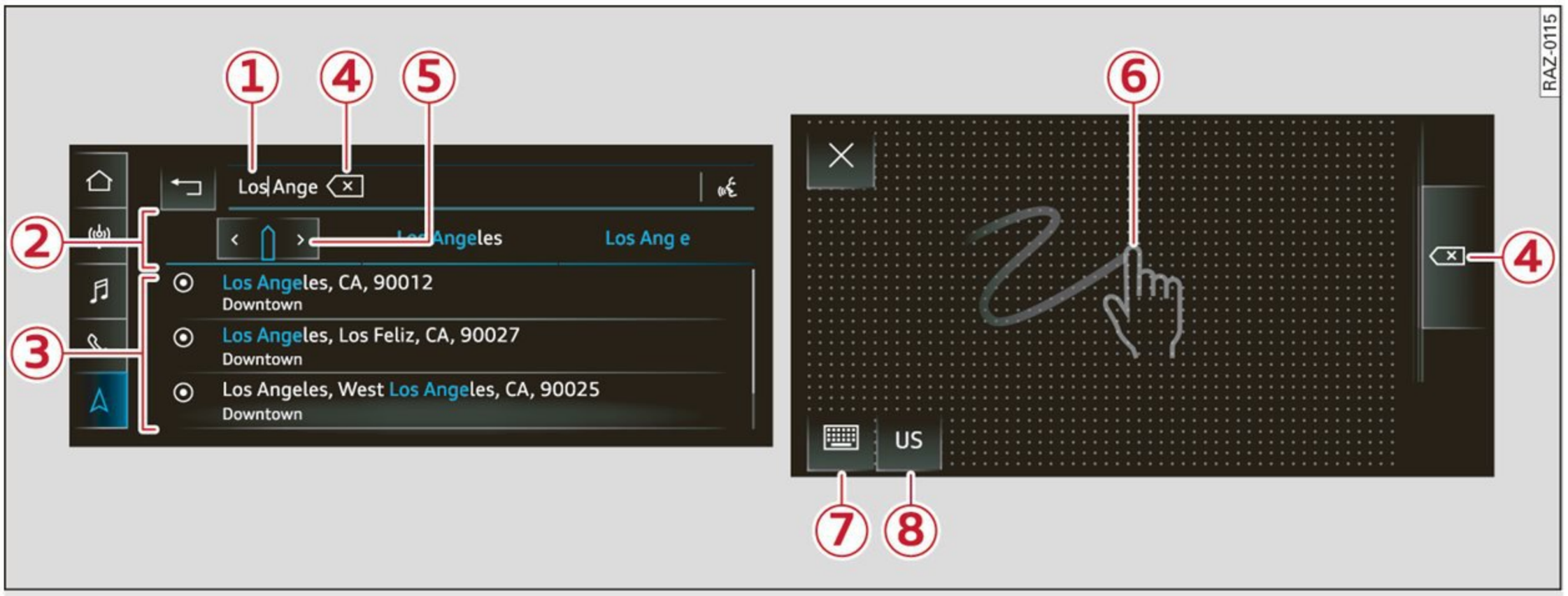


Fig. 18 Upper/lower display: text input diagram

In the input fields of various menus, you can enter letters, numbers and characters, for example to find an address in navigation.

On the lower section of the screen, you can enter the text with handwriting or using the on-screen keyboard. The current text input is displayed on the upper section of the screen ①. Depending on the context, word suggestions may be given based on the characters that have been entered ② and a results list may be shown ③.

Opening text input

- ▸ Press in the input field ①.

Switching input languages

Requirement: multiple input languages must be defined in the MMI ⇨ *page 24*.

- ▸ To switch between the defined input languages, press the button ⑧.

Switching the input methods

- ▸ To switch between handwriting input or the on-screen keyboard, press the button ⑦.

Entering text

- ▸ Applies to handwriting input: To enter text, simply write in the input area using one finger ⑥. You can write the separate characters next to each other or one on top of the other without having to move your finger over after writing a character. When you end the entry, the writing is interpreted by the system.
- ▸ Applies to the on-screen keyboard: To enter text, press the buttons on the keyboard. Depending on the usage context, you may also be able to swipe over the letters [1)].
- ▸ Applies to the on-screen keyboard with input language with accented characters: To enter accented characters (such as â, ç, ñ, ö), press and hold a character that has accented versions available and select the desired accented character.
- ▸ Applies to handwriting input: To enter a space, drag a line from left to right in the input section ⑥.
- ▸ To select a location in the text input, press on the desired location in the input field. You can control the location more accurately using the displayed slider ⑤.
- ▸ To delete individual characters, press ⌫ ④, or
- ▸ Applies to handwriting input: Drag a line from right to left in the input section ⑥.
- ▸ To delete multiple characters, press and hold ⌫ ④.
- ▸ To delete all characters in a specific location, press and hold ⌫ ④ and drag up to the desired location [1)]. When released, the highlighted characters are deleted. ▶

1) In certain countries.

Applying suggested words or entries from the results list

- ▸ To apply a suggested word ② or entry from the results list ③, press on it.
- ▸ To display more content in the results list, drag your finger upward or downward on the screen.

Setting the input language or keyboard layout

- ▸ Applies to MMI: Select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **Language & keyboard** > **Keyboard**.
- ▸ To define additional input languages, press the ⊂⊃ button.
- ▸ To change the keyboard layout for an input language, press >. For example, you can select between QWERTZ and QWERTY.

Rear Seat Remote

Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with Rear Seat Remote

With Rear Seat Remote, you can control convenience and Infotainment system functions in the rear of the vehicle, such as the climate control system or the media playback in the vehicle.

WARNING

- – As the driver, do not allow usage of the Rear Seat Remote to distract you from driving, as this could increase the risk of an accident. For example, do not reach behind you while driving to operate the Rear Seat Remote.
- – The Rear Seat Remote can only be operated when the vehicle is stationary or when the remote is securely positioned in the designated holder in the vehicle. Like all loose objects, it could be thrown through the vehicle and cause serious injuries in a collision. If the Rear Seat Remote is not in the designated holder, it must always be securely stowed while driving.
- – Do not use any wireless devices on the front seats within range of the airbags while driving. Also read the warnings in the chapter ⇨ *page 87*.
- – The Rear Seat Remote can become hot while charging. Pay attention to the housing and display temperature, and be careful when removing the Rear Seat Remote from the holder.
- – There are magnets located on the back of the Rear Seat Remote and in the designated holder. For people with pacemakers, the electromagnetic radiation may impair pacemaker function. Always maintain a minimum distance of approximately 6 in (15 cm) from the magnets.

Note

- – Always follow the information found in ⇨ ! *in Using a Wi-Fi hotspot on page 199*.
- – Protect the Rear Seat Remote against prolonged exposure to direct sunlight.
- – Extremely high or low temperatures that can occur inside vehicles can damage the Rear Seat Remote and/or impair the device performance. Never leave your Rear Seat Remote in the vehicle in extremely high or low temperatures.
- – Protect the Rear Seat Remote from coming into contact with any fluids.

Tips

- – Please note that the Rear Seat Remote can be used only when the ignition is switched on and within range of your vehicle's active Wi-Fi hotspot.
- – Please note that a Wi-Fi connection does not automatically make it possible to use the Internet. For additional information, see the chapter ⇨ *page 198*.
- – When playing online media sources, there may be longer loading times or restrictions on media playback, depending on the Internet connection or the Wi-Fi usage (for example, if there is intensive usage by multiple devices on the hotspot).
- – Signals from Bluetooth devices and Wi-Fi hotspots within range of the vehicle may impair the vehicle Wi-Fi services. If multiple Bluetooth devices and Wi-Fi hotspots are within range of the vehicle, it may cause reduced data transfer rates, connection interruptions, or limitations when streaming media.

Overview

Applies to: vehicles with Rear Seat Remote

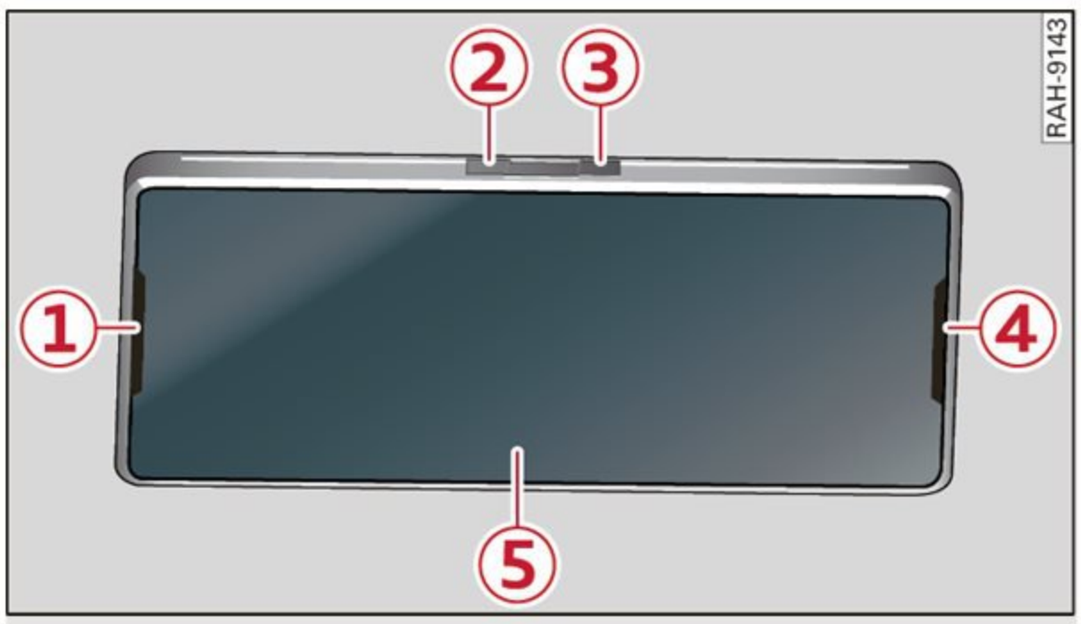


Fig. 19 Rear Seat Remote: overview

① Microphone
② Volume button (decrease/mute)
③ Volume button (increase)
④ Speaker
⑤ Display

Using the holder

Applies to: vehicles with Rear Seat Remote



Fig. 20 Rear center armrest/full-length center console: Rear Seat Remote holder

Depending on the equipment, the Rear Seat Remote may be located in the rear center armrest or on the full-length center console.

Removing the Rear Seat Remote

▸ To release the Rear Seat Remote, press the ⏏ button ①.

▸ Remove the Rear Seat Remote from the holder using both hands ⇨ ⚠ *in Introduction on page 24*.

Securing the Rear Seat Remote

▸ Hold the Rear Seat Remote in both hands so that the volume buttons ② and ③ ⇨ *page 25, fig. 19* face upward.
▸ Carefully press the Rear Seat Remote toward the holder until the Rear Seat Remote locks into place.

Charging the battery

Applies to: vehicles with Rear Seat Remote

Requirement: the ignition must be switched on.

▸ To charge the battery, secure the Rear Seat Remote in the holder ⇨ *page 25*. The battery will charge automatically.

Note

The Rear Seat Remote battery is permanently installed and may only be replaced by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. If the battery replacement is not done correctly, it may cause malfunctions and increase the risk of damaging the Rear Seat Remote.

Tips

– Batteries have a limited service life. If the operating time decreases significantly, the battery should be replaced. Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility if you need a new battery.
– The Rear Seat Remote is equipped with an intelligent battery management system to provide a long battery service life. Therefore, the battery may not be charged to its full capacity, especially when temperatures are high or low.

4N0012721BB

Menus and symbols

Applies to: vehicles with Rear Seat Remote

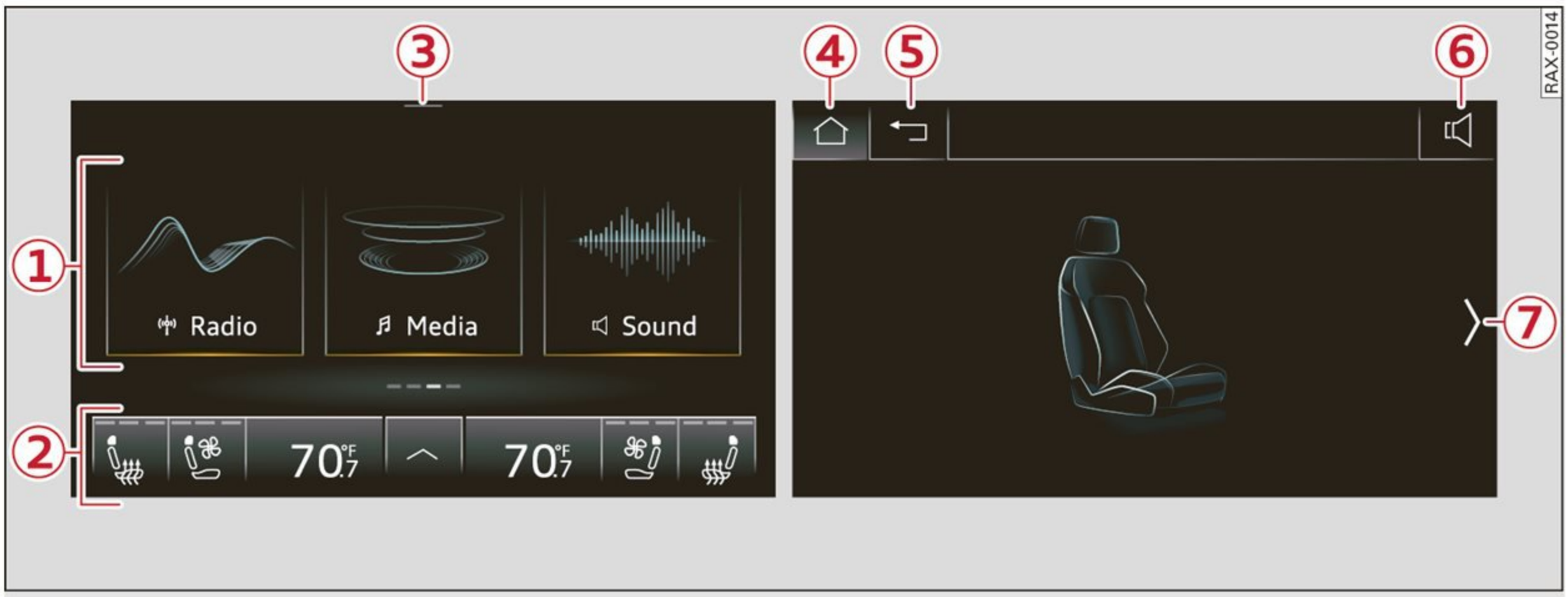


Fig. 21 Display: home screen (left) and submenu (right) diagram

	Symbol/Description	Description
①	Applications	Select and open applications. Depending on the equipment, you may be able to use the following applications: **SEATS**, **LIGHTS**, **SUNSHADE**, **MEDIA**, **RADIO**, **PHONE**, **DEVICES**, **SOUND**, **SETTINGS**, **TIPS**
②	Climate control system	Set and operate the climate control system for the rear section ⇨ *page 104*
③	Quick access	Use your finger to drag downward from the top of the screen to open the quick access area. You can adjust the media playback ⇨ *page 27* or telephone functions during a phone call ⇨ *page 193*.
④	Home screen	Go to the home screen
⑤	Back	Go one step back
⑥	Media playback	Adjust the media playback ⇨ *page 27*, access telephone functions during a phone call ⇨ *page 193*
⑦	Side selection in vehicle functions	Switching between different seats ⇨ *page 78*

Connecting to the MMI

Applies to: vehicles with Rear Seat Remote

To use the Rear Seat Remote, you must connect it to the MMI.

Requirement: the ignition must be switched on.

- ▸ Secure the Rear Seat Remote in the designated holder ⇨ *page 25*. The Rear Seat Remote will automatically connect to the MMI.

Tips

The Rear Seat Remote remains connected to the MMI if you remove the remote from the holder.

Adjusting media playback

Applies to: vehicles with Rear Seat Remote



Fig. 22 Rear Seat Remote: selecting the playback source

You can adjust the volume of the media playback. Together with the Audi tablet, you can also select the playback source and send content from the Audi tablet to the MMI.

Opening media playback

Requirement: the Rear Seat Remote must be connected to the MMI ⇨ *page 26*.

- ▸ Use your finger to drag downward from the top edge of the screen.

Adjusting the volume

You can adjust the volume of the highlighted source ②.

- ▸ To increase or decrease the volume, press + or -, or
- ▸ To increase or decrease the volume, press the ③ or ② buttons ⇨ *page 25, fig. 19*.

Selecting the playback source

Applies to: vehicles with Audi tablet

- ▸ To select a playback source, press the display shown on the MMI or Audi tablet. The playback source is highlighted.
- ▸ To send media playing on the Audi tablet to the MMI, press ①.
- ▸ To disconnect the Audi tablet from the MMI, press ③.

The following table gives an overview of the audio output status:

Symbol	Description
	The sound output is through the vehicle speakers.
	The sound output is through the headphones.
	There is no sound output. To turn on sound output, connect headphones or send the media playing on the Audi tablet to the MMI.

Settings

Applies to: vehicles with Rear Seat Remote

The Rear Seat Remote settings can be set in the MMI, for example to restrict operation by children.

- ▸ Applies to MMI: Select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **Display & brightness** > **Operation in rear**.

Possible settings:

– **Allow Rear Seat Entertainment access to speakers**
– **Block RSE access to media sources**

Block RSE with parental control button

When the function is switched on and parental control is activated ⇨ *page 53*, the Rear Seat Remote is blocked.

Block rear A/C operation with parental control button

When the function is switched on and parental control is activated, climate control operation using the Rear Seat Remote is blocked. You can continue to operate all other content with the Rear Seat Remote.

Technical data

Applies to: vehicles with Rear Seat Remote

Rear Seat Remote	
Display	OLED, 5.7" screen, 1920 x 1680 pixels
Battery	Lithium polymer (2700 mAh)

Rear Seat Remote	
Dimensions (height x width x depth)	3.39 in x 6.38 in x 0.43 in (86 mm x 162 mm x 11 mm)
Weight	0.58 lbs (261 g)

Rear Seat Entertainment (Audi tablet)

Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with Audi tablet

You can control available sources in the vehicle (such as the radio) using the Audi tablet and listen to them through the vehicle speakers or headphones. You can also display vehicle information (such as the next oil change service). The Audi tablet also has applications and functions that are not related to the vehicle.

WARNING

- As the driver, do not allow usage of the Audi tablet to distract you from driving, as this could increase the risk of an accident. For example, do not reach behind you while driving to operate the Audi tablet.
- Children in rear-facing child safety seats in the rear: remove the Audi tablet* from the backrest on the front seat to reduce the risk of injury. Read the instructions in the chapter ⇨ *page 91*.
- The Audi tablet can only be operated when the vehicle is stationary or when it is securely positioned in the designated holder in the vehicle. Like all loose objects, it could be thrown through the vehicle and cause serious injuries in a collision. If the Audi tablet is not in the designated holder, it must always be securely stowed while driving.
- Do not use any wireless devices on the front seats within range of the airbags while driving. Also read the warnings in the chapter ⇨ *page 87*.
- The back of the Audi tablet can become hot while charging. Pay attention to the housing temperature, and be careful when removing the Audi tablet from the holder.

Note

- Always follow the information found in ⇨ ! *in Using a Wi-Fi hotspot on page 199*.
- Protect the Audi tablet against prolonged exposure to direct sunlight.
- Extremely high or low temperatures that can occur inside vehicles may damage the Audi tablet or impair its performance. Never leave your Audi tablet in the vehicle in extremely high or low temperatures.
- Protect the Audi tablet from coming into contact with any fluids.

Tips

- If the Audi tablet is used when the ignition is switched off or outside of the range of the MMI, then only the non-vehicle applications and functions will be available.
- Vehicle settings are only possible through the MMI.
- Please note that a Wi-Fi connection does not automatically make it possible to use the Internet. For additional information, see the chapter ⇨ *page 198*.
- The Audi tablet makes it possible to access services from external providers. Permanent availability cannot be guaranteed, because that depends on the service provider.
- When playing online media sources, there may be longer loading times or restrictions on media playback, depending on the Internet connection or the Wi-Fi usage (for example, if there is intensive usage by multiple devices on the hotspot, such as tablets or laptops).
- The Audi tablet has an anti-theft protection feature: it can only connect to the MMI of the associated vehicle. Also, the Audi tablet will be disabled if it has not been connected to the MMI for longer than 30 days. To enable it again, connect the Audi tablet to the ▶

MMI by securing it in the holder ⇨ *page 29*.

– When streaming media, the following situations may cause reduced data transfer rates, interrupted connections, or restrictions:
  – If there are multiple Wi-Fi hotspots or devices connected to Wi-Fi and Bluetooth within range of the vehicle
  – If multiple devices are connected to the vehicle Wi-Fi hotspot and in use at the same time
– The Audi tablet has been tested with many of the products available on the market. However, there may be cases where individual devices are not recognized, or where usage may be restricted or impossible.

Overview

Applies to: vehicles with Audi tablet

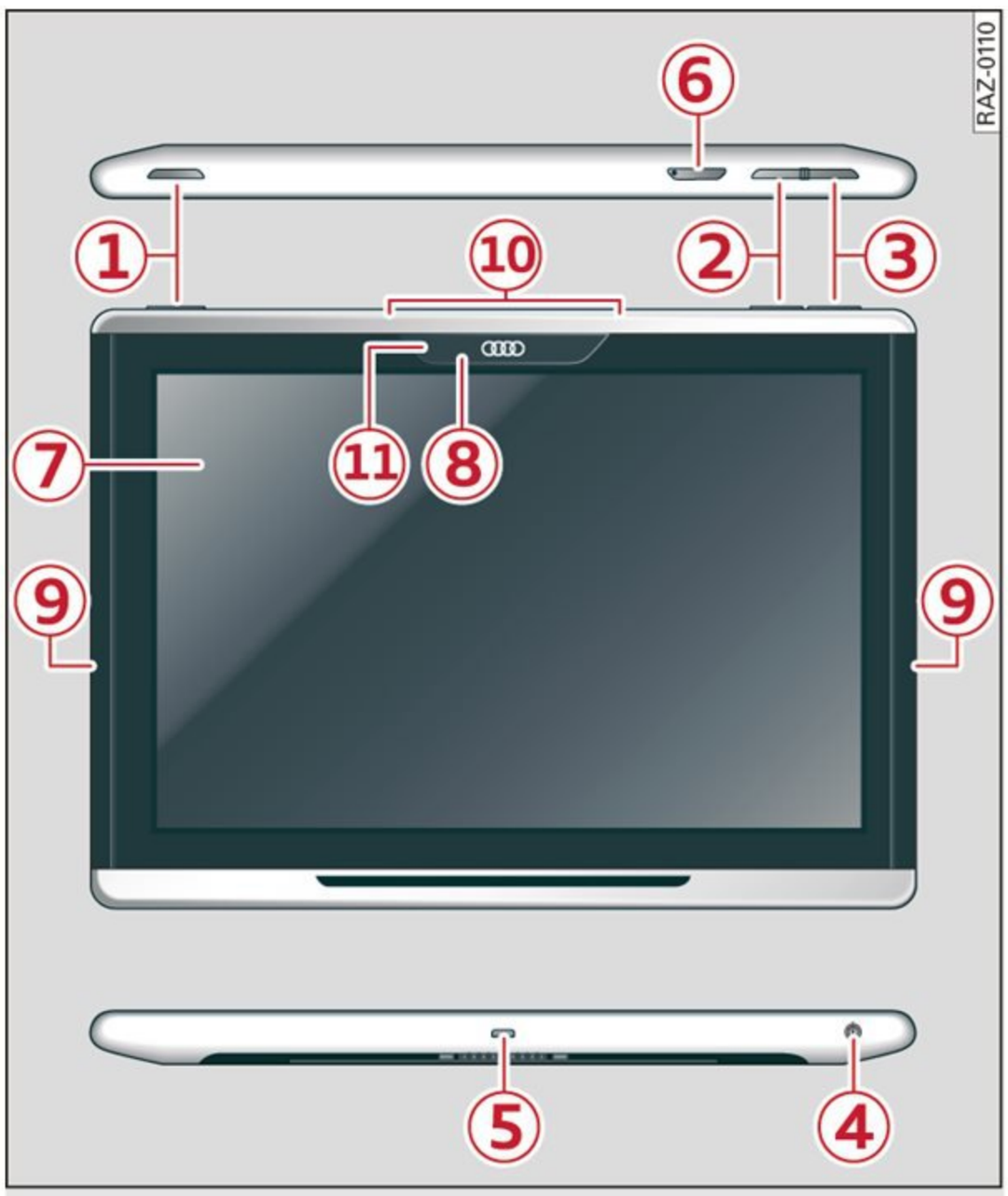


Fig. 23 Audi tablet overview

Connections and buttons

① On/Off button 31
② Volume button (decrease/mute)
③ Volume button (increase)
④ Earphone connection 33
⑤ Micro USB connection
⑥ microSD card reader 30
⑦ Display
⑧ Status LED
⑨ Speaker 33
⑩ Microphone
⑪ Camera

Using the holder

Applies to: vehicles with Audi tablet

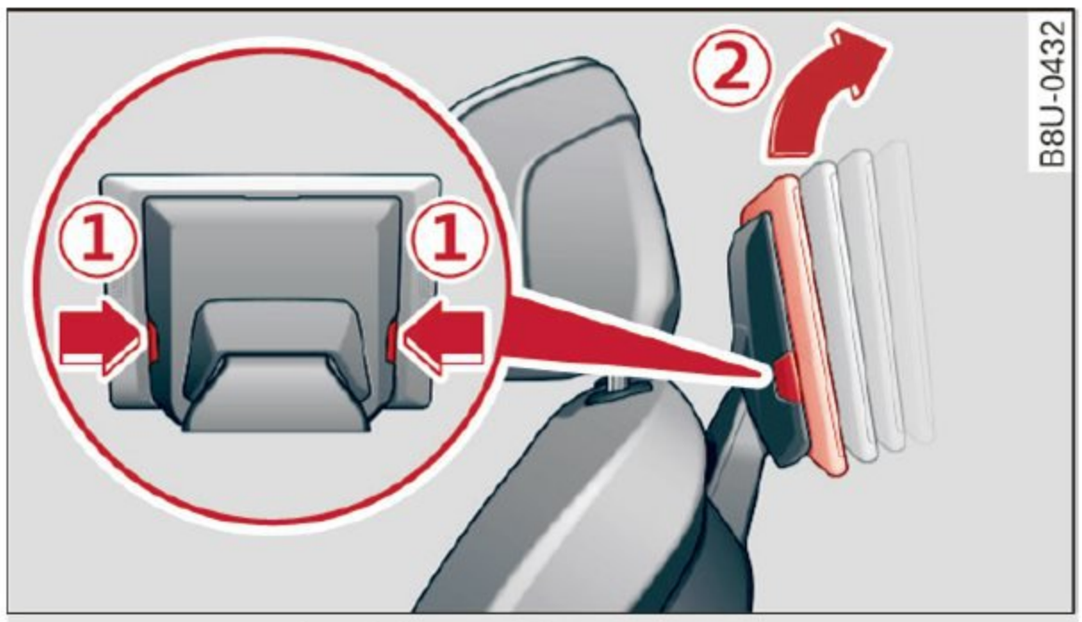


Fig. 24 Rear side of driver's/front passenger's seat: removing the Audi tablet

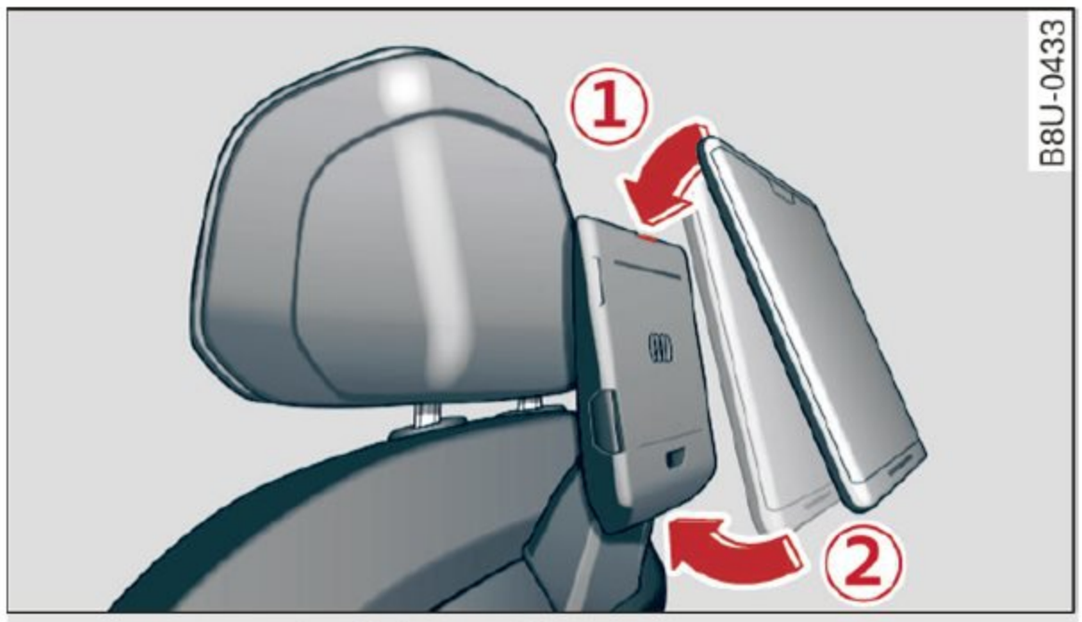


Fig. 25 Rear side of driver's/front passenger's seat: securing the Audi tablet to the holder

The Audi tablet is located in the rear, on the rear side of the driver's or front passenger's seat. The Audi tablet is secured to a holder on the seat. You can remove the Audi tablet from the holder and use it as a portable device.

Removing the Audi tablet

Requirement: there must not be any accessories (such as headphones) connected to the Audi tablet.

- ▸ Hold the Audi tablet in both hands during the entire process.
- ▸ Press the two buttons ① ⇨ *fig. 24* on the Audi tablet holder at the same time.
- ▸ Slide the Audi tablet upward ② ⇨ *fig. 24* out of the holder ⇨ ⚠ *in Introduction on page 28*. ▶

4N0012721BB

Securing the Audi tablet

Requirement: the two buttons ① ⇨ *fig. 24* must be in the retracted position.

- ▸ Hold the Audi tablet in both hands during the entire process.
- ▸ Engage the Audi tablet at the contact strip ① ⇨ *fig. 25*.
- ▸ Carefully press the Audi tablet toward the Audi tablet holder ② ⇨ *fig. 25* until the Audi tablet locks into place audibly.

Tips

If the Audi tablet is not in its holder and is exposed to extremely high or low temperatures, it may turn off automatically for safety reasons.

Tilting the holder

Applies to: vehicles with Audi tablet

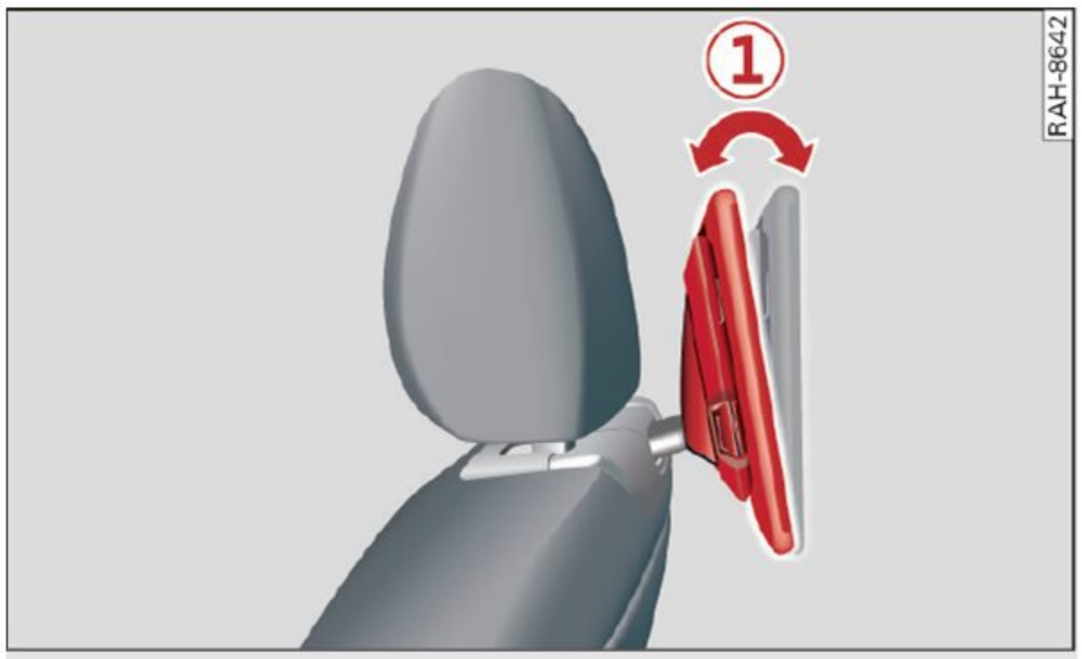


Fig. 26 Rear side of driver's/front passenger's seat: angle range of the holder

Tilting the holder manually

Applies to: manually adjustable holders

- ▸ Hold the Audi tablet in both hands during the entire process.
- ▸ Tilt that holder in the specified area ①.

Tilting the holder using the power controls

Applies to: power adjustable holders

- ▸ Applies to: Rear Seat Remote: Select on the home screen: **SEATS** > **Seat setting** and touch the picture of the front passenger seat on the Audi tablet. Press the left or right arrows until the desired position is reached.

Note

To reduce the risk of damage to the holder:

– Applies to manual adjustable holders: Tilt the holder in the within the designated range ① without pushing or pulling it forcefully.

– Applies to power adjustable holders: Only adjust the angle of the holder with the controls and not by hand.

Inserting or removing a microSD card

Applies to: vehicles with Audi tablet

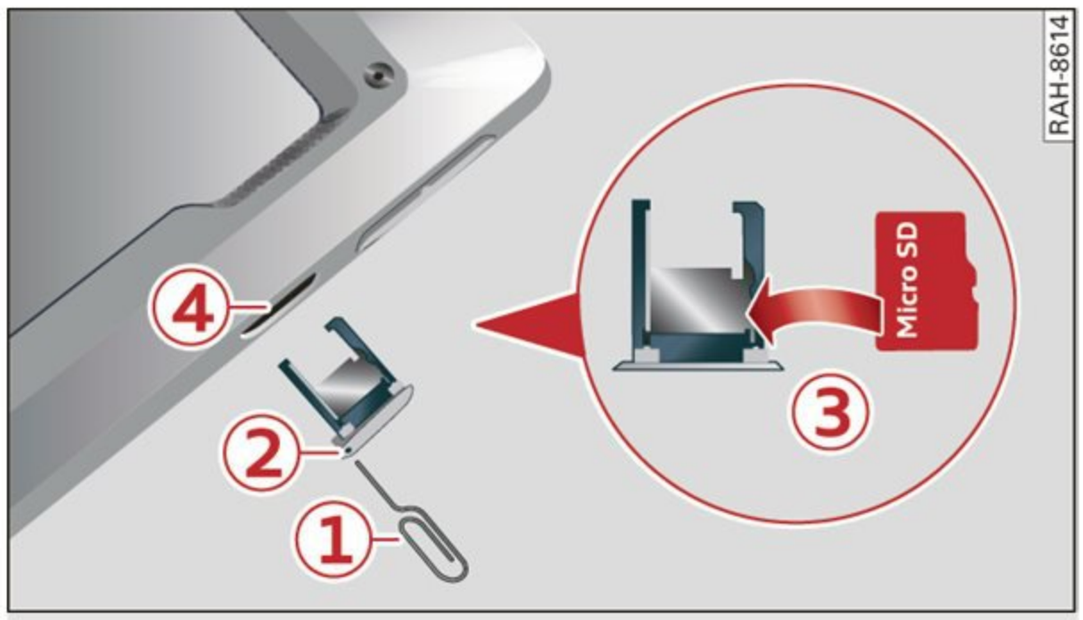


Fig. 27 Audi tablet rear side: switching the microSD card

The microSD card reader is located in the Audi tablet ⑥ ⇨ *page 29, fig. 23*.

For information on the properties of supported microSD cards, see ⇨ *page 34*.

- ▸ Use a paper clip as a tool ①. Bend the end of the paper clip so that the end is straight, or:
- ▸ Use the tool for ejecting SIM cards from your smartphone.
- ▸ Slide the end of the paper clip into the hole ② until the card tray pops out. Pull the cover with the card tray out of the Audi tablet.
- ▸ Remove the microSD card from the card tray.
- ▸ Insert the microSD card into the card tray ③.

Push the card tray into the card reader slot ④ until the card tray clicks into place.

WARNING

For safety reasons, the card tray cover must always be closed while driving to reduce the risk of injury. ▶

Note

– Only use microSD cards (0.43 in x 0.59 in (11 mm x 15 mm)). If a card of a different size is inserted in the card reader instead of a microSD card, do not under any circumstances remove this card yourself due to the risk of card reader damage. Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
– There is a risk of damaging the Audi tablet if you use an SD card adapter, because vibrations can cause the microSD card to fall out of the adapter while driving.

Charging the battery

Applies to: vehicles with Audi tablet

Requirement: the ignition must be switched on.

▸ To charge the battery, secure the Audi tablet in the holder ⇨ *page 29*. The battery will charge automatically. The charge level is shown in the status display ② ⇨ *page 32, fig. 28*.

Note

The Audi tablet battery is permanently installed and may only be replaced by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. If the battery replacement is not done correctly, it may cause malfunctions and increase the risk of damaging the Audi tablet.

Tips

– Batteries have a limited service life. If the operating time decreases significantly, the battery should be replaced. Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility if you need to have the battery replaced.
– The Audi tablet is equipped with an intelligent battery management system to provide a long battery service life. Therefore, the battery may not be charged to its full capacity, especially when temperatures are high or low.

Turning the Audi tablet on and off

Applies to: vehicles with Audi tablet

You can turn the Audi tablet on and off manually. If the Audi tablet is not used for a certain amount of time, the screensaver or standby mode activates.

Turning on or off manually

▸ To turn the Audi tablet on, press and hold the ⇨ *page 29, fig. 23* button ① briefly.
▸ To turn the Audi tablet off, press and hold the ⇨ *page 29, fig. 23* button ① until a menu appears. Press ⏻ **Switch off**.

Turning on from standby mode

▸ Press the button ① ⇨ *page 29, fig. 23*.

Hiding the screensaver

Requirement: the Audi tablet must be in the holder.

▸ Touch the display at any location ⑦ ⇨ *page 29, fig. 23*.

Tips

– The MMI switches off automatically if the engine is not running and the vehicle battery is low. If the Audi tablet is in the holder, it will also switch off.
– If the MMI, the MMI Wi-Fi hotspot, or the Audi tablet Wi-Fi is turned off, only the non-vehicle applications and functions will be available.
– For some services, it may be necessary to set up an account with the respective service provider before use.

Menus and symbols

Applies to: vehicles with Audi tablet

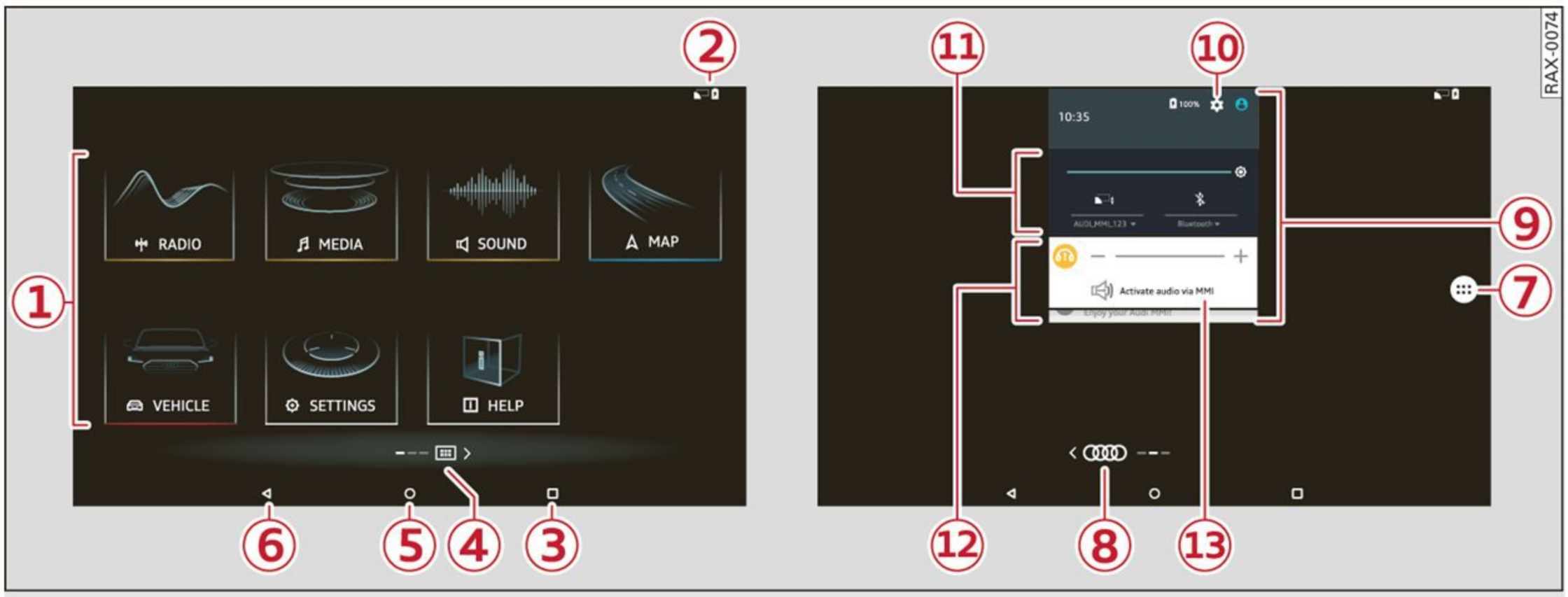


Fig. 28 Audi tablet: diagram of menus and symbols

	Symbol/Description	Description
①	Display area	Select a menu, apply settings, display content
②	Status display	Time overview, battery charge level ⇨ *page 31*, Wi-Fi connection signal strength bars, MMI connection signal strength bars ⇨ *page 33*, Bluetooth
③	☐ Task manager	Opens the task manager to switch between open applications quickly ⇨ *page 33*.
④	Non-vehicle applications	Press to switch to the home screen for non-vehicle applications, and to use these applications.
⑤	○ Home screen	Go to the home screen
⑥	◁ Back	Go one step back or go to the home screen
⑦		Overview for opening all non-vehicle applications. Additional information on non-vehicle applications can be found in the respective operating manual or obtained from the manufacturer.
⑧	Audi applications	Press to switch to the Audi applications home screen, and to use the Audi applications. Depending on the equipment, you may be able to use the following Audi applications: **MEDIA**, **RADIO**, **SOUND**, **MAP**, **VEHICLE**, **SETTINGS**, **HELP**
⑨	Quick access	Use your finger to drag downward from the top of the screen to open quick access with status information and notifications. Use your finger to drag downward from the top of the screen two times to also open the quick settings.
⑩	System settings	Open the Audi tablet system settings
⑪	Quick settings	Press on the respective symbol to switch a function on and off. To open the settings for a function, press the arrow next to the symbol label.
⑫	Notifications	Show or open notifications. To delete a notification, drag it toward the edge of the screen.
⑬	Audio output	Adjust volume, adjust audio output ⇨ *page 33*

Switching between Audi applications and non-vehicle applications

To switch between the home screens of both sections, press the buttons ④ or ⑧.

Tips

- AUDI AG merely provides access to non-vehicle applications and does not assume any responsibility for the content.
- Do not install any applications from unofficial or unknown sources.

Connecting to the MMI

Applies to: vehicles with Audi tablet

To use Audi tablet functions in connection with the vehicle (for example, using MMI media sources), you can connect the Audi tablet to the MMI.

Requirement: the ignition must be switched on.

▸ Secure the Audi tablet in the designated holder ⇨ *page 29*.

When a connection to the MMI is active, the symbol is displayed in the status bar.

Tips

The connection to the MMI is also maintained if you remove the Audi tablet from the holder. For this to happen, the ignition must be switched on and the Audi tablet must be within range of the activated vehicle Wi-Fi hotspot.

Task manager

Applies to: vehicles with Audi tablet

The task manager displays all active applications. You have the option to close them or switch between active applications.

Opening the task manager

▸ Press □ ③ ⇨ *page 32, fig. 28*.

Switching to an active application

▸ If necessary, use your finger to drag upward/downward in the task manager until the desired application is displayed as a thumbnail.
▸ Press on the application thumbnail.

Closing the application

▸ Press ✕ in an application thumbnail, or
▸ Pull an application thumbnail toward the left/right edge of the screen until the application closes, or
▸ Press ☰ to close all applications at once.

Closing the task manager

▸ Press □ or ◁.

Tips

The Audi tablet automatically closes any applications in the background to optimize device performance.

Adjusting the audio output

Applies to: vehicles with Audi tablet

The sound from the active audio source can be played through the vehicle speakers or the headphones connected to the Audi tablet.

The audio output through the vehicle speakers can be switched on for the left or right Audi tablet. The audio output for the other Audi tablet can run through the headphones at the same time.

Requirement: the Audi tablet must be connected to the MMI ⇨ *page 33*. Audi tablet access to the speakers must be permitted ⇨ *page 34*.

▸ To open the quick access ⑨ ⇨ *page 32, fig. 28*, use your finger to swipe downward from the top of the screen
▸ Select **Activate audio via MMI** or **Deactivate audio on MMI and play audio on headphones**.

The following table gives an overview of the audio output status. The respective symbol is displayed in the quick access:

Symbol	Description
	The sound output is through the vehicle speakers.
	The sound output is through the headphones.

Symbol	Description
	There is no sound output. To switch on the audio output, connect headphones or adjust the audio output through the vehicle speakers.
	The sound output is through the Audi tablet speakers.

Tips

- Applies to: Rear Seat Remote: You can also control the audio output from the Audi tablet through the Rear Seat Remote ⇨ *page 27*.
- The sound is only played through the Audi tablet speakers if the Audi tablet is not connected to the MMI and no headphones are connected.
- If headphones are connected to the headphone jack ④ ⇨ *page 29, fig. 23*, the audio output is sent to the wired headphones. Bluetooth headphones already connected will be muted.
- If the volume is too high, it will be adjusted down to a set level when connecting to headphones.
- Any integrated remote control functions are not supported for wired headphones.

Settings

Applies to: vehicles with Audi tablet

The Audi tablet settings can be set in the MMI, for example to restrict operation by children.

▸ Applies to MMI: Select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **Display & brightness** > **MMI**.

Possible settings:

- **Transfer MMI language to the Audi tablet**
- **Receive destinations from Audi tablet**
- **Display home screen on Audi tablet**
- **Allow Rear Seat Entertainment access to speakers**

Block RSE with parental control button

When this function is switched on and parental control is activated ⇨ *page 53*, the ability to operate the Audi tablet by touch is blocked. You can continue to receive content on the Audi tablet and adjust the volume using the buttons on the Audi tablet. The MMI is used for control.

Block RSE access to media sources

When this function is switched on, access to the MMI media sources (such as the radio or DVD drive) is blocked. Access to files from the internal Audi tablet flash drive is unrestricted.

Troubleshooting

Applies to: vehicles with Audi tablet

You can perform a device test when the Audi tablet functionality is limited.

▸ Select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **Device test**.
▸ Follow the instructions in the display.

Technical data

Applies to: vehicles with Audi tablet

Audi tablet	
Display	LCD (IPS), 10.1" screen, 1920 x 1200 pixels
Internal flash drive	Approximately 25 GB
Camera	1080p
Wi-Fi	Wi-Fi 802.11 a/b/g/n
Bluetooth	Bluetooth 4.0
Earphone connection	3.5 mm jack port
Memory card reader	Memory cards with a capacity of up to 128 GB: microSD, microSDHC, microSDXC

Audi tablet	
USB	Micro-USB connection (USB 2.0)
Battery	Lithium polymer (6800 mAh)
Locating	GPS, digital compass
Dimensions (height x width x depth)	7.32 in x 10.04 in x 0.66 in (186 mm x 255 mm x 16 mm)
Weight	1.83 lbs (830 g)

Tips

To ensure that data transfers correctly to the internal Audi tablet memory, use a USB cable no longer than 23.6 in (60 cm).

Head-up display

Description

Applies to: vehicles with head-up display

The head-up display projects certain warnings or selected information from the assist systems* or navigation system* on the windshield. The display appears within the driver's field of vision.

Switching on and off

The button is located in the function bar on the lower display ⇨ *page 20*.

- ▸ To switch the head-up display on or off, press and hold the button.

Settings in the Infotainment system

- ▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **Display & brightness** > **Head-up display**, or
- ▸ Press the button.

Possible settings:

– **Picture rotation**
– **Brightness**

Display height

You can adjust the height of the display. Sit in the correct seating position ⇨ *page 72* and adjust the head-up display.

Display content

You can set which information should be displayed. The display of certain information and some of the red indicator lights cannot be hidden.

Note

To reduce the risk of scratches on the glass covering the head-up display, do not place any objects in the projection opening.

Tips

– Sunglasses with polarization filters and unfavorable lighting conditions can impair visibility of the display.
– An optimum display depends on the seat position and the height adjustment of the head-up display.
– A special windshield is needed for the head-up display function.
– For information on cleaning, see ⇨ *table Interior cleaning on page 291*.
– Specific settings are stored automatically in the active personal profile.

Voice recognition system

General information

Applies to: vehicles with voice recognition system

You can operate many functions in the vehicle easily using voice commands.

Using the voice recognition system optimally

- ▸ Speak clearly and distinctly at a normal volume. Speak louder when driving faster.
- ▸ Emphasize the words in the commands evenly and do not leave long pauses.
- ▸ Close the doors, the windows, and the sunroof* to reduce background noise. Make sure that passengers are not speaking when you are giving a voice command.
- ▸ Do not direct the vents toward the hands-free microphone, which is in the roof headliner near the front interior lights.
- ▸ Only the driver should speak to the system, because the handsfree microphone is aimed toward this seating position.

WARNING

- – Direct your full attention to driving. As the driver, you have complete responsibility for safety in traffic. Only use the functions in such a way that you always maintain complete control over your vehicle in all traffic situations.
- – Do not use the voice recognition system in emergencies because your voice may change in stressful situations. The system may take longer to dial the number or may not be able to dial it at all. Dial the emergency number manually.

Tips

There are no voice guidance* prompts when a dialog is active.

Operating

Applies to: vehicles with voice recognition system



Fig. 29 Upper display: voice recognition system diagram

Switching the voice recognition system on or off

Requirement: the ignition and the MMI must be switched on. A system language supported by the voice recognition system must be set. There must be no phone calls in progress and the parking aid must not be active.

- ▸ To switch the voice recognition system on, briefly press the button on the multifunction steering wheel, or depending on the context, press in the upper display.
- ▸ To switch the voice recognition system off, press and hold the button on the multifunction steering wheel, or say or press **Cancel** (1).

Using the voice recognition system

In the voice recognition system menu, possible commands or help settings are displayed for the current dialog (3).

- ▸ Say the desired command after the signal tone.
- ▸ To receive additional help for the current dialog, say or press **Help** (2).
- ▸ To pause voice recognition, say or press **Pause** (4). To reactivate voice recognition, press (4) again or briefly press the button on the multifunction steering wheel.
- ▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **General** > **Speech dialog system** > **Allow commands during voice output**. If the function is switched on, you can simply say a new command during a prompt.

Activating the online recognizer

Applies to: vehicles with online recognizer

You can activate the online recognizer for additional functions and to improve the results of ▶

voice recognition. A supported menu language must be selected. When there is an active Internet connection, the spoken command is evaluated in the vehicle and online.

- ▸ When you switch on the voice recognition system for the first time, a menu for the online recognizer opens. Or:
- ▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **General** > **Speech dialog system** > **Consent to speech dialog system online recognizer**.
- ▸ Read the licensing agreements and accept them.

Note

Read the information about Audi connect, and be sure to note the connectivity costs section ⇨ *in Using a Wi-Fi hotspot on page 199*.

Tips

AUDI AG simply provides access to control your mobile device with voice operation and does not assume any responsibility for the content and commands within the external voice control.

External voice operation

Applies to: vehicles with external speech dialog system

You can access and control the voice operation on a connected mobile device through your vehicle.

Switching external voice operation on or off

Requirement: the ignition and the MMI must be switched on. A cell phone must be connected to the MMI with the **Handsfree** profile ⇨ *page 180*. The mobile device being connected must have voice control that can be controlled externally. There must be no phone calls in progress and the parking aid must not be active.

- ▸ To switch on the external voice operation, press and hold the button longer on the multifunction steering wheel.
- ▸ To switch off the external voice operation, press and hold the button longer on the multifunction steering wheel or press **Cancel**.

Using external voice operation

- ▸ Say the desired command after the signal tone.
- ▸ To reactivate voice recognition when it is paused, press the button briefly on the multifunction steering wheel or press **Resume**.

Global functions

Additional function buttons

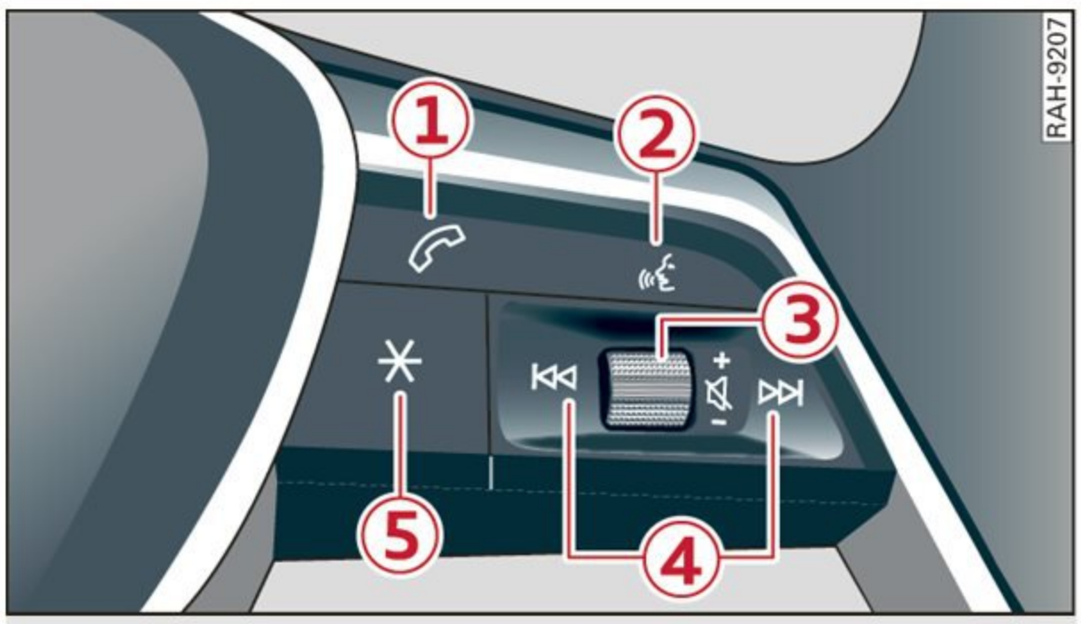


Fig. 30 Right side of the multifunction steering wheel



Fig. 31 MMI On/Off knob with joystick function

Adjusting the volume

You can adjust the volume of an audio source or a system message (for example, from the voice recognition system) when the sound is playing.

- ▸ To increase or decrease the volume, turn the right thumbwheel ③ ⇨ *fig. 30* upward or downward, or turn the On/Off knob ③ ⇨ *fig. 31* to the right or left.
- ▸ To mute, push the right thumbwheel or the On/Off knob.

Selecting the previous/next track or station

- ▸ Press the |◁◁ / ▷▷| button ④ or briefly press the On/Off knob to the left or right.

Fast forward/rewind

- ▸ Press and hold the |◁◁ / ▷▷| button ④, or press the On/Off knob to the left or right until the desired playback position is reached.

Programmable steering wheel button

You can use the ✳ programmable button ⑤ to quickly access various functions.

- ▸ To bring up the function that is currently set, press the ✳ button.
- ▸ To perform the function that is currently set, press and hold the ✳ button, or
- ▸ Applies to MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Settings & Service** > **Steering wheel button assignment**.
- ▸ Select and confirm the desired function.

Switching the voice recognition system on or off

button ②, see ⇨ *page 37*.

Using the telephone functions

button ①, see ⇨ *page 184*.

WARNING

Adjust the volume of the audio system so that signals from outside the vehicle, such as police and fire sirens, can be heard easily at all times.

Personalization

User

Personal profiles

You can store your customized settings in a personal profile. Specific settings are stored automatically in the personal profile that is currently active.

The profile that is used is in turn assigned to the vehicle key, the Audi connect key*, or the Audi connect key card* that is in use at the time. The profile that was last active with the key is loaded when the vehicle is unlocked.

▸ Applies to MMI: Select on the home screen: **USER**.

Use various profiles to link them to specific vehicle settings.

– Create your customized profile. This is helpful in some situations, for example if multiple people share the vehicle and each person would like to use his or her individual vehicle settings.
– **Guest**: the guest profile can be used to adjust settings in the vehicle without changing the other profiles.

Depending on the equipment, certain settings for the following systems may be stored:

– Climate control system
– Central locking system
– Interior/exterior lighting*
– Parking system* ⇨ *page 171*
– Driver assistance* ⇨ *page 146*
– Driving information* ⇨ *page 141*
– Seats
– Mirror
– Steering wheel
– MMI
– Head-up display*
– Instrument cluster

Active profile

– **Rename**: you can rename your profile so that you can recognize by name which settings are stored.
– **Copy**: you can copy your profile. Select the location where the profile will be copied or which profile should be overwritten. The settings will be applied.
– **Reset**: you can reset your active profile to the factory default settings.
– **Reload***: Requirement: the vehicle must be stationary and the ignition must be switched on. You can reload your profile, for example if the seat, mirror, and steering wheel settings could not be applied when changing profiles.

Profile selection

If you would like to change the profile, select another profile from the list.

Switching personal profiles off

– Applies to MMI: Select on the home screen: **USER** > ⚙ > **Personal profiles**.

The personal profiles are switched on at the factory. If you do not wish to use the personal profiles, you can switch the function off.

Tips

– The guest profile cannot be renamed.
– When changing profiles, the new profile settings are loaded in the vehicle.
– You can reset all personal profiles to the factory default settings.

myAudi

Requirement: you must have successfully registered at www.audiusa.com/myaudi.

Logging in from the vehicle

Applies to: MMI

▸ Select on the home screen: **USER** > **myAudi login**.
▸ Log in to myAudi in the vehicle using your e-mail address and password.

You can select if and when an automatic login to myAudi in the vehicle should occur.

– **Personal profile**: Requirement: the personal profile must be turned on and you must not be logged in with the guest profile. Log in to ▶

myAudi in the vehicle. Follow the system instructions and save your desired personal profile. You will then always be logged in automatically when your personal profile is active.

– **Bluetooth device 1/Bluetooth device 2***: Requirement: after a Bluetooth device has been paired with the MMI, you must be logged in to myAudi in the vehicle. Follow the system instructions and save the desired Bluetooth device. You will be automatically logged in when your Bluetooth device is connected to the MMI, and automatically logged out when the Bluetooth connection to your mobile device is disconnected.

To transfer existing destinations from the MMI to your myAudi account one time, confirm the system prompts with **Yes**.

Tips

– For some Audi connect Infotainment services, you may also have to enter your myAudi access information when accessing services in the MMI.
– Regardless of the key user and additional users, you can only connect one myAudi account to your vehicle.

User management

For some Audi connect vehicle control services*, the vehicle owner must be set up as the key user.

Set key user

Requirement: a key user must not be set yet.

► To set a key user for the vehicle, you will need a myAudi account. Register at www.audiusa.com/myaudi.
► Add your vehicle at my.audi.com and then verify your myAudi account directly.
► You can also verify your myAudi account later. Log in at www.audiusa.com/myaudi with your access information and verify your myAudi account using the verification process that is provided.
► Applies to MMI: Select on the home screen: **USER** > **User management** > **(Key user)** > **Set key user**.
► Applies to: MMI: Follow the system instructions and enter the 10-digit vehicle code ⇨ *page 46*. The key user is set. You have the rights to use the Audi connect vehicle control services* ⇨ *page 200* as well as the ability to manage other vehicle functions and any other users.

Manage additional users

You can grant authorization for additional users to use Audi connect vehicle control services* at www.audiusa.com/myaudi.

Remove key user

If you remove the key user, all other users, their authorizations, and all Audi connect keys* will be deleted. The Audi connect vehicle control services* can no longer be used.

Requirement: a key user must be set. The vehicle was not started with an Audi connect key* or an Audi connect key card*.

► Applies to MMI: Select on the home screen: **USER** > **User management** > **(Key user)** > **Remove key user**.

Tips

– Depending on the vehicle equipment, you may be able to reset specific functions to the factory default settings.
– Logging in to myAudi in the vehicle is not required to use Audi connect vehicle control services*.
– If you sell your vehicle, remove the key user and reset all settings to the factory settings.
– Store the vehicle code in a secure place. It may be necessary to re-enter the vehicle code.
– Pay attention to upper- and lower-case letters when entering the vehicle code.
– If you do not have the 10-digit vehicle code, contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

4N0012721BB

Opening and closing

Central locking

General information

WARNING

– If you leave the vehicle, switch the ignition off and take the key with you. This applies particularly when children remain in the vehicle. Otherwise, children could start the vehicle or operate electrical equipment (such as power windows), which increases the risk of an accident.
– Applies to: vehicles with anti-theft alarm system: When the vehicle is locked from the outside, no one - especially children - should remain in the vehicle, because the windows can no longer be opened from the inside ⇨ *page 45, Anti-theft alarm system*. Locked doors make it more difficult for emergency workers to enter the vehicle, which puts lives at risk.

Description

All doors and the luggage compartment lid can be centrally unlocked and locked at once. You can select in the MMI if the entire vehicle or only the driver's door should unlock when unlocking the vehicle ⇨ *page 43*. The turn signals flash twice when you unlock the vehicle and flash once when you lock the vehicle. If they do not flash when locking, then one of the doors, the luggage compartment lid, or the hood is not closed completely.

You have the following options for centrally unlocking or locking your vehicle:

– Vehicle key ⇨ *page 47*
– Sensors* in the door handles ⇨ *page 47*
– Lock cylinder on the driver's door ⇨ *page 45*
– Central locking switch inside ⇨ *page 44*
– Audi connect key on your mobile device ⇨ *page 48*
– Audi connect key card ⇨ *page 49*.

Key / vehicle key

When the “key” is mentioned, it can mean the remote control or convenience key*, a mobile device with the Audi connect key*, or the activated Audi connect key card*.

The term “vehicle key” refers to the remote control key or convenience key*. The convenience key* is a remote control key with special functions ⇨ *page 47* and ⇨ *page 109*.

Power closing*

When closing a door or the luggage compartment lid, you only have to let it fall lightly into the latch. It then closes automatically ⇨ ⚠.

Automatic locking

If you unlock the vehicle but then do not open any of the doors, the luggage compartment, or the hood within a short period time, the vehicle locks again automatically. This feature prevents the vehicle from being accidentally left unlocked for a long period of time.

Automatic locking (Auto Lock)

The Auto Lock function locks all doors and the luggage compartment lid once the speed has exceeded approximately 9 mph (15 km/h).

The vehicle will unlock again if the unlock function in the central locking switch is pressed, one of the door handles is pulled, the “P” gear is engaged, or the ignition is switched off.

In the event of a crash with airbag deployment, the doors will also automatically unlock to allow access to the vehicle.

Unintentionally locking yourself out

Only lock your vehicle when all of the doors and the luggage compartment lid are closed and there is no key in the vehicle. This reduces the risk of locking yourself out accidentally.

The following features help to reduce the risk of locking your vehicle key in the vehicle:

– If the driver's door is open, the vehicle cannot be locked by pressing the 🔒 button on the remote control key or by touching the locking sensor* on a door. ▶

– If the most recently used convenience key* is inside the luggage compartment, the luggage compartment lid will automatically open again after closing it.
– If the convenience key* that was last used is detected inside the vehicle, then the vehicle cannot be locked from the outside ⇨ (!).

An Audi connect key* or an Audi connect key card is not detected in the vehicle.

WARNING

Follow the safety precautions ⇨ *page 42*.

WARNING

Applies to: vehicles with power closing

– To reduce the risk of injury, make sure that the area where the door is closing is clear during the closing process.
– The closing process can be stopped at any time by pulling on the outer or inner door handle.

Note

Applies to: vehicles with convenience key

– If the convenience key that was last used is detected inside the passenger compartment, then the vehicle cannot be locked from the outside **using the sensor**. Take the convenience key with you and lock the vehicle again. Otherwise, the vehicle will not be protected against unauthorized access.
– If the convenience key that was last used is detected inside the passenger compartment, then the vehicle cannot be locked from the outside **using the vehicle key**. The turn signals will flash several times to indicate this. If you do not open the vehicle within a short time to remove the vehicle key, then the vehicle will lock automatically. This prevents the vehicle from being left unlocked for long periods of time. The key will then be locked inside the vehicle.

Tips

– Do not leave valuables unattended in the vehicle. A locked vehicle is not a safe!
– The LED in the driver's door rail blinks when you lock the vehicle. If the LED lights up for approximately 30 seconds after locking, there is a malfunction in the central locking system. Have the problem corrected by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Setting the central locking system

You can adjust the central locking system to your preferences. The settings depend on the vehicle equipment.

▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Settings & Service** > **Central locking**.

Door unlocking

– If you select **All**, all doors and the luggage compartment lid will be unlocked when unlocking.
– If you select **Driver's door**, only the driver's door will be unlocked. To unlock all doors and the luggage compartment lid, press the button on the vehicle key twice. In vehicles with a convenience key*, only the driver's door will unlock when you pull the driver's door handle. If you pull another door handle, the entire vehicle will be unlocked.

The entire vehicle will always be locked when you press the button.

Long press to open windows

You can select if all windows and the panoramic glass roof* should open using the vehicle key ⇨ *page 54, Convenience opening and closing*. If you press and hold the button on the vehicle key, all of the windows and the panoramic glass roof* will close.

Disable rear lid handle

You can select if the luggage compartment lid can open with the handle. If you activate this function, the luggage compartment lid can only be opened with the or button on the vehicle key or in the driver's door. In vehicles with a convenience key*, you can still open the luggage compartment lid using the handle if an ▶

authorized convenience key is detected ⇨ *page 50*.

Fold mirrors

You can select if the exterior mirrors automatically fold in when locking.

Tone when locking[1)]

You can select if an audio signal sounds when locking the vehicle.

Open with convenience key

Applies to: vehicles with convenience key

You can deactivate the feature for unlocking using the sensor. The function for locking via the sensor will still be enabled ⇨ *page 47*.

Tips

The settings are automatically stored and assigned to the active personal profile.

Central locking switch



Fig. 32 Driver's door: central locking switch

► To lock or unlock the vehicle, press the 🔒 or 🔓 button ⇨ ⚠.

When locking the vehicle with the central locking switch, the following applies:

– The doors and the luggage compartment lid cannot be opened from the outside for security reasons, such as to prevent unauthorized opening while stopped at a light.
– The LED in the central locking switch turns on when all doors are closed and locked.
– You can open the doors individually from the inside by pulling the door handle one time. To open the rear doors individually, you must pull the door handle twice.
– In the event of a crash with airbag deployment, the doors unlock automatically to allow access to the vehicle.

WARNING

– Follow the safety precautions ⇨ *page 42*.
– The central locking button works when the ignition is switched off.
– The central locking switch is inoperative when the vehicle is locked from the outside.

Messages

Driver's door: malfunction! Shift to P before leaving vehicle. See owner's manual

There is a malfunction in the driver's door. Secure the vehicle before exiting by selecting the “P” selector lever position. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Central locking: malfunction! See owner's manual

There is a central locking malfunction. If the doors cannot lock, you can emergency lock the doors ⇨ *page 45*. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Door lock: opening while driving is only possible with the emergency release. See owner's manual

It is not possible to power unlock the doors at speeds above approximately 9 mph (15 km/h). If you must open doors at higher speeds in cases of emergency, you can manually unlock the door by forcefully pulling the door handle beyond its noticeable resistance two times. Then press the door handle back into its original position, if necessary.

1) This function is not available in all countries.

Mechanically unlocking and locking the doors

If the central locking fails, you must unlock or lock the doors separately.

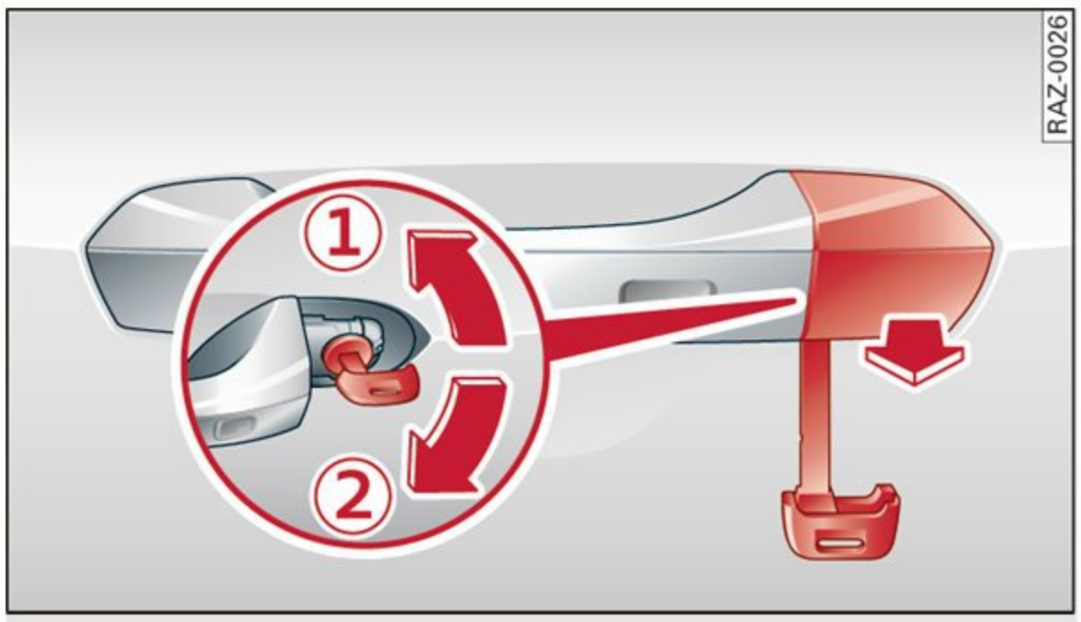


Fig. 33 Driver's door: door lock cylinder



Fig. 34 Door: mechanically locking

Unlocking or locking the driver's door with the mechanical key

- ▸ Remove the mechanical key ⇨ *page 46*.
- ▸ Insert the mechanical key into the slot under the door handle and pry the cap off ⇨ *fig. 33*.
- ▸ To unlock the driver's door, turn the key to the open position in the direction of arrow ①.
- ▸ Pull firmly on the door handle to open the driver's door. The door handle swings out slightly farther than normal.
- ▸ To lock the driver's door, select the "P" position and turn the key once to the close position ②⇨ ⚠.

Locking the front passenger's door and rear doors using the mechanical key

The mechanical lock is located on the edge of the doors. It is only visible when the door is open.

- ▸ Remove the mechanical key ⇨ *page 46*.
- ▸ Remove the cap from the opening ⇨ *fig. 34*.
- ▸ Insert the mechanical key into the slot on the inside and turn it all the way to the left (when locking the right door), or to the right (when locking the left door).
- ▸ Install the cap in the opening and close the door.

Once the doors are closed, it is no longer possible to open them from the outside. The front doors can be opened from the inside by pulling the door handle one time. The rear doors can be unlocked from the inside by pulling the door handle one time and then opened by pulling the door handle again. If the vehicle is without power, the doors can be unlocked from the inside by first pulling the door handle beyond its noticeable resistance. The doors can then can be opened by pulling the handle again. Then press the door handle back into its original position, if necessary. If the child safety lock in one of the rear doors is activated, you must first pull the door handle from the inside. Then you can open the door from the outside.

⚠ WARNING

Follow the safety precautions ⇨ *page 42*.

Anti-theft alarm system

Applies to: vehicles with anti-theft alarm system

If the anti-theft alarm system detects a vehicle break-in, audio and visual warning signals are triggered. The anti-theft alarm system is switched on or off when locking or unlocking your vehicle. If the alarm is triggered, it will shut off automatically after a certain amount of time.

Switching the alarm off manually

- ▸ To switch the alarm off, press the button on the vehicle key or switch the ignition on.

Break-in security feature

The alarm will sound if there is a break-in at the doors, hood, and/or luggage compartment lid.

⚠ WARNING

No one, especially children, should stay in the vehicle when it is locked from the outside, ▶

because the windows can no longer be opened from the inside. Locked doors make it more difficult for emergency workers to enter the vehicle, which puts lives at risk.

Keys

Key set



Fig. 35 Your vehicle key set

① Vehicle key

You can unlock and lock your vehicle with the vehicle key.

② Mechanical key and release button for mechanical key

A mechanical key is integrated in the vehicle key. To remove it, press the release button and remove the mechanical key.

Using the mechanical key, you can:

– Lock/unlock the glove compartment.
– Manually unlocking and locking the doors ⇨ *page 45*.
– Unlock the luggage compartment lid using the emergency release ⇨ *page 52*.

③ Key fob with vehicle code

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect vehicle control

Open the key tag and scratch to reveal the vehicle code. You can unlock the Audi connect vehicle control services* for your vehicle with this vehicle code. For additional information, see ⇨ *page 200*. If a key fob is lost, contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

④ PANIC button

In an emergency, you can press the PANIC button to trigger the alarm for the anti-theft alarm system. The vehicle horn and emergency flashers will turn on if you trigger the alarm.

– To trigger the alarm, press the PANIC button ④ ⇨ *fig. 35*.
– To turn the alarm off, press the red PANIC button again.

Audi connect key card

Applies to: Audi connect key

The Audi connect key card can perform some of the same functions as the vehicle key. It is shaped like a credit card ⇨ *page 49*.

Lost key/replacing a key

If a vehicle key is lost, contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. Have this vehicle key deactivated. It is important to bring all keys with you.

Applies to: Audi connect key: If a mobile device with an Audi connect key is lost, the lost mobile device must be deactivated ⇨ *page 48*. If you cannot access the myAudi app immediately, you can deactivate any of the assigned Audi connect keys in the MMI ⇨ *page 49, Deactivating or activating the Audi connect key*. If an Audi connect key card is lost, you can deactivate it at any time by switching the ignition on with the vehicle key or the Audi connect key*. To replace an Audi connect key card, contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

If a key is lost, you should report it to your insurance company.

Electronic immobilizer

The immobilizer prevents unauthorized use of the vehicle.

In some cases, it may not be possible to start the vehicle if there is a vehicle key from a different vehicle manufacturer on the key chain.

Data in the vehicle key

When driving, service and maintenance-relevant data is continuously stored in your vehicle key. An ▶

authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility can read out this data and tell you about the work your vehicle needs.

WARNING

Follow the safety precautions ⇨ *page 42*.

Note

Protect the key against high temperatures and direct sunlight.

For the sake of the environment

Do not dispose of vehicle keys in household trash. They contain materials that can be recycled. Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for more information.

Tips

– The vehicle key function can be temporarily disrupted by interference from transmitters near the vehicle working in the same frequency range (such as a mobile device or radio equipment). Always check if your vehicle is locked.
– Applies to: MMI: You can view the number of keys programmed to the vehicle by selecting on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Settings & Service** > **Vehicle info**.
– Applies to: Audi tablet: You can view the number of keys programmed to the vehicle by selecting on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Settings**.
– For an explanation on conformity with the FCC regulations in the United States and the Industry Canada regulations, see ⇨ *page 317*.

Vehicle key

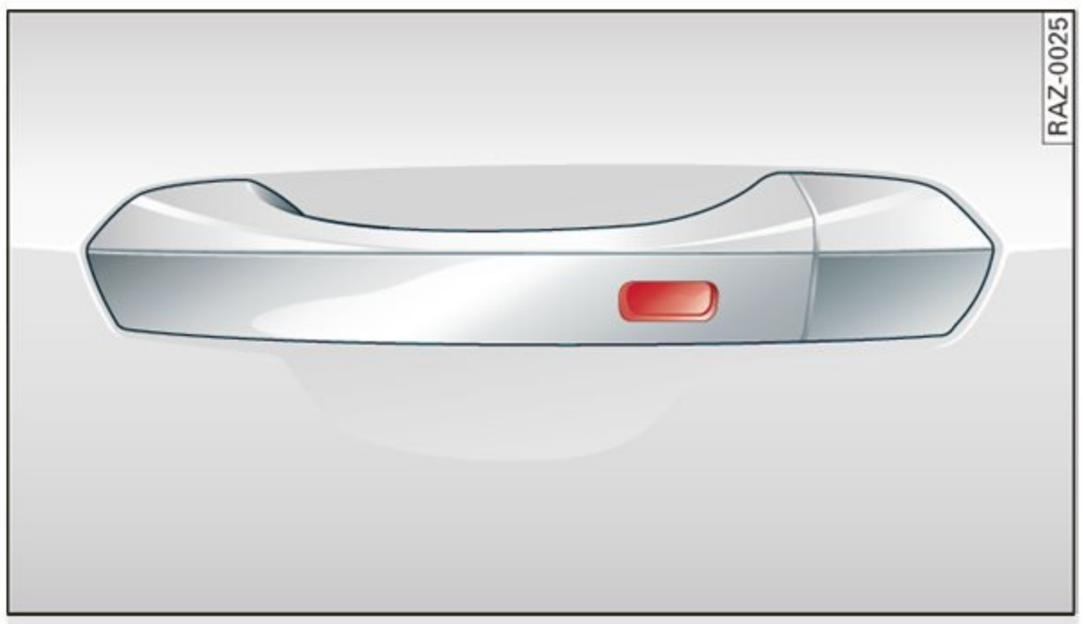


Fig. 36 Door handle: sensor for locking

You can unlock and lock your vehicle using either the buttons on the vehicle key or the sensors* in the door handles, or you can unlock your vehicle using the sensors in the luggage compartment lid handle. The settings in the MMI specify which doors will unlock ⇨ *page 43*.

The symbol for the luggage compartment lid may differ depending on the vehicle key. The or 2x symbol may be on the button.

Unlocking or locking using the vehicle key buttons

- ▸ To unlock the vehicle, press the button ⇨ *page 46, fig. 35*.
- ▸ To lock the vehicle, press the button **once**.
- ▸ To unlock only the luggage compartment lid, press the or 2x button briefly.
- ▸ To open the luggage compartment lid, press and hold the button for at least one second or press the 2x button twice ⇨ *in General information on page 50*.
- ▸ To close [1] or lock the luggage compartment lid, press and hold the button for at least one second or press the 2x button twice ⇨ *in General information on page 50*.

Unlocking or locking using the sensors

Applies to: vehicles with convenience key

- ▸ To unlock a door or the luggage compartment lid, grasp the door handle or luggage compartment lid handle.
- ▸ To lock the vehicle, close the doors and touch the outer sensor on the door handle **once** ▶

1) The closing function applies to vehicles that also have automatic luggage compartment lid operation.

⇨ *fig. 36*. Do not grasp the door handle while locking the vehicle, or else the vehicle will not lock. The door cannot be opened for a brief period directly after locking it. This way you have the opportunity to check if the doors locked correctly.

WARNING

Follow the safety precautions ⇨ *page 42*.

Tips

– Only use the vehicle key when you can see the vehicle.
– The vehicle can only be locked when the "P" selector lever position is engaged.

Tips

Applies to: vehicles with convenience key

– When unlocking or locking the vehicle, the convenience key cannot be more than approximately 4 feet (1.5 m) away from the door handle or luggage compartment.
– Unlocking with the convenience key (keyless access) can be deactivated in the MMI system ⇨ *page 43*.
– To prevent the vehicle battery from discharging, the energy management gradually switches off convenience functions that are not needed. You then may no longer be able to unlock your vehicle with the sensors.

LED and battery in the vehicle key



Fig. 37 Vehicle key: removing the battery holder

LED in the vehicle key

The LED ① indicates the vehicle key function.

- If you press a button briefly, the LED blinks once.
- If you press and hold a button (convenience opening/closing), the LED blinks several times.
- If the LED does not blink, the vehicle key battery is drained. Replace the battery in the vehicle key.

Replacing the vehicle key battery

- Remove the mechanical key ⇨ *page 46* and insert it at an angle into the opening ⇨ *fig. 37*.
- Push the mechanical key in the opening in the direction of the arrow to operate the release button on the inside ②. To reduce the risk of damage, do not try to pry off the cover.
- Remove the cover from the battery tray.
- Insert the new battery with the “+” symbol facing up.
- Close the battery tray with the cover.
- Insert the mechanical key.

For the sake of the environment

Discharged batteries must be disposed of using methods that will not harm the environment. Do not dispose of them in household trash.

Tips

Replacement batteries for the vehicle key must meet the same specifications as the original battery.

Audi connect key

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect key

You can open, close, and start your vehicle with your mobile device.

Applies to: all users: Requirement: your mobile device must be compatible (see www.audi.com/bluetooth), you must be registered at www.audiusa.com/myaudi, the myAudi app must be installed on your device, and the service must be activated in the MMI. A key user must be set ⇨ *page 41*. ▶

Assigning an Audi connect key

Applies to: key user

- ► Assign a key for yourself or another user at my.audi.com or in the myAudi app.
- ► Applies to: MMI: Retrieve the security code in your vehicle. Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Settings & Service** > **Audi connect key** > **Retrieve security code**. A 6-digit code is displayed.
- ► Enter the security code at my.audi.com or in the myAudi app. You will receive your key or the user being invited will receive an invitation to install the key.

Accepting an Audi connect key

Applies to: invited users

- ► Accept the invitation in the myAudi app.

Unlocking and locking the vehicle

- ► Hold the mobile device centered on the driver's door handle to unlock or lock the vehicle.

Starting the vehicle

To start the vehicle with the Audi connect key, see ⇨ *page 109*.

Deactivating or activating the Audi connect key

You can activate or deactivate the function in the vehicle. If you deactivate the function, you can no longer use any of the assigned Audi connect keys and the Audi connect key card. Once you have reactivated the function, all assigned Audi connect keys and the Audi connect key card can be used again.

- ► Use your vehicle key to switch the vehicle ignition on.
- ► Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Settings & Service** > **Audi connect key**.
- ► Activate or deactivate the **Audi connect key**.

Tips

- – You can manage the Audi connect key at my.audi.com or in the myAudi app.
- – As the main user, you can remove an Audi connect key already assigned and assign it to another user at any time.
- – As an invited user, you can also remove an existing Audi connect key.
- – If the mobile device battery is drained and has not been charged for several days, the Audi connect key may malfunction.
- – If you sell your vehicle, remove the key user ⇨ *page 41* and reset all settings to the factory settings ⇨ *page 249*.

Audi connect key card

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect key

You can open, close, and start your vehicle with your Audi connect key card.

Therefore, you must not hand off your mobile device, for example when servicing the vehicle or in cases of emergency. The key card must be activated before use.

Requirement: you must have an Audi connect key ⇨ *page 48*.

Deactivating or activating the Audi connect key card

- ► Switch the ignition on using the Audi connect key ⇨ *page 109*.
- ► Remove your mobile device from the Audi phone box.
- ► Place the key card in the Audi phone box. Follow the directions in the MMI.

The key card is automatically deactivated again as soon as the ignition is switched on with an Audi connect key or a vehicle key. If the key card is deactivated, you can store it in the vehicle.

You can retrieve your key card status in the MMI ⇨ *page 50*.

Unlocking and locking the vehicle

- ► To open or close the vehicle, hold the key card centered on the driver's door handle.

Starting the vehicle

To start the vehicle with the Audi connect key card, see ⇨ *page 109*.

For the sake of the environment

Do not dispose of key cards in household trash. They contain materials that can be ▶

recycled. Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for more information.

Checking the status

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect key

You can display the status of the assigned Audi connect key and the Audi connect key card in the vehicle.

► Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Settings & Service** > **Audi connect key** > **Audi connect key**.

Luggage compartment lid

General information

WARNING

– Applies to: vehicles with anti-theft alarm system: When the vehicle is locked from the outside, no one - especially children - should remain in the vehicle, because the windows can no longer be opened from the inside ⇨ *page 45*. Locked doors make it more difficult for emergency workers to enter the vehicle, which puts lives at risk.
– Always close and lock the luggage compartment lid and the doors when the vehicle is not in use. Otherwise someone such as a child could enter the vehicle through the luggage compartment and become locked inside it. To reduce the risk of injury, do not allow children to play in or around the vehicle.
– To reduce the risk of injuries by pinching, make sure that no one is in the operating area of the luggage compartment lid, including the hinge areas and the upper and lower edge of the luggage compartment lid.
– After closing the luggage compartment lid, make sure that it is latched. The luggage compartment lid could open suddenly while driving, which would increase the risk of an accident.
– Never drive with the luggage compartment lid ajar or open, because poisonous gases can enter the vehicle interior and create the risk of asphyxiation.
– Applies to: vehicles with power-operated or sensor-controlled luggage compartment lid: If there is a luggage rack (such as a bicycle rack) on the luggage compartment lid, the luggage compartment lid may not open completely, or it may close by itself if open due to the extra weight. Therefore, the open luggage compartment lid must be given additional support or the cargo must first be removed from the luggage rack.
– Applies to: vehicles with power-operated or sensor-controlled luggage compartment lid: Pay careful attention when closing the luggage compartment lid. Otherwise, you could cause serious injury to yourself or others despite the pinch protection.

Tips

– When the vehicle is locked, the luggage compartment lid can be unlocked separately by pressing the or 2x button on the vehicle key. The luggage compartment lid locks automatically when it is closed again.
– The ability to open the luggage compartment lid using the handle can be deactivated or activated in the MMI ⇨ *page 43*.
– The luggage compartment can be opened from the inside in an emergency ⇨ *page 53*.

Opening and closing the luggage compartment lid



Fig. 38 Driver's door: opening the luggage compartment lid

Opening the luggage compartment lid

- ▸ When the ignition is switched off, press and hold the button on the vehicle key for at least one second or press the 2x button twice. Or
- ▸ Engage the “P” selector lever position and pull the button in the driver's door. Or
- ▸ Applies to: vehicles without convenience key: Unlock the vehicle using the / / 2x button on the vehicle key and press the handle in the luggage compartment lid. Or
- ▸ Applies to: vehicles with convenience key: Press the handle in the luggage compartment lid. The vehicle key cannot be more than approximately 4 feet (1.5 m) away from the luggage compartment.

Closing the luggage compartment lid

- ▸ Applies to: vehicles without automatic luggage compartment lid: Use the inside grip to pull the luggage compartment lid down and allow it to drop gently to close it. Or
- ▸ Applies to: vehicles with automatic luggage compartment lid: Note ⇨ *page 51*.

WARNING

Follow the safety precautions ⇨ *page 50*.

Automatic luggage compartment lid

Applies to: vehicles with automatic luggage compartment lid

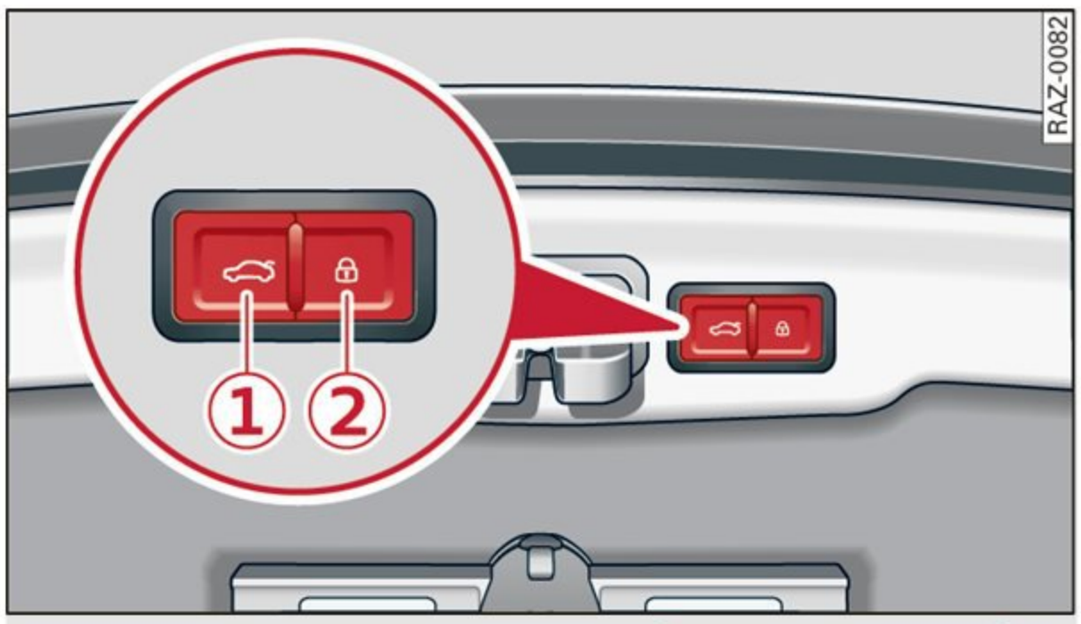


Fig. 39 Luggage compartment lid: ① closing button*, ② lock button* (vehicles with convenience key*)

Opening the luggage compartment lid

- ▸ When the ignition is switched off, press and hold the button ⇨ *page 46, fig. 35* on the vehicle key for at least one second or press the 2x button twice. Or
- ▸ Engage the "P" selector lever position and pull the button* in the driver's door. Or
- ▸ Applies to: vehicles with convenience key: Press the handle in the luggage compartment lid. The vehicle key cannot be more than approximately 4 feet (1.5 m) away from the luggage compartment.

Closing the luggage compartment lid

- ▸ Press the button in the luggage compartment lid. Or
- ▸ Press the handle in the luggage compartment lid. Or
- ▸ Press the luggage compartment lid downward slightly. Or
- ▸ When the ignition is switched on, pull the switch in the driver's door ⇨ *page 50, fig. 38* until the luggage compartment lid is closed. Or
- ▸ Applies to: vehicles with convenience key: Press and hold the or 2x button on the vehicle key while the ignition is switched off until the luggage compartment lid closes. Make sure there is enough distance (maximum of approximately 9 feet (3 m)) between you and the luggage compartment lid. Or
- ▸ Applies to: vehicles with convenience key: While the ignition is switched off, press the / * button in the luggage compartment lid. The vehicle key must not be more than approximately 4 feet (1.5 m) away from the luggage compartment and it must not be inside the vehicle. If you press the * button, then the vehicle will lock.

The automatic opening or closing will stop if:

– You press the button or press the handle in the luggage compartment lid again Or
– If something blocks the luggage compartment lid or makes it difficult for the lid to move.

If you press the button or press the handle in the luggage compartment lid again, the luggage compartment lid will open again.

WARNING

Follow the safety precautions ⇨ *page 50*.

Tips

The luggage compartment lid can be operated manually if the vehicle battery is low. It is necessary to use more force when doing this. Move the lid slowly to reduce the amount of force needed.

Opening and closing the luggage compartment lid with foot motion (kicking movement)

Applies to: vehicles with sensor-controlled luggage compartment lid



Fig. 40 Vehicle rear: foot motion (example)

The luggage compartment lid can be opened and closed automatically [1] ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 50*.

Requirements: you must be carrying your convenience key* with you. The ignition must be switched off. You must be standing at the center behind the luggage compartment lid.

- ▸ Move your foot back and forth under the bumper one time ⇨ *fig. 40*. Do not touch the bumper. Make sure you have firm footing. The luggage compartment lid will open or close [1] once the system detects the movement. The automatic opening or closing will be canceled if you repeat one of the movements described.

WARNING

Follow the safety precautions ⇨ *page 50*.

Tips

The luggage compartment lid will only open or close [1] if you perform the movement as described. This prevents the luggage compartment lid from opening or closing due to similar movements [1], such as when you walk between the rear of the vehicle and your garage door. In some situations, the function may be limited or temporarily unavailable. This may happen if:

- You are standing too close to the bumper or too far away from it
- The luggage compartment lid was closed or opened immediately beforehand
- You park close to a hedge and the branches move back and forth under the vehicle for a long period of time
- You clean your vehicle, for example with a pressure washer or in a car wash
- There is heavy rain
- The bumper is very dirty, for example after driving on salt-covered roads
- There is interference to the vehicle key's radio signal, such as from mobile devices or remote controls

Mechanically unlocking the luggage compartment lid

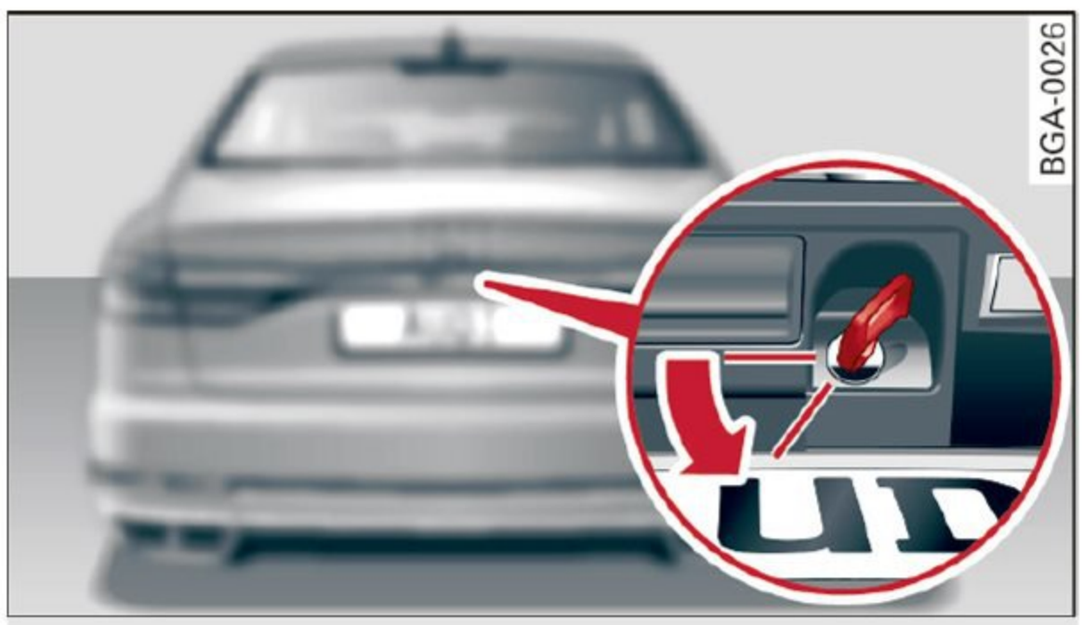


Fig. 41 Luggage compartment lid: mechanical key in lock cylinder

- ▸ Remove the integrated mechanical key ⇨ *page 46*.
- ▸ Insert the mechanical key in the luggage compartment lid lock cylinder. ▶

[1] The closing function applies to vehicles that also have automatic luggage compartment lid operation.

► Turn the key counterclockwise. The luggage compartment lid opens.

WARNING

Follow the safety precautions ⇨ *page 50*.

Opening the luggage compartment lid from the inside in an emergency

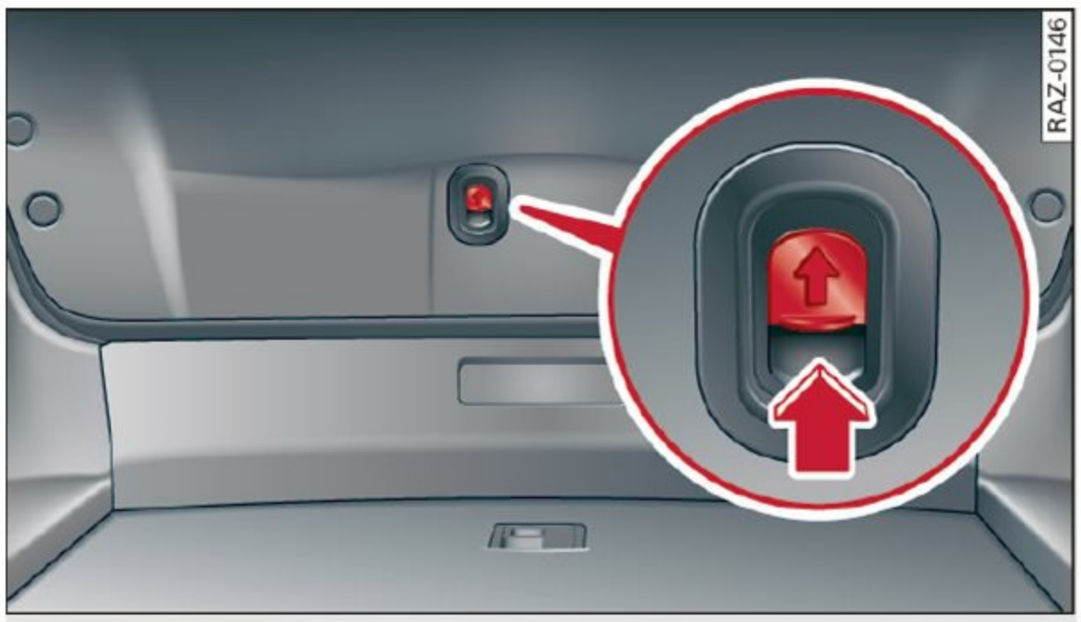


Fig. 42 Inner luggage compartment lid: lever

► Press the lever in the direction of the arrow until the luggage compartment lid opens.

Tips

Never close the luggage compartment lid using the emergency handle.

Child safety lock

The child safety lock prevents the rear doors from being opened from the inside and the rear power windows from being operated.

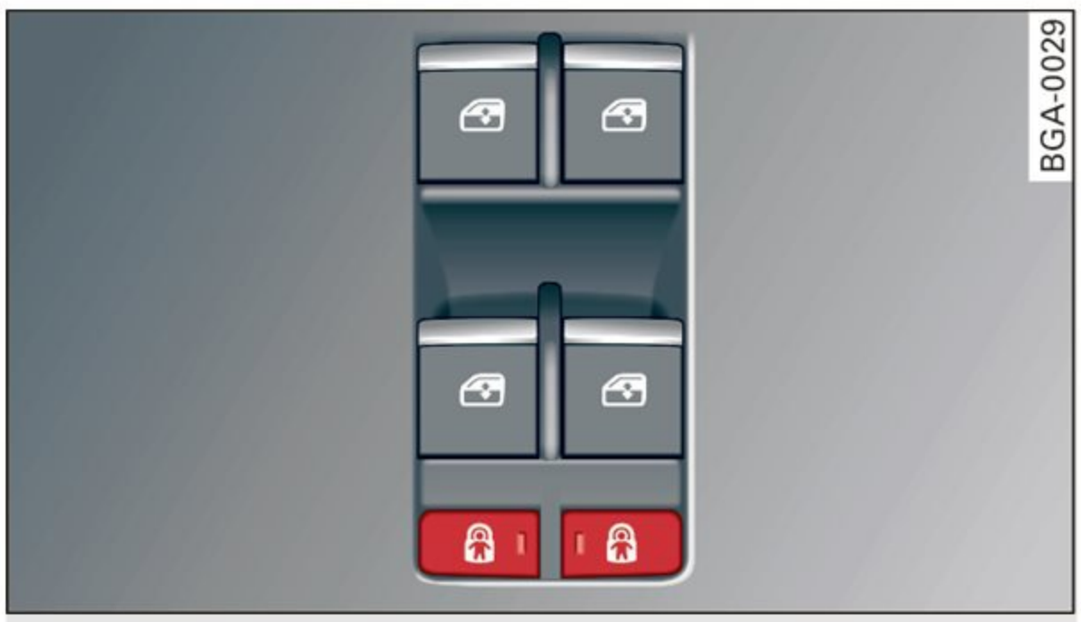


Fig. 43 Driver's door: controls

► To activate or deactivate the child safety lock (rear power windows and interior door handle) for the rear doors, press the left and/or right button in the driver's door ⇨ *fig. 43*. The indicator light in the button turns on/blinks.

► Make sure the child safety lock is working by checking the function on the rear power window switch and door handle.

► Applies to: vehicles with controls for the climate control system in the rear and MMI: To also restrict the operation of the climate control system in the rear, select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **Display & brightness** > **Operation in rear**

When the child safety lock is switched on, the following functions are disabled:

– The rear inner door handles
– The rear power windows
– The control panel* for the climate control system in the rear
– The buttons in the rear for the sunshades*
– The button for the front passenger's seat adjustment* (when the child safety lock is activated for the rear door on the front passenger's side)
– The buttons for the power-adjustable rear seats*
– Rear Seat Remote* ⇨ *page 27*

Message in the instrument cluster display

/ Child safety lock: malfunction! Please contact Service

There is a malfunction in the child safety lock. Press the button again.

If the message stays on, drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction repaired.

WARNING

– Follow the safety precautions ⇨ *page 42*.
– A malfunction in the child safety lock could allow the rear doors to be opened from the inside, which increases the risk of an accident.

Power windows

Opening and closing windows and sunshades

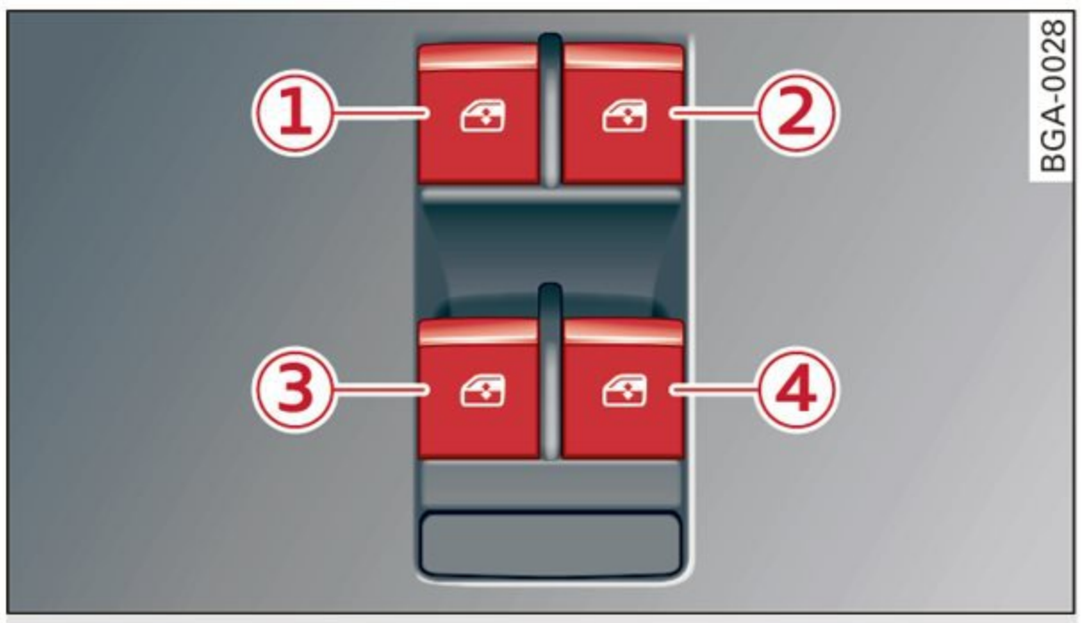


Fig. 44 Driver's door: power window switch

Power window switches:

① Left front door
② Right front door
③ Left rear door
④ Right rear door

Opening and closing the windows

The driver can control all power windows. All power window switches are equipped with a two-stage function:

- ▸ To open or close the window completely, press the switch down or pull the switch up briefly to the second level. The operation will stop if the switch is pressed or pulled again.
- ▸ To select a position in between opened and closed, press or pull the switch to the first level until the desired window position is reached.

Opening and closing sunshades on the rear side windows

Applies to: vehicles with sunshades on the rear side windows

Requirement: the window whose sunshade you will operate must be closed.

- ▸ To close or open the sunshade from the driver's seat, pull or press the power window switch for that window in the driver's door.
- ▸ To close or open the sunshade from the rear, pull or press the power window switch for that window in the rear door. Or:
- ▸ Applies to: Rear Seat Remote: To close or open the sunshade from the rear, select on the home screen: **Blinds**.

Correcting a malfunction in the one-touch up/down function

You can reactivate the one-touch up/down function if it malfunctions.

- ▸ Pull the power window switch up until the window is completely raised.
- ▸ Release the switch and pull it up again for at least one second.

WARNING

– Follow the safety precautions ⇨ *page 42*.
– Never close the windows or sunshades* carelessly or in an uncontrolled manner, because this increases the risk of injury.

Tips

You can still open and close the windows for several minutes after turning the ignition off. The power window switch is not disabled until the driver's door or front passenger's door is opened.

Convenience opening and closing

Applies to: vehicles with convenience key

Convenience opening or closing the windows or panoramic glass roof*

You can set in the MMI if all windows or the roof* should open or close all at once ⇨ *page 43, Setting the central locking system*.

- ▸ Press and hold the or button on the vehicle key until all windows and the roof* have reached the desired position ⇨ .
- ▸ Applies to: vehicles with convenience key: Touch the sensor* on one of the door handles and continue touching it until all of the windows and the roof* are closed. Do not place your hand in the door handle when doing this.

When all of the windows and the roof* are closed, the turn signals will flash once.

Convenience opening and closing the sunshade*

Applies to: vehicles with power sunshade

You can open or close all of the sunshades at once.

- ▸ Press and hold on the lower display. Or:
- ▸ Press and hold the button in the rear door. Or:
- ▸ Applies to: Rear Seat Remote: Select on the home screen: **Blinds**. Press on the picture of the sunshade to operate it.

WARNING

– Never close the windows or panoramic glass roof* carelessly or in an uncontrolled manner, because this increases the risk of injury.
– For security reasons, the windows and the panoramic glass roof* can only be opened and closed with the vehicle key at a maximum distance of approximately 6.5 feet (2 m) from the vehicle. Always pay attention when using the button to close the windows and the panoramic glass roof* so that no one is pinched. The closing process will stop immediately when the button is released.

Panoramic glass roof

Operating the panoramic glass roof and roof sunshade

Applies to: vehicles with panoramic glass roof and roof sunshade

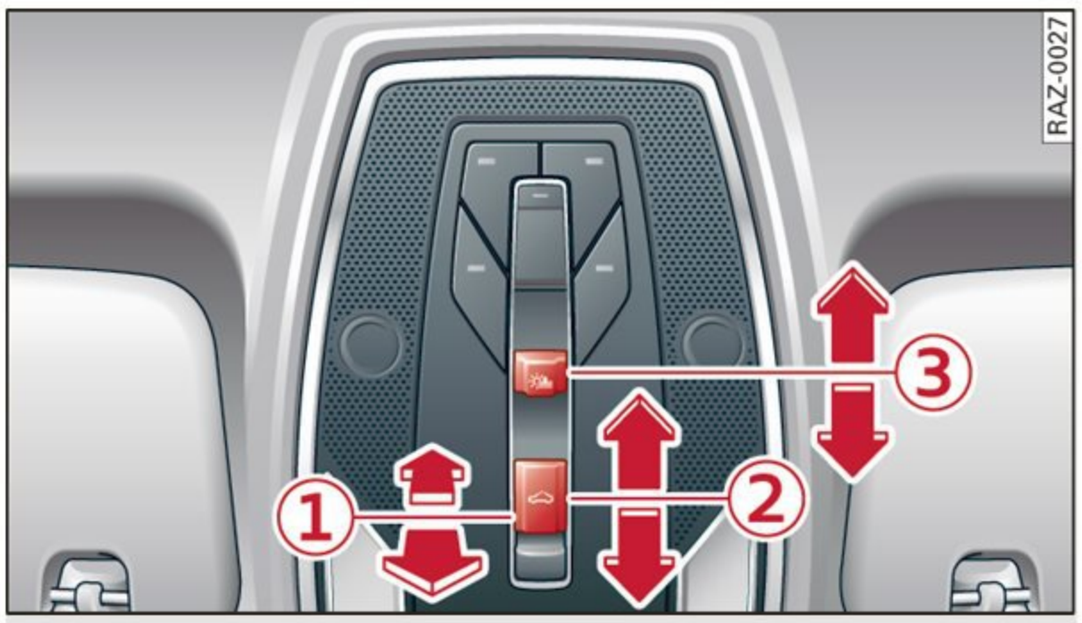


Fig. 45 Headliner: panoramic glass roof and sunshade* buttons

The control buttons are equipped with a two-stage function. Depending on the equipment, it may also be possible to operate the roof and the roof sunshade from the rear.

When tilting or opening the roof, the roof sunshade will open partially or completely if the sunshade is closed.

Operating the front roof sunshade

Requirement: the roof must be closed.

- ▸ Opening and closing the sunshade: push the switch in the headliner (2) briefly toward the rear or forward to the second level. Or: push/pull the switch in the rear briefly downward or upward to the second level.
- ▸ Partially opening the sunshade: press the switch to the first level until the sunshade reaches the desired position. Or:
- ▸ Applies to: Rear Seat Remote: Open or close the sunshade: select on the home screen: **Blinds**. Press on the picture of the sunshade to operate it.

Operating the rear roof sunshade*

- ▸ Opening and closing the sunshade: push the switch in the headliner (3) briefly forward or toward the rear to the second level. Or:
- ▸ Push or pull the switch in the rear door briefly downward or upward to the second level.
- ▸ Partially opening the sunshade: press the switch to the first level until the sunshade reaches the desired position. Or:
- ▸ Applies to: Rear Seat Remote: Select on the home screen: **Blinds**. Press on the picture of the sunshade to operate it.

Operating the roof from the cockpit

- ▸ Tilting the roof: press the switch in the headliner briefly upward to the second level (1).
- ▸ Closing the tilted roof: pull the switch downward briefly to the second level.
- ▸ Opening the roof: slide the switch back briefly twice in a row to the second level (2).
- ▸ Closing the roof: push the switch forward briefly to the second level.
- ▸ Opening or closing partially: slide the switch to the first level and hold it there until the roof reaches the desired position.

Operating the roof from the rear*

- ▸ Tilting the roof: briefly press the switch* in the rear door downward once to the second level.
- ▸ Closing the tilted roof: pull the switch* upward briefly to the second level. ▶

- ▸ Opening the roof: press the switch* in the rear door downward again briefly to the second level.
- ▸ Closing the roof: pull the switch* upward briefly to the second level.
- ▸ Opening partially: pull or press the switch* to the first level until the roof reaches the desired position. Or:
- ▸ Applies to: Rear Seat Remote: Select on the home screen: **Blinds**. Press on the picture of the roof to operate it.

Quick opening and closing

You can also open or close the roof and front sunshade from the cockpit in one movement.

- ▸ Opening the roof and sunshade: slide the switch back briefly twice in a row to the second level (2).
- ▸ Closing the opened roof: push the switch forward briefly twice in a row to the second level.

Roof emergency closing

If an object is detected when closing, the roof will open again automatically. In this case, you can then close it with the power emergency closing function.

- ▸ Within five seconds after the sunroof opens automatically, pull the applicable button until the roof is closed.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of injury, always pay attention when closing the roof. Always switch the ignition off and take the key with you when leaving the vehicle.

Note

Always close the roof when you leave the vehicle and when there is precipitation to reduce the risk of damage to the interior equipment, particularly the electronic equipment.

Tips

– After switching off the ignition, the roof and sunshades can still be operated for several minutes as long as neither of the front doors are opened.
– It is not possible to open the roof when temperatures are too low.

Opening and closing the rear window sunshade

Applies to: vehicles with a sunshade on the rear window

The sunshade on the rear window can be operated both from the cockpit and from the rear seats.

Operating the sunshade on the rear window

- ▸ Applies to: MMI: Opening or closing the sunshade: press the button on the lower display. Or:
- ▸ Press the button briefly in the rear door. Or:
- ▸ Applies to: Rear Seat Remote: Select on the home screen: **Blinds**. Press on the picture of the rear window sunshade to operate it.

Valet parking

Applies to: vehicles with valet parking function

The valet parking function can protect the luggage compartment from unauthorized access.

The VALET button for valet parking is in the glove compartment.

You can switch the valet parking function on, for example when someone else is parking your vehicle [1)]. The vehicle can be driven, locked, and unlocked using the vehicle key or the Audi connect key card*, but access to the luggage compartment is blocked.

- ▸ Remove the mechanical key ⇨ *page 46*.
- ▸ Press the VALET button in the glove compartment. The LED in the button turns on if the function is switched on.
- ▸ Lock the glove compartment with the mechanical key. ▶

1) This function is not available in all countries.

► Give the vehicle key or the Audi connect key card to the service personnel to park the vehicle, and keep the mechanical key yourself.

The following buttons are deactivated when the valet parking function is switched on:

– button in the driver's door
– or 2x button on the vehicle key
– Handle in the luggage compartment lid

If the valet parking function is switched on, a message will appear every time the ignition is switched on.

Tips

Please note that the luggage compartment can still be accessed from the vehicle interior in vehicles with fixed rear seat backrests or ones that cannot be locked, even when the valet parking function is switched on.

Garage door opener

Description

Applies to: vehicles with garage door opener

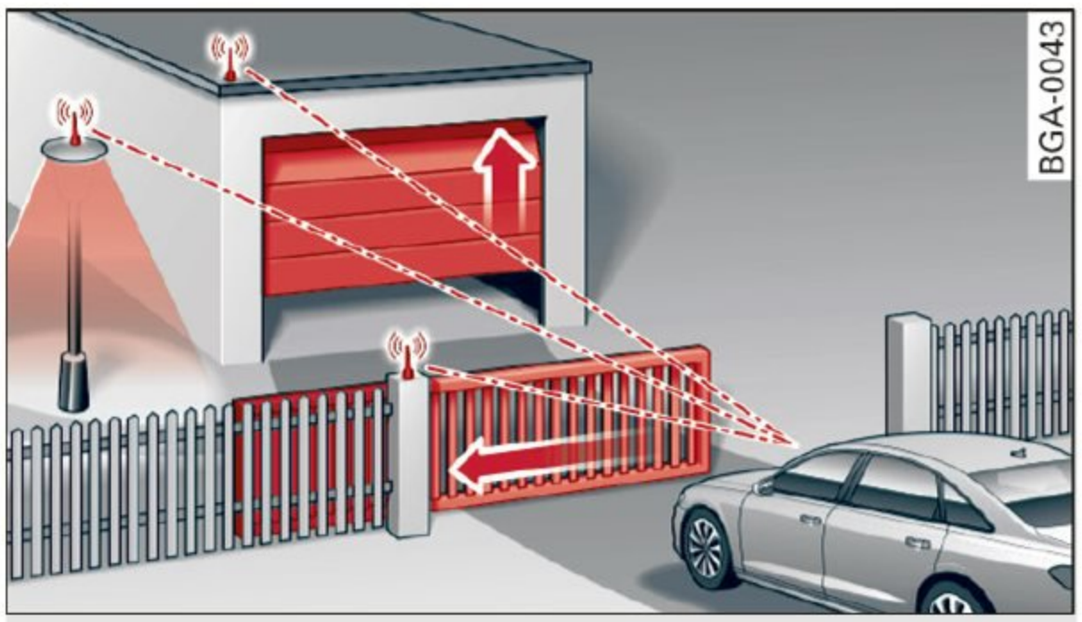


Fig. 46 Garage door opener: examples of usage for different systems

With the garage door opener, you can activate systems such as the garage doors, security systems or house lights from inside your vehicle. These functions are operated in the MMI. Multiple receivers can be programmed, which can control the functions of up to eight hand-held transmitters.

WARNING

– When operating or programming the garage door opener, make sure that no people or objects are in the area immediately surrounding the equipment. People can be injured or property can be damaged if struck when closing.
– Do not allow yourself to be distracted from traffic by the viewing and operating the displays.

Tips

– If you sell your vehicle, remove the key user ⇨ *page 41* and reset all settings to the factory settings ⇨ *page 249*.
– For an explanation on conformity with the FCC regulations in the United States and the Industry Canada regulations, see ⇨ *page 317*.

Tips

Before you program your system to the garage door opener, first check the compatibility:

– Ask an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility or check at www.homelink.com. You can also find more information about HomeLink there.
– You can display information about HomeLink (compatibility level/status/country code/HomeLink generation) in the MMI:
– Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Settings & Service** > **Garage door opener** > ⓘ.

Operating

Applies to: vehicles with garage door opener

Requirements: the remote control transmitter must be programmed ⇨ *page 58*, the vehicle must be within range of the system, and the ignition must be switched on.

There are multiple options to open or close the system (such as the garage door).

► If you have only programmed one remote control transmitter, press the button on the lower display. Or
► If you have programmed multiple remote control transmitters, press the button on the lower display and then press the respective system button. Or ▶

- ▸ If you have configured the programmable steering wheel button*, press the ✳ button ⇨ *page 39* and then press the respective button for the system. Or
- ▸ If you have programmed **GPS pairing**, press the respective button on the upper display (notification center ⇨ *page 21*). As you approach the system, the button is displayed on the MMI.

If transmission was successful, the message: **Send to: XXX** will appear.

Programming

Applies to: vehicles with garage door opener

You can program both fixed code and rolling code systems in the MMI using the procedure that is described.

Requirement: the ignition must be switched on.

Programming the system

Applies to: MMI

Requirement: the hand transmitter must be present and the vehicle must be within range of the system (such as the garage door) that you would like to program.

- ▸ If you are programming the garage door opener for the **first time**, press the ⌂ button on the lower display. Follow the instructions in the MMI. Or
- ▸ If you would like to program **other** systems, select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Settings & Service** > **Garage door opener**. Select the desired button: ⊕. Follow the instructions in the MMI.
- ▸ If you would like to **reprogram** systems that are already programmed, select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Settings & Service** > **Garage door opener**. Press the ≡ button and select ✎ for the system to be reprogrammed. Select: **Program**. Follow the instructions in the MMI.

With some systems, the garage door opener will be immediately available after programming. With other systems, the garage door opener must also be synchronized.

Synchronizing[1)]

Requirement: the hand transmitter must already be programmed and the vehicle must be within range of the system (such as the garage door).

If the system synchronization is performed directly after the programming procedure, follow the instructions on the MMI.

If you would like to sync at a later time:

- ▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Settings & Service** > **Garage door opener**.
- ▸ Press the button for the system that you would like to synchronize.
- ▸ Follow the instructions in the MMI.

GPS pairing

For easier operation, you can program your system's location.

Requirements: the respective hand transmitter must be programmed ⇨ *page 58* and the vehicle must be located in front of the system.

- ▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Settings & Service** > **Garage door opener**.
- ▸ Press the ≡ button.
- ▸ Press the ✎ button for the system your vehicle is facing.
- ▸ Select: **GPS pairing**.
- ▸ Follow the instructions in the MMI.

Only a maximum of three systems can be displayed in the notification center ⇨ *page 21*. If you would like to have all systems displayed, press ⊞.

Renaming programmed systems

You can rename the programmed systems individually.

- ▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Settings & Service** > **Garage door opener**.
- ▸ Press the ≡ button.
- ▸ Press the ✎ button for the system that you would like to rename. ▶

1) Only applies to rolling code systems

- ▸ Select: **Rename**.
- ▸ Follow the instructions in the MMI.

Deleting programmed systems

The programmed systems can be deleted individually or all at once.

- ▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Settings & Service** > **Garage door opener**.
- ▸ Press the button.
- ▸ To delete an **individual** system, press the ☐ button for the desired system. If the checkmark ✓ is set, select: **Delete**.
- ▸ To delete **all** systems, select: **All** > **Delete**.

Tips

– Make sure the batteries in the hand transmitter are charged before starting the programming process.
– The programming process may take up to 30 seconds. It may be necessary for the hand transmitter to be pressed again in the meantime.
– The garage door opener may need to be synchronized with the system after programming. Follow the manufacturer's instructions for doing this.

Tips

In some cases, the system may need to be programmed in a different mode (“D-Mode”).
– Switch the ignition on.
– Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Settings & Service** > **Garage door opener**.
– Press and hold the desired button ⊕.
– Select **Yes, in D-Mode** and follow the instructions on the MMI.

Lights and Vision

Exterior lighting

Switching lights on and off

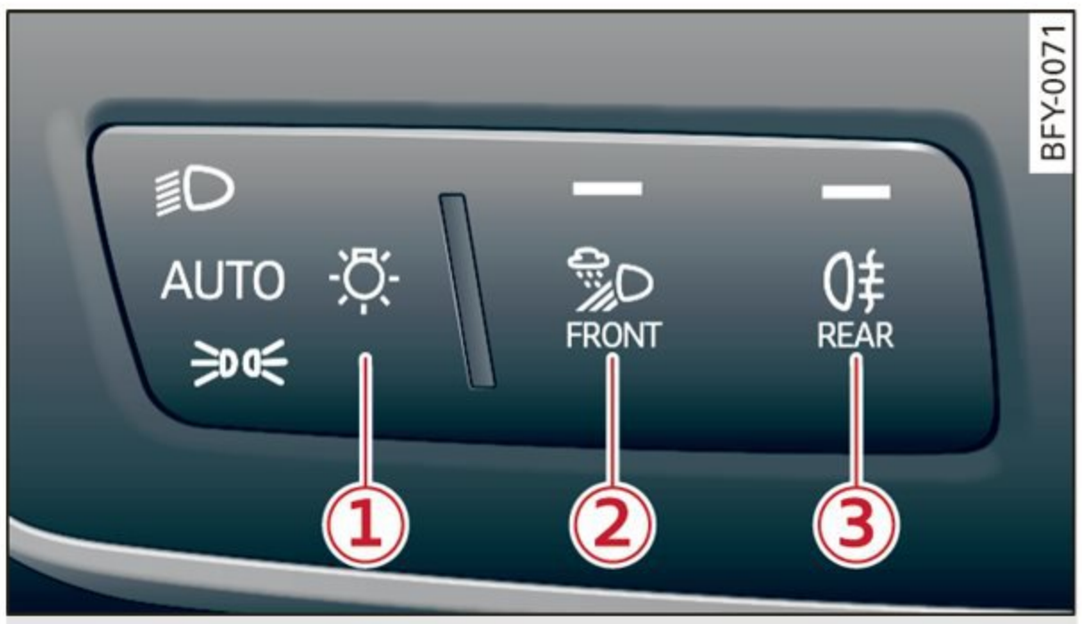


Fig. 47 Instrument panel: light button module

① Light switch

Press and hold ① until the desired light function is selected. The selected function is displayed briefly in the instrument cluster. When switching on the ignition, the AUTO light function is automatically selected.

– AUTO - The automatic headlights adapt to the surrounding brightness automatically. The daytime running lights will automatically turn on. In vehicles for certain markets, you can switch the automatic daytime running lights on and off in the MMI.
– - Low beam headlights. As soon as the ignition is switched on, you can switch on the low beam headlights manually.
– - Parking lights. You can switch on the parking lights at speeds under 20 mph (32 km/h).
– USA models: OFF - you can switch off all light functions at speeds under 6 mph (10 km/h).
– Canada models: OFF - you can only switch of all light functions when the vehicle is parked and the ignition is switched off.

When the low beam headlights or parking lights are switched on, the respective or indicator light appears in the instrument cluster.

② All weather light FRONT

The headlights automatically adjust so that there will be less glare, for example when the road surface is wet.

③ Rear fog lights REAR

To reduce glare for traffic behind your vehicle, the rear fog lights should only be turned on in accordance with the legal requirements in the country where you are operating the vehicle.

Automatic headlight range control

Your vehicle is equipped with automatic headlight range control. It reduces glare for oncoming traffic if the vehicle load changes. The headlight range adjusts automatically.

Audi adaptive light

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive light

Audi adaptive light provides better visibility when driving in the dark. The lights are adapted to the road conditions based on speed, such as when driving on expressways, rural roads, at intersections, and around curves. The adaptive light only functions when the automatic headlights are activated.

WARNING

– Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 136*.
– Automatic headlights are only intended to assist the driver. They do not relieve the driver of responsibility to check the headlights and to turn them on manually based on the current light and visibility conditions. For example, fog cannot be detected by the light sensors. So always switch on the low beams under these weather conditions and when driving in the dark.

Tips

– If the vehicle battery has been discharging for a while, the parking light may switch off automatically. Avoid using the parking lights for several hours.
– Follow the regulations applicable to the country where you are operating the vehicle when stopping the vehicle and when using the lighting systems.
– A warning tone will sound if you open the door when the exterior lights are switched on.

– Only the front headlights turn on when the daytime running lights are switched on*. In vehicles in certain markets, the tail lights will also turn on.
– In cool or damp weather, the inside of the headlights, turn signals, and tail lights can fog over due to the temperature difference between the inside and outside. They will clear shortly after switching them on. This does not affect the service life of the lighting.
– When the parking lights are switched on and the ignition is switched off, the symbol appears in the light switch module.

Turn signal

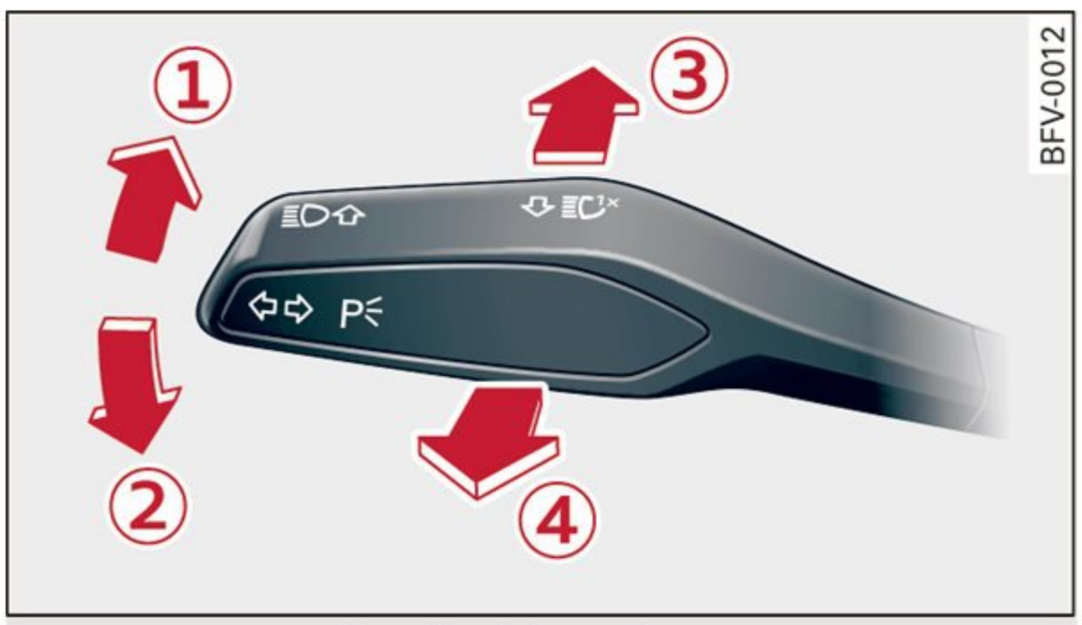


Fig. 48 Turn signal and high beam lever

The lever operates the turn signals, the high beams and the headlight flasher.

Switching on

The turn signals activate when you move the lever into a turn signal position when the ignition is switched on. The respective or indicator light flashes.

① - Right turn signal

② - Left turn signal

The turn signal blinks three times if you tap the lever (convenience turn signal).

If an indicator light blinks twice as fast as usual, a turn signal bulb has failed. Carefully drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

High beam assistant and headlight flasher

Applies to: vehicles with high beam assistant

The high beam assistant automatically turns the high beams on or off depending on the surrounding conditions.

A camera on the rearview mirror mount can detect light sources from other road users. The high beams switch on or off automatically depending on the position of vehicles driving ahead and oncoming vehicles, the vehicle speed, and other environmental and traffic conditions.

Switching on the high beam assistant

Requirement: the automatic headlights must be set and the high beam assistant must be switched on in the MMI ⇨ *page 63*.

▸ To activate the high beam assistant, tap the lever forward ③ ⇨ *page 61, fig. 48*. The AUTO indicator light appears in the instrument cluster display and the high beams are switched on or off automatically. If the high beams were completely or partially switched on, the AUTO indicator light will turn on.

Switching the high beams on or off manually

If the high beams did not switch on or off automatically as expected, you may switch them on or off manually instead:

▸ To switch the high beams on manually, tap the lever forward ③ ⇨ *page 61, fig. 48*. The indicator light turns on.
▸ To switch the high beams off manually, pull the lever back ④ ⇨ *page 61, fig. 48*. The high beam assistant is deactivated.

Operating the headlight flasher

▸ To operate the headlight flashers, pull the lever back ④ ⇨ *page 61, fig. 48*. If the high beam assistant is activated, but the high beams were not turned off, the high beam assistant remains activated.

WARNING

– Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 136*.

– High beam assistant is only intended to assist the driver. The driver is still responsible for controlling the headlights and may need to switch them on and off manually depending on light and visibility conditions.
– High beams can cause glare for other drivers, which increases the risk of an accident. For this reason, only use the high beams or the headlight flasher when they will not create glare for other drivers.

Tips

Specific settings are stored automatically in the active personal profile.

Laser lighting

Applies to: vehicles with laser lighting



Fig. 49 Headlights: label

The laser high beams increase the range of the headlights.

Technical changes to the headlights have significantly increased the range. An additional module integrated in the headlight converts a blue laser light into a white light using a luminescent material.

Switching laser lights on and off

The high beam is controlled by the high beam assistant. The laser high beams switch on shortly after activating the LED high beams if the requirements that follow are met.

Requirement: the AUTO light function must be set, and the high beam assistant and the laser lights must be switched on in the MMI ⇨ *page 63*.

► To switch on the high beam assistant, tap the lever forward ③ ⇨ *page 61, fig. 48*. The AUTO indicator light appears in the instrument cluster display and the high beams are switched on or off automatically.

The laser high beams are switched on at speeds above approximately 44 mph (70 km/h), when the high beams are activated. The AUTO indicator light turns on if the high beams are switched on. The AUTO indicator light turns on if the laser lights are switched on.

The laser beam is switched back off when the speed decreases below approximately 30 mph (50 km/h) or when the high beam assistant switches the LED headlights off.

WARNING

– Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 136*.
– All repair procedures on the headlights must be performed by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility that will perform the work according to Audi factory specifications. Incorrect repairs could result in eye injury, impair the function, and may void the vehicle's operating license.
– Opening the laser module is not permitted and could cause permanent injuries to the eyes.
– Dangerous exposure to laser beams may occur if the covers are removed or if the headlamp module housing is opened. ▶

Tips

- The headlight contains a class 4 laser. The technical design converts the laser beam so that there is no danger when it is used for its intended purpose.
- The laser beam emission from the headlamp has been classified in accordance with IEC 60825-1:2007.
- The possible emission is below the threshold for laser class 2.
- Maximum laser beam output: 5W (continuous emission), wavelength range λ= 400 nm – 700 nm.
- The headlamp light functions are rated in accordance with IEC 62471-5:2015.
- The beam emitted from the headlamp was classified as risk group 2.
- Specific settings are stored automatically in the active personal profile.

Adjusting the exterior lighting

You can adjust the exterior lighting separately. The settings depend on the vehicle equipment.

► Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Light & Visibility** > **Exterior lighting**.

Automatic headlights

You can adjust the following settings in the **Automatic headlights** menu:

Activation time - you can adjust if the headlights switch on **Early**, **Medium**, or **Late** according to the sensitivity of the light sensor.

High beam assistant - you can switch the high beam assistant on and off.

High beam assistant > **Laser lights** - you can switch the laser lights on and off.

Entry/exit lighting

When it is dark, the **Entry/exit lighting** illuminates the area around the vehicle when unlocking the vehicle and after switching off the ignition and opening the driver's door. The entry/exit lighting only works when it is dark and the light switch is in the **AUTO** light function.

Daytime running lights

USA models: the daytime running lights can be switched on and off.

Canada models: this function cannot be switched off. They activate automatically each time the ignition is switched on.

Tips

Specific settings are stored automatically in the active personal profile.

Emergency flashers



Fig. 50 Center console: emergency flashers

The emergency flashers help to make other drivers aware of your vehicle in dangerous situations.

► Press the ⚠ (1) button to switch the emergency flashers on or off.

You can indicate a lane change or a turn when the emergency flashers are switched on by using the turn signal lever. The emergency flashers stop temporarily.

The emergency flashers also work when the ignition is turned off.

Tips

You should switch the emergency flashers on if:

- you are the last car in a traffic jam so that all other vehicles approaching from behind can see your vehicle
- your vehicle has broken down or you are having an emergency ▶

– your vehicle is being towed or if you are towing another vehicle

Messages

If the indicator light turns on, a bulb has failed. The displayed message indicates the cause and possible solutions. If one of the messages does not turn off, drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction repaired.

Audi adaptive light: malfunction! See owner's manual

Adaptive light is not working. The headlights still function. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

OLED tail light: malfunction! Switched off permanently. See owner's manual

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

High beam assistant: malfunction! See owner's manual

You can still switch the high beams on or off manually. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

High beam assistant: currently unavailable. Camera view limited due to surroundings. See owner's manual

This message appears if the camera's visual field is blocked. The system will switch itself off. Try switching the systems on again later.

Automatic headlights: malfunction! See owner's manual

The light/rain sensor is malfunctioning. The low beams remain switched on at all times for safety reasons with the AUTO light function. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Interior lighting

Front interior lighting

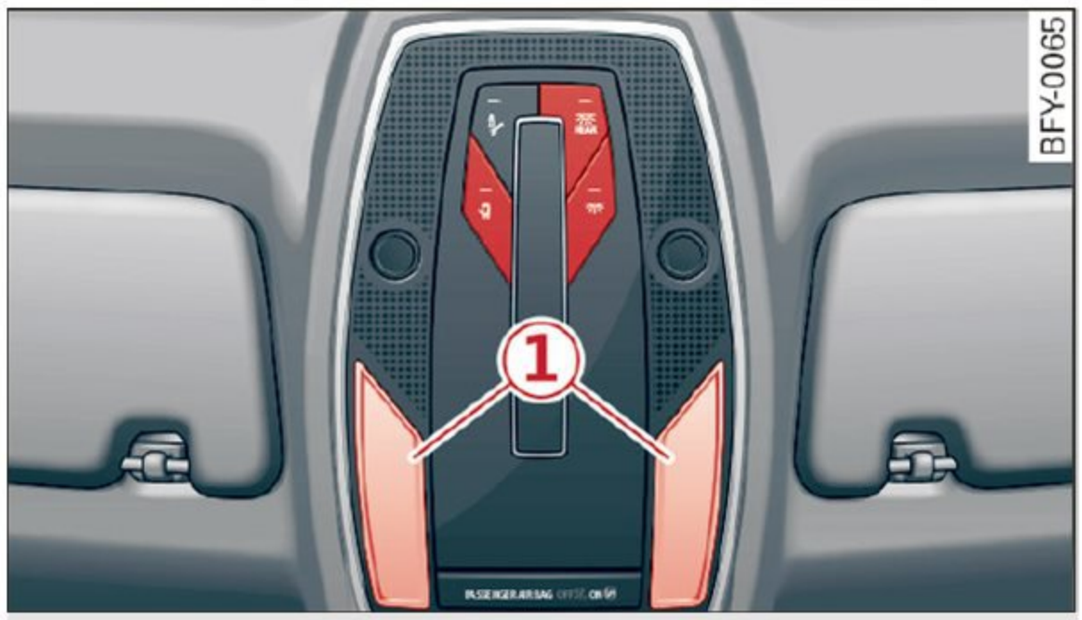


Fig. 51 Headliner: interior lighting (example)

Press the corresponding button in the headliner to activate the following:

* - Interior lighting on/off

REAR * - Rear interior lighting on/off

- Door contact switch on/off. The interior lighting is controlled automatically.

Touch-sensitive reading lights*

- To turn a reading light on or off, touch the surface (1) briefly.
- To activate the manual dimming function, touch the surface (1) when the light is switched off and keep touching it until the desired brightness is reached.

Rear interior lighting

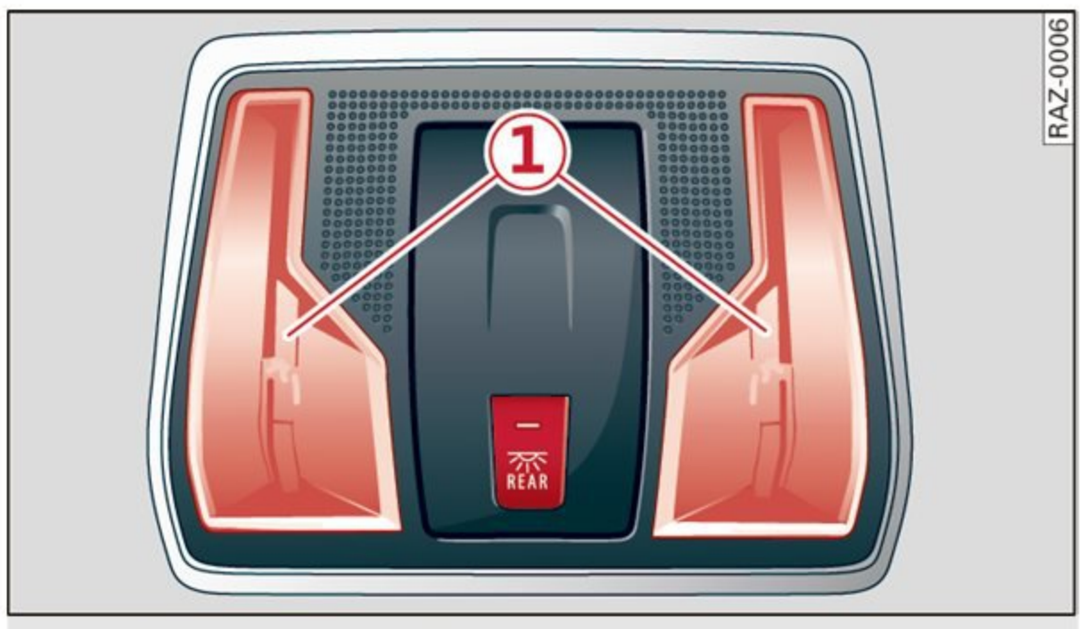


Fig. 52 Headliner: reading lights

Press the REAR * button to switch the rear interior lighting on or off. ▶

Touch-sensitive reading lights*

- ▸ To turn a reading light on or off, touch the surface (1) briefly.
- ▸ To activate the manual dimming function, touch the surface (1) when the light is switched off and keep touching it until the desired brightness is reached.

Matrix reading lights*

When the reading lights are switched on, you can individually adjust the brightness, position, and focus range.

- ▸ Applies to: Rear Seat Remote: Select on the home screen: **LIGHTS** > **Matrix lights** > **Individual**.

Interior lighting

Applies to: vehicles with interior lighting

The ambient lighting turns on when the ignition is switched on. The ambient lighting is deactivated when the light function is OFF.

You can adjust the interior lighting individually. The settings depend on the vehicle equipment.

- ▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Light & Visibility** > **Interior lighting**.
- ▸ Applies to: Rear Seat Remote: Select on the home screen: **LIGHTS** > **Interior lighting**.

You can choose among predefined color profiles, such as **Maritime**.

Additional settings and profiles:

– **Brightness**: you can adjust the brightness for all of the interior lighting.
– **Individual**: you can adjust the brightness and color of the interior lighting separately, divided into contour and surface lighting.
– **Drive select**: the contour and surface lighting color changes depending on the selected Audi drive select* mode.

Tips

Depending on vehicle equipment, when the **Drive select** function is activated, the color of the contour and surface lighting may briefly change to red or blue when the interior temperature is manually increased or decreased.

Tips

Specific settings are stored automatically in the active personal profile.

Display brightness

You can adjust the instrument and display illumination separately. The settings depend on the vehicle equipment.

- ▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **Display & brightness**.
- ▸ Applies to: Rear Seat Remote: Select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **Device**.

Possible settings in the MMI:

– **Cockpit dimming**
– **Head-up display**
– **MMI**
– **Virtual cockpit**

Possible settings in the Rear Seat Remote:

– **Brightness**
– **Dim display**

Vision

Adjusting exterior mirrors



Fig. 53 Driver's door: knob for the exterior mirrors

Turn the knob in the driver's door to the desired position:

0 - All adjustment functions are deactivated.

/ - Adjusts the left/right exterior mirror. Move the knob in the desired direction. ▶

- Heats* the mirror glass depending on the outside temperature.

- Folds the exterior mirrors*. To fold the mirrors out, turn the knob to one of the other positions. You can select if the mirrors fold in automatically when you lock the vehicle In the MMI ⇨ *page 43*.

Front passenger's exterior mirror tilt function*

To help you see the curb when backing into a parking space, the surface of the mirror tilts slightly. For this to happen, the knob must be in the position for the front passenger's exterior mirror.

You can adjust the tilted mirror surface by turning the knob in the desired direction.

The mirror moves from the reversing position back to the original position:

– When you switch the ignition off
– Once you drive forward at speeds faster than 9 mph (15 km/h)
– When the knob is no longer in the position for the front passenger exterior mirror

WARNING

Curved mirror surfaces (for example convex) enlarge the field of vision. However, they make objects in the mirror appear smaller and farther away. When using these mirrors to estimate your distance to vehicles behind you when changing lanes, you could estimate incorrectly, which increases the risk of an accident.

Note

– Applies to: vehicles with power folding exterior mirrors: If the mirror housing was moved by outside forces (such as an impact when maneuvering), you must use the power folding function to fold the mirror all the way out. The mirrors will make a loud noise when they latch into place. The mirror housing must not be moved back into place by hand because this could impair the function of the mirror mechanism.
– Applies to: vehicles without power folding exterior mirrors: If the mirror housing was moved by outside forces (such as an impact when maneuvering), you must move it back in place by hand.
– If you wash the vehicle in an automatic car wash, you must fold the exterior mirrors in to reduce the risk of damage to the mirrors. Never fold power folding exterior mirrors* by hand. Only fold them in and out using the power controls.

Tips

– Specific settings are stored automatically in the active personal profile.
– If the power adjusting function malfunctions, the glass in both mirrors can be adjusted by pressing on the edge of it by hand.

Dimming the mirrors

▶ The interior and exterior mirrors* dim automatically when light shines on them, for example from headlights on a vehicle behind you.

WARNING

If the glass on an automatic dimming mirror breaks, electrolyte can leak out. This liquid can irritate the skin, eyes and respiratory system. If there is contact with the fluid, flush immediately with plenty of water. Consult a physician if necessary.

– Repeated or long-term exposure to electrolyte fluid can lead to irritation of the airways, especially in people with asthma or other respiratory conditions. Take deep breaths immediately after leaving the vehicle or, if this is not possible, open all of the doors and windows as wide as possible.
– If electrolyte fluid enters the eyes, flush them thoroughly with a large amount of clean water for at least 15 minutes and then seek medical attention.
– If electrolyte fluid comes into contact with the skin, flush the affected area with clean water for at least 15 minutes and then clean ▶

with soap and water and seek medical attention. Clean affected clothing and shoes thoroughly before wearing again.
– If the fluid was swallowed and the person is conscious, flush the mouth with water for at least 15 minutes. Do not induce vomiting unless this is recommended by medical professionals. Seek medical attention immediately.

Note

If the glass on an automatic dimming mirror breaks, electrolyte can leak out. This liquid damages plastic surfaces and paint. Clean this liquid as quickly as possible, for example with a wet sponge.

Tips

– If the light reaching the rearview mirror is obstructed, the automatic dimming mirror will not function correctly,
– The automatic dimming mirrors do not dim when the interior lighting is turned on or the reverse gear is selected.

Sun visors

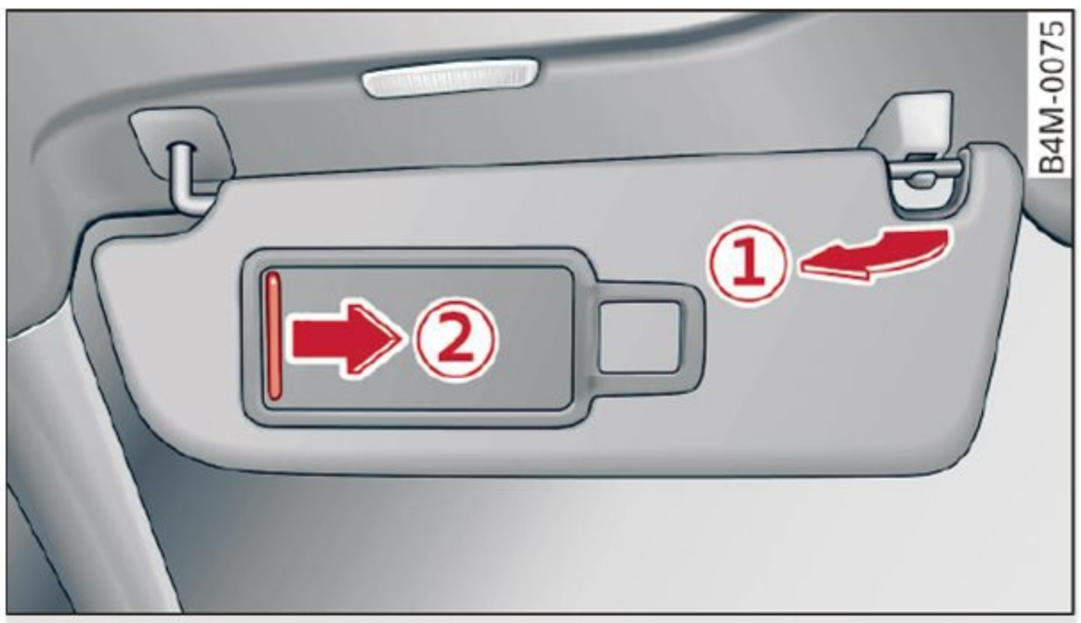


Fig. 54 Sun visor

Sun visor

The sun visors for the driver and front passenger can be released from their mounts and turned toward the doors (1).

They can also be moved back and forth lengthwise in this position.

Vanity mirror

The mirror light switches on when the cover over the vanity mirror (2) opens.

Vanity mirror in the rear

Applies to: vehicles with vanity mirrors in the rear

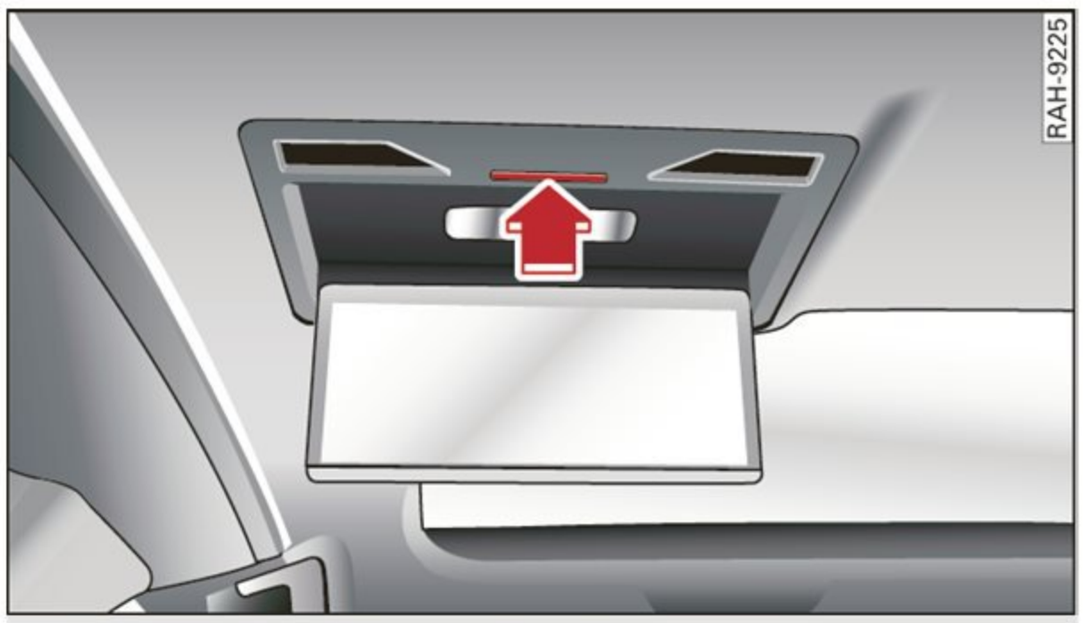


Fig. 55 Rear headliner: vanity mirror

- Press the button to fold the mirror open. The mirror lighting turns on automatically.
- To change the mirror's angle, move it forward or back with your hand.

Windshield wipers

Switching the windshield wipers on

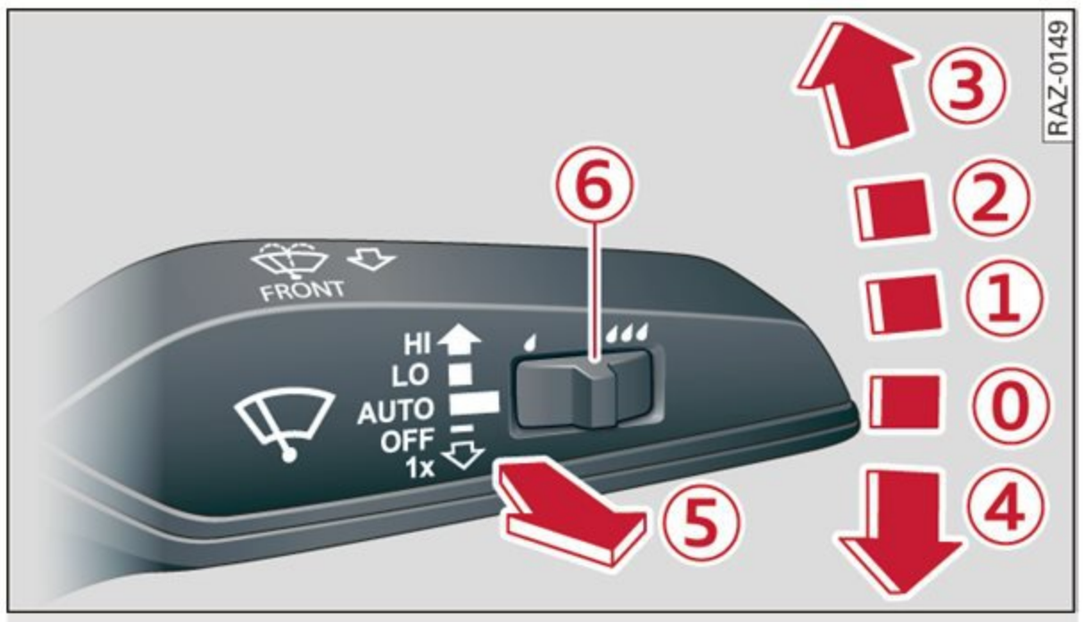


Fig. 56 Lever: windshield wipers

Move the windshield wiper lever to the corresponding position:

(0) - Windshield wipers off

(1) - Rain sensor/interval mode. The windshield wipers switch on once the vehicle speed exceeds approximately 2 mph (4 km/h) and it is raining. The higher the sensitivity of the rain sensor that is set (switch (6) to the right), the earlier the windshield wipers react to moisture on the windshield. You can deactivate the rain sensor mode, ▶

which switches the interval mode on. In intermittent mode, you can adjust the interval time using the switch ⑥.

Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Light & Visibility** > **Rain sensor**.

② - Slow wiping

③ - Fast wiping

④ - Single wipe. If you hold the lever in this position longer, the wipers switch from slow wiping to fast wiping.

⑤ - Clean the windshield. The wipers wipe one time after several seconds of driving to remove water droplets. You can switch this function off by moving the lever to position ⑤ within 10 seconds of the afterwipe. The afterwipe function is reactivated the next time you switch the ignition on.

Clean the headlights*. The headlight washer system* operates only when the low beam headlights are on. If you move the lever to position ⑤, the headlights and the night vision assist camera* are cleaned at intervals.

WARNING

– The rain sensor is only intended to assist the driver. The driver may still be responsible for manually switching the wipers on based on visibility conditions.
– The windshield must not be treated with water-repelling windshield coating agents. Unfavorable conditions, such as wetness, darkness, and when the sun is low, can cause increased glare, which increases the risk of an accident. Wiper blade chatter is also possible.
– Properly functioning windshield wiper blades are required for a clear view and safe driving ⇨ *page 68, Cleaning or replacing the wiper blades*.

Note

– If there is frost, make sure the windshield wiper blades are not frozen to the windshield. Switching on the windshield wipers when the blades are frozen to the windshield can damage the wiper blades.
– Prior to using a car wash, the windshield wiper system must be switched off (lever in position ⓪). This prevents the wipers from switching on unintentionally and causing damage to the windshield wiper system.

Tips

– The windshield wipers switch off when the ignition is switched off. You can activate the windshield wipers after the ignition is switched on again by moving the windshield wiper lever to any position.
– Worn or dirty windshield wiper blades result in streaking. This can affect the rain sensor function. Check your windshield wiper blades regularly.
– The washer fluid nozzles for the windshield washer system are heated when the ignition is on if the outside temperature is low.
– When stopping temporarily, such as at a traffic light, the speed of the windshield wipers automatically reduces by one level.

Cleaning or replacing the wiper blades

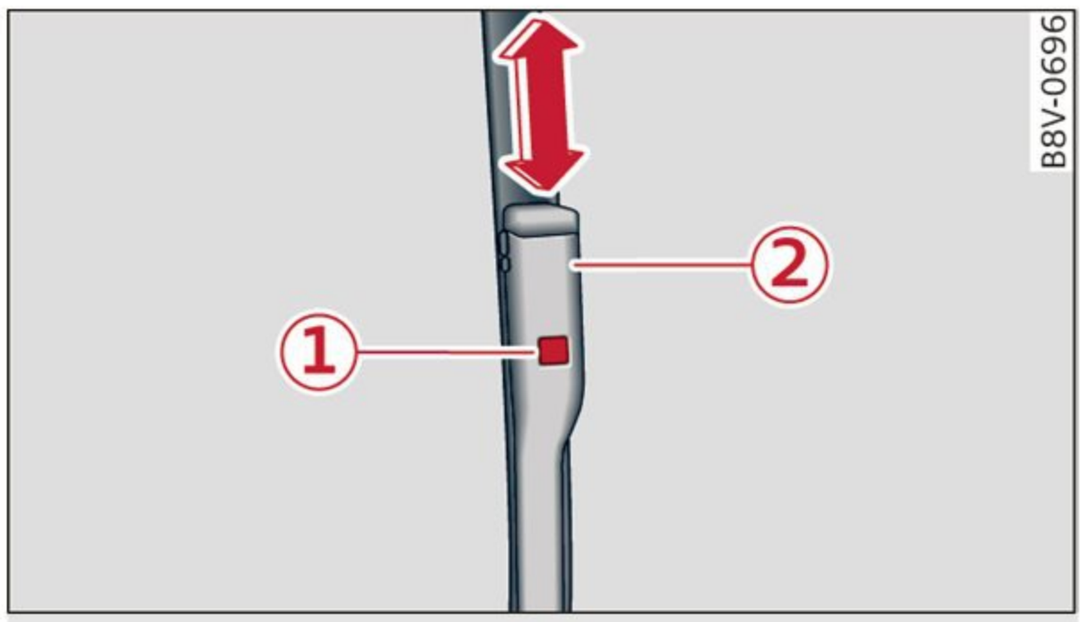


Fig. 57 Windshield wipers: removing the wiper blades

Windshield wiper service position/blade replacement position

▸ Switch off the ignition and hold the windshield wiper lever in position ④ ⇨ *page 67, fig. 56* until the windshield wiper moves into the service position.
▸ To bring the windshield wipers back to the normal position, switch the ignition on and hold the windshield wiper lever in position ④ until ▶

the windshield wipers go back to the normal position, or drive faster than 8 mph (12 km/h).

You can also turn the service position on or off in the MMI:

- ▸ Switch the windshield wipers off (position ⓪ ⇨ *page 67, fig. 56*).
- ▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Settings & Service** > **Wiper change position**.

Cleaning the wiper blades

Before cleaning the wiper blades, they must be in the service position.

- ▸ Fold the windshield wiper arm away from the windshield.
- ▸ For information on cleaning, see ⇨ *table on page 290*.

Replacing the wiper blades

Before removing the wiper blades, they must be in the service position.

- ▸ Fold the windshield wiper arm away from the windshield.
- ▸ Press the locking knob ① on the wiper blade. Hold the wiper blade firmly.
- ▸ Remove the wiper blade from the windshield wiper arm mount ②.
- ▸ Insert the new wiper blade into the mount on the wiper arm until it clicks into place.
- ▸ Place the wiper arm back on the windshield.
- ▸ Exit the service position.

WARNING

- For safety reasons, the windshield wiper blades should be replaced once or twice each year.
- Dirty windshield wiper blades can impair vision, which increases the risk of an accident.

Note

- The windshield wipers must only be folded up when in the service position! Otherwise, you risk damaging the paint on the hood or the windshield wiper motor.
- You should not move your vehicle or press the windshield wiper lever when the wiper arms are folded up from the windshield. The windshield wipers would move back into their original position and could damage the hood and windshield.

Tips

- You can also use the service position, for example, if you want to protect the windshield from icing by using a cover.
- You cannot activate the service position when the hood is open.

Messages

If the indicator light turns on, then there is a windshield wiper malfunction. The displayed message indicates the cause and possible solutions. If one of the messages does not turn off, drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction repaired.

Automatic wipers: malfunction! See owner's manual

The light/rain sensor is malfunctioning. You can still control all functions that are independent of the rain sensor through the windshield wiper lever. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Digital compass

Switching the compass on and off

Applies to: vehicles with digital compass

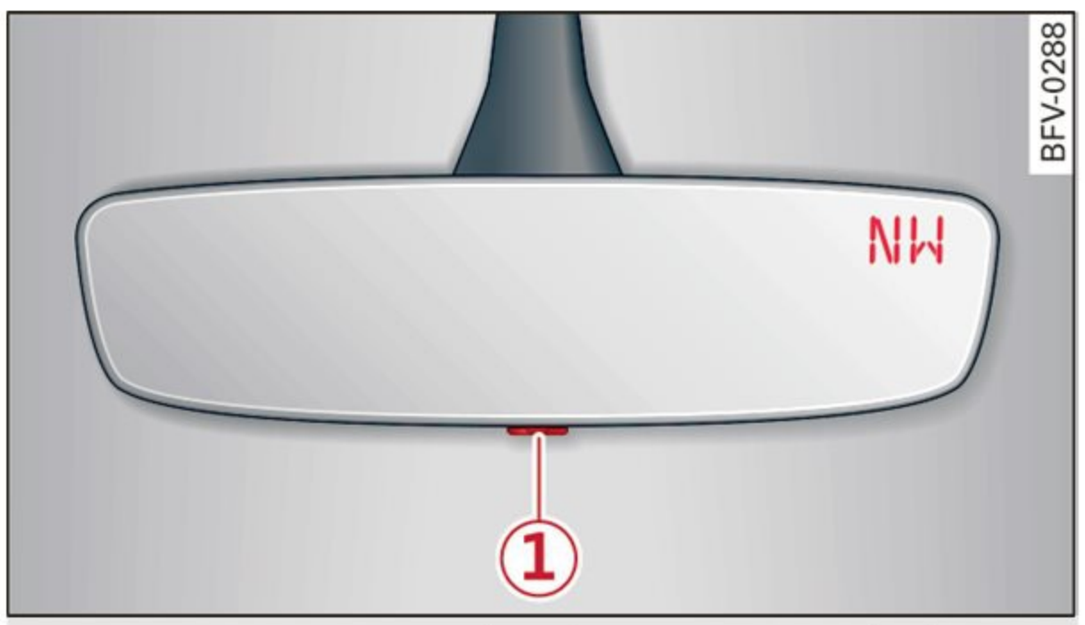


Fig. 58 Rearview mirror: digital compass is switched on ▶

- To turn the compass on or off, press the button (1) until the compass display in the mirror turns on or off.

The digital compass only works when the ignition is turned on. The directions are indicated with abbreviations: **N** (north), **NE** (northeast), **E** (east), **SE** (southeast), **S** (south), **SW** (southwest), **W** (west), **NW** (northwest).

Tips

To prevent inaccurate compass readings, do not bring any remote controls, electrical devices or metallic objects near the mirror.

Adjusting the magnetic zone

Applies to: vehicles with digital compass

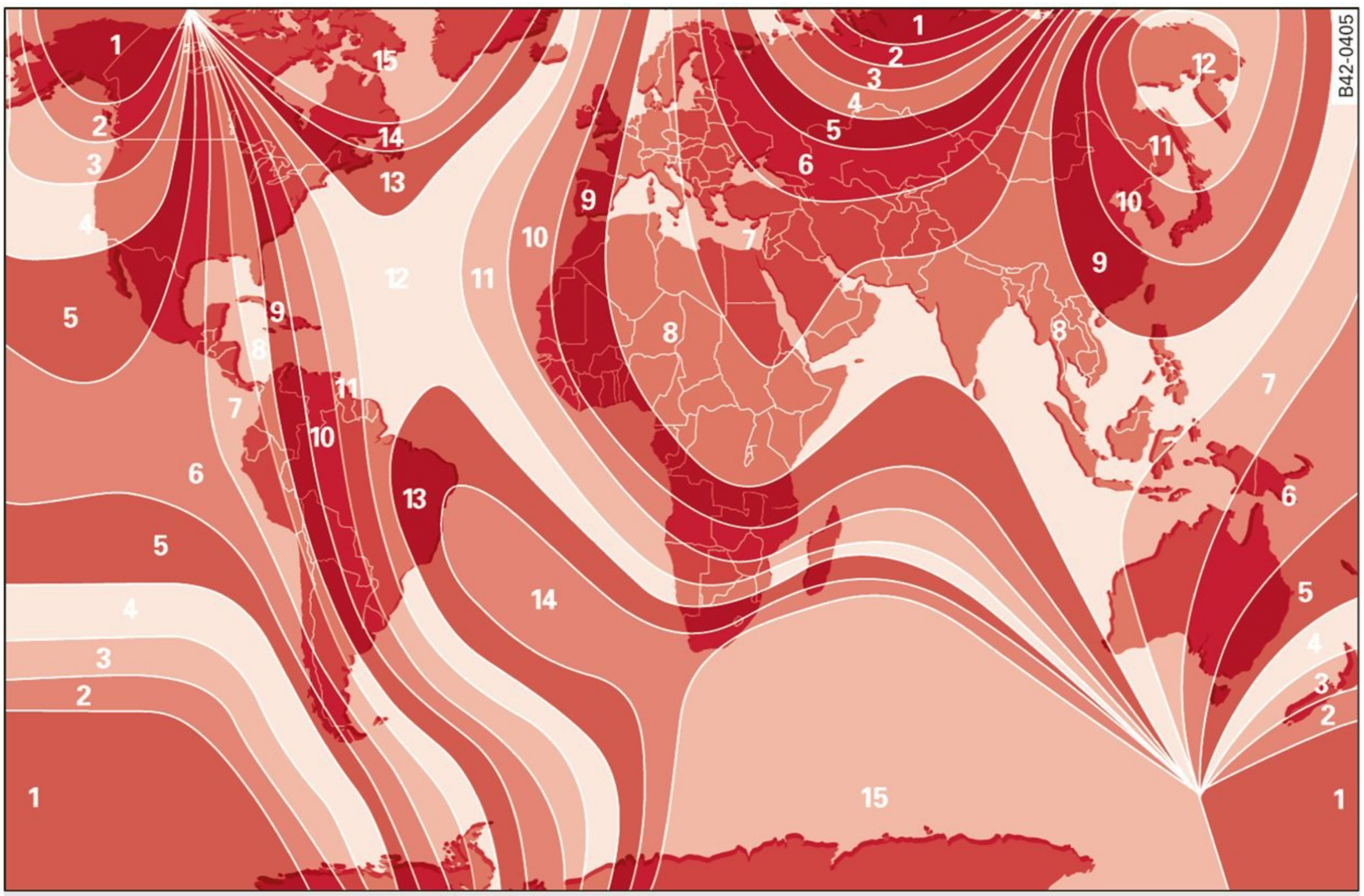


Fig. 59 Magnetic zone map

The magnetic zone must be adjusted correctly for the compass to read accurately.

- Press and hold the button (1) ⇨ *page 69, fig. 58* until the number of the magnetic zone appears in the interior rearview mirror.
- Press the button (1) repeatedly to select the correct magnetic zone. The selection mode turns off after a few seconds.

Calibrating the compass

Applies to: vehicles with digital compass

You must recalibrate the compass if it does not display the correct direction.

- Press and hold the button (1) until a **C** ⇨ *page 69, fig. 58* appears in the interior rearview mirror.
- Drive in a circle at about 6 mph (10 km/h) until a direction is displayed in the rearview mirror. ▶

WARNING

To reduce the risk to yourself and other drivers, calibrate the compass in an area where there is no traffic.

Sitting correctly and safely

Correct passenger seating position

General information

The correct seating position for all passengers is vital for safe driving and is the responsibility of the driver.

Correct seating position

Before you begin driving, seat yourself correctly and always maintain the correct seating position during the trip. Before each trip, instruct your passengers to seat themselves correctly and to maintain this seating position during the trip. Make sure that:

– Every passenger in the vehicle has adjusted his or her seat correctly ⇨ *page 73*
– The steering wheel is adjusted correctly ⇨ *page 81*
– The mirrors are adjusted so that there is a sufficient view of the area around the vehicle ⇨ *page 65*
– Every passenger in the vehicle has his or her head restraint adjusted correctly ⇨ *page 81*
– Every passenger in the vehicle has his or her safety belt fastened correctly ⇨ *page 83*
– The activation status of the front passenger's airbag is suitable for the passenger in the front passenger's seat ⇨ *page 89*
– Children are secured in suitable child safety seats that are secured to appropriate vehicle seats ⇨ *page 91*. Read and observe the important safety information pertaining to the use of child safety seats on the front passenger's seat ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 92*.

Examples of incorrect seating positions

Safety belts can only provide its optimal protection when they are routed correctly. Incorrect seating positions significantly reduce the protective functions of the safety belts and increase the risk of injury due to incorrect belt routing.

The following list includes examples of seating positions that could be dangerous for all vehicle occupants. This is not a complete list. The purpose is to provide examples to increase your awareness of the topic. The following points apply when the vehicle is in motion:

– Never stand inside the vehicle.
– Never stand on the seats.
– Never kneel on the seats.
– Never tilt your backrest too far back.
– Never lean against the instrument panel.
– Never lie down on the rear bench seat.
– Never sit only on the front section of the seat.
– Never sit sideways on the seat.
– Never lean against the window.
– Never place your feet out of the window.
– Never place your feet on the instrument panel.
– Never place your feet on the seat cushion.
– Never ride in the footwell.
– Never sit on the armrests.
– Never drive or ride in a seat without fastening your safety belt.
– Never ride in the luggage compartment.

WARNING

Incorrect seating positions, failure to wear a safety belt, or being too close to an airbag increase the risk of serious injury or death to vehicle occupants, especially if the airbags deploy and come into contact with occupants who are not seated correctly. Note the important information and warnings in the chapters for the topics given above.

Tips

– Save your seat profile* ⇨ *page 86*. This allows you to access your personal seat profile quickly and easily at any time.
– If you or other vehicle passengers have physical limitations that prevent sitting in a correct position, modifications to the vehicle may be necessary. For more information, contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility, or call Audi customer support at 1-800-822-2834.

Front seats

General information

Make sure that:

– You can press the pedals down completely when your legs are slightly bent
– The distance between your upper body and the steering wheel or instrument panel is at least 10 in (25 cm)
– The distance between your knees and the instrument panel is at least 4 in (10 cm)
– Your thighs are lightly supported by the front surface of the seat
– The backrest is in an upright position and your back is resting against it
– You have a sufficient view of the area around the vehicle
– You have a clear view of the instrument cluster, indicator lights, and the head-up display*

Seat settings menu: quick access

If you press on the image of the driver's or front passenger's seat in the climate control system menu ⇨ *page 104, fig. 98* ①, you will go directly to the seat settings for that seat.

WARNING

– If you are too close to the steering wheel or instrument panel, the airbag system cannot provide the optimum protection, which increases the risk of injury and death.
– To reduce the risk of injury in the event of sudden braking maneuvers or accidents, never drive with the backrest reclined very far. The airbag system and seat belts can only provide optimal protection when the backrest is in an upright position and the driver is wearing the seat belt correctly. If the backrest is angled back too far, the safety belt can shift to soft areas of the body, such as the stomach, which increases the risk of injury.
– To reduce the risk of an accident, only adjust the seats when the vehicle is stationary.
– Be careful when adjusting the seat. Lack of control or attention when adjusting can result in injuries due to pinching to vehicle occupants both in the front seats and rear seats.
– Never place objects in the driver's footwell. Objects could shift and enter the area around the pedals, which could prevent you from using them. You would then be unable to use the pedals if sudden driving or braking maneuvers were needed, which increases the risk of an accident.
– Make sure that the floor mats are always securely attached.
– To reduce the risk of an accident, never place additional floor mats or other floor covers over the installed floor mats, because this reduces the pedal's range of motion and can impair pedal operation.
– To reduce the risk of injury, never place your feet on the instrument panel, out of the window, or on the seat surfaces. This also applies to passengers in the rear seats.

Tips

If a seat is controlled by two different controls at the same time, for example by the buttons on the seat and on the MMI, the adjustment process will be automatically canceled.

Adjusting the front seats with buttons

You can adjust the basic settings using the buttons.

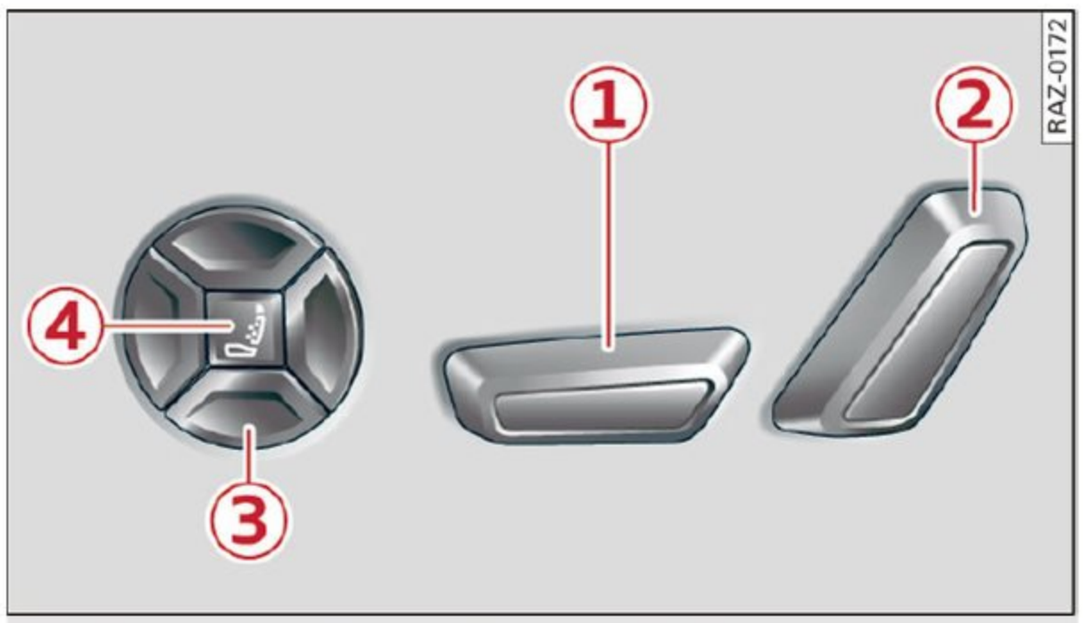


Fig. 60 Front seat: seat adjustment buttons

The settings depend on the vehicle equipment. ▶

Adjusting the seat position

- To adjust the seat forward or back, press the button (1) forward or backward.
- To move the seat up or down, press the button (1) upward or downward.
- To adjust the front or rear seat surfaces, press the front or rear part of the button (1) upward or downward.

Adjusting the backrests

- To adjust the backrest so that it is higher or lower, press the button (2) forward or backward.

Adjusting the head restraints

- See ⇨ *page 81*

Adjusting the lumbar support

- To adjust the curvature of the lumbar support, press the left or right button (3).
- To adjust the height of the lumbar support, press the upper or lower button (3).

Massage function

Switch the massage function on or off (4). Adjust the massage type and intensity ⇨ *page 75*

WARNING

The power front seats can also be adjusted when the ignition is switched off. To reduce the risk of injury, children should never be left unattended in the vehicle.

Adjusting the front seats in the MMI

You can adjust additional settings in the MMI.

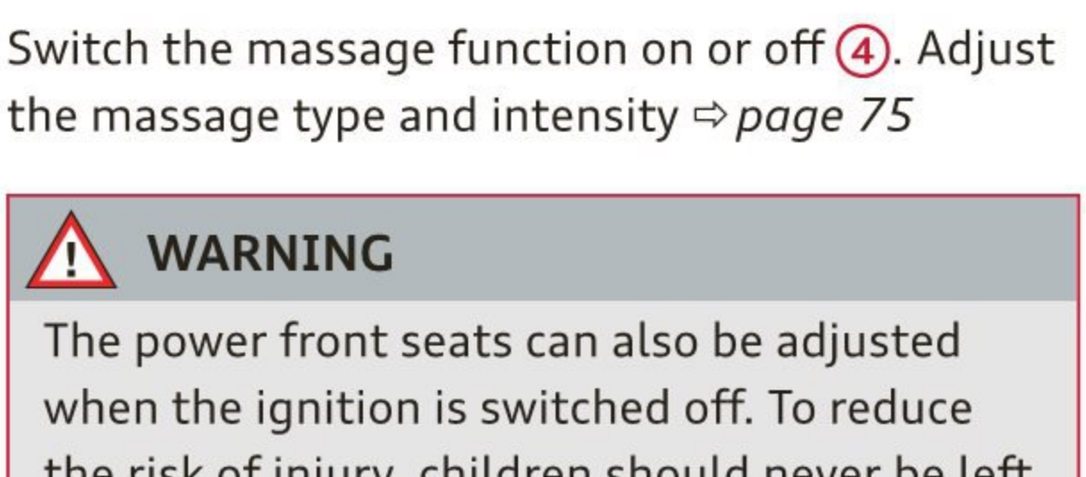


Fig. 61 Upper display: seat setting

The settings and the number of menus and buttons depend on the vehicle equipment.

Operating

Applies to: MMI

- Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Seats**.
- To access the various menus (3), swipe to the left or right.
- To switch between the driver's and front passenger's seat settings, press the 〉 or 〈 button (4).

The red color of the symbol (5) indicates which seat is being adjusted.

Seat adjustment

Applies to: MMI

- To select a seat setting, press a button (1) if necessary.
- Press the respective arrow (2) until the desired position is reached.

Upper backrest - you can angle the upper area of the backrest forward or back.

Side bolsters - you can increase or decrease the lateral support in the seat using the side bolsters on the seat surface and the backrest.

Upper thigh support - you can increase or decrease the upper thigh support.

Massage

See ⇨ *page 75*

Seat ventilation balance

The backrest and seat surface can be heated to different temperatures, depending on the position of the control ⇨ ⚠ *in Settings on page 107*.

- To adjust the seat temperature balance, slide the control upward or downward.

Additional seat settings

See ⇨ *page 75*

Tips

Applies to: reclining rear seats: Only the upper thigh support can be adjusted on the front passenger's seat.

Front seat massage function

Applies to: vehicles with massage function

Operating

Applies to: MMI

- To access the **Massage** menu, press the button ④ ⇨ *page 73, fig. 60*. Or:
- Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Seats** > **Massage**.

Switching the massage function on or off

Applies to: MMI

- To switch the massage function on or off, press the button ④ ⇨ *page 73, fig. 60*. Or:
- Press the **Start/Stop** button on the MMI.

Adjusting the massage type and intensity

Applies to: MMI

- To adjust the massage type, press the desired button on the MMI, for example **Wave**.
- To adjust the intensity of the massage, press the **Intensity** button on the MMI repeatedly until the desired level is activated.

Tips

The massage function switches off automatically after approximately 10 minutes.

Additional settings in the MMI

You can adjust additional settings and switch functions on or off in the MMI.

- Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Seats** > **Additional seat settings**.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the following options may be available.

Reset seat position

You can adjust the position of the front passenger's seat to match the driver's seat. The rear seats are set to a pre-defined position.

Driver's seat entry assistance

Entry assistance makes it easier to enter or exit the vehicle. The steering column will automatically move upward ⇨ *page 81*.

Requirement: the ignition must be switched off. The driver's seat moves back when the driver' door is opened. Some of the air in the side bolsters may be released.

Front passenger's seat entry assistance

Entry assistance makes it easier to enter or exit the vehicle.

Requirement: the ignition must be switched off. The front passenger's seat moves back when the front passenger' door is opened. Some of the air in the side bolsters may be released.

Rear seat entry assistance

If the function is switched on, the rear seat will automatically move all the way back when the door next to that seat is opened.

Passenger side rear seat adjustment

If the function is switched on, the front passenger's seat can be adjusted from the rear seat ⇨ *page 79*.

Rear seat upright/reclining position

You can adjust the upright and reclining position from the cockpit ⇨ ⚠ *in Adjusting seats with buttons on page 77*.

Adjusting the front passenger's seat from the driver's seat

The driver can move the front passenger's seat into various positions.

- Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Seats** > 〉.
- Applies to: MMI: To switch the function on, press the button. The lower edge of the button will turn red.
- You will then be able to adjust the front passenger's seat using the driver's seat buttons ⇨ *page 73, fig. 60*.

Tips

The function switches off automatically when you exit the menu.

Front center armrest

Applies to: vehicles with a front center armrest

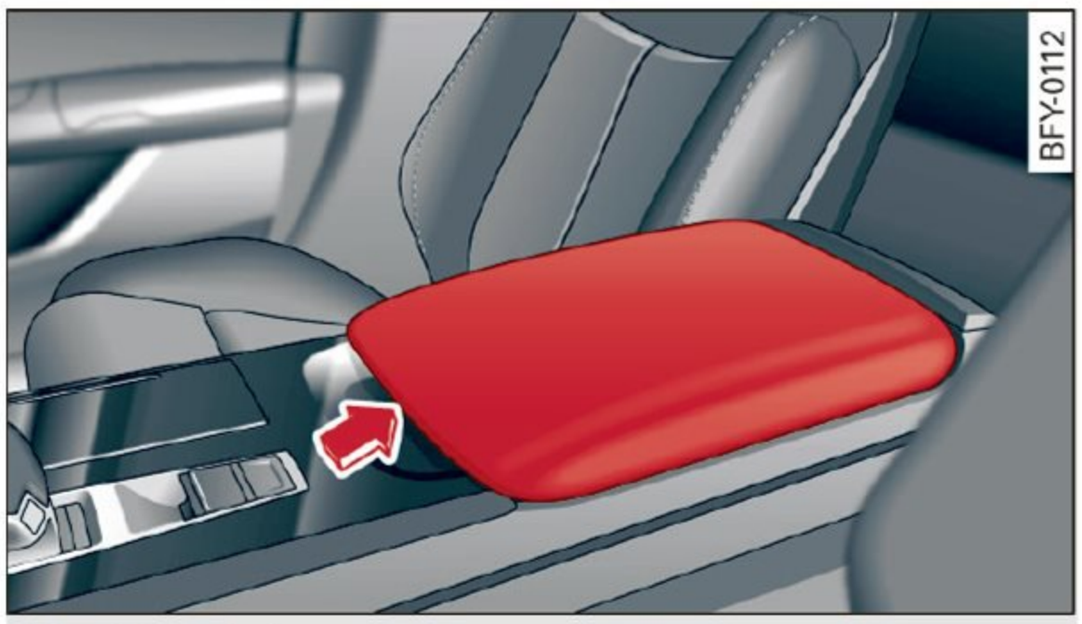


Fig. 62 Cockpit: center armrest

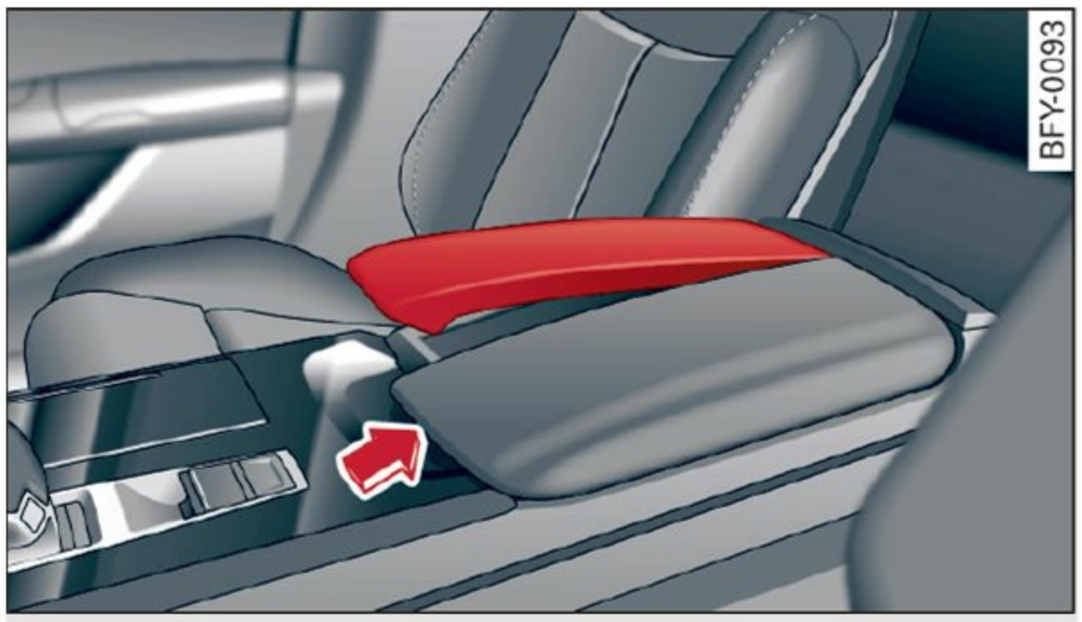


Fig. 63 Cockpit: divided center armrest*

Opening the storage compartment

On the undivided center armrest, press and hold the button in the direction of the arrow to open the storage compartment ⇨ *fig. 62*.

► Move the armrest upward.

Adjusting the divided center armrest

Applies to: vehicles with divided center armrest

► To move the armrest forward and up, press the button in the direction of the arrow and pull the armrest into the desired position at the same time ⇨ *fig. 63*.
► To bring the armrest back to the original position, press the button in the direction of the arrow and slide the armrest downward and toward the rear.

WARNING

– In certain positions, the front center armrest can interfere with the driver’s arm movement, which increases the risk of injury.
– Applies to: vehicles with front center armrest The center armrest must remain closed while driving. Otherwise, the protective function of the front center airbag could be impaired because it deploys from the driver's seat backrest. This increases the risk of injury.

Rear seats

General information

Applies to: vehicles with power adjustable rear seats

WARNING

– The power seats can also be adjusted when the ignition is switched off. To reduce the risk of injury, children should never be left unattended in the vehicle for this reason.
– Be careful when adjusting the seat. Unsupervised or careless seat adjustment could cause parts of the body to get pinched, which increases the risk of injury.

Note

Before adjusting the seat position, you must remove the retainers for the LATCH child safety seat restraint system, if installed.

Tips

If a seat is controlled by two different controls at the same time, for example by the buttons on the seat and on the MMI, the adjustment process will be automatically canceled.

Adjusting seats with buttons

Applies to: vehicles with power adjustable rear seats

You can adjust the basic settings using the buttons.

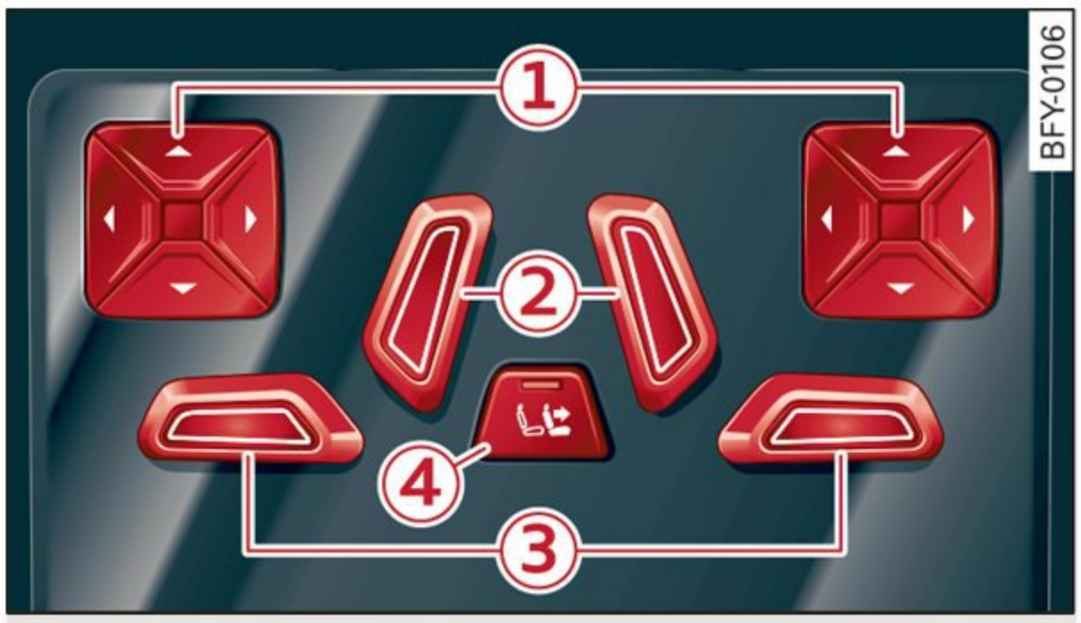


Fig. 64 Rear center armrest/full-length center console: seat adjustment buttons

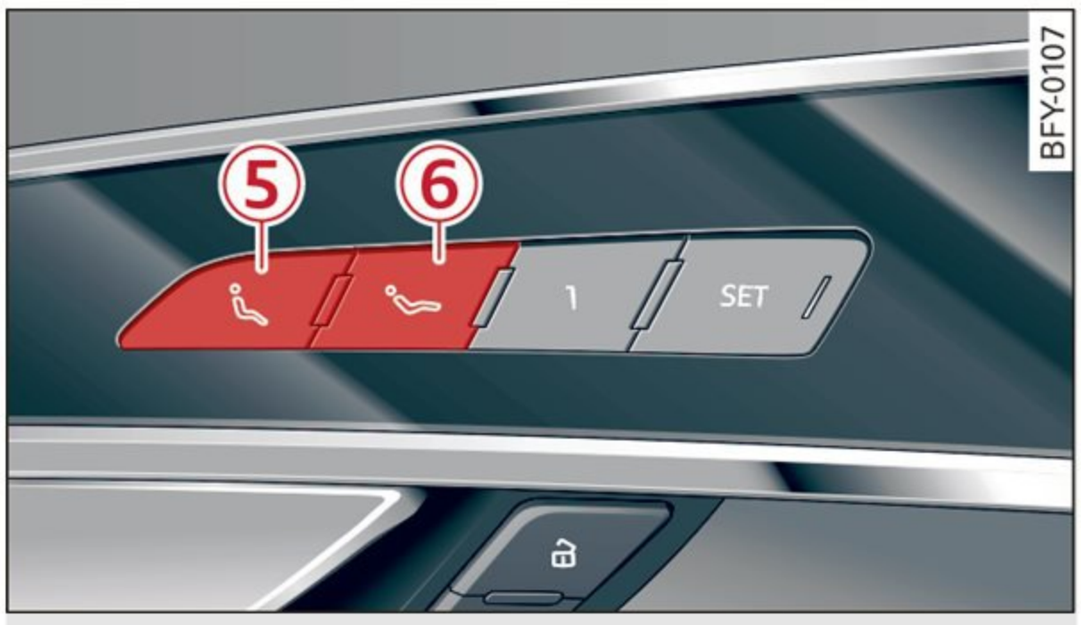


Fig. 65 Rear door: buttons for reclined/upright position

The settings depend on the vehicle equipment.

Adjusting the lumbar support

- To adjust the curvature of the lumbar support, press the left or right button (1).
- To adjust the height of the lumbar support, press the upper or lower button (1).

Adjusting the backrest angle

- To adjust the backrest so that it is higher or lower, press the button (2) forward or backward.

Adjusting the head restraints

- See ⇨ *page 82*

Adjusting the seat position

- To adjust the seat forward or back, press the button (3) forward or back. The backrest will automatically adjust with it.
- To move the seat up or down, press the button (3) upward or downward.

Selecting the reclining position

- To select the reclining position, press and hold the button (6) until the seat reaches its end position.
- Applies to: reclining rear seats: If you select the reclining position, the front passenger's seat will also move forward, its head restraint will fold forward, and its backrest will lower. Depending on the last setting in the Rear Seat Remote*, the leg support may fold out and the Audi tablet* may tilt forward. The front passenger's seat may no longer be used if it is in the reclining position.
- Applies to: reclining rear seats: In the reclining position, you can adjust the Audi tablet or the foot massage, for example ⇨ *page 78*.

Selecting the upright position

- To select the upright position, press and hold the button (5) until the seat reaches its end position.
- Applies to: reclining rear seats: When you adjust to the upright position, the leg support will also fold in, the front passenger's seat will move back to its original position, and the head restraint will adjust to the upright position ⇨ ⚠.

Adjusting the front passenger's seat (4)

See ⇨ *page 79*

⚠ WARNING

Applies to: reclining rear seats:

- Due to the risk of fatal injury, the front passenger's seat must not be used as a seat when it is in the reclining position.
- Due to the risk of injury, never select the reclining position when the front passenger's seat is occupied.
- Do not tilt the Audi tablet* if the driver's view of the right exterior mirror will be obstructed.

Tips

– Applies to: reclining rear seats and Audi tablet: When adjusting the Audi tablet, make sure the driver has a clear view of the exterior mirrors. If so, confirm the prompt in the MMI. If the prompt is not confirmed, the Audi tablet will return to the upright position.
– If you *cannot* adjust the reclining seat* or the front passenger's seat from the rear, it is possible that:
– The child safety lock may be switched on. This is the case if the button ⇨ *page 54* or the button ⇨ *page 53* illuminates in the driver's door.
– the front passenger's seat adjustment for the rear seats may be switched off in the MMI ⇨ *page 75*.

Adjusting seats with the Rear Seat Remote

Applies to: vehicles with Rear Seat Remote

You can adjust the rear seat using the Rear Seat Remote.

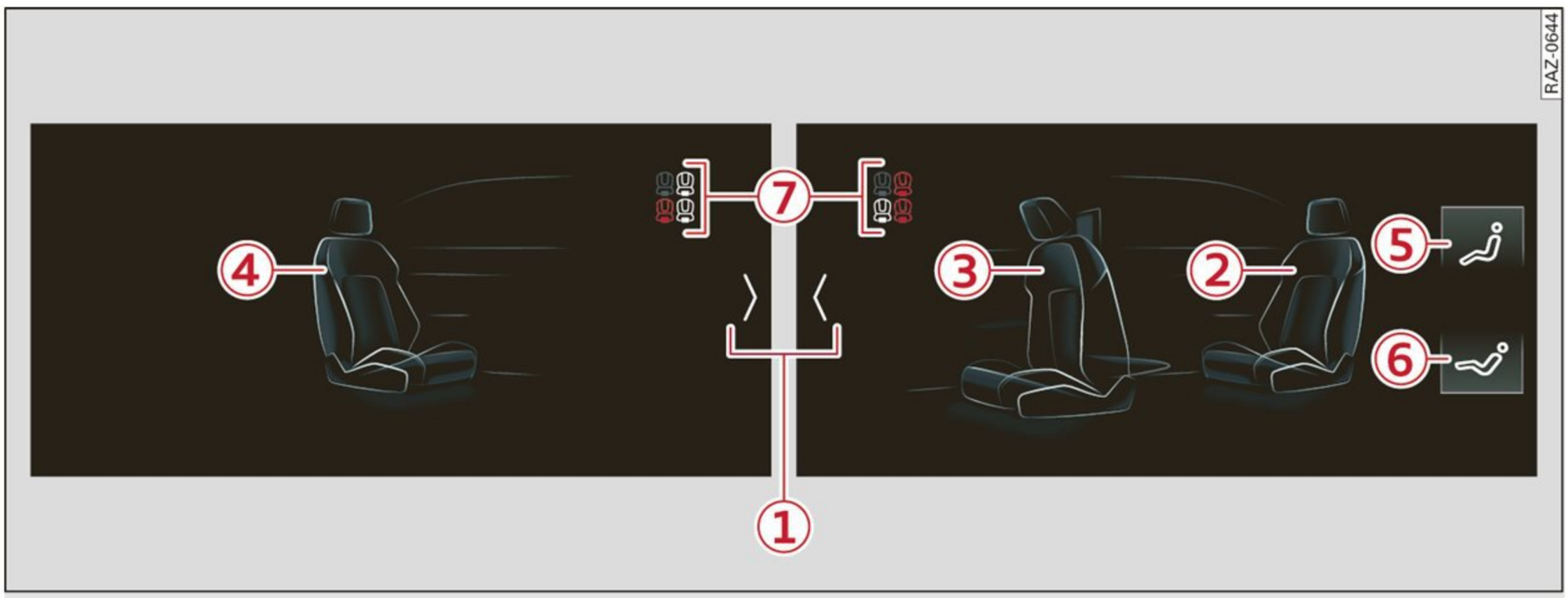


Fig. 66 Rear Seat Remote: selection of the seat and the reclining/upright position to be adjusted.

Read and follow the important safety precautions about the reclining rear seats* ⇨ ⚠ *in Adjusting seats with buttons on page 77*.

For general use of the Rear Seat Remote, read the information in ⇨ *page 24*.

Operating

Applies to: Rear Seat Remote

- ▸ Press **SEATS** on the home screen.
- ▸ To display the various seats, press the button ①.

The red color of the symbol ⑦ indicates which seat is being adjusted.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the following settings may be available.

Seat adjustment

② Rear seat on the front passenger's side

③ Front passenger's seat

④ Rear seat on the driver's side

- ▸ Press the picture of the desired seat.
- ▸ To select a seat setting, press a button if necessary, for example .
- ▸ Press the respective arrow until the desired position is reached.

Massage

- ▸ Press the picture of the desired seat.
- ▸ To switch the massage function on or off, press the **Start/Stop** button. ▶

- ▸ To adjust the massage type, press the desired button, such as **Wave**.
- ▸ To adjust the intensity of the massage, press the **Intensity** button repeatedly until the desired level is activated.
- ▸ Applies to: foot massage on the front passenger's seat: Requirement: the leg support must be folded out. To adjust the foot size, press the button and select **S**, **M**, or **L**. You can adjust the foot heating in the climate control menu ⇨ *page 106*.

Seat ventilation balance

The backrest and seat surface can be heated to different temperatures, depending on the position of the control.

- ▸ To adjust the seat temperature balance, slide the control upward or downward.

Possible settings:

Seat setting – rear seat

– Raise or lower the head restraints
– Backrest angle
– Lumbar support
– Move the seat forward or back
– Seat angle
– Reclining position ⑤ ⇨ *page 77*
– Upright position ⑥ ⇨ *page 77*

Seat setting – front passenger's seat

See ⇨ *page 79, Adjusting the front passenger's seat from the rear*

Massage

– Massage function on or off
– Massage type
– Massage intensity
– Applies to foot massage on the front passenger's seat: Foot size

Seat ventilation balance

– Seat heating

Note

– Do not wear shoes when using the foot massage and the leg support.
– Do not place any objects on the leg support.
– Do not exceed the maximum load of 110 lb.

Tips

The massage function switches off automatically after approximately 10 minutes.

Adjusting the front passenger's seat from the rear

Applies to: vehicles with power adjustable rear seats

Depending on the equipment, you may be able to adjust the front passenger's seat using the buttons in the center armrest or center console and the Rear Seat Remote.

The settings depend on the vehicle equipment.

Requirements

- ▸ Read and follow the important safety precautions about the reclining rear seats* ⇨ ⚠ *in Adjusting seats with buttons on page 77*.
- ▸ Make sure **Passenger side rear seat adjustment** is switched on in the MMI ⇨ *page 75*.
- ▸ To activate the front passenger's seat adjustment, press the button ④ ⇨ *page 77, fig. 64*. The LED in the button will turn on.
- ▸ Applies to: Rear Seat Remote: Select on the home screen: **SEATS** and select the front passenger's seat settings ③ ⇨ *page 78, fig. 66*.

Adjusting the head restraints

See ⇨ *page 82*

Adjusting the Audi tablet

Applies to: reclining seat system with Audi tablet

See ⇨ *page 30*

Raising or lowering the backrest

- ▸ Applies to: buttons in the center console or center armrest: Press the button ② ⇨ *page 77, fig. 64*.
- ▸ Applies to: Rear Seat Remote: Press the button. Press the respective arrow until the desired position is reached.

Adjusting the leg support

Applies to: reclining rear seats

Requirement: the reclining position must be selected. ▶

- Applies to: Rear Seat Remote: Press the button to fold the leg support out or in. Press the respective arrow until the desired position is reached.
- To adjust the height or depth of the leg support, adjust the front passenger's seat forward/back or upward/downward.
- To make the foot massage area higher or lower, adjust the angle of the front passenger's seat backrest.

Moving the front passenger's seat forward/back or upward/downward

- Applies to: buttons in the center armrest/center console: Press the button (3) ⇨ *page 77, fig. 64* forward/backward or upward/downward.
- Applies to: Rear Seat Remote: Press the or button. Press the respective arrow until the desired position is reached.

WARNING

Applies to: reclining seats: To reduce the risk of injury, make sure the area between the leg support and the front passenger's seat backrest is clear before folding in the leg support.

Footrests in rear

Applies to: vehicles with footrests in rear

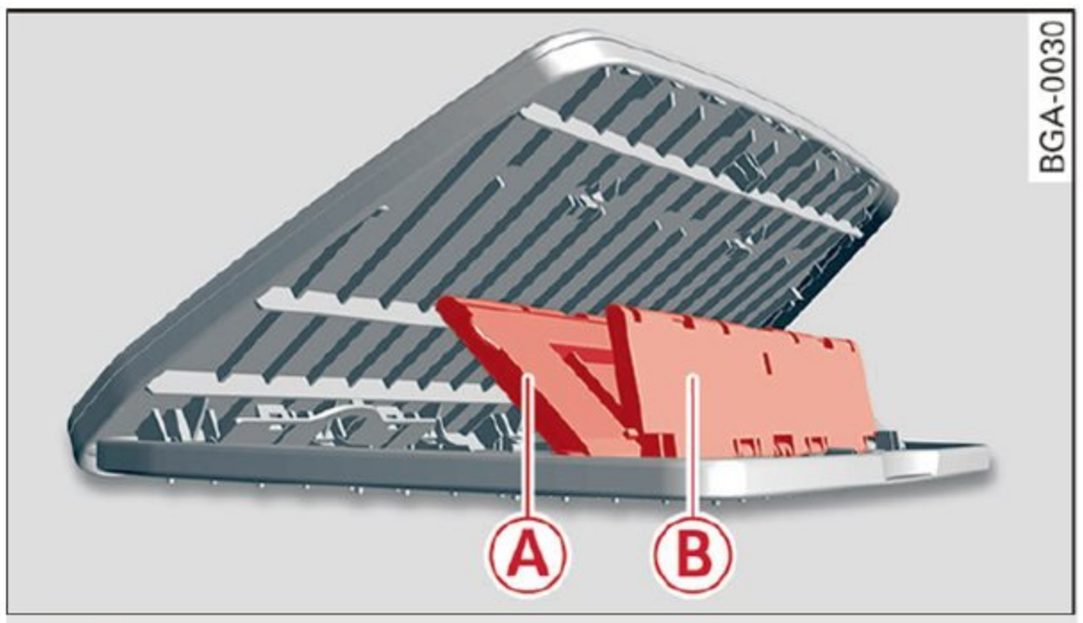


Fig. 67 Rear footwell: folding the footrest out

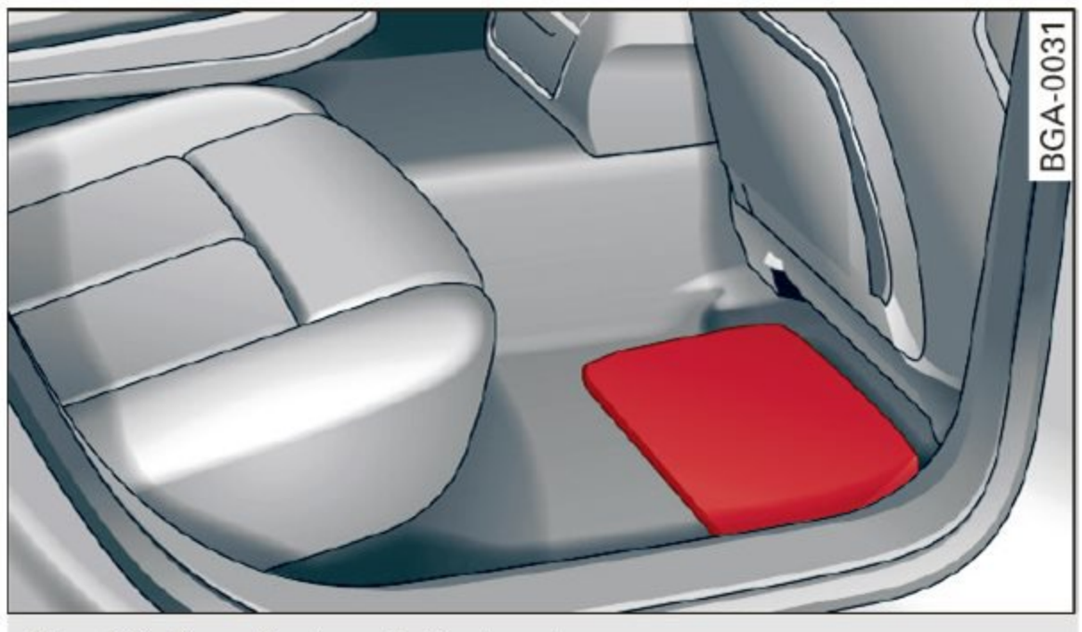


Fig. 68 Rear footwell: footrest

The angle of the footrest can be adjusted to two positions ⇨ *fig. 67*:

(A) Higher angle

(B) Lower angle

Note

To reduce the risk of damaging the footrests, you must make sure the footrests under the seat will not be crushed when adjusting the driver's or front passenger's seat.

Full-length center console

Applies to: vehicles with full-length center console

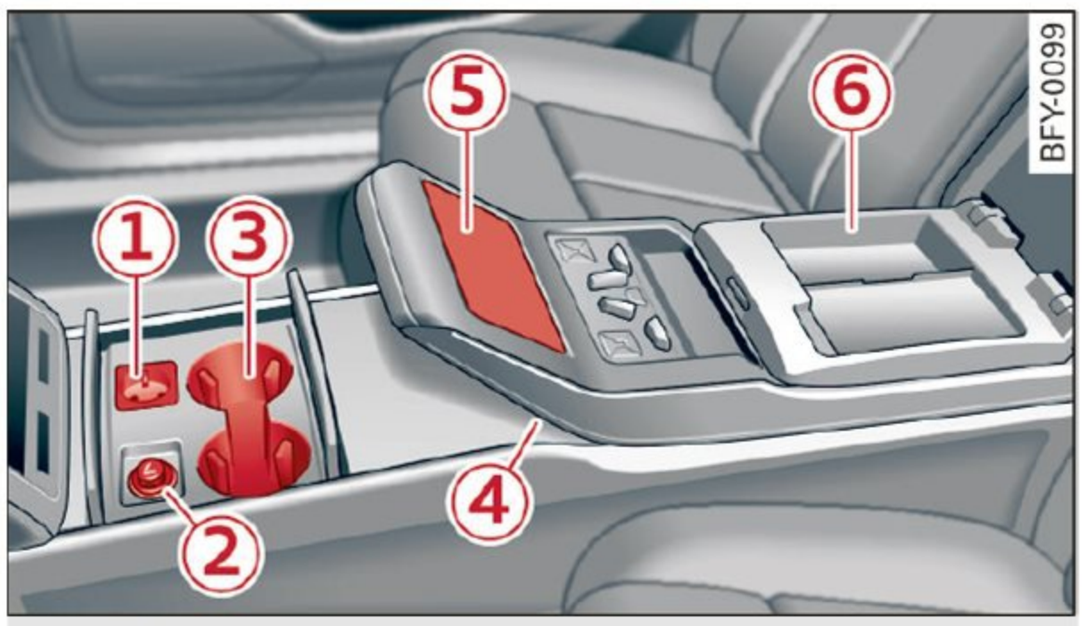


Fig. 69 Rear: full-length center console

The functions depend on the vehicle equipment.

(1) AC socket ⇨ *page 97*

(2) 12 volt socket ⇨ *page 97*

(3) Cup holder ⇨ *page 98*

(4) Folding tray table ⇨ *page 100*

(5) Rear Seat Remote holder ⇨ *page 24*

(6) Center armrest with storage compartment: press the button on the center armrest and fold the armrest upward.

Steering wheel

General information

Make sure that:

– The distance between your upper body and the steering wheel is at least 10 in (25 cm)
– Your arms are bent slightly at the elbows
– You have a sufficient view of the area around the vehicle and can always keep the instrument cluster and head-up display* in view
– You are always holding the steering wheel with both hands on the outer edge at the sides (9:00 and 3:00 position) when driving

WARNING

– If you are too close to the steering wheel, the driver's airbag cannot provide optimum protection, which increases the risk of injury or death.
– Never hold the steering wheel in the 12:00 position or in any other way, such as holding the center of the steering wheel. Otherwise, your arms, hands, and head could be injured in the event that the driver's airbag deploys.

Adjusting the steering wheel position

The steering wheel position can be adjusted electrically up/down and forward/back.

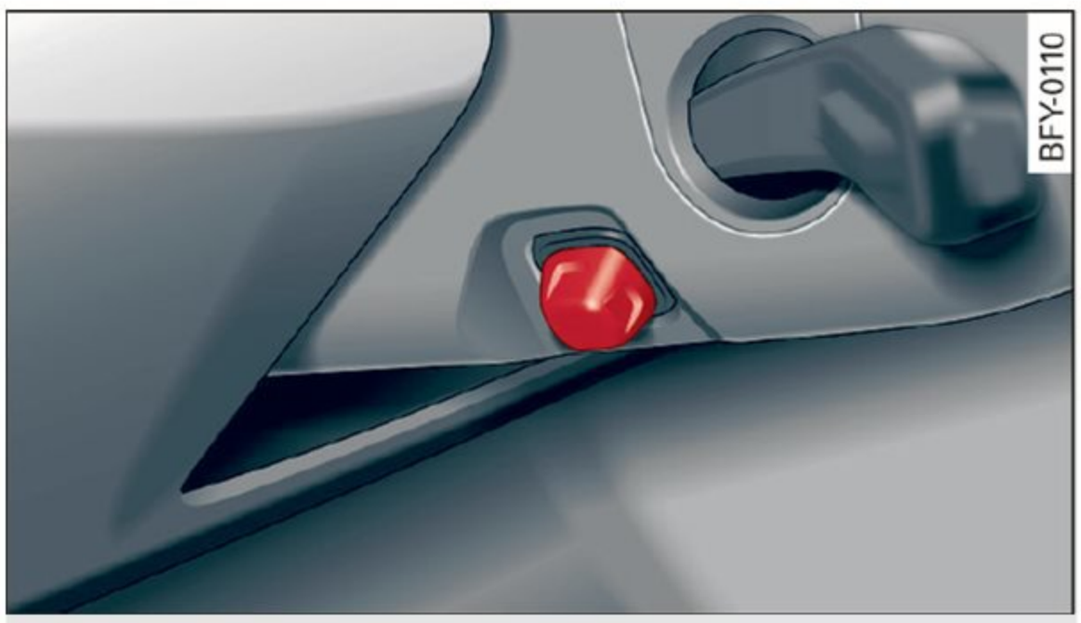


Fig. 70 Steering column: switch for adjusting the steering wheel position

▸ To move the steering wheel up or down, press the switch upward or downward.
▸ To move the steering wheel forward or back, press the switch forward or back.

The steering wheel can also be adjusted when the ignition is switched off.

In vehicles with memory function*, the steering column settings are stored together with the seat position.

Tips

The entry assistance makes entering and exiting the vehicle easier, because the steering column moves upward into the park position when the ignition is switched off. After entering the vehicle, the steering column returns to the stored position once the ignition is switched on. To use entry assistance, select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Seats** > **Additional seat settings** > **Driver seat entry assistance**.

Head restraints

General information

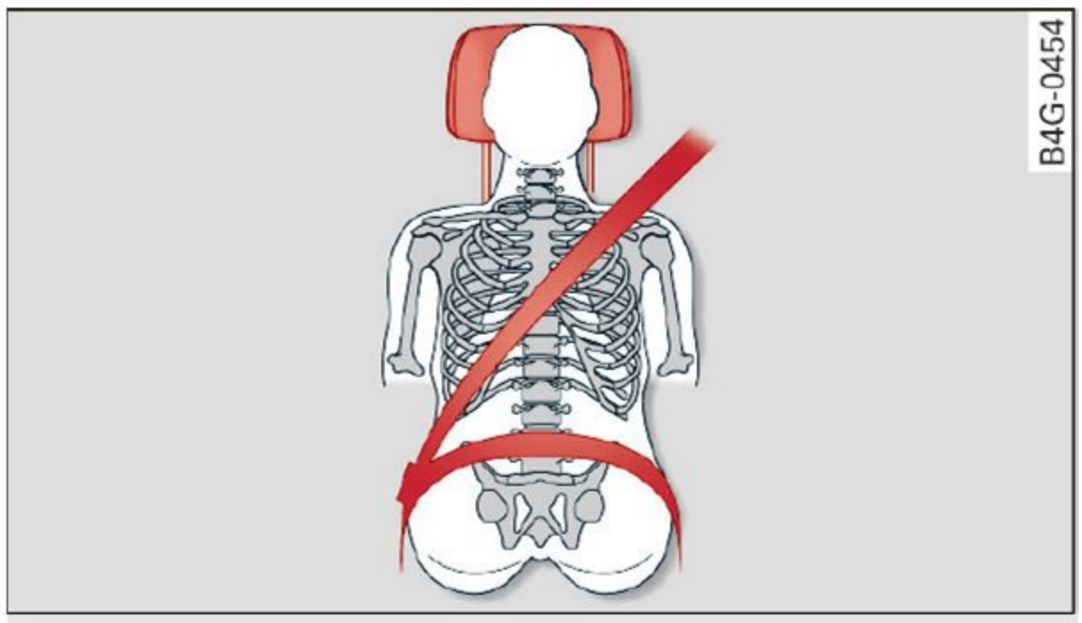


Fig. 71 Correctly adjusted head restraints

Make sure that:

– The upper edge of the head restraint is as even as possible with the top of your head
– The head restraint is as close as possible to the back of your head
– The head restraints on the occupied rear seats are positioned all the way up or folded upward

WARNING

– There is one head restraint for each seat. All vehicle occupants must adjust the head restraint correctly before every trip. Having head restraints that are not adjusted correctly or not installed in the vehicle increases the risk of a neck injury during sudden or ▶

unexpected driving or braking maneuvers or in a collision.

– Only remove the rear seat head restraints if it is necessary to install a child safety seat ⇨ *page 91*. Stow the removed head restraints securely, for example in the luggage compartment. Reinstall the head restraints immediately once the child safety seat has been removed. Driving without head restraints increases the risk of serious neck injuries.
– Depending on the equipment, the front head restraints may be active head restraints. If triggered, a part of the head restraint will move several inches forward to provide additional support to the head. If triggered, have the head restraints serviced immediately by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Front head restraints

Power adjustable head restraints

Applies to: vehicles with power adjustable head restraints

▸ Upward or downward: slide the button ② ⇨ *page 73, fig. 60* upward or downward.

Tips

Applies to: vehicles with power adjustable head restraints: To prevent the head restraints from running into the headliner, the power head restraints* automatically move forward or upward when the seat is adjusted.

Rear head restraints

Applies to: vehicles with adjustable head restraints

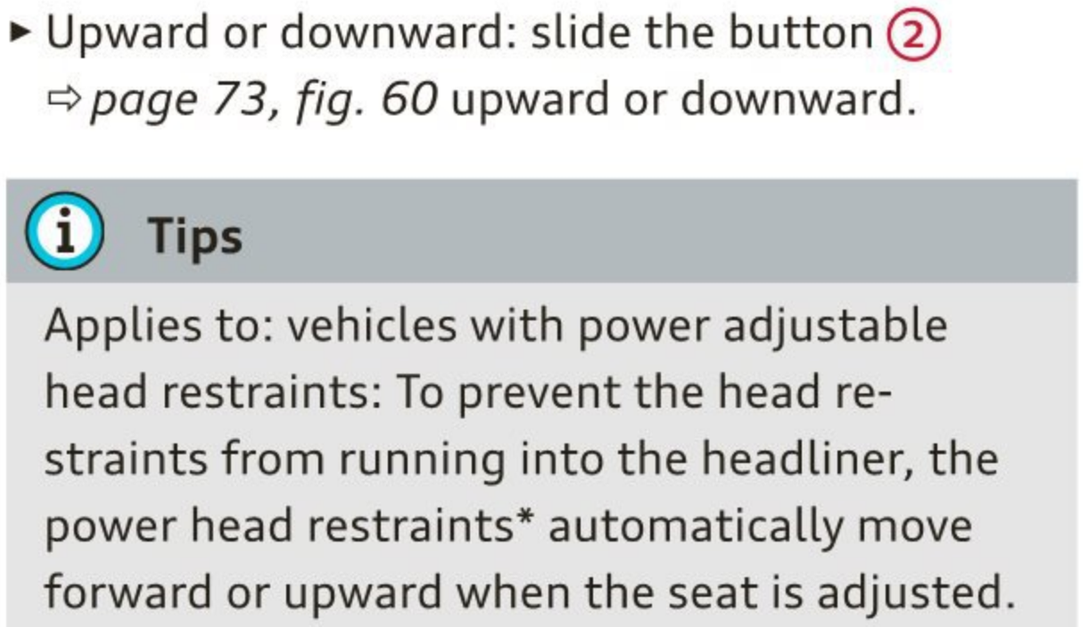


Fig. 72 Rear seat: adjusting or removing the head restraint (example)

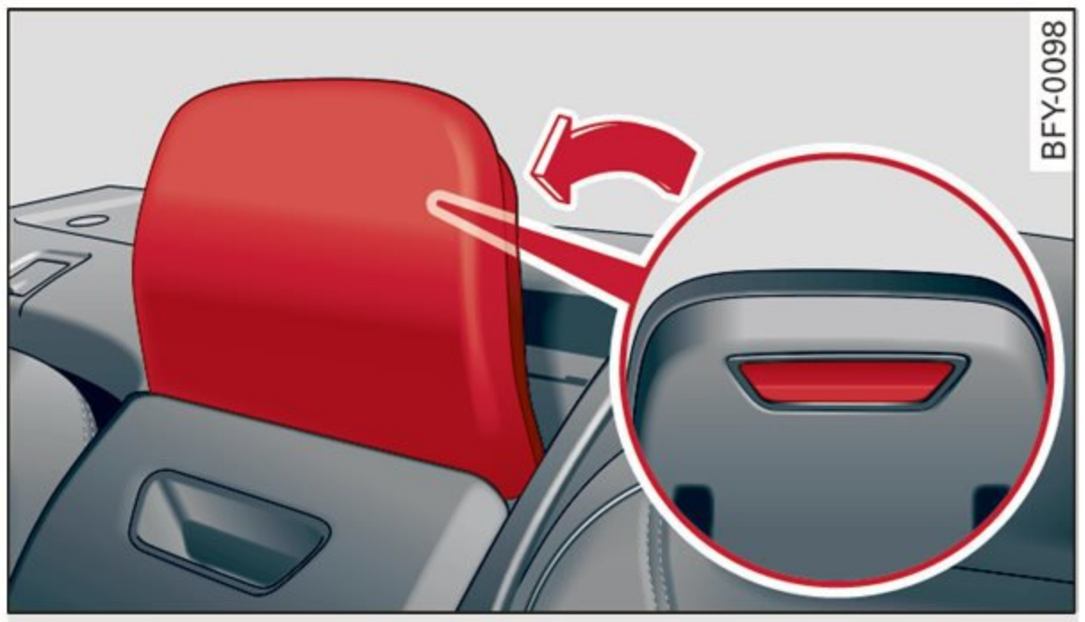


Fig. 73 Center rear seat: adjusting the head restraint (example)

Adjusting the head restraints on the outer rear seats

Applies to: vehicles with manually adjustable head restraints

▸ Upward: slide the head restraint upward until it latches into place.
▸ Downward: press the button on the head restraint base ① ⇨ *fig. 72* and slide the head restraint downward. Release the button and slide the head restraint farther until it locks into place.

Applies to: vehicles with power adjustable head restraints

▸ Upward or downward: slide the button ② ⇨ *page 77, fig. 64* forward or backward. Or:
▸ Applies to: Rear Seat Remote: Upward or downward: select on the home screen: **Seats** > **Setting** and press on the picture of the head restraint for the respective seat. Press the up or down arrows until the desired position is reached.

Center rear seat head restraint

Applies to: vehicles with center rear seat

▸ If the center rear seat is occupied, fold the head restraint forward until it locks into place ⇨ *fig. 73*.
▸ To fold the head restraint downward, press the button at the rear side of the head restraint and fold the head restraint toward the rear.

Removing the head restraints

Applies to: vehicles with removable head restraints

▸ Move the head restraint upward all the way.
▸ Press the release point on the head restraint base ② ⇨ *fig. 72* using the mechanical key ⇨ *page 46, Key set* and press the button ①. Pull the head restraint out of the backrest at ▶

the same time ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 81*.

Installing the head restraints

Applies to: vehicles with removable head restraints

- ▸ Slide the posts on the head restraint down into the guides until the posts click into place.
- ▸ Press the button (1) and slide the head restraint all the way down. You should not be able to remove the head restraint from the backrest without pressing the button.

Safety belts

General information

Each seat is equipped with a three-point safety belt. Safety belts that are worn correctly are the most effective way to reduce the risk of serious or fatal injuries in a collision. Therefore, wear your safety belt correctly and make sure that all vehicle occupants also wear their safety belts correctly when the vehicle is moving.

Even though your vehicle is equipped with an airbag system, all vehicle occupants must still always wear their safety belts. In addition to their normal protective function, safety belts also hold vehicle occupants in the correct seating position in the event of a collision so that the airbags can deploy correctly and provide additional protection. Safety belts provide protection during collisions when the airbags do not deploy or if they have already deployed.

⚠ WARNING

The risk of serious or fatal injury increases if the safety belt is not fastened, if it is worn incorrectly, or if it is damaged.

– All vehicle occupants, including the driver, must fasten their safety belts correctly before every trip and must always keep their safety belts fastened during the trip, regardless of whether the seat is equipped with an airbag or not. This also applies to to children that are seated in a child safety seat that is appropriate for their weight and age and that is secured with a safety belt.
– In the event a collision, vehicle occupants that are not wearing safety belts could be propelled through the vehicle interior and collide with vehicle components, such as the steering wheel, instrument panel, windshield, or doors. In some situations, vehicle occupants could also be ejected from the vehicle. Vehicle occupants in the rear seats who do not wear safety belts not only endanger themselves, but also other people in the vehicle.
– Only one person may be fastened with a safety belt at a time. Never secure more than one person, including children, with a single safety belt.
– Never allow children or infants to ride on another person's lap and be belted into the safety belt with them.
– Insert the belt buckle only in the belt latch belonging to the corresponding seat, so that the protective function is not impaired.
– To ensure the maximum protective function of the safety belts, all vehicle passengers must sit in the correct seating position ⇨*page 73*.
– Check the condition of your vehicle’s safety belts regularly. If you find damage to the belt webbing, the belt connections, the retractor, or the buckle, have the damaged safety belt replaced by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
– The safety belts must not be removed or modified in any way. Do not attempt to repair the safety belts yourself.
– Safety belts that are strained during an accident, and thus stretched, must be replaced by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

4N0012721BB

Correct safety belt positioning

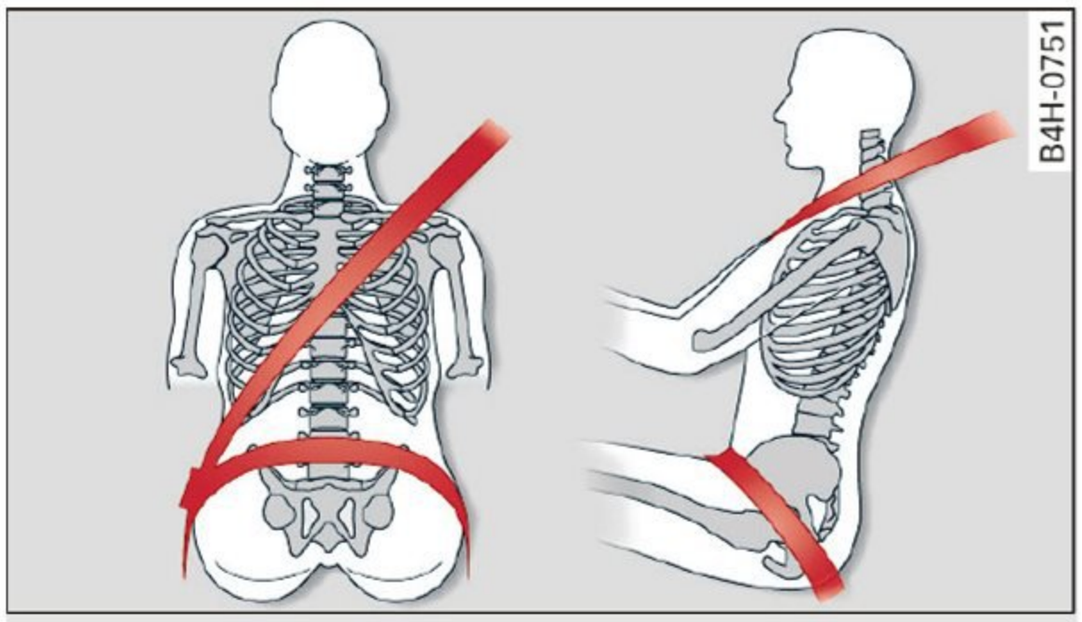


Fig. 74 Lap/shoulder belt positioning



Fig. 75 Safety belt positioning for pregnant women

Fastened safety belts only offer optimal protection during an accident and reduce the risk of serious injury or death when they are positioned correctly. Furthermore, the correct safety belt position holds the vehicle occupant in place so that a deployed airbag can provide maximum protection. Therefore, always fasten the safety belt and make sure it is positioned correctly ⇨ *fig. 74*.

To position the safety belt correctly, make sure that:

– The lap portion of the safety belt lies across the lap
– The shoulder portion of the safety belt lies over the center of the shoulder
– The safety belt always rests flat and securely on the body

For pregnant women, the safety belt must rest evenly across the chest and as low and flat as possible on the lap, so that no pressure is applied to the lower abdomen. This should be done throughout the entire pregnancy ⇨ *fig. 75*.

WARNING

Incorrect safety belt positioning can cause serious injury in the event of an accident or during sudden braking or driving maneuvers.

– Never drive with the backrest reclined extremely far. The more the backrest is tilted back, the greater the risk of injury due to the safety belt being routed incorrectly.
– The safety belt itself or a lose safety belt can cause serious injuries if it shifts onto soft areas of the body, such as the stomach.
– The shoulder portion of the safety belt must lie over the center of the shoulder and chest, and never under the arm, behind the back, or across the neck or face.
– The lap portion of the safety belt must lie across the lap and never over the stomach.
– The safety belt must lie flat and securely on the upper part of the body and the lap.
– The belt webbing must not be pinched or twisted, or rub against sharp edges.
– If the safety belt height is set incorrectly and/or the safety belt is routed incorrectly, then the safety belt's protective function will be impaired in the event of an accident. Make sure the safety belt is at the right height and is routed correctly for the passenger using it.
– A safety belt that is too loose may lead to injuries during an accident, because your body will move farther forward due to kinetic energy and will be stopped abruptly by the belt.
– Heavily bulky, loose clothing (for example, a coat over a sports jacket) may prevent the seat and safety belts from functioning correctly.
– Do not position the safety belt over hard or breakable objects (such as glasses, pens, etc.).
– The lap belt portion of the safety belt must sit as low as possible on the lap of pregnant women and lie flat under the belly.

Fastening and unfastening safety belts

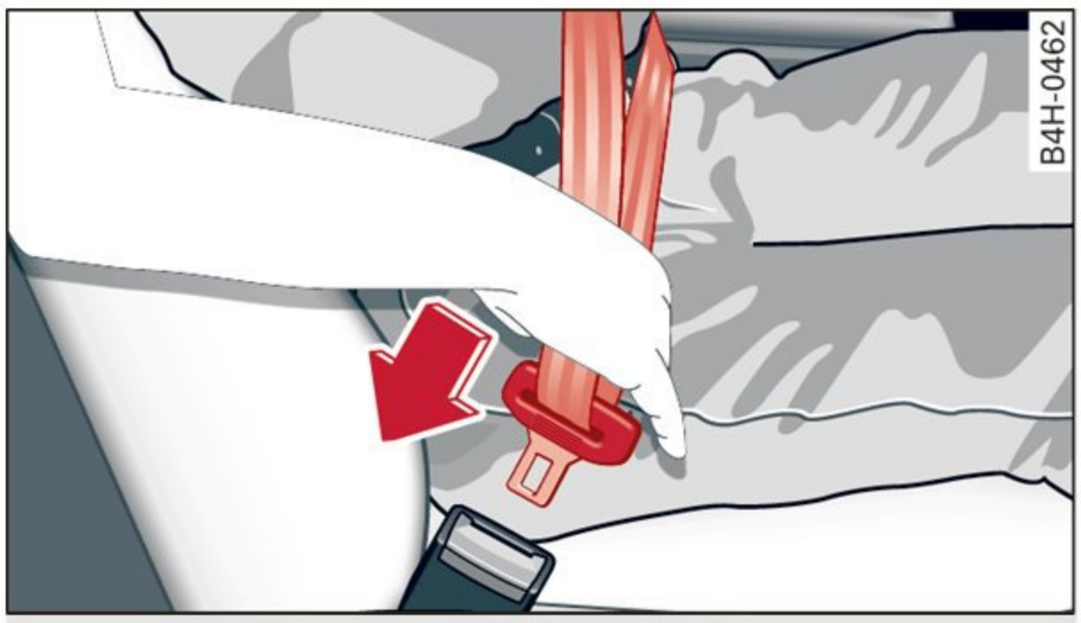


Fig. 76 Belt buckle and belt latch

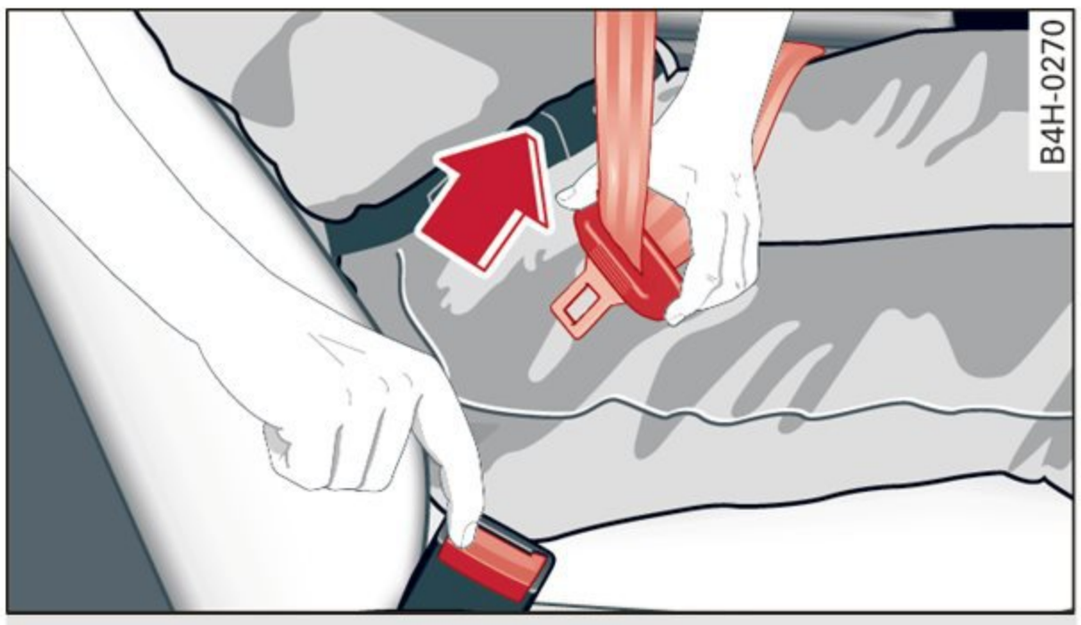


Fig. 77 Releasing the belt buckle from the belt latch

Follow the safety precautions ⇨ *page 83*.

Fastening the safety belt

- ▸ Pull the safety belt by the belt buckle evenly across your chest and lap.
- ▸ Insert the belt buckle in the belt latch belonging to the seat until it audibly engages ⇨ *fig. 76*.
- ▸ Pull on the belt to make sure that the belt is securely locked in the latch.

Unfastening the safety belt

- ▸ Press the red button on the belt latch ⇨ *fig. 77*. The belt buckle will pop out.
- ▸ Guide the belt back by hand so that the safety belt can roll up more easily.

Safety belt monitoring system

– If the indicator light turns on or flashes, a safety belt is not fastened or it has been unfastened while the vehicle is in motion. Above certain speeds, additional warning tones will sound.

Depending on the equipment, the safety belts in the rear may also be monitored using the following indicator lights:

– If this indicator light turns on, the safety belt for the corresponding rear seat is not fastened.

– If this indicator light turns on, the safety belt for the rear seat has been fastened.

Belt retractor lock

All safety belts are equipped with a belt retractor lock, except for the safety belt on the driver's seat.

- – If you secure a child safety seat with a safety belt, the belt retractor lock on the safety belt may need to be activated. Follow the instructions from the child safety seat manufacturer.
- – When a vehicle passenger has fastened a safety belt, the belt retractor lock should not be activated. If the belt retractor lock has been activated unexpectedly, deactivate it.

Deactivating or activating the belt retractor lock ⇨ *page 95*.

Adjusting the height of the safety belt

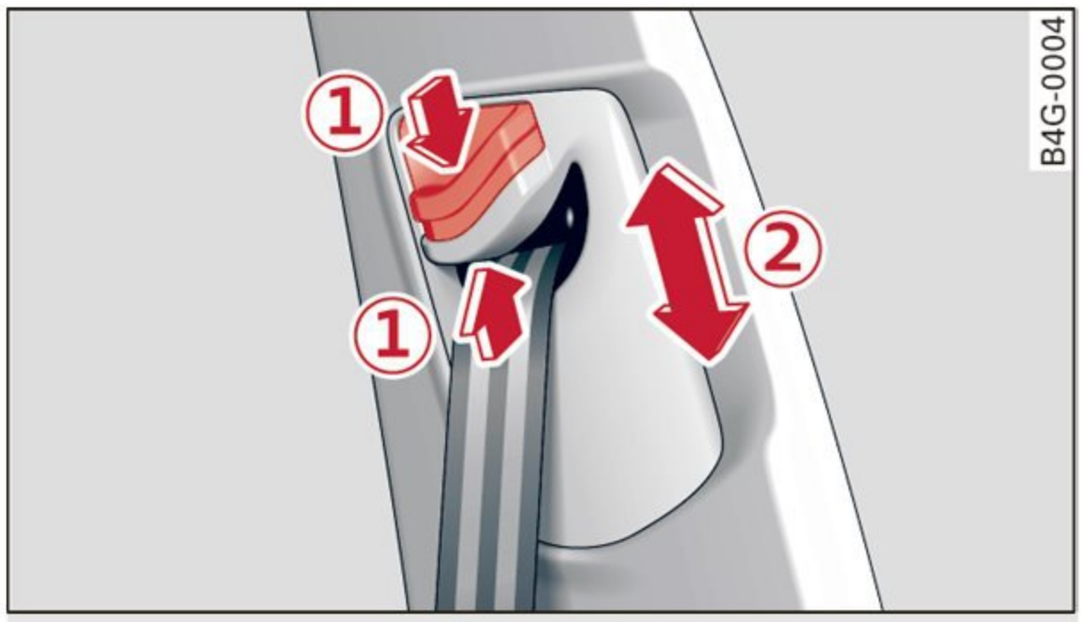


Fig. 78 Belt height adjustment for the front seats - safety belt relay

- ▸ To move the belt higher, slide the safety belt relay ② upward.
- ▸ To move the belt lower, press the release button ① and slide the safety belt relay ② downward.
- ▸ To check if the safety belt relay is securely locked in place, pull firmly on the belt.

Tips

You can also adjust the height of the front seats to change the position of the safety belts.

Additional safety belt functions

Safety belt retractor

The safety belts are equipped with an automatic belt retractor. This automatic retractor allows the safety belt to be pulled all the way out when the belt is pulled slowly. However, the automatic retractor locks during sudden braking maneuvers. It also locks the belts when accelerating, driving uphill, and driving around curves.

Belt force limiter

Safety belts with belt force limiters reduce the force placed on the body by the safety belts during a collision.

Safety belt pretensioners

Safety belts may be tightened with reversible belt tensioners when you start driving and in certain driving situations. If the safety belt is too loose, it will be tightened so that the belt will rest closer to the body.

In some collisions, pyrotechnic belt tensioners may secure the safety belts so that they cannot loosen. This reduces forward movement by the vehicle passengers.

WARNING

The pyrotechnic system can only provide protection during one collision. If the pyrotechnic belt tensioners deploy, the pretensioning system must be replaced by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Tips

Smoke may be released when pyrotechnic belt tensioners deploy. This is not a sign of a vehicle fire.

Memory function

General information

Applies to: vehicles with memory function

With the memory function, you can save and call up seat profiles using the memory buttons in the door trim panel.

Depending on the equipment, it may be possible to store the following settings:

- **Driver's seat:** seat, head restraint*, steering wheel, exterior mirrors
- **Front passenger's seat:** seat, head restraint
- **Outer rear seats*:** seat

Storing and recalling a seat profile

Applies to: vehicles with memory function



Fig. 79 Door trim panel: memory function buttons

Storing a seat profile

- ▸ Press the SET button. If the LED in the button turns on, a seat profile can be stored.
- ▸ Push one of the numbered memory buttons. A tone confirms that the settings were stored.

Recalling a seat profile

- ▸ When the a door is open and the ignition is switched off, press the memory button once briefly. The seat will be fully adjusted to the settings in the seat profile.
- ▸ If the door is closed or the ignition is switched on, press and hold the memory button until the seat is fully adjusted to the settings in the seat profile.

WARNING

- To reduce the risk of an accident, the seat setting can only be recalled when the vehicle is stationary.
- In an emergency, the recall process can be canceled by pressing the seat adjustment button on that seat.

Tips

Specific settings are stored automatically in the active personal profile.

Airbag system

General information

WARNING

– If you have not fastened your safety belt, you are in an incorrect seating position, or you are too close to the airbag system, the airbag system will not be able to protect you. This increases the risk of serious or fatal injuries. Make sure that all passengers have their safety belts correctly fastened and are sitting in a correct position ⇨ *page 72*. This is necessary regardless of whether the seat is equipped with an airbag or not.
– Never place your feet on the instrument panel, out of the window, or on the seat surfaces. Never bend forward or lean on the door or the side window. Keep as far as possible from the airbags so that they will not be obstructed in the event that the airbags deploy. Otherwise, serious and possibly fatal injuries can occur if the airbags deploy.
– People, animals, or objects between the passengers and the airbag system can interfere with the correct deployment of the airbag or can be thrown through the vehicle interior, increasing the risk of serious or fatal injuries. Make sure that nothing is located between the vehicle occupants and the airbag system. Do not secure or transport any objects within the deployment zone of the airbag systems, especially on the steering wheel, on the instrument panel, on the doors, on the windows, in the footwell, or on the rear shelf.
– Never put stickers on the airbag system covers or cover them with any objects.
– Only lightweight clothing should be hung from the garment hooks in the vehicle. Do not use clothes hangers to hang clothing. The pockets of the clothing must not contain any heavy, breakable, or sharp-edged objects. This could impair the effectiveness of the side curtain airbags.
– You must not use seat or protective covers that are not specifically approved for use on Audi seats with side airbags. Since the side airbags deploy from the seat backrest, such covers could impair the protective function of the side airbags.
– Applies to: vehicles with front center airbag: Do not use seat covers or protective covers that are not specifically approved for use on Audi seats with center airbags. The center armrest must be closed while driving. Since the front center airbag deploys from the driver's seat backrest, such covers could impair the protective function of the center airbag.
– Damage to the original seat covers in the side airbag and front center airbag deployment area must always be repaired by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
– Airbag system components are installed at various locations in your vehicle. Incorrect work or repairs on the vehicle could damage the airbag system components or impair their functionality. This may prevent the airbags from deploying or cause them to deploy incorrectly in the event of an accident, which increases the risk of serious or fatal injuries. Only have an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility make repairs or modifications to a vehicle.
– The airbag system can only provide protection during one collision. If there is another collision, the airbag system will not deploy again. If the airbag system has deployed, have it replaced immediately by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
– Fine dust may appear if the airbags deploy. This is completely normal and does not indicate a fire in the vehicle. The fine dust can irritate the skin and mucous membranes in the eyes and can cause difficulty breathing, particularly for individuals who have or have ▶

4N0012721BB

had asthma or other health issues that affect breathing. Exit the vehicle or open the windows or doors to get access to fresh air.

Tips

If you are transporting children in the vehicle, read the information and follow the safety precautions ⇨ *page 91*.

Safety systems monitoring

The indicator light in the instrument cluster monitors the safety systems such as the airbags (including the control modules, sensors, and wiring) and the belt tensioners. It turns on when you switch the ignition on and turns off after several seconds.

If the indicator light does not turn on when the ignition is switched on, does not turn off after several seconds, or turns on or flashes while driving, there may be a malfunction in one of the safety systems. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

WARNING

Have the malfunction in the safety systems inspected immediately. Otherwise, there is a risk that the systems may not activate during an accident, which increases the risk of serious or fatal injury.

Description

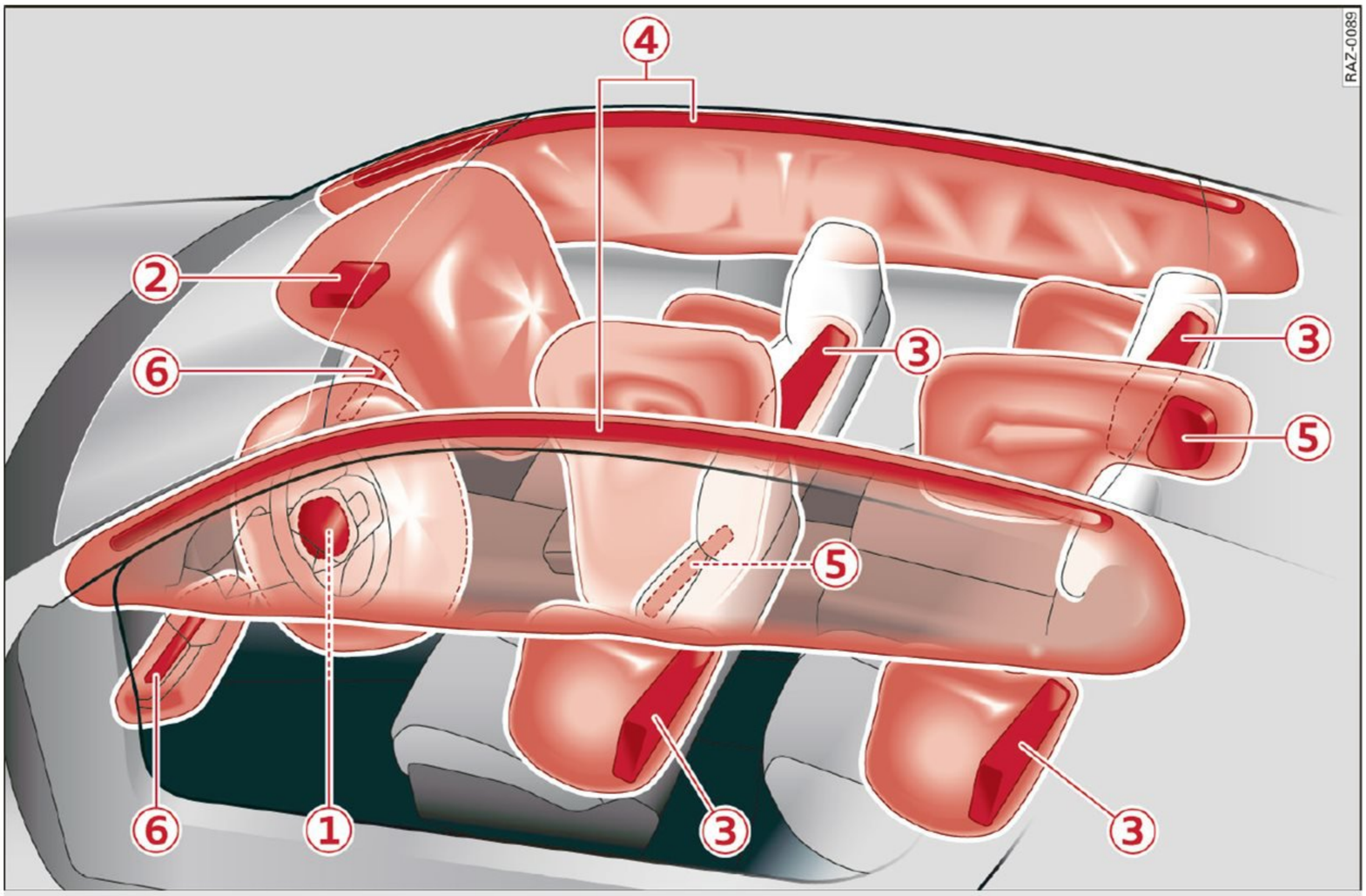


Fig. 80 Airbag overview image (enlarged section: deployed airbags) - diagram

Your vehicle is equipped with front airbags for both the driver and front passenger.

The locations of the airbags are labeled with “AIRBAG”. Depending on the equipment, your vehicle may be equipped with the following airbags:

① Driver's airbag
② Front passenger's airbag ▶

③ Front and rear side airbags
④ Side curtain airbags
⑤ Front and rear* central airbags
⑥ Knee airbags

Airbags offer the best possible protection in your vehicle during an accident when they are used together with safety belts that are fastened correctly, and when passengers are sitting in the correct seating position. Airbags are a supplementary restraint system and do not replace safety belts.

Airbags may deploy during front-impact, side-impact, or rollover accidents.

The deployment area for the airbag system cannot be defined for every situation, since the circumstances surrounding accidents can vary widely. Factors that play an important role include the condition of the object that the vehicle hits (hard or soft), the angle of impact, vehicle speed, etc. The deciding factor for the deployment of the airbag system is the deceleration that occurs during an accident. Sensors in the vehicle are designed to detect the severity of an accident in conjunction with the control module, and to provide a targeted and timely deployment of the restraint system. If the vehicle deceleration that is measured during an accident is below the specified reference values in the control module, then the airbags will not deploy, even though the vehicle may be severely damaged from the accident. In these cases, the vehicle occupants will be protected by the safety belts if they are fastened and worn correctly.

The deployment of the front passenger's airbag will depend on the occupancy of the seat ⇨ *page 89*.

The airbag is filled by a gas generator when it deploys. When this occurs, the airbag covers open and the airbags unfold with great force into the deployment zone within milliseconds. When vehicle occupants who are wearing safety belts sink into the airbags, the gas contained in the airbags is released in order to cushion the individuals and slow their movement.

Airbags lessen the movement of passengers in the direction of the impact and thus help to reduce the risk of injury. They can help to protect the head, upper body, and lap, for example. However, there is the possibility that airbag deployment can cause injuries.

The airbag system only works when the ignition is turned on.

If you or other vehicle passengers have physical limitations that prevent sitting in a correct position, modifications to the vehicle may be necessary. For more information, contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility, or call Audi customer support at 1-800-822-2834.

Tips

The side curtain airbags in your vehicle have ejection mitigation functions. This reduces the risk of being ejected from the vehicle interior during an accident, especially in the event of a vehicle rollover.

Advanced airbag system



Fig. 81 Headliner: indicator light to display the status of the front passenger's airbag

The Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle has been certified to comply with the requirements of the United States Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (FMVSS) 208, as well as Canada Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (CMVSS) 208 as applicable at the time your vehicle was manufactured. According to these requirements, the front Advanced Airbag System on the passenger's side has been certified for "suppression" for infants approximately 12 months old and younger, and ▶

for “low risk deployment” for children aged 3 to 6 years old (as defined in the standard).

The advanced airbag system will activate or deactivate the front passenger's airbag based on the occupancy of the seat. If a front airbag deploys during an accident, the deployment force will adapt to the passenger.

Components

The advanced airbag system consists of the following components:

- Front airbags in the steering wheel and in the instrument panel on the front passenger's side: these can protect the front passengers during an accident
- Passenger occupant detection sensor in the front passenger's seat: this detects if the front passenger's seat is occupied (for example, by a person or a small child in a child safety seat)
- Seat position sensors on the front seats: these determine the distance between the seat and the steering wheel or instrument panel
- Sensors in the front seat belt latch: these detect if the safety belts are fastened
- The PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF ON indicator light in the headliner:this indicates if the front passenger's airbag is activated or deactivated
- indicator light in the instrument cluster: this monitors the function of the Advanced Airbag System components to ensure they are functioning correctly

How the components function together

The passenger occupant detection sensor in the front passenger's seat detects if the front passenger's seat is occupied. The passenger occupant detection sensor measures the electrical capacity on the front passenger’s seat. The passenger's airbag is activated or deactivated depending on the electrical capacity that is measured.

The passenger's airbag is activated if:

- The electrical capacity is higher than the threshold stored in the control module
- The electrical capacity is the same as or greater than the electrical capacity of a typical adult

The passenger's airbag is deactivated if:

- The electrical capacity is lower than the threshold stored in the control module
- The electrical capacity is the same as or less than the electrical capacity of a typical one-year-old child in a child safety seat that has been used for certification in accordance with FMVSS 208

If the front passenger's airbag is activated, the PASSENGER AIR BAG ON indicator light will turn on. If the front passenger's airbag is deactivated, the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF indicator light will turn on.

The deployment force of the front airbags adapts based on whether or not the safety belt is used and the distance between the seat and the steering wheel/instrument panel. For example, if a person is too close to the front airbag, the front airbag will deploy with less force to help reduce the risk of injury.

Meaning of PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF ON indicator light

When the ignition is switched on, the system detects whether the front passenger's seat is occupied. PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF ON will turn on for several seconds during this process. Then it will indicate whether the front passenger's airbag is activated or deactivated.

- PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF : the front passenger's airbag is deactivated and will not deploy in the event of an accident.
- PASSENGER AIR BAG ON : the front passenger's airbag is activated and could deploy in the event of an accident.

If a change to the occupancy status of the front passenger's seat is detected PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF ON will flash for several seconds and will then display the status of the front passenger's airbag.

Always make sure the indicator light corresponds to the occupancy of the front passenger's seat. ▶

– **An adult or individual of similar size in the front passenger's seat:** the front passenger's airbag must be activated, so PASSENGER AIR BAG ON must remain on.
– **An individual of smaller size (for example, an adolescent or small adult) in the front passenger's seat:** the front passenger's airbag must be activated, so PASSENGER AIR BAG ON must remain on. Move the front passenger's seat as far back as possible.
– **Child in a child safety seat on the front passenger's seat:** the front passenger's airbag must be deactivated, so PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF must remain on.
– **Front passenger's seat not occupied:** the front passenger's airbag must be deactivated, so PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF must remain on.

WARNING

– An adult or a person with a small stature (such as a young person or small adult) seated on the front passenger's seat will not be protected by the passenger's airbag in the event of a collision if the passenger's airbag is deactivated. This increases the risk of injury and death. Always make sure that PASSENGER AIR BAG ON remains on while driving. If PASSENGER AIR BAG ON does not turn on, make sure the front passenger is sitting correctly in the seat ⇨ *page 72* and that there is are no objects covering the front passenger's seat (such as blankets or pillows). If PASSENGER AIR BAG ON still does not turn on, the front passenger's seat must not be used. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility and have the airbag system inspected.
– A child in a child safety seat on the front passenger's seat - especially in a rear-facing child safety seat - can receive a severe impact if the front passenger's airbag deploys, which increases the risk of serious or fatal injury. Always secure child safety seats on the rear seats. If special circumstances require the use of a child safety seat on the front passenger's seat, always make sure that PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF remains on while driving. If PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF does not turn on, remove the child safety seat and install it again according to the child safety seat manufacturer instructions. If PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF still does not turn on, the front passenger's seat must not be used. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility and have the airbag system inspected.
– Fluids, electronic devices, or mechanical damage on the front passenger's seat may cause the front passenger seat occupant detection to malfunction. The system may then incorrectly detect if the front passenger's seat is occupied. As a result, it could deploy the front passenger’s airbag incorrectly or fail to deploy it, which increases the risk of serious or fatal injury. Make sure that no wet objects (such as a wet hand towel) and no fluids come into contact with the front passenger's seat cushion. If the front passenger's seat becomes wet, dry it immediately. Make sure no electronic devices (such as a laptop or a retrofitted seat heater) are on the front passenger's seat. Do not transport any objects on or under the front passenger's seat.
– Seat covers or protective covers may prevent the advanced airbag system from correctly detecting child safety seats or passengers in the front passenger's seat. You must not use seat covers or protective covers on the front passenger's seat that are not specifically approved for use on Audi seats with an advanced airbag system.

Child safety seats

General information

When installing and using child safety seats, follow the information in this Owner's Manual, the applicable state and federal regulations, and the ▶

4N0012721BB

manufacturer instructions for the child safety seat.

You can also obtain useful and current information from the following sources:

U.S. National Highway Traffic Safety Administration
http://www.nhtsa.gov
http://www.safercar.gov

National SAFE KIDS Campaign
http://www.safekids.org

SafetyBeltSafe U.S.A.
http://www.carseat.org

Transport Canada Information Centre
http://www.tc.gc.ca/roadsafety

Audi Customer Experience Center
https://www.audiusa.com/help/contact-us
https://www.audi.ca/ca/web/en/models/layer/contact.html

WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious or fatal injuries, children must always be secured in the vehicle with a child safety seat that is appropriate for their body size, weight, and age.

- Children ages 12 and under must be transported using the appropriate child safety seat. Note differences in regulations between states and countries.
- Child safety seats secured incorrectly in the vehicle may cause serious or fatal injuries in the event of an accident. Always secure the child safety seat according to the manufacturer instructions.
- Children or babies must not under any circumstances be held on the lap of the driver or other passengers while driving.
- Do not secure more than one child in a child safety seat.
- Never allow a child to sit in a child safety seat unsupervised.
- Never allow children to ride unsecured in the vehicle or to stand or kneel on the seats while driving. During a collision, the child could be thrown through the vehicle and be fatally injured or cause life-threatening injuries to others in the vehicle.
- If children use an incorrect seating position while driving, they have a higher risk of injury during a sudden braking maneuver or accident. This especially applies to children in the front passenger's seat or children who have their head near the side airbag deployment area, if the airbag system is deployed during an accident. This incorrect seating position can cause severe or even fatal injuries.
- Make sure there is enough space in front of the child in the child safety seat. If necessary, adjust the angle and position of the seat in front of the child safety seat.
- Applies to: vehicles with Audi tablet: If you secure a rear-facing child safety seat on the rear seat, remove the Audi tablet from the backrest on the front seat.
- The rear side of a forward-facing child safety seat should be positioned as close as possible to the backrest on the vehicle seat. If the head restraints make it difficult to install a child safety seat, adjust or remove them ⇨ *page 81*. Reinstall the head restraints immediately once the child safety seat has been removed.
- NEVER use a rear-facing child safety seat on a seat with an ACTIVATED FRONT AIRBAG; this could cause DEATH or SERIOUS INJURIES to a CHILD.
  - Always secure child safety seats on the rear seats. If exceptional circumstances require the child safety seat to be placed on the front passenger's seat, then the front passenger's airbag must be deactivated. Always make sure that PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF remains on while driving. If PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF does not turn on, remove the child safety seat and install it again according to the child safety seat manufacturer instructions. If PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF still does not turn on, the front passenger's seat must not be used. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service ▶

Facility and have the airbag system inspected.
– If you must use a forward-facing child safety seat on the front passenger's seat, move the seat as far back as possible so that it is as far as possible from the front passenger's airbag. In this scenario, make sure that nothing is in the way to prevent the seat from being moved all the way back. A child in a child safety seat on the front passenger's seat can receive a severe impact if the front passenger's airbag deploys, which increases the risk of serious or fatal injury.
– Replace the child safety seat after an accident because there could be damage that is not visible.
– Even if a child is not sitting in the child safety seat, the child safety seat must be secured. An unsecured child safety seat may be thrown through the vehicle interior during sudden braking maneuvers or an accident.

Correct positioning for children

Always secure children in a child safety seat designed for the body size, weight, and age of the child.

You can secure child safety seats in your vehicle using the lower LATCH anchors or the safety belts. You can also secure child safety seats to the top tether anchor. Depending on the child safety seat, it may also be necessary to secure it to the top tether anchor. In Canada, securing forward-facing child safety seats to the top tether anchors is required by law.

Always transport children in the rear seats

Accident statistics show that children that are secured correctly in the rear seats are safer than in front seats. Always transport children in suitable child safety seats secured on the rear seats.

In exceptional circumstances: transporting children in the front passenger's seat

If exceptional circumstances require the child safety seat to be placed on the front passenger's seat, then the front passenger's airbag must be deactivated. Please note the important information for this ⇨ *page 89, Advanced airbag system*. If you must secure a forward-facing child safety seat, move the front passenger's seat as far back as possible so that it is as far as possible from the front passenger's airbag. In this scenario, make sure that nothing is in the way to prevent the seat from being moved all the way back.

Only switch to a larger child safety seat when absolutely necessary

Switch to a larger child safety seat only when absolutely necessary. Secure your child using a safety belt without a child safety seat only if all of the following statements are true:

– The child is large enough to sit upright in the seat
– The child is able to sit with his or her back resting completely on the seat backrest
– The child is able to sit with his or her knees bent over the edge of the seat surface
– The child is able to sit with both of his or her feet completely touching the floor in the footwell
– The lap portion of the safety belt lies flat and securely over the hip area and never over the stomach
– The shoulder portion of the safety belt lies flat and securely over the center of the shoulder and the chest, and never under the arm, behind the back, or over the neck or face.
– The child is able to maintain this seating position throughout the entire trip

Read and follow the important information and warnings regarding the correct use of safety belts ⇨ *page 83*.

Tips

– Child safety seats can also be secured to seats with side airbags. In the event of an accident, children can also be protected by the side airbags if the child is correctly secured in a suitable child safety seat that is attached correctly.
– All child safety seats are constructed so that they can be secured using the lap safety belt in the vehicle. ▶

4N0012721BB

– Child safety seats with a support base can only be secured to the outer rear seats and to the front passenger's seat.

Securing child safety seats to the lower LATCH anchors



Fig. 82 Rear bench seat: marker points and lower LATCH anchors

Follow the safety precautions ⇨ *page 91*.

In the United States and Canada, child safety seats can be secured without safety belts using the LATCH system. LATCH stands for Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children. In Canada, similar systems are called UCRA, LUAS, or UAS.

The lower LATCH anchors in your vehicle are located on the outer seats of the rear bench seat between the seat surface and the backrest. These seating locations each have two lower LATCH anchors that can be used to secure a LATCH child safety seat. Marking points with a ⇨ *fig. 82* symbol are located on the backrest of the rear bench seat. You can locate the LATCH anchors using the marking points.

- ▸ Applies to: vehicles with power-adjustable rear bench seat: Move the rear seat all the way back and downward and position the backrest so it is as upright as possible.
- ▸ Activate the child safety lock ⇨ *page 53*.
- ▸ If you secure a child safety seat to the rear seat, secure any unused safety belts that are within reach of the child ⇨ ⚠ *in Securing child safety seats with a safety belt on page 96*.
- ▸ Secure the child safety seat according to the child safety seat manufacturer instructions.
- ▸ Pull on the child safety seat to check if both sides are engaged correctly in the LATCH anchors.
- ▸ If possible, also secure the child safety seat to the respective top tether anchor in the vehicle ⇨ *page 94*.

⚠ WARNING

The LATCH anchors in the vehicle are only designed for child safety seats with the LATCH system. To reduce the risk of serious or fatal injury, never secure other child restraint systems, belts, or objects to the anchors.

Tips

The LATCH anchors are designed for a total weight (child and child safety seat combined) up to 65 lbs (29 kg). If the total weight is greater than this, the child safety seat must be secured with the vehicle safety belt.

Additionally securing a child safety seat to the top tether anchor

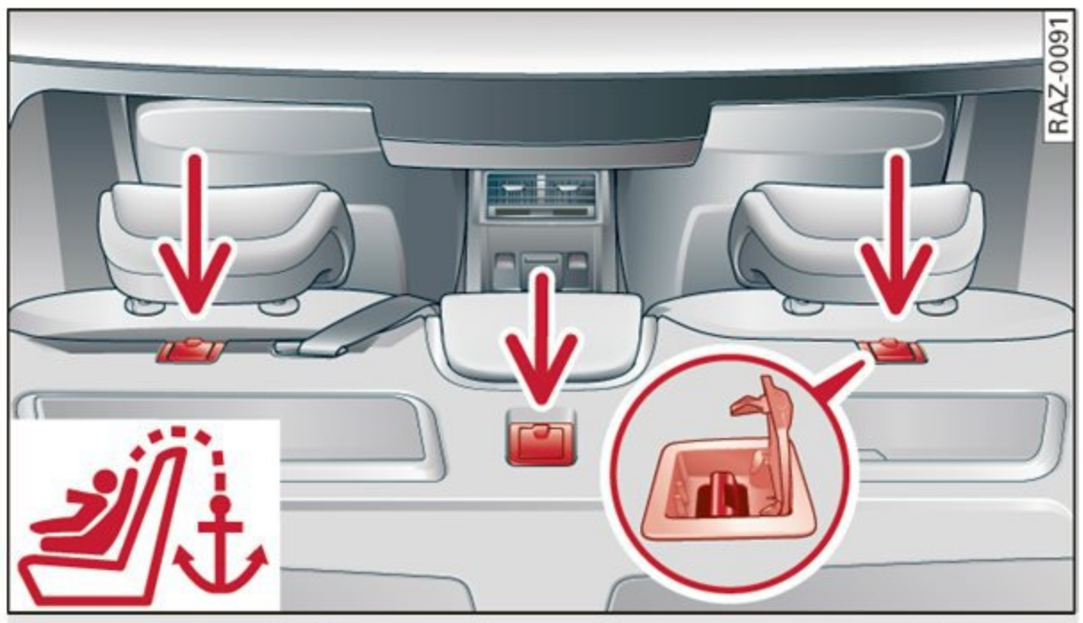


Fig. 83 Rear shelf: top tether anchors to secure a child safety seat with an upper belt

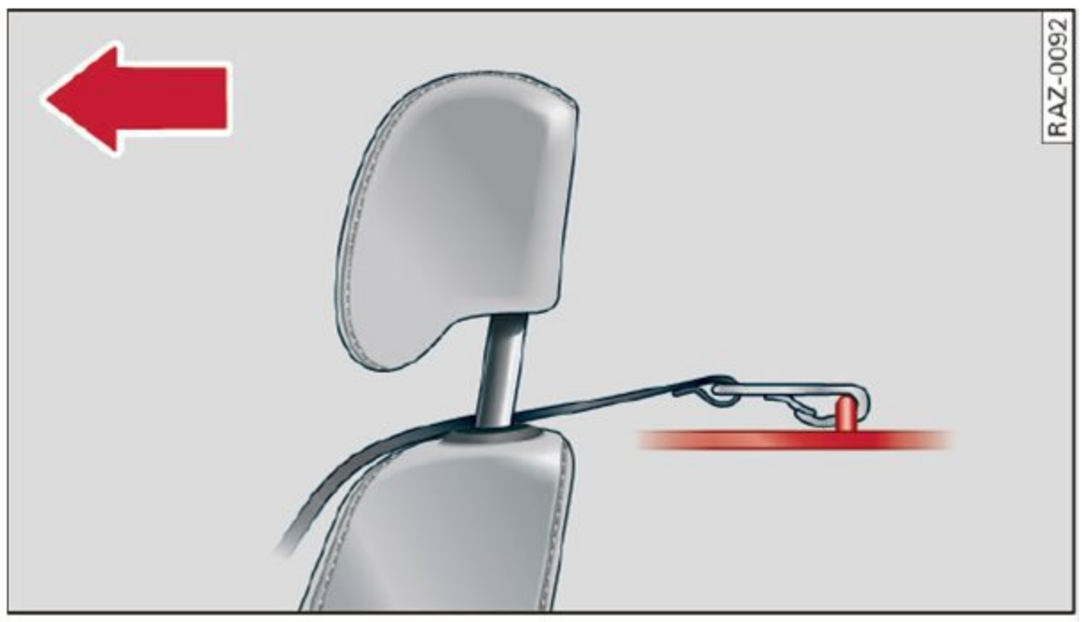


Fig. 84 Rear shelf: securing the upper belt to the top tether anchor - diagram

Follow the safety precautions ⇨ *page 91*.

There is a top tether anchor behind every seat in the rear bench seat to additionally secure a child ▸

safety seat with an upper belt. Depending on the vehicle equipment, there may be two or three top tether anchors.

- ► Applies to: head restraints on the outer rear seats: Slide the head restraints behind the child safety seat upward.
- ► Applies to: head restraint on the center rear seat: Fold the head restraint downward.
- ► Lift the cover for the top tether anchor upward.
- ► Secure the child safety seat according to the child safety seat manufacturer instructions.
- ► Applies to: head restraints on the outer rear seats: Guide the child safety seat upper belt toward the rear, either under the head restraint or next to it on both sides (depending on the version of the child safety seat).
- ► Applies to: head restraint on the center rear seat: Guide the child safety seat upper belt toward the rear over the head restraint.
- ► Fasten the belt to the top tether anchor ⇨ *fig. 84*. While doing this, make sure the belt is not twisted and is not running over any sharp edges.
- ► Pull the belt tightly so that the child safety seat rests at the top of the seat backrest.
- ► Applies to: head restraints on the outer rear seats: If necessary, slide the head restraint behind the child safety seat downward.

⚠ WARNING

The top tether anchors in the vehicle are only designed for child safety seats equipped with an upper strap. To reduce the risk of serious or fatal injury, never secure other child restraint systems, belts, or objects to the anchors.

Securing child safety seats with a safety belt

Follow the safety precautions ⇨ *page 91*. The front passenger's seat is a dangerous location for a child, even with an advanced airbag system. If exceptional circumstances require the child safety seat to be placed on the front passenger's seat, then the front passenger's airbag must be deactivated. Please note the important information for this ⇨ *page 93, Correct positioning for children* and ⇨ *page 89, Advanced airbag system*.

Securing child safety seats

- ► Applies to: vehicles with power-adjustable rear bench seat: If you secure a child safety seat on the rear seat, move the rear seat all the way back and downward and adjust the backrest to be as upright as possible.
- ► Activate the child safety lock ⇨ *page 53*.
- ► If you secure a child safety seat to the rear seat, secure any unused safety belts that are within reach of the child ⇨ ⚠, ⇨ *page 96*.
- ► If you secure a child safety seat to the front passenger's seat, adjust the front passenger's seat to the highest position.
- ► Secure the child safety seat according to the child safety seat manufacturer instructions.
- ► If necessary, activate the belt retractor lock ⇨ *page 95, Activating the belt retractor lock*.
- ► If the child safety seat is secured on the front passenger's seat, adjust the front passenger's seat backrest until it rests flat against the child safety seat. Also make sure that the upper safety belt fixture is behind the child safety seat.
- ► If you secure a child safety seat on the rear seat, also secure it to the correct top tether anchor if possible ⇨ *page 94*.

Activating the belt retractor lock

If you secure a child safety seat using the vehicle safety belt, you must activate the belt retractor lock. Follow the child safety seat manufacturer instructions.

The belt retractor lock prevents the safety belt from becoming loose while driving, which could result in the child safety seat no longer being adequately secured.

- ► Secure the child safety seat according to the child safety seat manufacturer instructions. While doing so, pull out the safety belt. Insert the safety belt in the belt latch belonging to the seat until it audibly engages.
- ► Pull the upper belt out completely and then allow it to retract. You will hear a clicking sound while the belt is retracting. It will not be possible to pull the safety belt out any farther. ▶

4N0012721BB

- ► Push the child safety seat into the seat and allow the belt to retract more.
- ► Make sure that the child safety seat cannot move more than 1 inch (2.5 cm).

Deactivating the belt retractor lock

- ► Unbuckle the safety belt from the belt latch.
- ► Remove the child safety seat according to the manufacturer instructions.
- ► Allow the safety belt to retract completely. The belt retractor lock is deactivated.

WARNING

– A safety belt that is not locked by the belt retractor lock or a locking device cannot secure a child safety seat while driving or in the event of an accident, which increases the risk of fatal injury. Always make sure the belt retractor lock on the safety belt is activated if the child safety seat manufacturer instructions require it.
– Due to the risk of fatal injury, never place a rear-facing child safety seat on the front passenger's seat when the front passenger's airbag is switched on.
– For the child safety seat to offer the maximum protection, it is especially important to route the vehicle safety belt correctly. Always follow the instructions from the child safety seat manufacturer for routing the safety belt correctly. Incorrectly fastened safety belts can cause injuries, even during minor accidents.

Securing unused safety belts on the rear bench seat

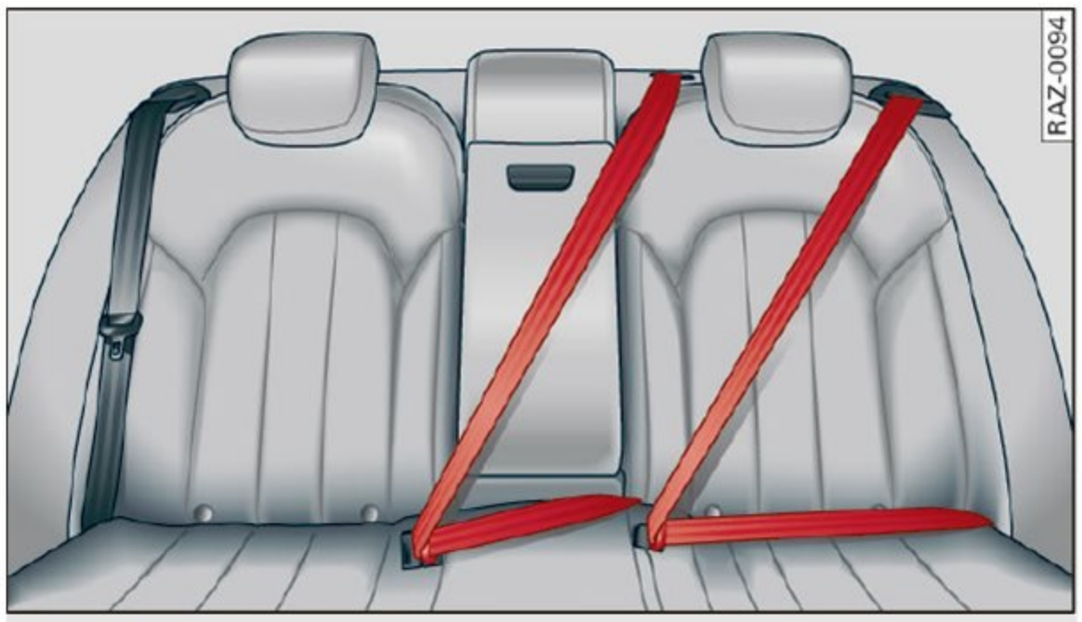


Fig. 85 Rear bench seat: securing unused safety belts - diagram for vehicles with three seats

If a child safety seat is used on the rear bench seat, the child must not be able to reach any safety belts that are not being used. Secure safety belts that are within reach of the child.

- ► If you secure a child safety seat to the LATCH anchors, fasten the safety belt on the seat where the child safety seat is installed using the seat's safety belt latch.
- ► Applies to: vehicles with three seats on the rear bench seat: If a child safety seat is secured on one of the outer seats, fasten the safety belt for the center seat in the center seat's latch.
- ► Activate the belt retractor lock on the fastened safety belts. To do this, pull the upper belt out completely and then allow it to retract. You will hear a clicking sound while the belt is retracting. It will not be possible to pull the safety belt out any farther.
- ► Make sure the fastened safety belt does not block access to the LATCH anchors. Otherwise, it may not be possible to secure the child safety seat to the LATCH anchors correctly.

WARNING

A child in a child safety seat could play with the unused safety belts and then become entangled in them, which increases the risk of fatal injury. Always secure unused safety belts so that they are not within reach of children in child safety seats.

Stowing and using

Ashtray and cigarette lighter

Applies to: vehicles with ashtray and cigarette lighter

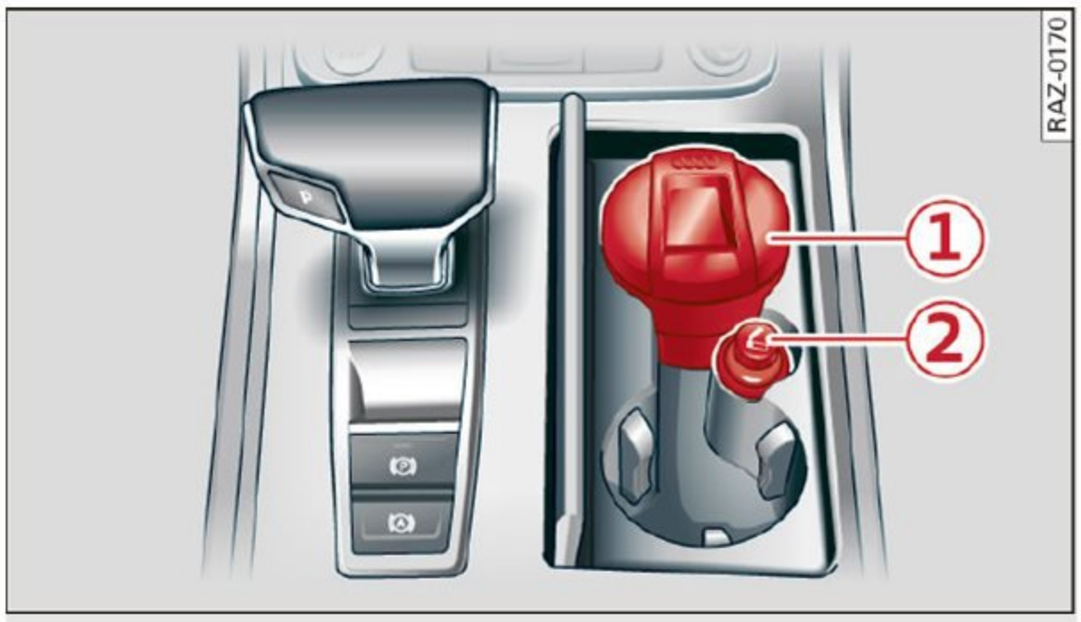


Fig. 86 Front center console: ashtray and cigarette lighter (example)

Opening and closing the ashtray

- ▸ The ashtray may be located under a cover. To open it, tap on the strip on the cover.
- ▸ Open the ashtray (1).

Emptying the ashtray

- ▸ To empty the ashtray, pull it upward and out of the holder.
- ▸ Loosen the upper section by rotating it off the ashtray pan.
- ▸ Insert the ashtray back into the holder and secure it if it has been removed.

Using the cigarette lighter

- ▸ The cigarette lighter may be located under a cover. To open it, tap on the strip on the cover.
- ▸ Push in the cigarette lighter knob (2).
- ▸ When the cigarette lighter knob pops out, remove the cigarette lighter.

WARNING

- – Never use the ashtray to hold paper, because this increases the risk of a fire.
- – The cigarette lighters only work when the ignition is switched on. Incorrect usage can lead to serious injuries or burns. To reduce the risk of injuries, never leave children unattended in the vehicle with the key.

Power sources

When the ignition is switched on, you may be able to use the electric power sources for external devices, depending on the vehicle equipment.

12 volt sockets

You can connect electrical accessories to the 12 volt sockets. The power usage must not exceed 120 watts.

The 12 volt sockets are labeled with the or 12V symbol. They are located in the front center console*, in the rear* and on the side trim panel in the luggage compartment*.

USB ports

Applies to: vehicles with USB input

You can charge mobile devices using the USB ports. The USB ports are labeled with the or symbol or CHARGE ONLY.

115 volt socket

Applies to: vehicles with 115 volt socket

The socket is located in the center console in the rear and can be used for electrical devices ⇨ . The power usage must not exceed 150 watts.

When you push the device connector all the way into the socket, the child safety mechanism releases and there is electric current.

- – If the LED on the socket is green or flashes slowly, then the socket is ready for use.
- – If the LED is red and flashes quickly, there is a malfunction in the connected device or the socket is too hot. The socket will switch off for safety reasons. To reactivate the socket, remove the device connector. Connect the device after correcting the malfunction or reconnect after a brief cool-down period.

WARNING

- – To reduce the risk of fatal injury, store all connected devices securely when driving so that they do not move around inside the vehicle when braking or in the event of an accident.
- – Incorrect usage can lead to serious injuries or burns. To reduce the risk of injuries, never ▸

leave children unattended in the vehicle with the key.

WARNING

Applies to: vehicles with 115 volt socket

- To reduce the risk of fatal injury, do not insert any conductive objects, such as knitting needles, into the contacts on the socket.
- To reduce the risk of fatal injury, do not spill any fluids on the socket. Should any moisture enter the socket, make sure that it has dried out completely before using the socket again.
- If devices or connectors that are heavy (such as a power supply unit) are attached directly to the socket, the holder can become damaged, which increases the risk of injury.
- Using adapters and extension cables increases the risk of injury because they override the safety devices for the socket.
- To reduce the risk of injury, remove the connector of the connected device if the socket has switched off due to a malfunction.

Note

- Read the operating manuals for the connected devices.
- To reduce the risk of damage to the vehicle electrical system, never attempt to charge the vehicle battery by connecting accessories that provide power to the power sources.
- Do not connect any device whose network class (voltage) does not match the network class designed for the socket.
- Disconnect the connectors from the power sources carefully to reduce the risk of damaging them.

Tips

Applies to: vehicles with 115 volt socket

- Devices that are not shielded or devices near the rear window antenna can cause malfunctions in the radio, TV, or vehicle electrical system.
- The functions on some devices may be limited due to the low power output.
- With some power supply units, the integrated overcurrent protection may prevent it from switching on. In this case, disconnect the power supply unit from the electrical equipment and reconnect after approximately 10 seconds.

Cup holders

Applies to: vehicles with cup holders



Fig. 87 Front center console: cup holder (example)

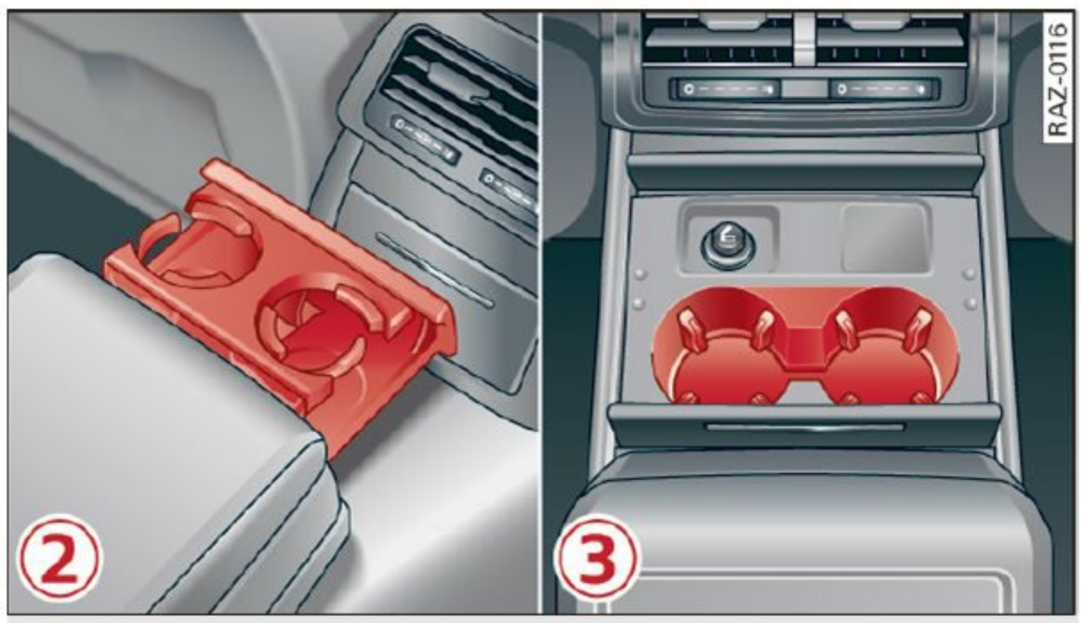


Fig. 88 Center armrest and rear center console: cup holder

Front center console cup holders

▸ The cup holders may be under a cover. To use them, tap on the strip on the cover.
▸ Set your beverage in the holder (1).

Rear center armrest cup holders

▸ Fold the center armrest* downward.
▸ Open the cup holders by tapping on the integrated cover in the front (2).
▸ Set your beverage in the holder.
▸ To close the cup holders, press on the cover and push the cup holders all the way back into the slot.

Rear center console cup holders

▸ To open the cup holders in the center console*, tap on the cover (3). ▶

▸ Set your beverage in the holder.

WARNING

– Do not put any hot beverages in the cup holder while the vehicle is moving. Hot beverages could spill, which increases the risk of injury.
– Do not use any breakable beverage containers (for example, made out of glass or porcelain). You could be injured by them in the event of an accident.

Note

Beverage containers in the cup holders should always have a lid. Otherwise, the liquid inside could spill and cause damage to vehicle equipment.

Roof rack

Applies to: vehicles with roof rack

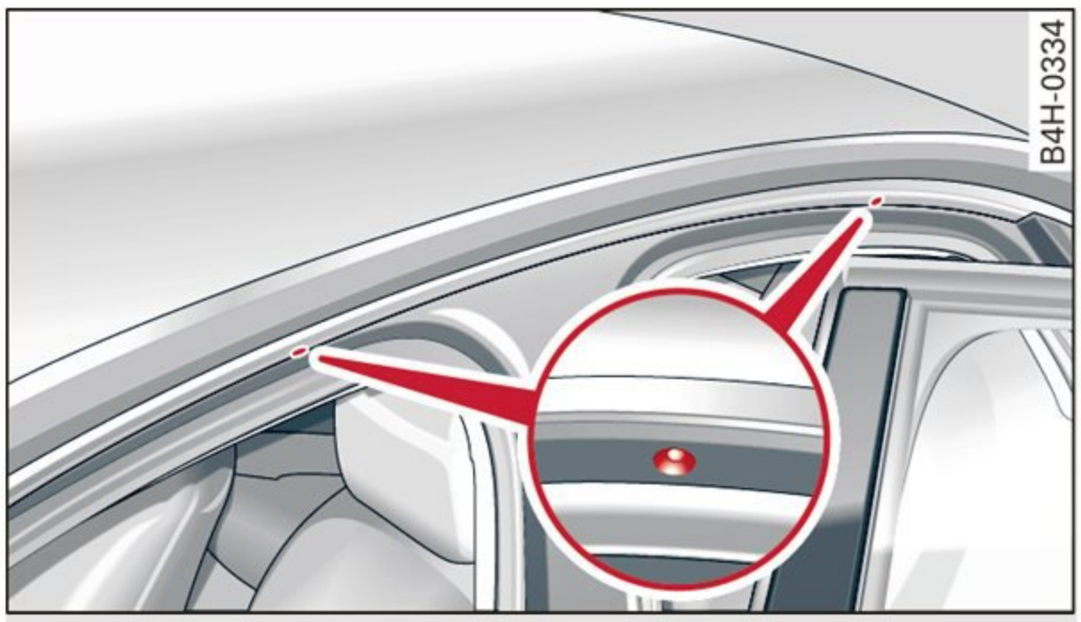


Fig. 89 Roof: mounting points

If luggage or cargo is to be carried on the roof, you must observe the following:

– These roof racks are the basis for a complete roof rack system. Only roof racks that are suitable for your vehicle may be used. Roof racks and attachments from the Audi Genuine Accessories program are recommended.
– Make sure the roof rack is mounted on the vehicle only at the specified locations ⇨ *fig. 89*.
– Note the permitted axle load, permitted total weight, and permitted roof load of your vehicle ⇨ *page 320*. The roof load is the total of the weight of the roof rack, the attachments and the cargo you are carrying. However, you must also note the permitted load of the carrier system being used.

WARNING

– Follow the installation instructions provided with the roof rack system. If you do not secure the roof rack system and objects on the roof correctly, they could come loose from the vehicle and cause an accident.
– The risk of an accident increases when using a roof rack system, because it changes the driving characteristics by shifting the center of gravity and/or the increasing the surface area exposed to wind. You may need to adapt your driving style and speed to the current conditions.

Note

Make sure that the open luggage compartment lid and the tilting/sliding sunroof* or panoramic glass roof* do not come into contact with objects on the roof.

For the sake of the environment

Energy usage will increase because of the increased wind resistance. Remove the roof rack when you are no longer using it.

Storage and compartments

Cooled glove compartment

Applies to: vehicles with cooled glove compartment

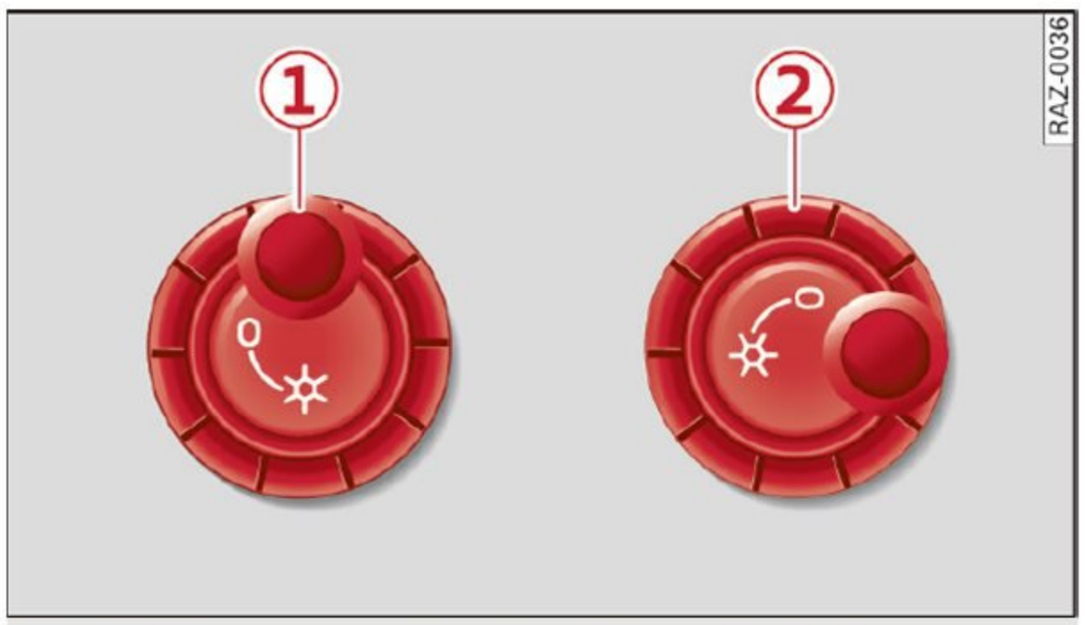


Fig. 90 Glove compartment: cooling mode knob

▸ To switch the refrigeration function on, turn the knob counterclockwise until the symbols indicate that refrigeration is switched on (1).
▸ To switch the refrigeration function off, turn the knob clockwise until the symbols indicate that refrigeration is switched off (2). ▶

Tips

The glove compartment cooling mode only functions when the vehicle A/C system is switched on.

Folding tray tables

Applies to: vehicles with folding tray tables

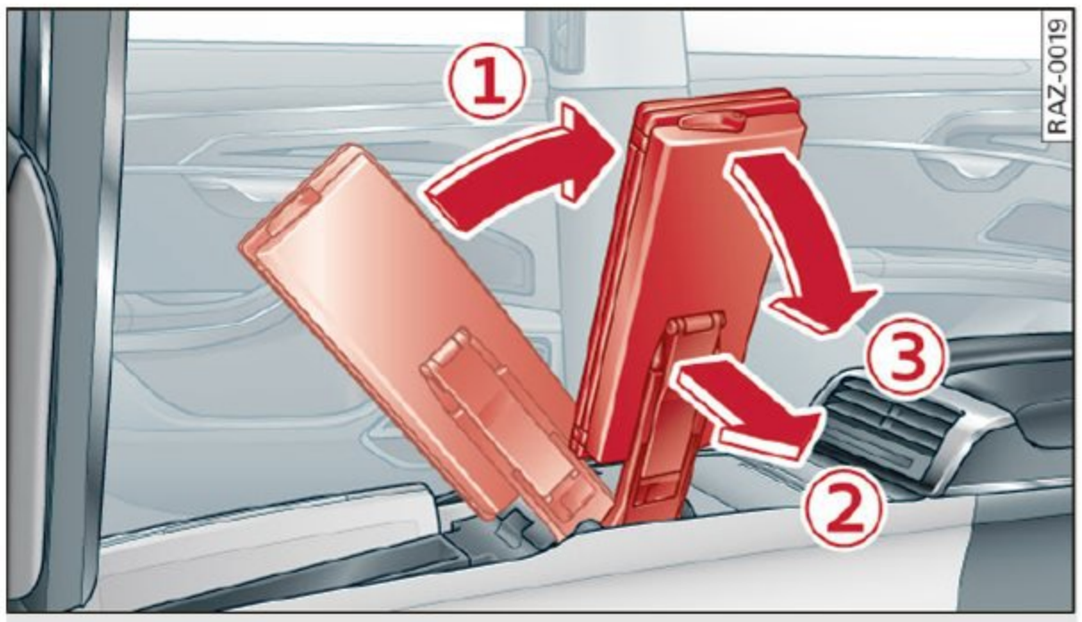


Fig. 91 Rear center console: opening the folding tray table

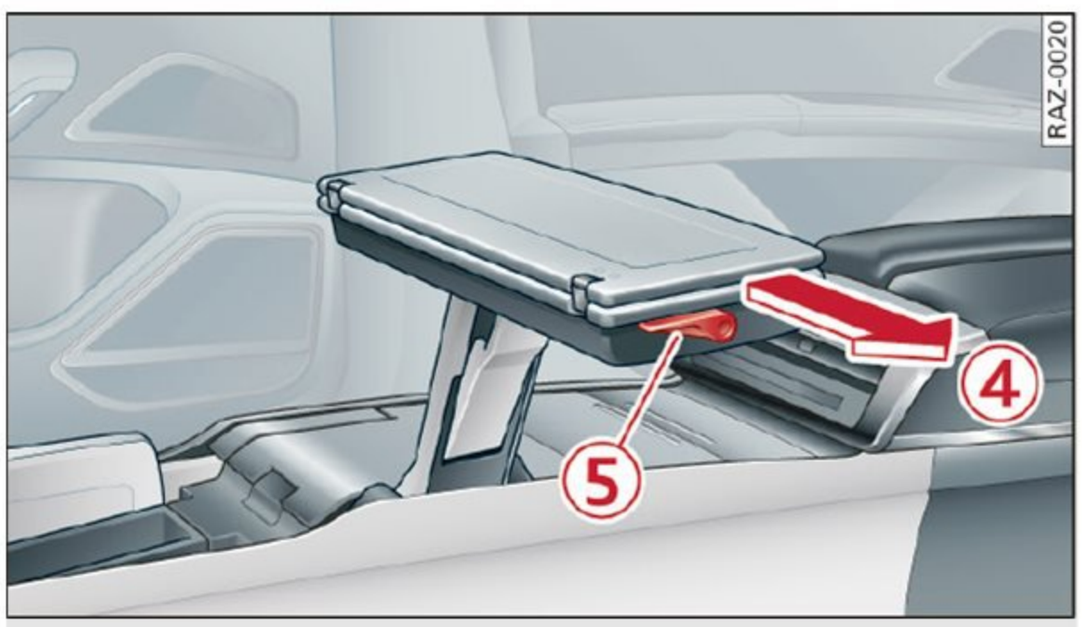


Fig. 92 Rear center console: extending and adjusting the folding tray table

Folding up and down

- ▸ Press the button forward on the center armrest and fold the center armrest upward.
- ▸ Fold the tray table arm upright and all the way forward ①.
- ▸ Tilt the tray table toward the seat ② and fold the tray table to the side in the horizontal direction ③.
- ▸ Slide the tray table outward ④.
- ▸ Unfold the tray table. If necessary, the horizontal angle of the tray table can be adjusted. To do this, press the lever ⑤ on the side of the tray upward.
- ▸ Follow all of the steps in reverse order to close the tray table.

WARNING

- – Do not open the folding tray table while driving. In the event of an accident or sudden braking or swerving, passengers could collide with the tray tables, and objects placed on the tables could be thrown through the vehicle interior, increasing the risk of injury.
- – To reduce the risk of pinching, open the folding tray table carefully.
- – Be careful when adjusting the front seats. To reduce the risk of pinching, pay attention to the rear passengers when the folding tray tables are open.

Note

Be very careful when adjusting the front seats to avoid damaging the folding tray tables or seats.

Storage area behind the rear head restraints

The storage area can be used to carry light pieces of clothing.

WARNING

- – No heavy or hard objects should be placed on the storage area. There is a risk of injuring the vehicle passengers when braking suddenly.
- – Follow the safety precautions ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 101*.

Note

Make sure that the heating grid strips for the rear window defogger are not damaged by abrasive objects.

Tips

To ensure the ventilation functions correctly, the ventilation slots between the rear window and the storage area must not be covered.

Additional storage

You will find a variety of storage compartments and holders at various locations in the vehicle.

– Glove compartment: the glove compartment can be locked using the mechanical key ⇨ *page 46*.
– Holders for a notepad and a pen in the glove compartment
– Storage compartments in the door trim panel
– Net in the front passenger's footwell
– Storage compartments under the center armrest*
– Compartments* on the backrests of the front seats
– Garment hooks in the rear
– Cell phone holder* in the right rear door
– Bag hooks* in the luggage compartment
– Net* in luggage compartment

WARNING

– Follow the safety precautions ⇨ *page 87*.
– To reduce the risk of injury, make sure the covers for all storage compartments are always closed while driving.
– Only use the storage compartments in the door trim panels to store small objects that will not stick out of the compartment and impair the function of the side airbags.
– Only lightweight clothing should be hung from the garment hooks in the vehicle. The pockets of the clothing must not contain any heavy, breakable, or sharp-edged objects. Such objects endanger vehicle occupants and increase the risk of injury during sudden driving or braking maneuvers or in an accident, especially if the airbags deploy.
– Make sure your view toward the rear is not blocked, for example by hanging clothing or objects in the vehicle.
– Do not use coat hangers to hang garments because this could reduce the effectiveness of the side curtain airbags*.

Luggage compartment

General information

All pieces of luggage or objects must be securely fastened in the luggage compartment. Note the following to maintain good vehicle handling:

► Distribute the load evenly in the luggage compartment.
► Stow heavy luggage as far forward in the luggage compartment as possible.
► Use non-elastic cords attached to the tie-downs to secure objects.

WARNING

– The storage compartment must not be used to transport heavy objects, hard objects, or animals. Such objects endanger vehicle occupants and increase the risk of injury during sudden driving or braking maneuvers or in an accident.
– Loose objects can be thrown around the vehicle interior during sudden driving or braking maneuvers, which increases the risk of an accident. Always stow objects securely in the luggage compartment and secure them at the tie-downs. Use straps suitable for heavy objects.
– If pieces of luggage or objects are secured to the tie-downs with unsuitable or damaged straps, this can increase the risk of injury during braking maneuvers or accidents.
– When transporting heavy objects, the vehicle characteristics will change due to the shift in the center of gravity, which increases the risk of an accident. You may need to adapt your driving style and speed to the current conditions.
– The cargo net is only strong enough to secure light objects. Heavy objects will not be adequately secured, which increases the risk of injury.
– Never exceed the permitted axle and load and vehicle weight ⇨ *page 320*.
– Never secure a child safety seat to the tie-downs.
– Never leave your vehicle unattended, especially if the luggage compartment lid is ▶

open. Children could enter the luggage compartment and close the luggage compartment lid from the inside. This creates the risk of fatal injury, since the children would be locked in and may not be able to escape by themselves.
– Do not allow children to play in or on the vehicle. Close and lock the luggage compartment lid as well as all other doors when you leave the vehicle.
– Never transport passengers in the luggage compartment. Every passenger must be correctly secured with the safety belts in the vehicle ⇨ *page 83*.

Note

Make sure that the heating grid strips for the rear window defogger are not damaged by abrasive objects.

Tips

– The tire pressure must be adapted to the load ⇨ *page 279*.
– You can purchase straps at specialty stores.

Tie-downs and cargo net

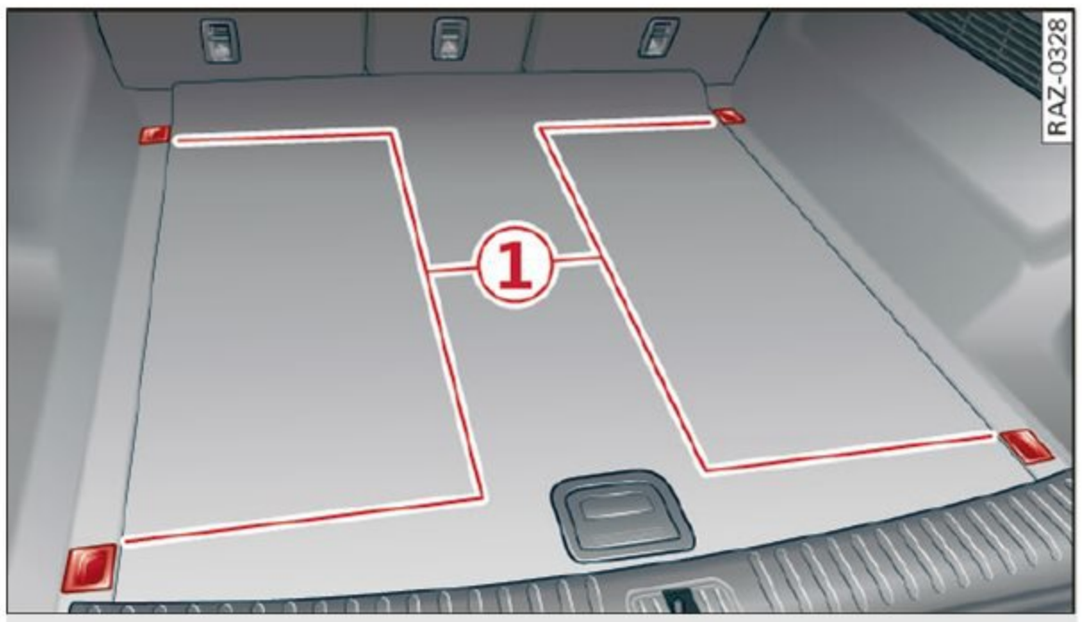


Fig. 93 Luggage compartment: location of the tie-downs

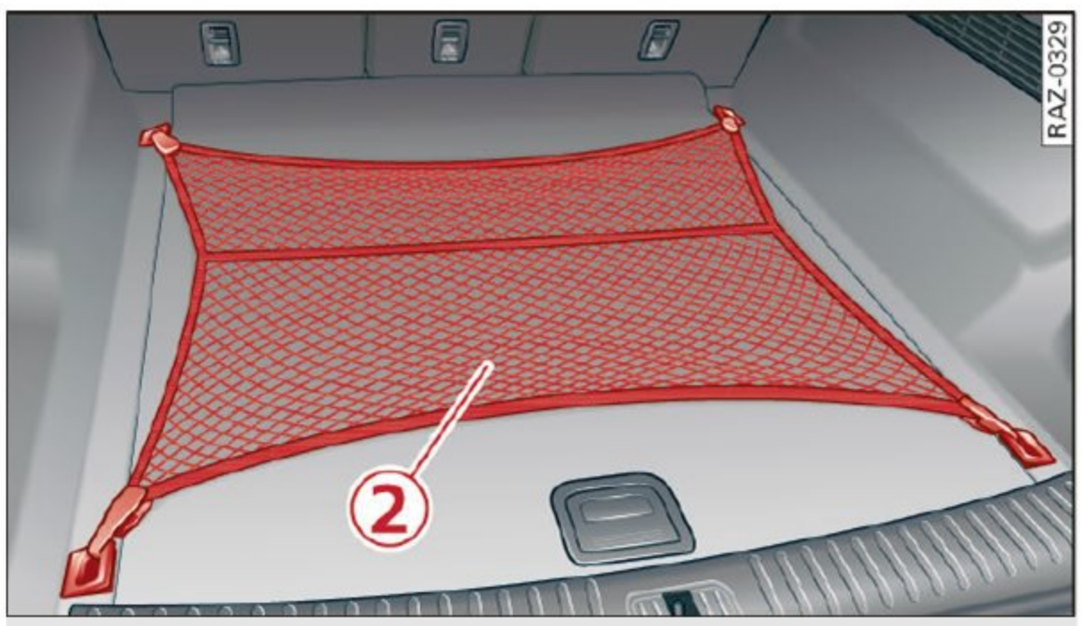


Fig. 94 Luggage compartment: cargo net stretched out

Follow the safety precautions ⇨ *page 101*.

Tie-downs

There are tie-downs (1) in the luggage compartment to secure pieces of luggage and objects.

▸ Use the tie-downs to secure the cargo.

Cargo net

Applies to: vehicles with luggage compartment net

Use the cargo net (2) to secure lighter objects in the luggage compartment

▸ Fold the clip for the tie-downs upward.
▸ Attach the hooks for the cargo net to the tie-downs.

Pass-through

Applies to: vehicles with pass-through

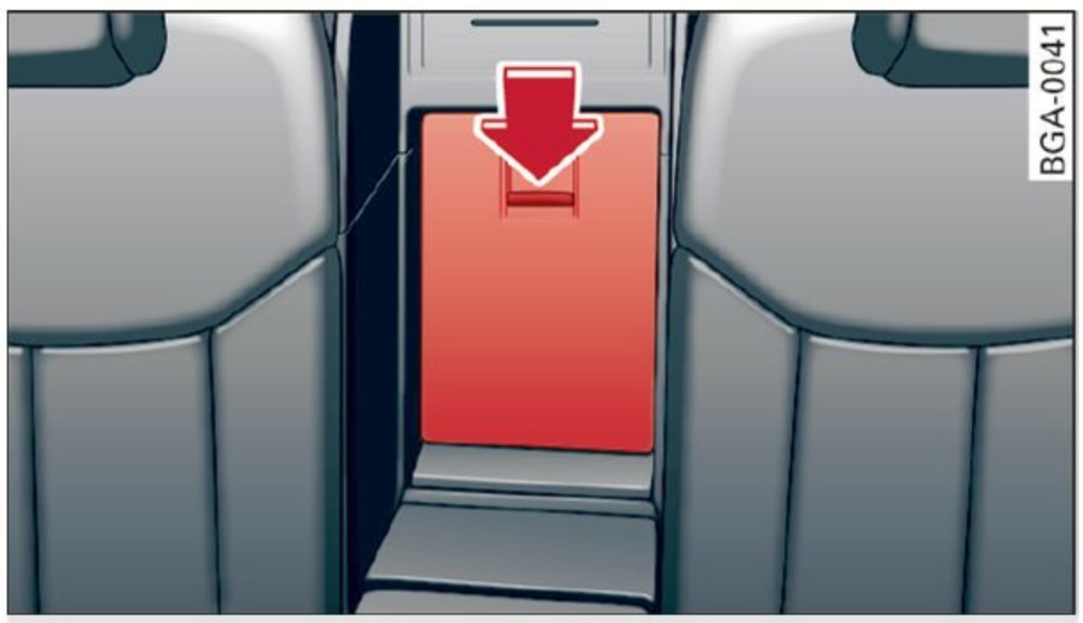


Fig. 95 Rear bench seat: opening the cover

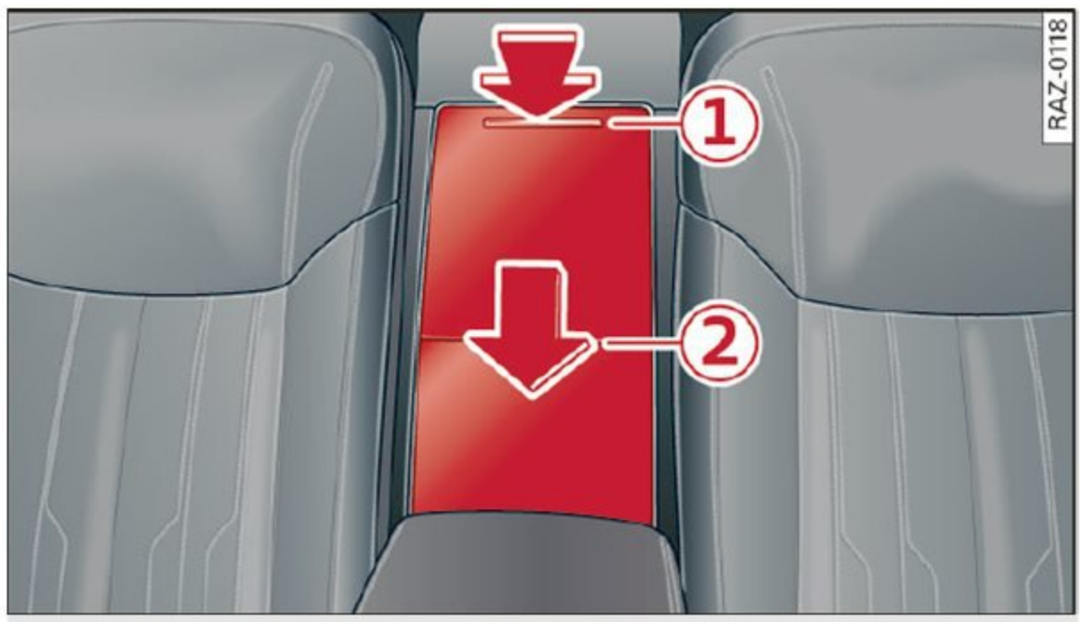


Fig. 96 Rear single seats: sliding down the cover

▸ Applies to: vehicles with rear bench seat: Fold down the center armrest in the rear and the cover behind it.

▸ Applies to: vehicles with single seats in the rear Press the button (1) and the cover will move down automatically (2).

Refrigerator

Applies to: vehicles with refrigerator

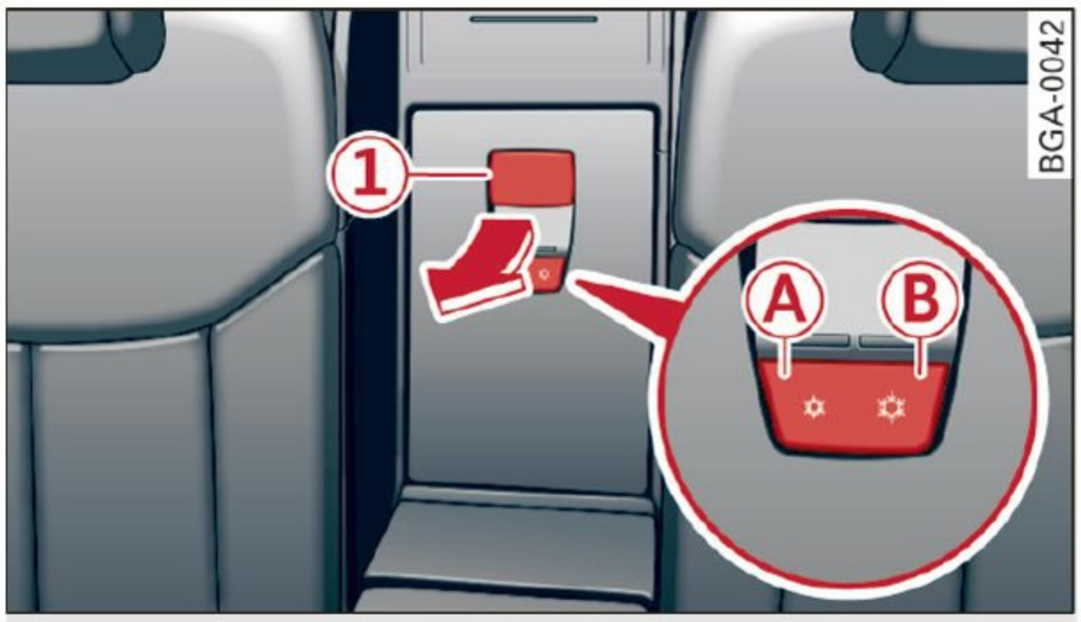


Fig. 97 Rear center armrest: refrigerator

Depending on the equipment, the refrigerator may be located in the rear behind the center armrest or the sunshade. It refrigerates or freezes only when the ignition is switched on.

The maximum load capacity is 5.5 lbs (2.5 kg).

Opening and closing

- ► Pull the release lever (1) to open the refrigerator.
- ► To close the refrigerator, push the cover back until it clicks into place.

Switching on and off

- ► Press the button (A) to switch the cooling function on or off.
- ► Press the button (B) to switch the freezer function on or off.

WARNING

- – Never overfill the refrigerator. Leave it closed while driving. There is a risk of injury in the event of a collision or sudden braking.
- – Never store flammable fluids, gas containers, or similar objects in the refrigerator due to the risk of an explosion. This also applies to goods and products that can emit volatile or flammable gases.
- – Fluids may freeze at temperatures of 32° F (0 °C) and lower. Glass containers could explode, increasing the risk of injury.

Note

The ventilation openings for the refrigerator are at the rear panel trim panel in the luggage compartment and must not be covered.

Tips

- – When the temperature in the luggage compartment is high, there may only be a limited cooling effect. The refrigerator will automatically switch off if the temperature in the luggage compartment exceeds 131° F (55 °C).
- – Remove any condensation with a soft cloth if necessary.

4N0012721BB

Warm and cold

Climate control system

Description

Depending on vehicle equipment, your vehicle may have an automatic climate control system with:

– Four zones to individually adjust the temperature, air distribution, and amount of ventilation at all of the seats.

The climate control system warms, cools, dehumidifies, and filters the air in the vehicle interior. It is the most effective when the windows and panoramic glass roof* are closed. If there is a build-up of heat inside the vehicle, ventilation can help to speed up the cooling process.

The climate control system automatically maintains a temperature once it has been set. In all heating mode functions except defrost, the blower only switches to a higher speed once the engine coolant has reached a certain temperature.

For the sake of the environment

If you would like to reduce energy usage, switch the air conditioning off.

Tips

– To prevent interference with the heating and cooling output and to prevent the windows from fogging over, the air intake in front of the windshield must be free of ice, snow, and leaves.
– Condensation from the cooling system can drip and form a puddle of water under the vehicle. This is normal and does not mean there is a leak.
– The energy management system may temporarily switch off certain functions, such as the seat heating* or rear window defogger. These systems are available again as soon as the energy supply has been restored.
– Specific settings are stored automatically in the active personal profile.

Operation



Fig. 98 Lower display and switch panel (example)

You can adjust all climate control system settings in the front; only certain functions are available in the rear.

Lower display

The lower display has two sections with controls:

You can regulate the blower and the air distribution automatically using AUTO in area ①. You can also apply individual settings here.

In section ②, you can switch individual climate control system functions on and off.

Switch panel

Both MAX and REAR buttons to defog windows as quickly as possible are located in section ③.

Upper display

In the upper display, you can switch additional functions on and off, display them, and adjust settings.

▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Air conditioning**, or
▸ Select ••• on the lower display.

Rear Seat Remote*

Using the Rear Seat Remote*, you can also control certain climate control system functions from the rear.

Customizing

A climate control function from the upper display can be assigned to each button on the left and right of ••• in section ②.

▸ Press and hold the symbol for the desired function on the upper display for at least three ▶

seconds. One menu appears. The menu consists of two sections.

- ► If you pull the symbol toward the left section, the button to the left of ••• will be assigned.
- ► If you pull the symbol toward the right section, the button to the right of ••• will be assigned.

Settings

Press the buttons to turn the functions on or off. One bar in the button lights up when the function is switched on. Some buttons can have several functions assigned to them. The various functions can be activated by pressing the button multiple times.

AUTO **Automatic mode**

The automatic mode regulates the amount of air and air distribution automatically, so that the set temperature is reached is quickly as possible.

REAR **Rear climate control system**

Applies to: vehicles with rear climate control system

To enable operation of the climate control system from the rear of the vehicle, press REAR.

To exit this mode again, press REAR or REAR MODE EXIT.

SYNC **Synchronization**

When synchronization is switched on, the temperature, air distribution, and blower strength on the driver's side is applied to all seat positions. You can also control the synchronization directly using a gesture. Pull two fingers together on the lower display ⇨ *page 17*.

OFF **Switching off**

The climate control system is switched off. Air supply from the outside is blocked. If you press OFF in the front, the front and rear climate control system will switch off. If you press OFF in the rear, the rear climate control system will switch off. To switch the climate control system back on, press on any button in the respective display.

A/C / A/C MAX **Cooling mode**

The cooling mode only functions with the blower turned on. The air is cooled and dehumidified in cooling mode. Otherwise the windows can fog up. Cooling mode switches off automatically when the outside temperatures are below zero.

If you activate the A/C, the cooling mode will be automatically regulated.

If you activate A/C MAX, the cooling mode will run with maximum cooling output and maximum blower speed. To reduce unnecessary energy usage, only use this function briefly.

+ / – Temperature

Temperatures between 60 °F (+16 °C) and 84 °F (+28 °C) can be set. If outside of this range, LOW or HIGH will appear in the display. In both settings, the climate control runs constantly at the maximum cooling or heating level. The temperature is not regulated.

Blower

With ﹀ / ﹀, you can manually adjust the volume of air generated by the blower to your preferences. The blower should always run at a low setting to prevent the windows from fogging and to ensure a continuous exchange of air inside the vehicle. To have the blower regulated automatically, press AUTO.

Air distribution

With ⇗ / ⇨ / ⇘, you can select the vents where the air will flow from. To have the vents automatically controlled, deactivate all three arrows or press AUTO. With ⇗, the air will be directed toward the windshield.

MAX **Defrosting**

The windshield and side windows are defrosted or cleared of condensation as quickly as possible. Align the outer air vents with the side windows. The maximum amount of air flows mainly from the vents below the windshield. The windshield defogger* is also switched on at low outside temperatures. The MAX button will flash. Recirculation mode switches off. The temperature should be set at +72°F (22°C) or higher. Depending on the outside temperature, the A/C cooling mode may automatically switch on. ▶

Rear window defogger

The rear window defogger only operates when the drive system running. It switches off automatically after 10 to 20 minutes, depending on the outside temperature.

To prevent the rear window defogger from switching off automatically, press and hold for more than three seconds. This is stored until the ignition is switched off.

/ Recirculation mode

In recirculation mode, the air inside the vehicle is circulated and filtered. This prevents the unfiltered air outside the vehicle from entering the vehicle interior.

If you activate , the air quality sensor will automatically switch recirculation mode on or off depending on the outside temperature.

If you activate , recirculation mode will switch on manually. ⚠

Seat heating

Applies to: vehicles with heated seats

The seat heating temperature can be set at multiple levels. Press once to switch on the highest level. Press again to decrease the temperature one level at a time. The seat heating is switched off if the button is not illuminated.

You can adjust the seat temperature balance* in the seat settings.

Applies to: surface heating: You can set whether surfaces are also heated when the seat heating is switched on ⇨ *page 107*.

Seat ventilation

Applies to: vehicles with seat ventilation

The seat ventilation intensity can be set to multiple levels. Press once to switch on the highest level. Press again to decrease the intensity one level at a time. The seat ventilation is switched off if the button is not illuminated.

Steering wheel heating

Applies to: vehicles with steering wheel heating

The steering wheel rim is heated electrically. You can also operate the steering wheel heating using the multifunction steering wheel ⇨ *page 39*.

Foot heating

Applies to: reclining seat system with leg support

Fold out the leg support and select the setting for the reclining seat in the Rear Seat Remote* ⇨ *page 78*. You can now switch the foot heating on or off with .

The foot heating intensity can be set at multiple levels. Press once to switch on the highest level. Press again to decrease the intensity one level at a time. The foot heating is switched off if the button is not illuminated.

The foot heating switches off automatically when the leg support is folded in.

Child safety lock*

If lights up in the Rear Seat Remote*, the parental control is active and operation is locked ⇨ *page 53*.

Ionizer

Applies to: vehicles with ionizer

Hazardous particles and germs in the air may be reduced through ionization. This will produce better air quality inside the vehicle.

Fragrance

Applies to: vehicles with fragrance function

The fragrance function will dispense a scent in the vehicle interior. It is dispensed through the front outer vents. This will produce a pleasant scent. The fragrance is time-delayed, especially at low or high temperatures. You can adjust the fragrance function ⇨ *page 107*.

Residual heat

The residual heat from the coolant is used to heat the vehicle interior. To use this function, press and hold for more than two seconds while the ignition is switched off. The function switches off automatically after about 15 minutes. ▶

WARNING

– You should not use the recirculation mode for an extended period of time, because no fresh air is drawn in and the windows can fog when cooling mode is switched off. This increases the risk of an accident.
– Individuals with reduced sensitivity to pain or temperature could develop burns when using the seat heating* function. To reduce the risk of injury, these individuals should not use seat heating*.

Note

To reduce the risk of damage to the seat heating* elements, do not kneel on the seats or place heavy pressure on one area of the seat.

Tips

– The setting for the seat heating* on the driver's side is assigned to the key that is in use.
– If the front passenger's seat heating* is turned on, it will not turn on again automatically if more than 10 minutes have passed between switching the ignition off and switching it on again.
– Only use the fragrance function* in moderation and take any other passengers and animals into consideration when using the function.
– An overlap of different scents or odors could cause discomfort.
– If there is discomfort, reduce the intensity or switch the fragrance function* off.
– Only use fragrances that are approved by Audi.

Adjusting the air vents

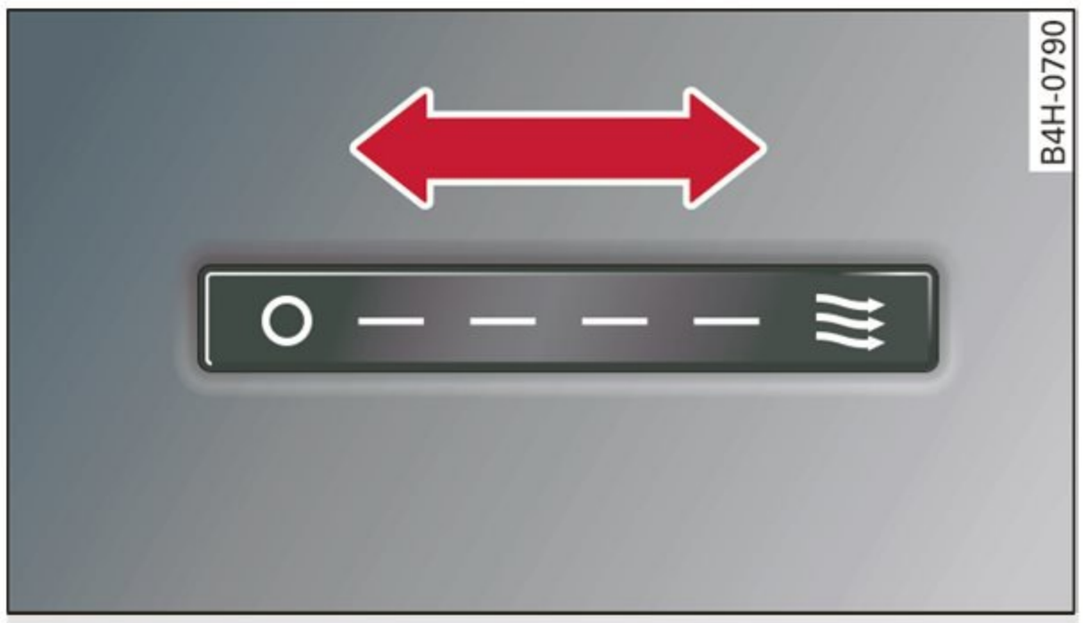


Fig. 99 Adjusting the air vents

You can open and close the air vents.

► Swipe right to open the air vents.
► Swipe left to close the air vents.

You can also press on the symbols directly to set the air supply at a certain level or turn it off.

The levers adjust the direction of the airflow from the vents.

Additional settings

You can adjust additional settings.

► Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Air conditioning** > ⚙.

Fragrance

Applies to: vehicles with fragrance function

Using **Fragrance selection**, you can select the fragrance and see the fill level of the fragrance.

You can select the strength of the scent with **Fragrance intensity**.

Footwell temperature*

You can adjust the footwell temperature for the driver and front passenger.

Surface heating

Applies to: vehicles with surface heating

You can select if surfaces are also heated when the seat heating is switched on. Other surfaces, such as the door armrest and the center armrest, may be heated, depending on the equipment.

4N0012721BB

Air quality display

Applies to: vehicles with air quality display

You can display information about the air quality.

- Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Air conditioning**.
- You may need to scroll down to the **Air quality** display.

Pollutant filter

A pollutant filter cleans the air in the vehicle interior when the blower is switched on.

A schematic display represents the effectiveness of the filter. The display visualizes the amount of pollutant particles in the vehicle interior in comparison to the surroundings.

Tips

For optimum air quality in the vehicle interior, close all windows and doors and activate A/C cooling mode, the AUTO function, and recirculation mode.

Messages

A/C Air conditioner: increase in CO2 concentration. Ventilate vehicle. See owner's manual

Ventilate the vehicle. If this message continues to display, stop driving as soon as you can safely park your vehicle and contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. If this message appears, drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately.

Driving

Starting the vehicle

Description

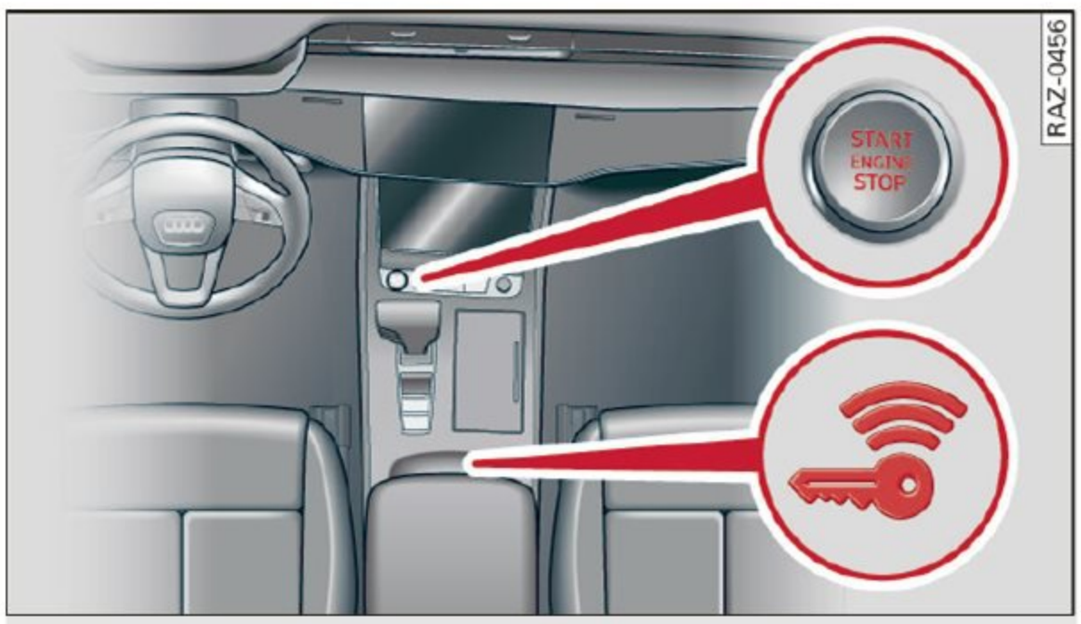


Fig. 100 Center console: starting the engine

Requirement: the key must be in the vehicle. When using an Audi connect key*, the mobile device or the activated Audi connect key card must be in the charging cradle ⇨ *page 182*.

Starting the engine

- ▸ Press and hold the brake pedal.
- ▸ Press the START ENGINE STOP button. The engine will start.

Equipment that uses a lot of electricity is switched off temporarily when you start the engine. If the engine does not start immediately, the starting procedure stops automatically after a short time. If this is the case, repeat the starting procedure after approximately 30 seconds.

Stopping the engine

- ▸ Bring the vehicle to a full stop.
- ▸ Press the START ENGINE STOP button. The engine will switch off.

Applies to: vehicles with steering lock: The steering is locked when you turn off the engine and open the driver's door. The steering lock helps prevent vehicle theft.

Stopping the engine in an emergency

If necessary in an emergency, the engine can also be stopped while driving using the emergency off function*.

- ▸ Press the START ENGINE STOP button twice in a row or press and hold it one time.

Switching on and off

If you would like to switch the ignition on or off without starting the engine, follow these steps:

- ▸ Press the START ENGINE STOP button without pressing the brake pedal.

Switching the ignition off automatically

Applies to: vehicles with Start/Stop system

To prevent the vehicle battery from draining, the ignition and possibly the exterior lighting may switch off automatically.

Requirements:

– The Start/Stop system* must have stopped the engine.
– You must have left the vehicle for longer than 30 seconds.
– The ignition must be switched on.

Among other indicators, the system detects that you have left the vehicle based on the following factors:

– The driver's door has been opened.
– The driver's safety belt has been unbuckled.
– The brake pedal is not being pressed.

The ignition will also be switched off after 30 minutes or if you lock the vehicle from the outside.

WARNING

– To reduce the risk of asphyxiation, never allow the engine to run in confined spaces.
– Never turn off the engine before the vehicle has come to a complete stop. Switching it off before the vehicle has stopped may impair the function of the brake booster and power steering. You would then need to use more force to steer and brake the vehicle. The fact that you cannot steer and brake as usual may increase the risk of accidents and serious injuries.
– If you leave the vehicle, switch the ignition off and take the key with you. This applies particularly when children remain in the vehicle. Otherwise, children could start the vehicle or operate electrical equipment (such as power windows), which increases the risk of an accident.

– Always select the “P” selector lever position when parking the vehicle; otherwise, the vehicle could roll away.

Note

– Avoid high engine speed, full throttle, and heavy engine load if the engine has not reached operating temperature yet. You could damage the engine.
– If the engine has been under heavy load for an extended period of time, heat builds up in the engine compartment after the engine is switched off and there is a risk of damaging the engine. For this reason, let the engine run at idle for approximately two minutes before shutting it off.

Tips

– Brief noises are normal when starting and stopping the vehicle and are no cause for concern.
– For up to 10 minutes after stopping the engine, the radiator fan may turn on again automatically or it may continue to run, even if the ignition is switched off.
– It may not be possible to start the vehicle in extremely low temperatures.

Messages

Engine start system: malfunction! Please contact Service

Do **not** switch the ignition off because you may not be able to switch it on again. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Engine start system: malfunction! Please contact Service

There is a malfunction in the engine starting system. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Remote control key: key not detected. Is the key still in the vehicle?

This indicator light turns on and this message appears if the vehicle key is removed from the vehicle when the engine is running. If the vehicle key is no longer in the vehicle, you cannot switch the ignition on or start the engine once you stop it. You also cannot lock the vehicle from the outside.

Remote control key and smartphone not detected. Are your key and smartphone still in the vehicle?

This indicator light turns on and this message appears if the vehicle key and smartphone are removed from the vehicle while the engine is running. If the vehicle key and smartphone are no longer in the vehicle, you cannot switch the ignition on or restart the engine once you stop the engine. You also cannot lock the vehicle from the outside.

Remote control key: hold back of key against the designated area. See owner's manual

The battery in the vehicle key may be drained or there may be a malfunction. To start the vehicle, you must also hold the vehicle key against the location shown ⇨ *page 109, fig. 100*.

If the malfunction remains, drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction corrected.

Hold back of key on the designated area, or place your smartphone in the charging cradle

The battery in the vehicle key may be drained or there may be a malfunction. To start the vehicle, you must also hold the vehicle key against the location shown ⇨ *page 109, fig. 100* or use the Audi connect key.

If the malfunction remains, drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction corrected.

When driving

Starting to drive, stopping, and parking

Starting from a stop

- ▸ Press and hold the brake pedal.
- ▸ Start the engine.
- ▸ Select a gear.
- ▸ Release the parking brake.
- ▸ Release the brake pedal. The vehicle may roll.
- ▸ Press the accelerator pedal to accelerate.

Stopping and parking

- ▸ Bring the vehicle to a full stop and press and hold the brake pedal.
- ▸ Set the parking brake.
- ▸ Select the “P” selector lever position to secure the vehicle from rolling away.
- ▸ Switch off the ignition before leaving the vehicle.

On hills, activate the parking brake first and then shift into the "P" selector lever position. This prevents too much stress from being placed on the locking mechanism.

WARNING

- To reduce the risk of an accident, always secure your vehicle from rolling.
- The vehicle can roll even when the engine is switched off.
- Unintended vehicle movement can lead to serious injuries.
- Do not inadvertently press the accelerator pedal when the vehicle is stationary. Pressing the pedal increases risk of accident because the vehicle will move, even if parking brake is set.

Gears and driving programs

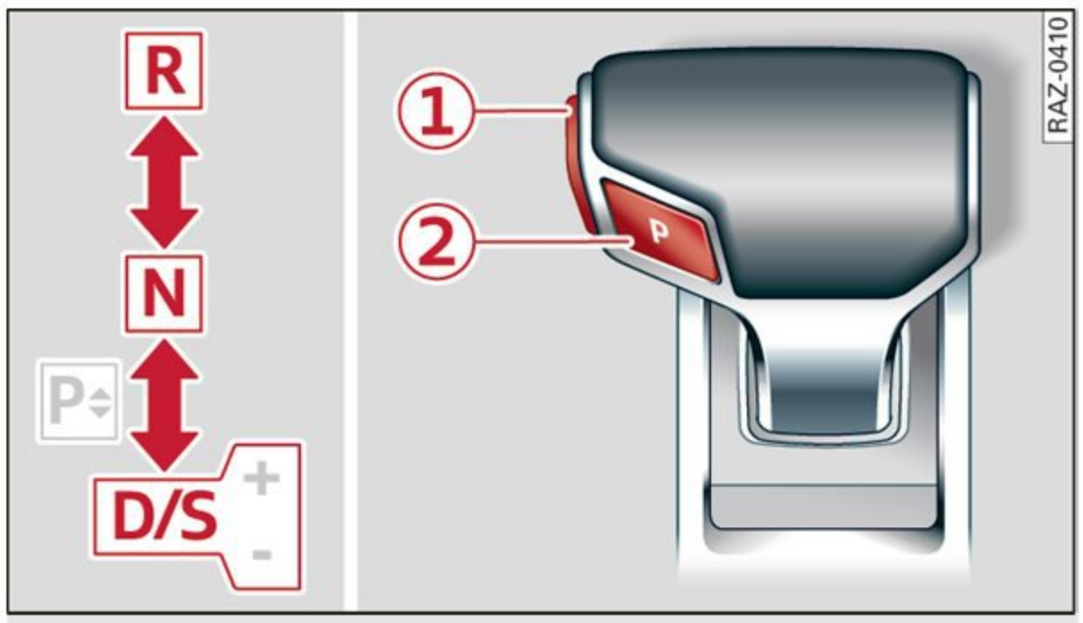


Fig. 101 Center console: selector lever

The automatic transmission shifts automatically depending on the selected gear and the current driving style. When driving with a moderate driving style, upshifting early and downshifting late will help to improve fuel economy. When driving with a sporty driving style, the transmission permits higher RPMs.

The gears are displayed next to the selector lever.

– **P** (Park)
– **R** (Reverse)
– **N** (Neutral)
– **D** (Drive)

Selecting a gear

Requirement: the ignition must be switched on.

- – Bring the vehicle to a full stop and press the brake pedal.
- – Press the release button (1) on the selector lever.
- – To select the nearest gear, move the selector lever forward or back until you feel the first pressure point.
- – To skip a gear (for example, move from “D” to “R”), move the selector lever past the pressure point in the desired direction.
- – The label next to the selector lever for the selected gear will light up.

“N” (Neutral) gear

In the “N” gear, power is not transmitted to the driving wheels. Use the “N” gear in a car wash (with conveyor belts), for example. ▶

If you unintentionally select “N” while driving (faster than 1 mph (2 km/h)), you can also shift back to “D” without pressing the brake pedal.

For safety reasons, the vehicle cannot be locked when the transmission is in the "N” gear.

“P” (Park) gear

Requirement: the ignition must be switched on.

The vehicle is secured from rolling away by the parking lock when in the “P” gear.

– Bring the vehicle to a full stop and press the brake pedal.
– Press the “P” button ② on the selector lever.
– The “P” next to the selector lever will light up.

“P” engages automatically if you switch the engine off while the “D” or “R” gear is selected. If you switch the engine off in “N”, “P” will engage automatically after approximately 30 minutes.

If you want to switch to another gear from “P”, the engine must be running.

If you cannot shift out of “P”, for example because the vehicle has no power, you may need to use the emergency release for the parking lock ⇨ *page 113*.

Selecting the driving program

Various driving programs can be selected when in the “D” gear. The programs influence when the transmission shifts and how the accelerator pedal responds.

The selected driving program is displayed in the instrument cluster.

– **D** (Drive): normal driving mode
– **S** (Sport): sporty driving mode

If you select the **Dynamic** mode in Audi drive select*, the “S” driving program will be activated. When the ignition is switched off, the driving program may be reset to “D”.

To switch between the current driving program and “S”, push the selector lever toward the rear.

WARNING

– Before starting to drive, check if the desired gear is displayed next to the selector lever.
– Always secure your vehicle from rolling away. Press the brake pedal or shift to “P”. When leaving the vehicle, also set the parking brake.
– Power is still transmitted to the wheels when the engine is running at idle. To prevent the vehicle from “creeping”, you must keep your foot on the brake in all selector lever positions (except "P" and "N") when the engine is running.
– To reduce the risk of an accident, do not press the accelerator pedal when changing gears if the vehicle is stationary and the engine is running.
– Never select the “R" or "P” gears while driving. Doing so could cause an accident.
– The vehicle can roll even if the ignition is switched off.

Tips

If you shift between “D” and “R” within one second, you do not need to press the brake pedal. This makes it possible to “rock” if it is stuck, for example.

Manual shifting



Fig. 102 Center console: shifting manually with the selector lever

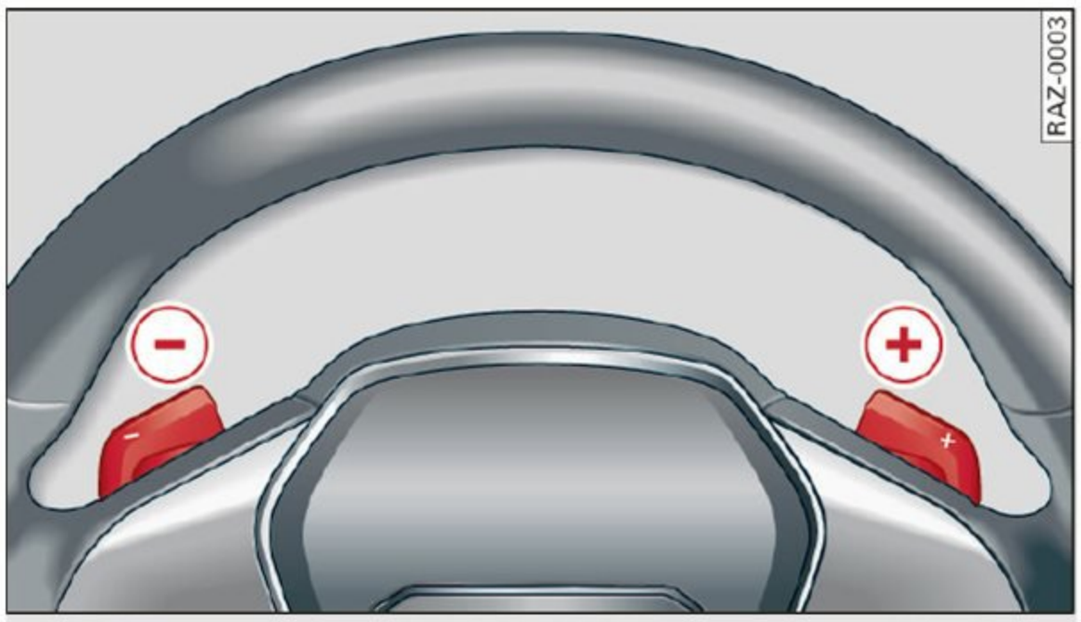


Fig. 103 Steering wheel: shift paddles*

You can shift the gears manually when in “D” mode. The transmission must be in tiptronic mode.

Shifting with the selector lever

You can shift into manual shifting mode while the vehicle is stationary or while driving.

- ▸ To switch to manual shifting mode, tilt the selector lever toward the front passenger's side ⇨ *fig. 102*. “M” will be displayed in the instrument cluster.
- ▸ Upshifting: push the selector lever forward ⊕.
- ▸ Downshifting: push the selector lever toward the rear ⊖.
- ▸ To switch back to automatic mode, tilt the selector lever toward the driver's side.

Shifting with the shift paddles

Applies to: vehicles with shift paddles

- ▸ Upshifting: press the ⊕ shift paddle ⇨ *fig. 103*.
- ▸ Downshifting: press the ⊖ shift paddle.
- ▸ To engage the lowest possible gear for maximum acceleration, press and hold the ⊖ shift paddle.
- ▸ To switch back to automatic mode, press and hold the ⊕ shift paddle or push the selector lever toward the rear.

If you stop using the shift paddles temporarily, the transmission will switch back to automatic mode. To keep shifting manually, tilt the selector lever toward the front passenger's side.

Tips

– The transmission only allows manual shifting when the engine speed is within the permitted range.
– The transmission automatically shifts up or down before critical engine speed is reached.

Accelerator pedal

You can accelerate the vehicle using the accelerator pedal. If you press the accelerator pedal all the way down, the engine’s full power will be used and you will reach maximum acceleration, also called “kick-down”.

WARNING

The driving wheels could spin and the vehicle could swerve on slick or slippery road surfaces when using kick-down, which increases the risk of an accident.

Parking lock emergency release

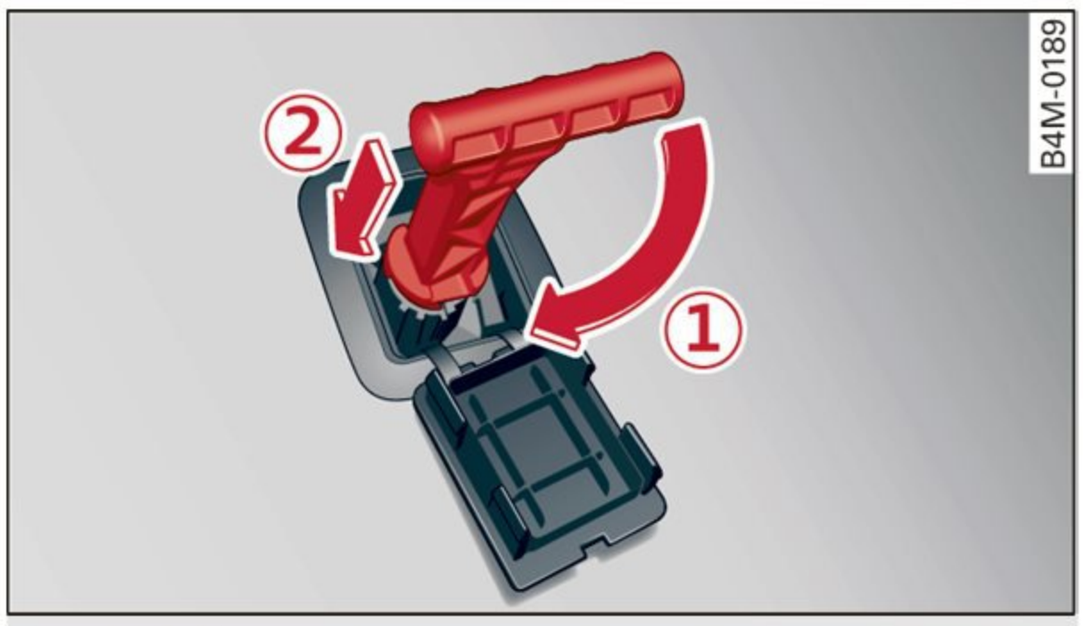


Fig. 104 Diagram: parking lock emergency release

The emergency release is located under the floor mat on the driver's side. Read and follow the important instructions about towing ⇨ *page 303*. ▶

Releasing the parking lock using the emergency release

- ▸ To prevent your vehicle from rolling away, set the parking brake Ⓟ ⇨ *page 119*.
- ▸ Pry the cover off at one of the openings using the screwdriver from the vehicle tool kit ⇨ *page 295*.
- ▸ Insert the socket wrench from the vehicle tool kit into the opening.
- ▸ Turn the socket wrench clockwise ① until it stops and press it downward ② until it locks into place.
- ▸ Leave the socket wrench inserted.

Resetting the parking lock

- ▸ Grasp the socket wrench with both hands and carefully pull it upward to remove.
- ▸ Install the cover.

WARNING

- The parking lock must be released using the emergency release before towing the vehicle.
- The parking lock may only be released using the emergency release if the parking brake is set. If it is not working, secure the vehicle from rolling using the brake pedal or other suitable means, such as blocking a front and a rear wheel. An unsecured vehicle may roll away, which increases the risk of an accident.
- Only activate the emergency release while on a level surface or a slight slope.
- To reduce the risk of an accident, you must not drive when the emergency release is activated.

Messages

Transmission: malfunction! Safely stop vehicle

Do not continue driving. Stop the vehicle as soon as possible in a safe location and secure it so it does not roll. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Transmission: too hot. Please stop vehicle

Do not continue driving. Select "P" and contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Transmission: too hot. Please adapt driving style

The transmission temperature has increased significantly. Drive very cautiously or take a break from driving until the temperature returns to the normal range and the indicator light turns off.

Transmission: malfunction! You can continue driving. See owner's manual

There is a system malfunction in the transmission. You may continue driving. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility soon to have the malfunction corrected.

Transmission: malfunction! You can continue driving with limited function. Please contact Service

There is a system malfunction in the transmission. The transmission is switching to emergency mode. This mode only shifts into certain gears or may no longer shift at all. The engine may stall. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Transmission: malfunction! You can continue driving with limited function. No reverse gear

There is a system malfunction in the transmission. The transmission is switching to emergency mode. This mode only shifts into certain gears or may no longer shift at all. The engine may stall. You cannot engage the reverse gear. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Transmission: malfunction! You can continue driving in D until engine is off

There is a system malfunction in the transmission. The transmission is switching to emergency mode. If you turn the engine off, you will not be able to select any other gears after restarting the ▶

engine. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Transmission: please press brake pedal and select gear again

Press the brake pedal and select the desired selector lever position again. You can then continue driving.

Selector lever: malfunction! You can continue driving. Please contact Service

There is a system malfunction in the selector lever. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Selector lever: malfunction! Gear change only possible if using both shift paddles

There is a system malfunction in the selector lever. You can continue driving with restricted function. The selector lever is not working. Gears can only be selected by tapping both shift paddles at the same time when the vehicle is stationary. The “P” gear is automatically engaged when you turn off the engine. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

P button: malfunction! Auto P when engine off. Please contact Service

There is a malfunction in the "P" button on the selector lever. The “P” gear is automatically engaged when you turn off the engine. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Danger of rolling away! P not possible. Please apply parking brake

The parking lock was released using the emergency release ⇨ *page 113* or can no longer be engaged. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Move selector lever to automatic position

The transmission has switched out of tiptronic mode. Switch back to automatic mode with the selector lever ⇨ *page 113*.

Drive system

Breaking in

A new vehicle must be broken in within the first 1,000 miles (1,500 km) so that all moving parts work smoothly together, which helps to increase the service life of the engine.

Do not drive higher than two-thirds of the maximum permitted engine RPM during the first 600 miles (1,000 km) and do not use full acceleration. The engine can be increased RPM gradually during the next 300 miles (500 km).

Efficient and environmentally-friendly driving

The amount of fuel consumption, the environmental impact, and the wear to the engine, brakes, and tires depends mostly on your driving style. Note the following information for efficient and environmentally-conscious driving:

- Do not let the engine run while the vehicle parked.
- Use the Start/Stop system ⇨ *page 116*.
- Turn off electrical equipment that is not needed, for example seat heating*.
- Anticipate upcoming traffic situations while driving to avoid unnecessary acceleration and braking. Use the efficiency assist* ⇨ *page 147*.
- Utilize the engine braking effect.
- Avoid driving short distances when possible.
- Avoid driving at high speeds.
- Avoid adding extra weight to the vehicle if possible, for example by not leaving roof racks or bike racks installed when they are not needed.
- Have maintenance performed regularly on the vehicle.
- Do not drive with winter tires during the summer.
- Make sure the tire pressure is correct ⇨ *page 279*.

Tips

The amount of noise produced by the vehicle can increase significantly when driving with a sporty style. Show respect to others around you and the environment with the way you operate your vehicle, especially at night.

Energy management

Your vehicle is equipped with an intelligent energy management system for distributing electricity. This significantly improves the starting ability and increases the vehicle battery life.

Tips

- If you drive short distances frequently, the vehicle battery may not charge enough while driving. As a result, convenience functions for electrical equipment may be temporarily unavailable.
- The vehicle battery will gradually drain if the vehicle is not driven for long periods of time, or if electrical equipment is used when the engine is not running. To ensure that the vehicle can still be started, the electrical equipment will be limited or switched off.

Messages

Drive system: malfunction! Safely stop vehicle

There is a malfunction in the drive system. The brake booster and the power steering may stop working. Stop the vehicle immediately or as soon as possible and do not continue driving. Have the problem corrected by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Drive system: malfunction! Please contact Service

There is a malfunction in the drive system. Drive slowly to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction corrected.

Start/Stop system

Description

Applies to: vehicles with Start/Stop system

The Start/Stop system can help increase fuel economy and reduce CO_2 emissions.

In Start/Stop mode, the engine shuts off automatically when stopped, for example at a traffic light. The ignition and important assist systems such as power steering and the brake booster will remain available during the Stop phase. The engine will restart automatically when needed.

The Start/Stop system is automatically activated once the ignition is switched on.

Basic requirements

- The driver's door and hood must be closed.
- "P", "N", or "D" must be engaged.
- The steering wheel must not be turned far in either direction.
- The vehicle must have driven faster than 2 mph (3 km/h) since the last time it stopped.
- A trailer must not be hitched to the vehicle.

Note

Always switch the Start/Stop system off when driving through water ⇨ *page 117*.

Tips

- Depending on the driving situation, the engine may already stop when **coasting** before the vehicle has come to a complete stop [1].
- If you select the "D" position after shifting into reverse, the vehicle must be driven faster than 6 mph (10 km/h) in order for the Start/Stop system to become active again. This makes it possible to maneuver without stopping the engine.

Stopping and starting the engine

Applies to: vehicles with Start/Stop system

- Press and hold the brake pedal until the vehicle has stopped. The Ⓐ indicator light appears in ▶

1) In certain countries.

the instrument cluster once the engine stops automatically.

▸ The engine starts again when you remove your foot from the brake pedal. The indicator light turns off.

Tips

– Press the brake pedal during a Stop phase to keep the vehicle from rolling.
– The ignition will turn off if you press the START ENGINE STOP button during a Stop phase.
– If you leave the vehicle briefly during a stop phase, the driver's door must be closed and the safety belt buckled for the engine to be able to start automatically.
– You can control if the engine will stop or not by reducing or increasing the amount of force you use to press the brake pedal. For example, if you only lightly press on the brake pedal in stop-and-go traffic or when turning, the engine will not switch off when the vehicle is stationary. If you press the brake pedal harder, the engine will switch off.

Starting and stopping the engine automatically

Applies to: vehicles with Start/Stop system

The system checks if certain conditions are met before and during the Stop phase, and determines if the engine stops and how long it remains stopped. For example, if power usage is high, the engine will not be stopped. Along with other conditions, the following factors influence the automatic engine start or stop:

– Environmental conditions (slopes, inclines, elevation, temperature)
– Battery (charge status, temperature, power usage)
– Engine temperature
– Assist systems
– Driving behavior

Depending on the engine, the indicator light may appear if the engine is not stopped.

Manually switching the Start/Stop system off and on

Applies to: vehicles with Start/Stop system

The A OFF button is located in the function bar on the lower display.

▸ Press A OFF to switch on or off. One bar in the button lights up when the function is switched off.

Tips

If you switch the system off during a Stop phase, the engine will start again automatically.

Messages

Applies to: vehicles with Start/Stop system

Drive system: please start the vehicle manually

This message appears when specific conditions are not met during a Stop phase. The Start/Stop system will not be able to restart the engine. The engine must be started with the START ENGINE STOP button.

Vehicle start system: malfunction! Please contact Service

There is a malfunction in the Start/Stop system. Drive the vehicle to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Service Facility as soon as possible to have the malfunction corrected.

Brakes

General information

You can apply the vehicle's brakes using the brake pedal.

Operating noise

Noises may occur when braking depending on the speed, braking force, and outside conditions such as temperature and humidity.

Braking effect

The response time from the brakes depends on the weather and environmental conditions. To ensure the optimum braking effect, the brake system is cleaned at regular intervals. This is done by applying the brake pads to the brake ▸

4N0012721BB

rotors for a short period of time when driving at high speeds when the windshield wipers are switched on.

If the brake system becomes damp, for example after driving in heavy rain, the braking effect may be delayed. Other factors that could temporarily increase the response time of the brakes include:

– Wet conditions
– Low temperatures, ice, and snow
– Roads covered in salt
– Dirty brake pads

Corrosion

Corrosion may form on the brake rotors if there is no heavy braking, if the vehicle is not driven for long periods of time, or if the vehicle is not driven frequently or for long distances. In this case, braking heavily several times while driving at high speeds can clean the brake rotors ⇨ ⚠.

Brake pads

New brake pads do not achieve their full braking effect during the first 250 mi (400 km). They must be "broken in" first. However, you can compensate for the slightly reduced braking force by pressing firmly on the brake pedal. Avoid heavy braking during the break-in period.

Brake pad wear depends largely on the way the vehicle is driven and on operating conditions. Brake pad wear increases when driving frequently in the city or short distances or when using a very sporty driving style.

Ceramic brakes

Applies to: vehicles with ceramic brakes

Ceramic brakes provide excellent deceleration rates.

The break-in period for new ceramic brakes may be significantly longer than for standard brake rotors. Due to the properties of the material, they may cause noises at lower speeds. Ceramic brakes also absorb more moisture in wet conditions. Therefore, there will temporarily be less braking force than when the brakes are dry. You can compensate for this by pressing the brake pedal harder.

⚠ WARNING

– Only apply the brakes for the purpose of cleaning the brake system when road and traffic conditions permit. You must not endanger other road users and increase the risk of an accident.
– Due to the risk of injury, only have an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility work on the brake system. Incorrect repairs could impair the function.
– Never let the vehicle roll while the engine is stopped because this increases the risk of an accident.
– During automatic braking maneuvers, the brake pedal may move downward automatically. To reduce the risk of injury, do not place your foot under the brake pedal.

! Note

– Never let the brakes "rub" by pressing the pedal lightly when braking is not actually necessary. This can cause the brakes to overheat and increases braking distance and causes wear.
– Before driving on long stretches with steep hills, reduce the vehicle speed and shift to a lower gear to use the engine braking effect. This reduces the load on the brakes. If you need to brake additionally, brake in intervals and not continuously.

i Tips

– If you retrofit your vehicle with a front spoiler, wheel covers or similar items, make sure that the air flow to the brakes is not obstructed. Otherwise the brake system can overheat.
– Also refer to the information about brake fluid ⇨ *page 264*.

Messages

BRAKE / Brakes: malfunction! Safely stop vehicle

There is a malfunction in the brake system. If ABS / and also turn on, there is a malfunction in the ABS, ESC, and braking distribution. ▶

Do not continue driving. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance. Read and follow the other safety precautions ⇨ ⚠.

BRAKE / Brake pads: wear limit reached. You can continue driving. Please contact Service

The brake pads are worn. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility as soon as possible to have the malfunction corrected.

Brakes overheating. Please shift to D

There was a heavy load on the brakes. Select the “D” gear to reduce the load on the brakes and protect them from overheating.

Brake booster: limited functionality. You can continue driving. Please contact Service

There is a brake booster malfunction. The brake booster is available, but its effectiveness is reduced. The braking performance may be different compared to the usual performance. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Brake booster: deactivated. See owner's manual

The brake booster remains active for a brief period of time after switching off the ignition. Secure the vehicle from rolling by setting the parking brake and select the “P” gear.

WARNING

If a malfunction occurs in the ABS, ESC, and braking distribution, interventions that stabilize the vehicle will no longer be available. This could cause the vehicle to swerve, which increases the risk that the vehicle will slide. Do not continue driving. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Electromechanical parking brake

Description

The Ⓟ switch is located under the selector lever in the center console.

Your vehicle is equipped with an electromechanical parking brake. The parking brake is designed to prevent the vehicle from rolling unintentionally and replaces the hand brake.

Setting/manually releasing the parking brake

- ▸ Pull the Ⓟ switch to set the parking brake. The LED in the switch turns on. The PARK / Ⓟ indicator light also turns on.
- ▸ To release the parking brake manually, press the brake or accelerator pedal while the ignition is switched on, and press the Ⓟ switch at the same time. The LED in the button and the indicator light will turn off.

Releasing the parking brake automatically

Requirement: the doors must be closed and the driver's safety belt must be fastened.

- ▸ To start driving and release the parking brake automatically, press the accelerator pedal as usual.

In addition to releasing the parking brake automatically, other convenience and safety functions are available when you start driving ⇨ *page 121*.

Preventing the automatic parking brake release

The vehicle could begin rolling unintentionally when the parking brake is released if the vehicle is on a hill or towing a trailer.

- ▸ To prevent the parking brake from releasing automatically, pull and hold the Ⓟ switch and press the accelerator pedal. The parking brake remains set and prevents the vehicle from rolling backward.
- ▸ You can release the Ⓟ switch again once you are sure that you are giving enough driving force to the wheels by pressing the accelerator pedal. ▶

Emergency braking function

You can use the emergency braking function in an emergency situation, or if the standard brakes are malfunctioning or the pedal is obstructed.

- ▸ Pull and hold the Ⓟ switch.
- ▸ As soon as you release the Ⓟ switch or accelerate, the braking will stop.

Pulling and holding the Ⓟ switch while driving the vehicle activates the emergency braking function. The hydraulic brake system will brake all four wheels. The braking effect is similar to heavy braking ⇨ ⚠.

To reduce the risk of activating the emergency braking by mistake, a warning tone (buzzer) sounds when the Ⓟ switch is pulled. Emergency braking stops as soon as the Ⓟ switch is released or the accelerator pedal is pressed.

Parking

- ▸ Press the brake pedal to stop the vehicle.
- ▸ Pull the Ⓟ switch to set the parking brake.
- ▸ Select “P”.
- ▸ Turn the engine off ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Turn the steering wheel when parking on inclines so that the wheels will roll into the curb if the vehicle starts moving.

⚠ WARNING

– If a gear is engaged while the vehicle is stationary and the engine is running, do not press the accelerator pedal inadvertently. Pressing the accelerator pedal will cause the vehicle to move, and this could result in an accident.
– Emergency braking should only be used in an emergency, when the when the standard brake pedal is malfunctioning or obstructed. During emergency braking, your vehicle will brake similar to heavy braking. ESC and the associated components (ABS, ASR, EDL) cannot overcome the laws of physics. A full brake application while driving through curves or in poor road or weather conditions can cause the vehicle to slide or the rear of the vehicle to swerve, which increases the risk of an accident.
– Always set the parking brake when leaving your vehicle, even if for a short period of time. If the parking brake is not set, the vehicle could roll away, increasing the risk of an accident.
– If the power supply fails, you cannot set the parking brake once it is released. In this case, park the vehicle on level ground and secure it by engaging the "P” gear. Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.
– If you leave the vehicle, switch the ignition off and take the key with you. This applies particularly when children remain in the vehicle. Otherwise, children could start the vehicle, release the parking brake, or operate electrical equipment such as power windows, which increases the risk of an accident.
– No one, especially children, should remain in the vehicle when it is locked. Locked doors make it more difficult for emergency workers to enter the vehicle, which puts lives at risk.

Note

Do not leave your vehicle unattended while the engine is running, because this increases the risk of an accident.

Tips

When stopping at a traffic signal or stopping in city traffic, you can set the parking brake manually. The vehicle must not be held stationary using the brake pedal. As soon as you press the accelerator pedal, the parking brake releases automatically and the vehicle starts to move ⇨ *page 121, Assisted driving start*.

Tips

If you leave the vehicle when “D” or “R” are engaged, the parking brake will be set automatically. ▶

Tips

– Occasional noises when the parking brake is set and released are normal and are not a cause for concern.
– The parking brake goes through a self-test cycle at regular intervals when the vehicle is stopped. Any noises associated with this are normal.

Assisted driving start

Various convenience and safety functions may be available when the vehicle begins driving, depending on vehicle equipment.

Starting on hills with the parking brake set

Requirement: the doors must be closed and the driver's safety belt must be fastened.

► To start driving comfortably when on a hill, set the parking brake and begin driving as usual. The braking force of the parking brake does not release automatically until the wheels build up enough driving force.

Starting on hills with hill hold assist

Hill hold assist makes it easier to start on hills.

Requirement: the driver's door must be closed and the engine must be running.

► To activate hill hold assist, press and hold the brake pedal for several seconds. The vehicle must be facing uphill.

After releasing the brake pedal, the braking power is maintained briefly ⇨ ⚠ to prevent the vehicle from rolling back when starting. This allows you to begin driving more easily.

WARNING

– If you are using hill hold assist and do not begin driving immediately after releasing the brake pedal, your vehicle may begin to roll backward. Press the brake pedal or set the parking brake immediately.
– The intelligent technology of the hold assist* and the hill hold assist cannot overcome the natural laws of physics. The increased comfort offered by the hold assist* and the hill hold assist should not cause you to take safety risks.
– The hold assist* and the hill hold assist cannot hold the vehicle in place on all hills (for example, if the ground is slippery or icy).
– To reduce the risk of an accident, always make sure the vehicle is situated safely while stationary.

Note

Switch hold assist off and select the “N” gear before driving your vehicle into a car wash with a conveyor belt. Otherwise, the parking brake could engage automatically.

Tips

If you take your foot off of the brake pedal when hold assist* is switched on, hold assist* will prevent the vehicle from “creeping”.

Messages

If the PARK / (P) indicator light flashes, the braking force has not built up enough or it has decreased. Select the "P" gear to help secure the vehicle. Make sure the indicator light is off before you start driving.

BRAKE / (!) Parking brake: malfunction! Safely stop vehicle. See owner's manual

If the indicator light and the message appear **when the vehicle is stationary or after switching the ignition on**, check if you can release the parking brake. If you cannot release the parking brake, see an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. If you can release the parking brake and the message still appears, see an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

If the indicator light and message appear **while driving**, the hill start assist or emergency braking function may be malfunctioning. It may not be possible to set the parking brake or release it once it has been set. Do not park your vehicle on hills. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance. ▶

4N0012721BB

BRAKE / Parking brake: malfunction! Please release parking brake

There is a malfunction in the parking brake. Release the parking brake and set it again.

Parking brake: malfunction! Please contact Service

There is a malfunction in the parking brake. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected. Do not park the vehicle on hills, because it could roll.

PARK BRAKE / Parking brake: warning! Vehicle parked too steep

There is not enough braking force to hold the vehicle in place. The brakes have overheated. The vehicle could roll away, even on a small incline.

PARK BRAKE / Parking brake: applied

If this message appears, press the brake pedal first and then release the parking brake if necessary.

Take over!

If this message appears, press the brake pedal.

Special driving situations

Driving uphill and downhill

Please note the following when driving on inclines and hills:

- Drive slowly and carefully.
- Do not try to turn around if you cannot safely drive on an incline or hill. Instead, drive in reverse.
- When driving down hills, you can activate the hill descent control if you press the brake pedal while driving in “D” gear. The automatic transmission will select a gear suitable for driving down the hill and will attempt to maintain the speed at which the vehicle was traveling at the time the brake pedal was pressed. Press the brake pedal if necessary. The hill descent control will switch off once the hill levels out or you press the accelerator pedal.
- Utilize the engine braking effect when driving downhill by selecting a lower gear ⇨ *page 113*. This reduces the load on the brakes.
- Brake in intervals and do not press the brake pedal continuously.

WARNING

- Only drive on inclines that your vehicle is designed to handle. Do not exceed the hill climbing ability of your vehicle. Your vehicle could tip or slide.
- Do not drive at an angle on steep inclines and hills. If your vehicle is about to tip, you must immediately start steering in the direction of the downward slope to reduce the risk of an accident.
- Always be ready to brake when using the hill descent control function.

Driving through water

If you must drive through water, follow these instructions:

- Check the stability of the ground, the current, and the water depth. If the ground is unstable, there is a strong current, or there are waves, the water must only reach **up to the lower edge of the body at the most**.
- Deactivate the Start/Stop system.
- Drive carefully and no faster than at walking speeds to prevent the front of the vehicle from creating waves, because they could splash above the lower edge of the body. Oncoming vehicles could also create waves.
- Do not stop the vehicle while in the water.
- Do not turn the engine off.

WARNING

After driving through water, press the brake pedal carefully to dry the brakes so that the full braking effect will be restored.

Note

Vehicle components such as the engine, drive system, suspension, or electrical system, can be severely damaged by driving through water. ▶

Tips

If possible, avoid driving through salt water because it increases the risk of corrosion. Use fresh water to clean any vehicle components that come into contact with salt water.

Driving dynamic

Audi drive select

Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with Audi drive select

Drive select makes it possible to experience different types of vehicle characteristics in one vehicle. With different driving modes, the driver can switch the setting, for example from sporty to comfortable. In the **Individual** mode, the settings can be adjusted to your personal preferences. This makes it possible to combine settings such as a sporty drivetrain setting with light steering.

Selecting the driving mode

Applies to: vehicles with Audi drive select



Fig. 105 Center console: Audi drive select button

- ▸ Press the left or right arrow key ⇨ *fig. 105* until the desired mode appears in the MMI. Or:
- ▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Audi drive select**.

You can change the driving mode when the vehicle is stationary or while driving. If traffic permits, briefly remove your foot from the accelerator pedal after changing modes so that the mode you have selected will be activated for the drive system.

Comfort - provides a comfort-oriented vehicle setup and is suited for long drives on highways.

Auto - provides an overall comfortable yet dynamic driving feel and is suited for everyday use.

Dynamic - gives the driver a sporty driving feel and is suited to a sporty driving style. The “S” driving program is selected.

Individual ⇨ *page 124*.

Tips

Specific settings are stored automatically in the active personal profile.

Adjusting the “Individual” mode

Applies to: vehicles with Audi drive select

You can adjust details about the vehicle settings. The settings are stored based on the user and will be available again the next time the vehicle is driven.

- ▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Audi drive select**.
- ▸ Press **Individual**.

The equipment in your vehicle will determine which settings you can adjust.

Drive

The drive system will react to accelerator pedal moves more quickly or in a more balanced manner. The shift points are placed in higher or lower speed ranges.

Depending on the setting, the drive power at the rear axle will be distributed with the sport differential* to be more sporty or moderate ⇨ *page 128*.

Steering

The power steering ⇨ *page 127* adapts. Indirect steering that moves easily is especially suited to long drives on highways.

Suspension*

The suspension ⇨ *page 125* adjusts to be tighter or more comfort-oriented when it comes to damping of uneven spots on the road.

Based on the selected setting, the air suspension* will adjust the ground clearance and the active suspension* will provide various degrees of compensation for vehicle movements.

Engine sound*

The engine sound adapts and can be subtle to sporty.

Suspension

Air suspension

Applies to: vehicles with air suspension

The air suspension is an electronically-controlled suspension and leveling system. The firmness of the suspension will adapt to the driving conditions and the driving situation. The system balances out changes in load. The vehicle level will also adapt gradually to the vehicle speed in order to reduce the wind resistance at high speeds and increase the ground clearance at low speeds. The settings depend on the selected Audi drive select* mode.

Displaying the vehicle level

- Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Audi drive select**.
- Applies to: Audi tablet: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Driving data**.

The filled-in boxes represent the current vehicle level. The more boxes that are filled in, the higher the ground clearance. The box that corresponds with the current vehicle level will flash while the vehicle is lifting or lowering. The target level is indicated by a red outline.

Raising the vehicle

- Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Audi drive select**.
- Press **Raise** to reach the highest vehicle level and thus the maximum ground clearance.
- Press **Lower** to lower the vehicle down again.

The vehicle will lower when at speeds of approximately 22 mph (35 km/h) and lower. This function may only be used temporarily when increased ground clearance is necessary. It is not intended for long drives.

Note

When transporting the vehicle on a road carrier, rail carrier, ship carrier, or other carrier, it may only be secured at the running surfaces of the tires (circumference). Securing the vehicle at the axle components, suspension struts, or towing eyes is not permitted because the pressure in the air suspension struts can change during transport. The vehicle might not be secured sufficiently if this happens.

Active suspension

Applies to: vehicles with active suspension

The active suspension enhances the air suspension with an electromechanically-controlled suspension system. It selectively influences rolling movements when driving around curves and pitching movements, for example when braking and accelerating. It also reduces lifting movements when driving over bumps. The settings depend on the selected Audi drive select* mode.

Display

You can display the principal functions of the active suspension.

- Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Vehicle information**.
- You may need to scroll down to the **Active suspension** display.

It will display how the vehicle body movements are compensated at each wheel. The more the cylinder is filled in, the more the system is intervening. Please note that the display here is not to scale.

Settings

- Open the active suspension display and select ⚙.

With **Predictive scanning: level correction**, you can adjust how much the vehicle will compensate for bumps in the road. For this purpose, there is a camera behind the windshield that detects the road conditions and activates the active suspension when bumps are predicted. A colored cone in the display indicates when this function is activated. This function may only have limited availability under certain conditions, for example, when it is dark ⇨ *page 138*.

Ground clearance

The vehicle height and clearance can be influenced by the following factors: ▶

– Change in temperature
– Change in load
– Change to the Audi drive select* mode
– Lifting and lowering via the air suspension*

WARNING

To reduce the risk of injury, make sure no one gets pinched when the vehicle level is changing, for example when cleaning the underbody or the wheel housings.

Note

Always make sure there is enough clearance above and below the vehicle. This is especially important for entrances with height restrictions, for example, before driving into underground garages. You could also scrape the ground when driving over the edges of curbs or on steep ramps, which could damage your vehicle.

Messages

Active suspension: service mode! Vehicle can be moved but handling may be impaired

Service mode is activated. Carefully drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the service mode deactivated.

Active suspension: malfunction! Limited stability. You can continue driving at max XX mph

There is a malfunction. Driving stability is reduced. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately. Do not drive faster than the speed given in the message.

Air suspension: service mode. Vehicle can be moved but handling may be impaired

Service mode is activated. Carefully drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the service mode deactivated.

Air suspension: malfunction! You may continue driving slowly at max. XX mph (km/h)

There is a malfunction. Driving stability may be limited. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately. Do not drive faster than the speed given in the message.

Air suspension: malfunction! Safely stop vehicle. Steering and ground clearance limited

There is a malfunction. Do **not** continue driving. Stop the vehicle safely. Avoid turning the steering wheel, because the vehicle ground clearance may be so low that turning the steering wheel could result in damage to the wheels and wheel housings.

Active suspension: unavailable. Limited stability. Can continue driving with caution. See owner's manual

There is a heavy load on the vehicle electrical system or the active suspension. Therefore, the active suspension functions will be temporarily switched off. Driving stability is reduced. Continue driving with caution.

Active suspension: malfunction! Limited stability. You can continue driving with caution

There is a malfunction. Driving stability is reduced. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Air suspension: vehicle too low. Limited ground clearance

The vehicle ground clearance is very low. Wait until the air suspension system has restored normal ground clearance. Have an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility repair the malfunction immediately if the indicator light does not turn off after a significant period of time.

Air suspension: malfunction! Please contact Service

There is a malfunction. The driving stability may be limited and the ground clearance may be low. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Active suspension: currently limited. See owner's manual

There is a heavy load on the vehicle electrical system or the active suspension. Therefore, the active suspension functions are temporarily limited.

Active suspension: predictive scanning unavailable. See owner's manual

There is a malfunction. The camera's visual field may be blocked. Clean the windshield. If the malfunction continues, drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately.

Audi drive select: automatic suspension lowering. See owner's manual

The vehicle level is adjusted to the setting stored for the active personal profile ⇨ *page 40*.

Audi drive select: automatic suspension lift. See owner's manual

The vehicle level is adjusted to the setting stored for the active personal profile ⇨ *page 40*.

Steering

Description

Electromechanical steering supports the driver's steering movements by electronically adapting the power steering depending on the vehicle speed. The settings depend on the selected Audi drive select* mode.

Dynamic all-wheel steering

Applies to: vehicles with dynamic all-wheel steering

Active corrective steering at the front and rear axles increases the driving dynamic and driving stability. At low speeds, the rear wheels are steered in the opposite direction from the front wheels to reduce the steering effort needed by the driver and to reduce the turning radius. Vehicle handling improves. At high speeds, steering the rear wheels in the same direction as the front wheels improves the vehicle response and driving stability. The vehicle reacts quickly and precisely to the driver's steering movements.

Messages

Steering: malfunction! Please stop vehicle

The power steering may have failed. Adapt your driving style immediately to compensate for the fact that it may be more difficult to turn the steering wheel, and stop your vehicle in a safe location as soon as possible. Do not continue driving. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Steering: malfunction! Please stop vehicle. Pay attention to distance at side

The rear axle steering may have failed. More space on the road may be needed at the side of the vehicle. Slow down immediately, and stop your vehicle as soon as possible in a safe location with enough space at the sides of the vehicle. Do not continue driving. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Steering: malfunction! Please stop vehicle

There is a malfunction in the electronic steering lock. You cannot turn the ignition on. Do not tow your vehicle because it cannot be steered. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Steering: malfunction! You can continue driving

There is a malfunction. Steering may be more difficult or more sensitive. Adapt your driving style. Have the steering system checked immediately by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. Please note that the red indicator light may turn on after restarting the engine. Do not continue driving if it does.

Steering: malfunction! Adapt driving style. Larger turning radius

The rear axle steering may have failed. The vehicle will have a larger turning radius, and the stability when driving around curves will be comparable to a vehicle without rear axle steering. Drive carefully to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction corrected.

Steering lock: malfunction! Please contact Service

There is a malfunction in the electronic steering lock. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected. ▶

4N0012721BB

Dynamic steering: correcting steering wheel position

The steering is reinitializing. The steering wheel will move easily after starting the vehicle. Reinitialization might be necessary if the steering wheel was moved while the engine was switched off. The display turns off if the initialization was successful.

WARNING

Do not tow your vehicle if there is a malfunction in the electronic steering lock because this increases the risk of an accident.

Tips

- If there is a malfunction, the steering wheel may be crooked when driving straight.
- If the or indicator light only stays on for a short time, you may continue driving.

All wheel drive (quattro)

Description

Applies to: vehicles with all wheel drive

The all-wheel drive system distributes the driving power variably to the front and rear axle to improve the driving characteristics. It works together with selective wheel torque control, which can activate when driving through curves ⇨ *page 129*.

The all-wheel drive system is designed for high engine power. Your vehicle is exceptionally powerful and has excellent driving characteristics both under normal driving conditions and on snow and ice. Always read and follow safety precautions ⇨ ⚠.

WARNING

- Even in vehicles with all wheel drive, you should adapt your driving style to the current road and traffic conditions to reduce the risk of an accident.
- The braking ability of your vehicle is limited to the traction of the wheels. In this way, it is not different from a two wheel drive vehicle. Do not drive too fast because this increases the risk of an accident.
- Note that on wet streets, the front wheels can “hydroplane” if driving at speeds that are too high. Unlike front wheel drive vehicles, the engine RPM does not increase suddenly when the vehicle begins hydroplaning. Adapt your speed to the road conditions to reduce the risk of an accident.

Sport differential

Applies to: vehicles with sport differential

The sport differential distributes the drive power to the rear axle based on the situation. The goal is a high level of agility and ability to accelerate on curves. The vehicle is very responsive to steering. The settings depend on the selected Audi drive select* mode.

Torque distribution display[1)]

You can display the drive torque distribution.

► Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Vehicle information**.

► You may need to scroll down to the **quattro** display.

The torque being currently applied at each wheel is displayed with an arrow. The more the arrow is filled in, the more torque there is. Please note that this display is not a true-to-scale measurement and it depends on the highest level of torque that is currently being applied.

Messages

Sport differential: malfunction! Please contact Service

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Sport differential: temperature too high. Please adapt driving style ▶

1) In certain countries.

The transmission temperature has increased significantly due to the sporty driving manner. Drive in a less sporty manner until the temperature returns to the normal range and the indicator light switches of.

WARNING

Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility if the sport differential is faulty or malfunctioning. The repair must be performed by trained personnel using the correct oil in order to ensure safety.

Electronic Stabilization Control

Description

Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC) supports driver safety. It reduces the risk of slipping and improves driving stability. ESC detects critical situations, such as if the vehicle is oversteering or understeering, or if the wheels are spinning. The brakes are applied or the engine torque is reduced in order to stabilize the vehicle.

If the indicator light blinks while driving, the ESC is actively regulating.

If the indicator light turns on, the system has switched the ESC off. In this case, you can switch the ignition off and then on to switch the ESC on again. The indicator light turns off when the system is fully functional.

If the indicator light turns on, ESC was limited or switched off manually ⇨ *page 130*.

The following systems are integrated in the ESC:

Anti-lock braking system (ABS)

ABS prevents the wheels from locking when braking. The vehicle can still be steered even during hard braking. Apply steady pressure to the brake pedal. Do not pump the pedal.

A pulsing in the brake pedal indicates that the system is acting to stabilize the vehicle.

Brake assist

The brake assist system can decrease braking distance. It increases braking power when the driver presses the brake pedal quickly in emergency situations. You must press and hold the brake pedal until the dangerous situation is over. Depending on the activated driver assistance systems, the brake assist system may react with increased sensitivity.

Anti-Slip Regulation (ASR)

ASR reduces drive power when the drive wheels begin spinning and adapts the power to the road conditions. This makes it easier to start, accelerate and drive up hills.

Electronic Differential Lock (EDL)

The EDL applies the brakes to wheels that are slipping and transfers the drive power to the other wheels. This function is not available at higher speeds.

In extreme cases, EDL automatically switches off to keep the brake on the braked wheel from overheating. The vehicle is still functioning correctly. EDL will switch on again automatically when conditions have returned to normal.

Power steering

The ESC can also support vehicle stability through steering.

Selective wheel torque control

Selective wheel torque control is used when driving on curves. Braking is targeted toward the wheels on the inside of the curve as needed. This allows more precise driving in curves.

Automatic post-collision braking system

The automatic post-collision braking system can help to reduce the risk of sliding and of additional collisions after an accident. If the airbag control module detects a collision, the vehicle is braked by the ESC.

The vehicle does not brake automatically if one of the following occurs:

– The driver presses the accelerator pedal, or ▶

4N0012721BB

– The braking force generated by the pressed brake pedal is greater than the braking force that would be initiated by the system
– The ESC, the brake system, or the vehicle electrical system is not functioning

WARNING

– The ESC and its integrated systems cannot overcome the limits imposed by natural physical laws. This is especially important on slippery or wet roads. If the systems begin acting to stabilize your vehicle, you should immediately alter your speed to match the road and traffic conditions. Do not let the increased safety provided tempt you into taking risks. This could increase your risk of a collision.
– Please note the risk of a collision increases when driving fast, especially through curves and on slippery or wet roads, and when driving too close to objects ahead. The ESC and its integrated systems cannot always prevent collisions - there is still a risk of accidents!
– Accelerate carefully when driving on smooth, slippery surfaces such as ice and snow. The drive wheels can spin even when these control systems are installed and this can affect driving stability and increase the risk of a collision.

Tips

– The ABS and ASR only function correctly when all four wheels have a similar wear condition. Different tire sizes can lead to a reduction in engine power.
– You may hear noises when the systems described are working.

Operating

The OFF button is located above the selector lever in the center console.

The ESC is automatically switched on when the ignition is switched on. It may make sense in some situations to limit the ESC so that the wheels can spin:

– Rocking the vehicle to free it when it is stuck
– Driving in deep snow, on unpaved ground, or with snow chains

Limiting ESC (sport mode)

– To limit the ESD, press the OFF button briefly. The OFF indicator light turns on.
– To completely reactivate the ESC stabilization function, press the button again. The indicator light turns off.

Switching off ESC

– To switch off the ESC, press and hold the OFF button for more than three seconds. The OFF and ESC OFF indicator lights turn on.
– To completely reactivate the ESC stabilization function, press the button again. The indicator lights turn off.

WARNING

– When the ESC is switched off or limited, there will be no vehicle stabilization or it will be limited. The driving wheels could spin and the vehicle could swerve, especially on slick or slippery road surfaces, which increases the risk of an accident.
– Because of the increased risk of an accident, only drive with the ESC switched off or limited when it is necessary. Reactivate the ESC as soon as possible.

Tips

If malfunctions occur in other systems or certain driver assist systems are active, the ESC must be switched on by the system. In these cases, the ESC is automatically switched on and cannot be limited or switched off with the button.

Messages

ABS / Stabilization control (ESC/ ABS): malfunction! See owner's manual

There is a malfunction in the ABS or EDL. This also causes the ESC to malfunction. The brakes still function with their normal power, but ABS is not active. ▶

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Trailer towing

Driving with a trailer

General information

Your vehicle is primarily intended for transporting people and luggage. However, if you drive with a trailer, follow the technical requirements, the operation and driving tips, and the legal regulations.

Driving with a trailer affects the vehicle's energy usage, performance, and wear. It also requires higher concentration from the driver.

WARNING

Do not transport any people in a trailer due to the risk of fatal injury.

Technical requirements

Certain requirements must be met when towing a trailer.

Trailer hitch

Only use a trailer hitch with a removable ball hitch mount and ball hitch. The trailer hitch must be permitted for the vehicle, the trailer and the permitted total weight of the trailer being pulled. Above all, it must be securely and safely attached to the vehicle trailer.

Never mount a trailer hitch on the bumper. The trailer hitch must be mounted in a way that does not impair the function of the bumper. Do not make any changes to the exhaust system and the brake system.

Check regularly if the trailer hitch is securely mounted. Always follow the instructions given by the trailer hitch manufacturer.

Trailer brakes

If the trailer has its own brake system, then follow the manufacturer specifications. However, the brake system on the trailer must never be connected to the vehicle brake system.

Engine cooling system

Driving with a trailer means a higher load on the engine and the cooling system. The cooling system must be designed for additional load and contain enough coolant ⇨ (!).

Note

Longer inclines cannot be driven without a suitable cooling system, especially if the outside temperatures are high. Otherwise, this increases the risk of engine damage.

Operating instructions

Towing capacity

Your vehicle can only be operated with class 1 or class 2 trailers.

Load distribution

Poor cargo load and distribution can negatively impact vehicle handling. Load the trailer based on the following criteria as much as possible:

– Store objects in the vehicle luggage compartment, if possible. The vehicle should always carry the heaviest possible load and the trailer should have the lightest possible load.
– Distribute the load in the trailer so that the heavy objects are as close to the axle as possible.
– Secure objects so that they do not slide.
– Utilize the maximum permitted tongue weight if possible.

Tires

Set the tire pressure on your vehicle for a “full load”; see the tire pressure sticker ⇨ *page 279*. If necessary, also adjust the tire pressure on the trailer according to the manufacturer's specifications.

The trailer and the vehicle should be equipped with winter tires when driving in winter temperatures.

Outside mirrors

If you cannot see the traffic behind the trailer with the standard exterior mirrors or the virtual exterior mirrors*, then you must install ▶

additional exterior mirrors. Adjust them so you have a sufficient visibility behind you.

Exterior lighting

Follow the legal regulations for lighting on your trailer that are applicable in the country where you are operating the vehicle. Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for more information.

Before you start driving, check all lighting equipment on the trailer while it is hitched to the vehicle.

The headlight range control automatically adjusts the light range of the headlights.

Safety chains

Make sure the safety chains are correctly applied when pulling a trailer. The chains should hang enough so that the trailer can drive around curves. However, they must not touch the ground.

Air suspension

The Audi drive select* **comfort** mode ⇨ *page 124* must be selected before you adjust the tongue weight on the trailer and hitch the trailer ⇨ (!), ⇨ *page 125*.

Likewise, the vehicle cannot be raised manually using the **Raise** function ⇨ *page 125*.

For vehicles with a retrofitted trailer hitch, you must switch on the air suspension trailer mode manually.

Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Settings & Service** > **Air suspension: trailer**.

Switch it off again when you are no longer towing a trailer.

When using carrier systems that are mounted directly on the trailer hitch ball head, you can also switch trailer mode off manually.

If you must drive on roads that are in poor condition, you can raise the vehicle again after hitching the trailer or after adjusting the tongue weight ⇨ *page 125*.

Vehicle levels below the values set in the **Comfort** level will no longer be available, even if you are lowering the vehicle manually.

WARNING

- Never turn off trailer mode while driving when a trailer is hitched, because then the restrictions for controlling the vehicle level will be turned off.
- Driving with a trailer on unpaved roads when the vehicle is raised may change the vehicle handling. Adapt your speed.
- Note that the vehicle will lower automatically at certain speeds if you have lifted the vehicle manually.

Note

- Select the Audi drive select* **Comfort** mode. Otherwise, the tongue load specified for your vehicle will no longer be applicable.
- Attachments retrofitted on the vehicle may cause damage, especially on the trailer hitch ball head. In cases of damage, have the function checked by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Tips

- Block the wheels with chocks when parking on inclines if the trailer is loaded.
- Having the vehicle inspected between the inspection intervals is recommended if you tow a trailer frequently.
- Avoid driving with a trailer during the vehicle break-in period.

Driving with a trailer

Driving with a trailer requires extra caution.

Speed

Adhere to the legal speed limits. Follow the legal regulations that are applicable in the country where you are operating the vehicle.

As the speed increases, the driving stability of the trailer decreases. Therefore you should not exceed the maximum legal speed limit when there are unfavorable road, weather, and/or wind ▶

4N0012721BB

conditions. This especially applies when driving downhill.

Hill

When you start driving uphill or downhill, trailers may tilt or sway sooner than when driving on a level surface. If small swaying movements have already occurred, you can stabilize the trailer by firmly braking immediately. Never try to "straighten out" the trailer by accelerating.

Brakes

When using a trailer with overrun brakes, first brake gently then quickly. This reduces the risk of jerking while braking if the trailer wheels lock up.

Engine coolant temperature

Pay attention specifically to the coolant temperature display when there are high outside temperatures, and when driving on long inclines ⇨ *page 14*. Shift to a higher gear in a timely manner.

WARNING

Constant braking causes the brakes to overheat and can substantially reduce braking performance, increase braking distance, or cause complete failure of the brake system.

Retrofit installation

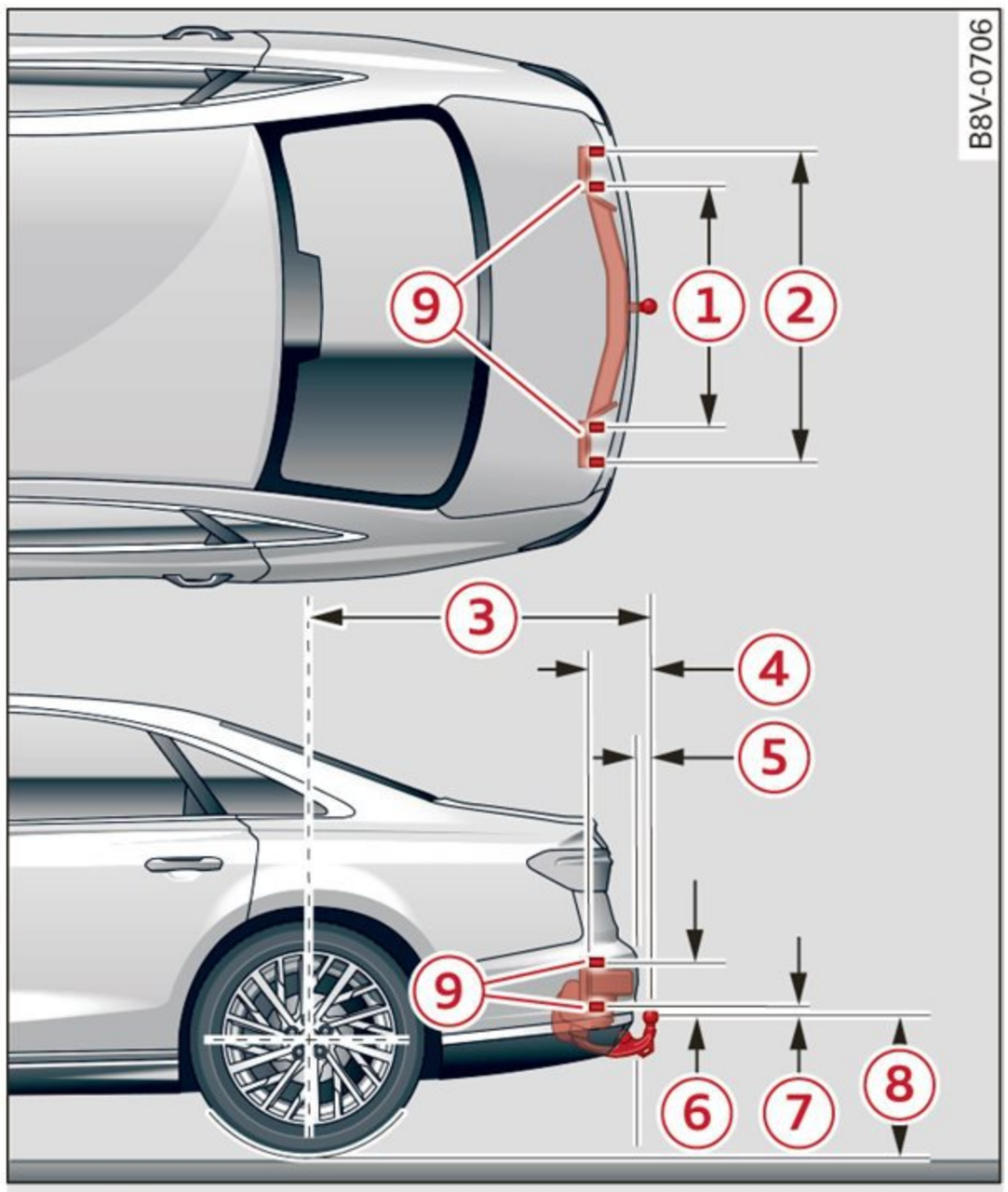


Fig. 106 Installation dimensions and position of the mounting points

You can find out if your vehicle is equipped with a retrofitted trailer hitch at an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Installation dimensions (mm)			
①	910	②	1107
③	1280	④	340
⑤	At least 65	⑥	188
⑦	39	⑧	350 – 420

A retrofitted trailer hitch must be installed according to the instructions provided by the manufacturer. The trailer hitch is bolted to the body at the attachment points ⑨.

An authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility knows the specifications for retrofitting a trailer hitch and any enhancements to the cooling system that may be needed.

WARNING

Only have the additional trailer hitch installed by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. ▶

– There is a risk of an accident if the trailer hitch is installed incorrectly.
– For your own safety, read the assembly instructions provided by the trailer hitch manufacturer.

Note

– Connecting the socket incorrectly could cause damage to the vehicle electrical system.
– Do not drive uphill for long distances without a suitable cooling system, especially if outside temperatures are high. Otherwise, this increases the risk of engine damage.

Assist systems

General information

Safety precautions

WARNING

– As the driver, you are always completely responsible for all driving tasks. The assist systems cannot replace the driver's attention. Give your full attention to driving the vehicle, and be ready to intervene in the traffic situation at all times.
– Activate the assist systems only if the surrounding conditions permit it. Always adapt your driving style to the current visual, weather, road, and traffic conditions.
– Unexpected steering or braking interventions may be initiated by the assist systems. Note the information on storing luggage items correctly ⇨ *page 101*.
– For the assist systems to be able to react correctly, the function of the sensors and cameras must not be restricted. Note the information on sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 137* or ⇨ *page 138*.

Tips

– Pay attention to applicable local regulations relating to driving tasks, leaving space for emergency vehicles, vehicle distance, speed, parking location, wheel placement, etc. The driver is always responsible for following the laws that are applicable in the location where the vehicle is being operated.
– You can cancel a steering or braking intervention by the system, by braking or accelerating noticeably, steering, or deactivating the respective assist system.
– Always check the assist systems settings before driving. The settings could have been changed, for example, by other drivers or if another personal profile was used.

System limitations

WARNING

– The use of an assist system cannot overcome the natural laws of physics. A collision cannot be prevented in certain circumstances.
– Warnings, messages, or indicator lights may not be displayed or initiated on time or correctly, for example, if vehicles are approaching very fast.
– Corrective interventions by the assist systems, such as steering or braking interventions, may not be sufficient or they may not occur. Always be ready to intervene.

Tips

– Due to the system limitations when detecting the surrounding area, the systems may warn or intervene unexpectedly or too late in certain situations. The assist systems may also interpret a driving maneuver incorrectly and then warn the driver unexpectedly.
– The systems may not function as expected in unusual driving situations, such as driving offroad, on unpaved roads, on loose ground, on inclines, or on grooves in the road.
– The systems may not function correctly in unclear traffic situations, such as turning lanes, exit ramps, construction zones, rises or dips that obstruct visibility, intersections, toll stations, or city traffic.
– If accessories have been mounted on the steering wheel, the ability for the steering systems to react may be limited.

Surrounding area detection

Sensor overview

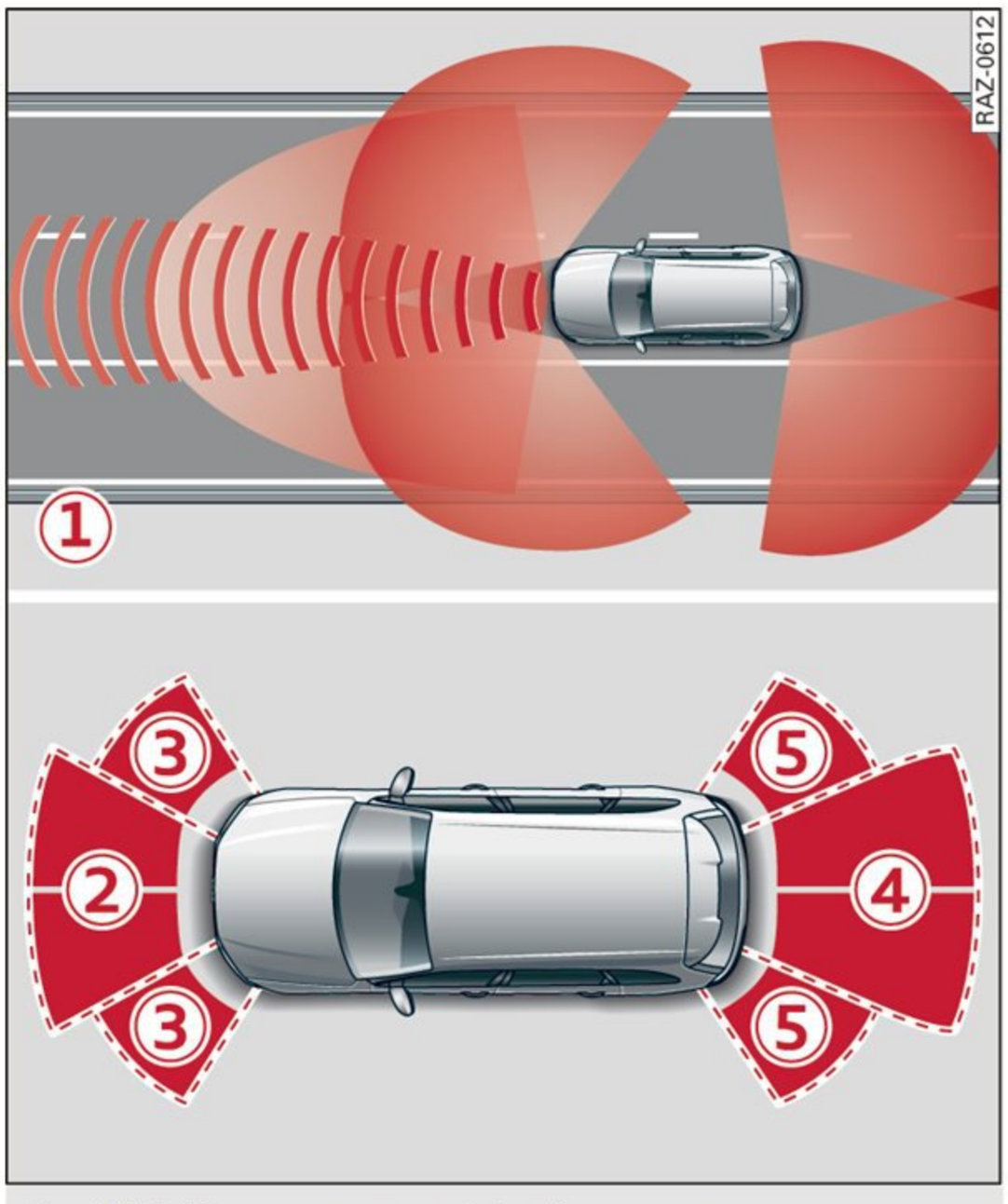


Fig. 107 Diagram: sensor detection areas

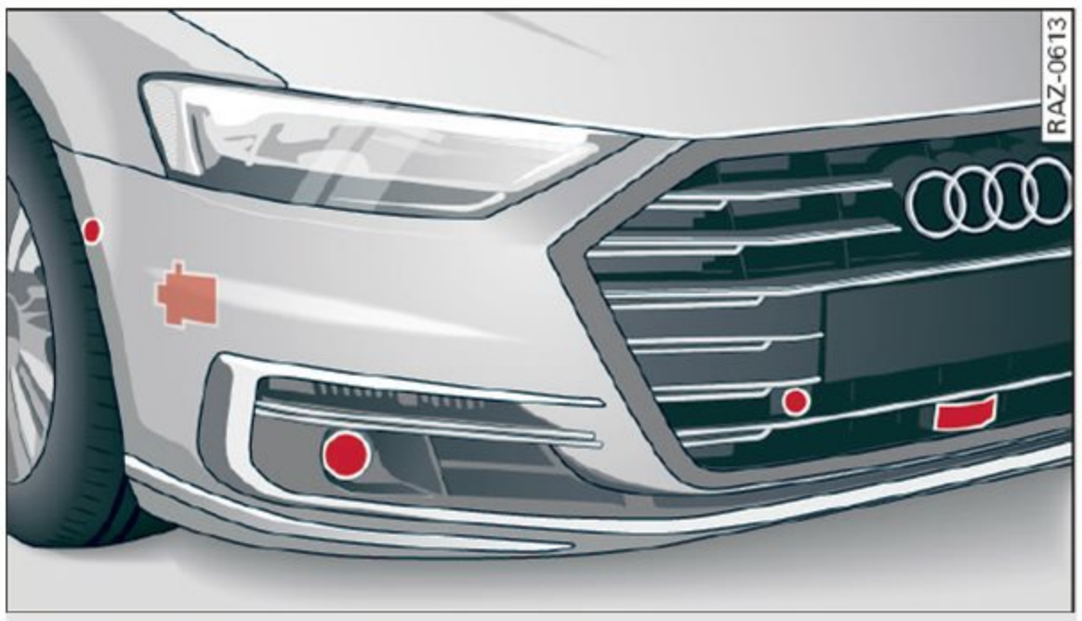


Fig. 108 Positions of the outer front sensors

The assist systems analyze the data from various sensors installed in the vehicle. Depending on the vehicle equipment, the area surrounding the entire vehicle may be detected ① ⇨ *fig. 107*.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the following sensors may be installed to detect the surrounding area ⇨ *fig. 108*:

– Laser scanner in the front in the radiator grille ⇨ ⚠
– Radar sensor in the front in the bumper
– Up to four radar sensors at the corners of the vehicle
– Ultrasonic sensors in the front and back of the vehicle

Some sensors are installed under vehicle components and cannot be seen from the outside.

Display field for the ultrasonic sensors

Depending on the equipment, the display field for the installed ultrasonic sensors ⇨ *fig. 107* may begin at approximately:

②	4 ft (1.20 m)
③	3 ft (0.90 m)
④	5.2 ft (1.60 m)
⑤	3 ft (0.90 m)

WARNING

– There are areas around the vehicle that the sensors cannot detect. Objects, animals, and people may only be detected with limitations may not be detected at all. Always monitor the traffic and the vehicle's surroundings directly and do not become distracted.
– The surface of the laser scanner can become hot during operation, which increases the risk of burns.
– The laser scanner contains a class 1 laser in accordance with IEC 60825-1:2014. When used according to regulations, the laser is not dangerous. Opening the laser module and removing covers is not permitted. Doing so could cause permanent injuries to the eyes.
– Any repair work on the laser module must be performed by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility; otherwise the vehicle's operating license may be voided. Incorrect repairs may cause limited functionality and eye damage.

Note

– Obstacles may disappear from the detection area when approaching them, even if they were already detected. Under certain circumstances, the detection and display of certain surfaces and objects may be limited: ▶

– Items and objects above the coverage area, for example cars parked bumper-to-bumper, half-open garage doors, or hanging objects that do not touch the ground
– Low obstacles
– Thin or narrow objects, such as barrier chains, foliage, poles or fences
– Projecting objects, such as trailer draw bars
– Objects with certain surfaces and structures, such as fabric

Tips

– The coverage areas of the sensors ⇨ *fig. 107* are diagrams and do not represent a true-to-scale image of the sensor ranges. The radar sensors are designed to detect the left and right adjacent lanes when the road lanes are the normal width.
– Make sure all the sensors are clean, free of snow and ice, and are not covered by stickers, deposits or any other obstructions, because this may impair the function of the systems. Follow the information about cleaning ⇨ *page 289*.
– The sensors can shift from an accident, manual force, impacts, or from damage to the radiator grill, bumper, wheel housing, or underbody. Do not continue using the assistance systems if the sensors have shifted, because this is unsafe. Have an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility check their function.
– The function of the sensors may be limited when light and visibility conditions are poor, for example when driving into a tunnel, when there is glare, or when there are reflective objects.
– External ultrasonic sensors, such as those in other vehicles, can interfere with the sensors.
– The possible emissions are below the threshold for class 1 lasers.
– For an explanation on conformity with the FCC regulations in the United States and the Industry Canada regulations, see ⇨ *page 317*.

Camera overview

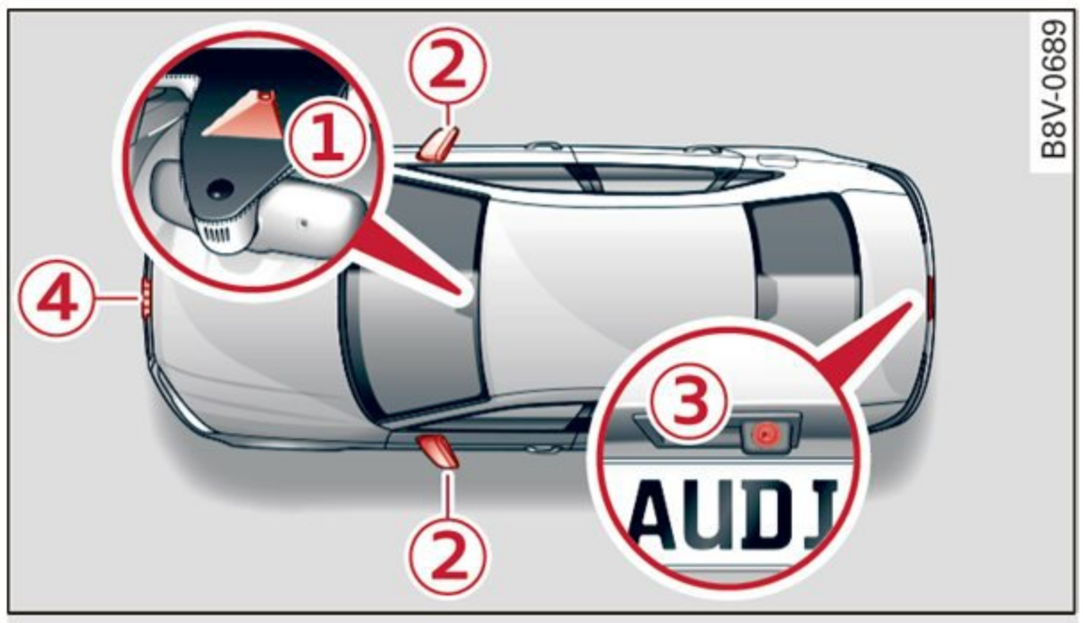


Fig. 109 Camera installation location

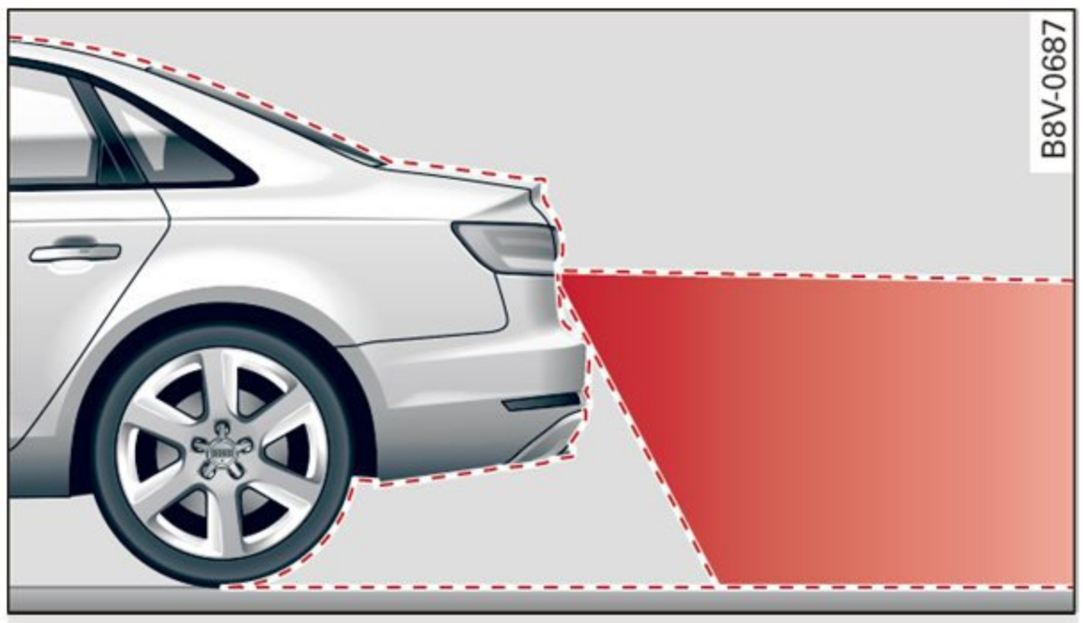


Fig. 110 Diagram: coverage area of the rearview camera

The assist systems analyze the data from various cameras installed in the vehicle. Depending on the vehicle equipment, the following cameras to detect the surrounding area may be installed:

① Camera behind the windshield
② Peripheral cameras on both exterior mirrors
③ Rearview camera in the luggage compartment lid
④ Peripheral camera and night vision camera in the radiator grille

The rearview camera can only detect the area marked in red ⇨ *fig. 110*. Only this area is displayed on the upper display. ⇨ ⚠.

WARNING

There are areas that the cameras cannot detect. Objects, animals, and people may only be detected with limitations may not be detected at all. Always monitor the traffic and the vehicle's surroundings directly and do not become distracted. ▶

Note

– Obstacles may disappear from the detection area when approaching them, even if they were already detected. Under certain circumstances, the detection and display of certain surfaces and objects may be limited:
  – Items and objects above the coverage area, for example cars parked bumper-to-bumper, half-open garage doors, or hanging objects that do not touch the ground
  – Low obstacles
  – Thin or narrow objects, such as barrier chains, foliage, poles or fences
  – Projecting objects, such as trailer draw bars
  – Objects with certain surfaces and structures, such as fabric

Tips

– The coverage areas of the cameras ⇨ *fig. 109* and ⇨ *fig. 110* are diagrams and do not represent a true-to-scale image of the camera coverage areas.
– Make sure all the cameras are clean, free of snow and ice, and are not covered by stickers, deposits or any other obstructions, because this may impair the function of the systems. Follow the information about cleaning ⇨ *page 289*.
– The camera can shift from an accident, manual force, impacts, or from damage to the radiator grill, bumper, wheel housing or underbody. Have an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility check their function.
– The function of the cameras may be limited when light and visibility conditions are poor, for example when driving into a tunnel, when there is glare, or when there are reflective objects.
– Use the image on the display to assist you only if it shows a good, clear picture. For example, the image may be affected by the sun shining into the lens, by dirt on the lens, or if there is a malfunction.
– The camera view on the display portrays an enlarged and distorted image. Under certain circumstances, objects may appear different and unclear on the display.

Switching the systems on and off



Fig. 111 Center console: driver assistance systems button

Description

You can switch some assist systems on and off in the MMI. Depending on the equipment, it may be in the **standard display** or the **profile selection**.

► Press the button, or
► Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Driver assistance**.

Standard display

Applies to: vehicles with standard display

► To switch a system on or off, press for the desired system.
► To show the brief description of a system, press ⓘ for the desired system.

Profile selection

Applies to: vehicles with profile selection

► To select a profile, press the profile name on the upper display or press the button repeatedly until the profile is active.
► To list systems included in a profile, select on the upper display.
► To show the brief description of a system, select ⓘ for the desired system.
► To switch individual systems on and off in the **Individual** profile, select and for the desired systems.

The following profiles can be selected:

– **Maximum** – all available systems are switched on in this profile. ▶

– **Individual** – you can switch the systems on and off individually in this profile.
– **Basic** or **All off** – only the basic systems are switched on in this profile. If no basic system is available, the profile is **All off**.

WARNING

Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 136*.

Tips

Specific settings are stored automatically in the active personal profile.

Driving information

Speed warning system

Description

Applies to: vehicles with speed warning system

The speed warning system helps the driver to stay below a specified maximum speed. A warning threshold can be set in the MMI for this purpose.

Once the speed slightly exceeds the stored threshold, the speed warning system will alert the driver with an indicator in the instrument cluster and a warning tone. Once the speed drops below the stored maximum speed, the indicator will turn off.

Setting a threshold is recommended if you would like to be reminded when you reach a certain maximum speed. Situations where you may want to do so include driving in a country with a general speed limit or if there is a specified maximum speed for winter tires.

Tips

Regardless of the speed warning system, you should always monitor your speed using the speedometer and make sure you are following the legal speed limit.

Setting the warning threshold

Applies to: vehicles with speed warning system

- Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Driver assistance** > (⚙) > **Speed warning**.

Tips

Specific settings are stored automatically in the active personal profile.

Display

Applies to: vehicles with speed warning system

A display appears in the instrument cluster if the stored speed is exceeded

MPH / Km/h Manually set XX speed limit warning threshold exceeded

Camera-based traffic sign recognition

Description

Applies to: vehicles with camera-based traffic sign recognition

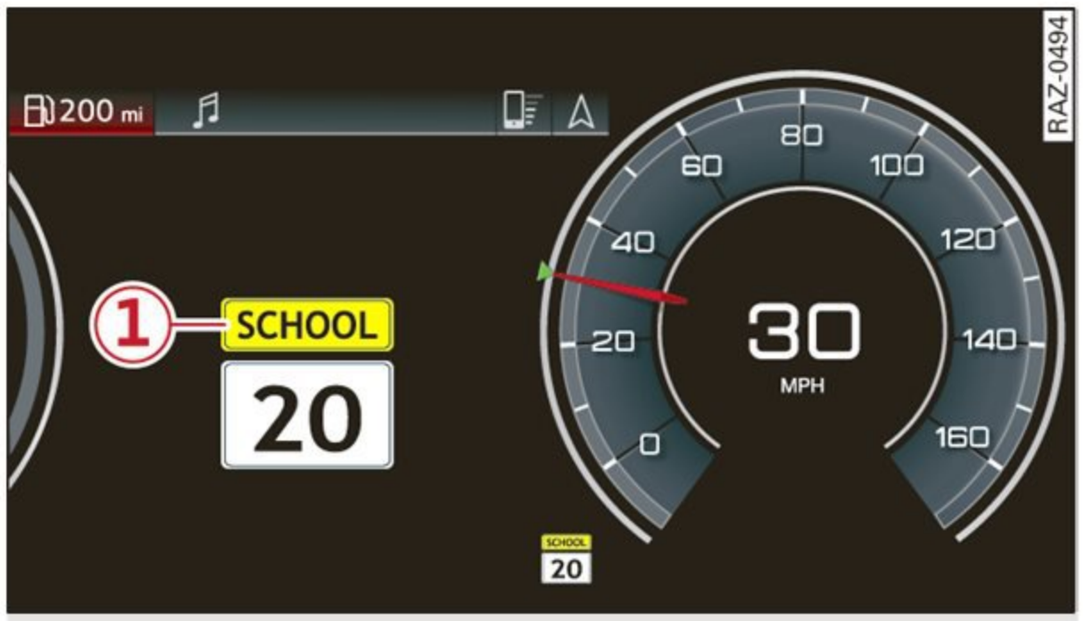


Fig. 112 Instrument cluster: traffic sign recognition (diagram)

The traffic sign recognition shows the traffic signs detected by the front camera in the instrument cluster display and in the head-up display*. Data from the navigation system is also included in the display. Up to three traffic signs can be displayed in the instrument cluster at once. The speed limit that is currently applicable is displayed in the status line. If necessary, it will be hidden if the system detects that turning right is prohibited at a red light. The display in the head-up display* can be switched off ⇨ *page 36*.

Within the limits of the system and depending on the market, additional symbols (1) that indicate speed limits in school zones, highways, construction zones, or at night may be displayed.

If the warning threshold ⇨ *page 142* set in the MMI is exceeded when the speed warning is activated, a visual warning will appear in the display until the speed drops below the threshold.

Limitations

The traffic sign recognition is subject to certain system limitations and may be unavailable or only partially available in the following situations:

– When visibility is poor, such as in snow, rain, fog, or heavy spray
– When there is glare, for example from oncoming traffic or the sun
– At high speeds ▶

– If the camera's visual field ⇨ *page 137* is covered, for example by dirt or stickers. Cleaning information ⇨ *page 289*
– If the traffic signs are completely or partially covered, for example by trees, snow, dirt, or other vehicles
– If traffic signs do not conform to the standard format
– If traffic signs are damaged or bent
– If traffic signs are displayed on sign holders with electronic signs
– If the traffic signs or the roadways have changed, and the navigation data is no longer up-to-date

WARNING

– Follow the safety precautions and respect the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 136*.
– Under some circumstances, traffic sign recognition may not detect traffic signs correctly or detect them at all. As a result, the system may not display the correct speed limit or any speed limit.

Tips

– Traffic sign recognition does not adapt your vehicle's speed to match the speed limit.
– The display in the instrument cluster is based on the units of measurement used for speed in the country where the vehicle is being operated. As a result, a display of 50 in the instrument cluster can mean either km/h or mph, depending on the country.

Operating

Applies to: vehicles with camera-based traffic sign recognition

Accessing traffic sign recognition

▸ Select in the instrument cluster: vehicle functions tab > **Traffic signs**.

Setting a traffic sign based speed warning

▸ Applies to MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Driver assistance** > (⚙) > **Speed warning**.

You can select a warning threshold. If exceeded, the currently detected speed limit will be displayed with an exclamation point and it will flash briefly.

Tips

Specific settings are stored automatically in the active personal profile.

Messages

Applies to: vehicles with camera-based traffic sign recognition

Traffic sign recognition: currently unavailable. Camera view limited due to surroundings

The camera’s visual field is covered. Clean the windshield.

Traffic sign recognition: currently limited. See owner's manual

This message appears if navigation system data is not available, for example on newly-constructed roads. The speed limit display will be temporarily limited, which increases the risk of an incorrect display. If this message continues to appear, drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction repaired.

No traffic sign information available

Depending on the area, there is no valid navigation data and no speed limits were detected. This may also appear if there is a recommended speed, but no speed limit (for example when driving on and off the expressway).

Malfunction! See owner's manual

The system may not function correctly so it has been switched off. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Traffic light information

Description

Applies to: vehicles with traffic light information

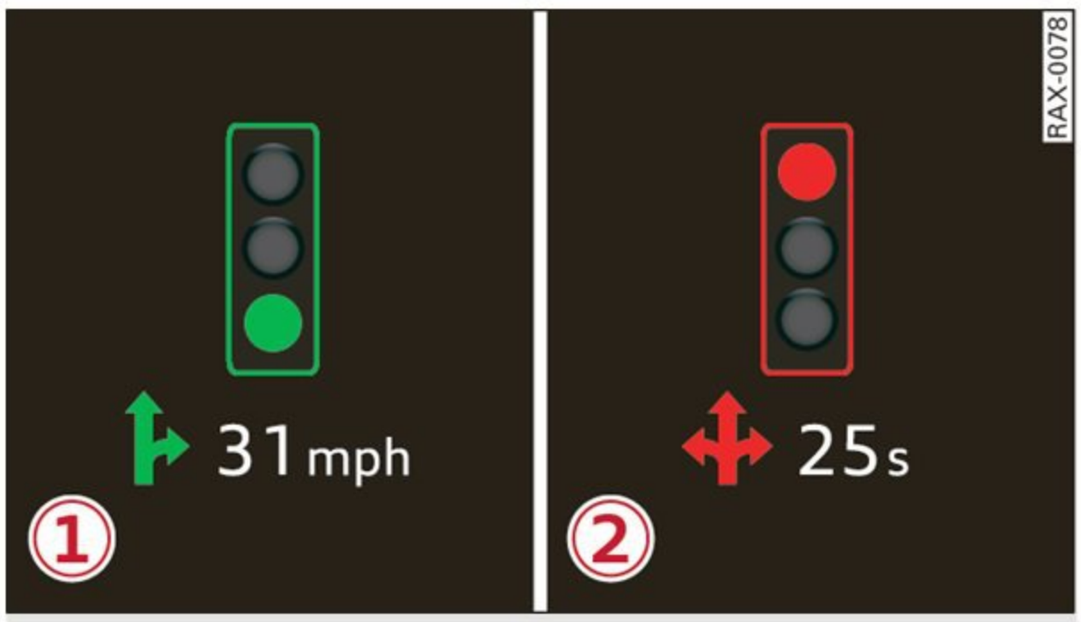


Fig. 113 Instrument cluster: traffic light information display (diagram)

The traffic light information gives you a speed recommendation in order to reach the next traffic light when it is green ①, or it informs you of the wait time at the next red light ②. Once traffic light data is received, the traffic light information will be displayed in the instrument cluster and in the head-up display*.

General information

The traffic light information is subject to certain system limitations and may be unavailable or only partially available in the following situations:

- If the permitted speed limit is exceeded
- If driving below a certain speed limit
- If the next traffic light is less than 100 feet (30 m) away
- If the estimated wait time at a red light is less than four seconds
- If there is no traffic light data available
- If there are warnings from the camera-based traffic sign recognition*
- If the camera-based traffic sign recognition* is malfunctioning or not available
- If the data connection has been interrupted
- If data transmission is deactivated in the privacy settings
- If the subscription has expired

If this is the case, the menu item will be grayed-out or it will not be possible to select it.

WARNING

- When traffic light information is shown, also always pay attention to the traffic situation, the distance to other vehicles and the area around the vehicle. The driver is always responsible for assessing the traffic situation.
- Always adapt your speed to the current weather, road and traffic conditions. The displayed information must never cause you to ignore legal traffic regulations and pose a safety risk.
- Regardless of the traffic light information, you should always monitor your speed using the speedometer and make sure you are adhering to the legal speed limit.
- The traffic light information does not adjust your vehicle's speed to the speed recommendation shown in the display.

Tips

- Traffic light information is not yet available in all cities and is not nationwide.
- Units of measurement and language settings are displayed based on how they were set in the MMI system settings ⇨ *page 248*.

Operating

Applies to: vehicles with traffic light information

Switching traffic light information on and off

The system can be switched on and off in the MMI ⇨ *page 139*.

Accessing traffic light information

▸ Applies to: MMI Select in the instrument cluster: vehicle functions tab > **Traffic signs**.

Tips

If another tab or another function is selected in the instrument cluster, the traffic light information will appear in the Audi virtual cockpit* status bar or in the analog instrument cluster.

Messages

Applies to: vehicles with traffic light information without camera-based traffic sign recognition

Malfunction! See owner's manual

The system could not be configured, for example due to a network malfunction. Restart the system.

Function currently unavailable. See owner's manual

There is a temporary system malfunction. Check if one or more of the following situations applies and correct the issue if necessary:

– Traffic light information is switched off
– Data transmission is deactivated
– The subscription has expired
– Traffic light information is not available in that area

Night vision assist

Description

Applies to: vehicles with night vision assist

Night vision assist helps you when it is dark by using an infrared camera to monitor the area in front of your vehicle, within the limits of the system. It can display objects up to a distance of approximately 1000 feet (300 m).

Pedestrian and wild animals are detected by measuring the temperature difference between the object and the background. Pedestrians and wild animals will not be detected if the temperature difference is too small. The pedestrian and wild animal marking feature is deactivated at temperatures above approximately 77 °F (25 °C) and when it is light outside.

The thermal image detected by the camera is displayed in the instrument cluster. Warm areas generally appear lighter and cold areas appear darker.

The camera for the night vision assist (4) ⇨ *page 138, fig. 109* is located in the vehicle's radiator grille. Make sure the night vision camera is not covered by stickers, deposits, or any other obstructions because this can impair the night vision assist function. Follow the information about cleaning ⇨ *page 289*.

WARNING

– Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 136*.
– Night vision assist can only detect pedestrians and wild animals located within the range of the infrared camera.
– Night vision assist cannot detect pedestrians or wild animals and mark them if:
  – They are not in an upright position, for example if they are sitting or lying down and/or
  – The silhouette in the display appears incomplete or interrupted, for example because the pedestrian is partially behind a vehicle or an animal is partially covered by tall grass.
– Never attempt to swerve around animals if doing so would endanger you or other road users.

Tips

– Even though the system evaluates the shape and heat given off by all detected objects, there are limits to the system. There may be false warnings.
– For technical reasons, the image pauses in split second intervals.

Switching on and off

Applies to: vehicles with night vision assist

The system can be switched on and off in the MMI ⇨ *page 139*.

► The AUTO light function must be selected for the night vision assist to automatically activate when it is dark.
► Switch on the low beams manually to activate night vision assist immediately. To do so, press (1) on the light switch module ⇨ *page 60, fig. 47* and select ≡D.

When activated, the tab appears in the instrument cluster.

► Select in the instrument cluster: tab ▶

Tips

When the night vision assist tab is selected in the instrument cluster and the low beams are switched off, the thermal image display disappears only after you have exited the tab.

Marking and warning

Applies to: vehicles with night vision assist



Fig. 114 Instrument cluster: pedestrian marking and warning (diagram)

Highlighting detected pedestrians and wild animals

Within the limits of the system, the night vision assist can detect pedestrians and wild animals that are between approximately 32 feet (10 m) and 295 feet (90 m) in front of the vehicle and within the detection zone. Animal recognition is not active within highly developed areas. The system only detects large wild animals such as deer. When it is dark outside and the low beams are switched on, detected objects are marked in yellow (1), within the limits of the system.

Pedestrian and wild animal warning

This system limits are based on the vehicle speed and steering angle. Pedestrian and wild animal warning encourages you to pay more attention.

If there are pedestrians or wild animals in front of your vehicle that could pose a danger, the system will direct your attention to this.

– Pedestrians or wild animals are highlighted in red in the instrument cluster (2) and the  or  symbol turns on (2).
– When the head-up display* is switched on, the additional indicator  or  appears.
– A chime will sound if something is detected.
– If the night vision assist thermal image is replaced by another display (such as the on-board computer), the red  or  indicator light will appear if there is a pedestrian or wild animal warning.

The  symbol will appear when pedestrian and wild animal detection is not available.

Marking light*

To direct the driver's attention to a pedestrian, the headlights can flash on the pedestrian when there is a pedestrian warning.

This occurs at speeds above approximately 35 mph (60 km/h) if you are outside of illuminated areas and no detected vehicles are shown. The marking light is not used for wild animals. The high beam assistant* controls the marking light*⇨ *page 61*.

Adjusting the contrast

Applies to: vehicles with night vision assist

Requirement: the night vision assist must be switched on and the  tab must be displayed.

- Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Driver assistance** > (⚙) > **Night vision assist**.
- To set the desired contrast, move the slider.

Tips

Specific settings are stored automatically in the active personal profile.

Messages

Applies to: vehicles with night vision assist

Night vision assist: currently unavailable. See owner's manual

The system is not functioning correctly so it has been switched off. If this malfunction persists, drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction repaired.

Driver assistance

Cruise control system

Description

Applies to: vehicles with cruise control system

The cruise control system assists the driver in maintaining a constant speed above approximately 15 mph (20 km/h). The system maintains the desired speed by braking and accelerating.

WARNING

- Always pay attention to the traffic around your vehicle when the cruise control system is in operation. As the driver, you are always responsible for controlling your vehicle speed and the distance between your vehicle and other vehicles.
- For safety reasons, cruise control should not be used in the city, in stop-and-go traffic, on winding roads, and when road conditions are poor (such as ice, fog, gravel, heavy rain, and conditions that could lead to hydroplaning), because this increases the risk of an accident.
- Switch the cruise control off temporarily when driving in turning lanes, highway exits, or in construction zones.
- To reduce the risk of an accident, you should only resume the stored speed if it is suitable for the current traffic conditions.

Note

Before driving downhill a long distance on a steep hill, decrease your speed and select a lower gear. This makes use of the engine braking effect and reduces the load placed on the brakes.

Tips

The brake lights turn on when the brakes are applied automatically.

Switching the system on

Applies to: vehicles with cruise control system



Fig. 115 Lever: switching on the cruise control system

Requirement: switch the ignition on.

- ▸ To switch the system on, pull the lever toward you to position (1).

The CRUISE or indicator light and the corresponding message will appear in the instrument cluster.

WARNING

If the brakes are malfunctioning (for example, overheating) while the cruise control system is switched on, it may shut off automatically.

Preselecting or activating a cruise control speed

Applies to: vehicles with cruise control system

When the vehicle is stationary, you can preselect the cruise control speed or activate the speed while driving.

Requirement: the system must be switched on.

- ▸ To preselect a cruise control speed when the vehicle is stationary, tap the lever toward (+)/(-) ⇨ *page 146, fig. 115*.
- ▸ To activate the cruise control speed, pull the lever toward position (1) while driving, or
- ▸ To set the current driving speed as the cruise control speed, press the button (A) on the lever.

The active cruise control speed is indicated with the CRUISE or indicator light in the instrument cluster.

An additional indicator appears in the head-up display*.

Changing the cruise control speed

Applies to: vehicles with cruise control system

- To increase or decrease the cruise control speed in small increments, tap the lever up to the first level toward ⊕/⊖ ⇨ *page 146, fig. 115*.
- To increase or decrease the cruise control speed in larger increments, tap the lever up to the second level toward ⊕/⊖.
- To increase or decrease the cruise control speed continuously, tap and hold the lever at the first or second level toward ⊕/⊖.

Overriding or deactivating the cruise control speed

Applies to: vehicles with cruise control system

You can override or deactivate the cruise control system. When you deactivate the system, your cruise control speed will be stored and you can resume that speed.

Requirement: the system must be switched on and activated.

Overriding

- To temporarily override the cruise control speed, press the accelerator pedal.
- Once you release the accelerator pedal, the system will adjust back to the stored cruise control speed.

If you override the cruise control system for a long period of time, the cruise control system will be deactivated. The system indicator light will turn off and the cruise control speed will be stored.

Deactivating

- To deactivate the cruise control speed, press the lever toward ② (not locked into place) ⇨ *page 146, fig. 115*.
- Press the brake pedal.

⚠ WARNING

Resting your foot on the accelerator pedal could override the cruise control. This will prevent braking interventions by the system.

Switching the system off

Applies to: vehicles with cruise control system

When you switch the system off completely, the cruise control speed will be deleted.

Requirement: the system must be switched on.

- To switch the system off, press the lever toward ② (locked into place) ⇨ *page 146, fig. 115*, or
- Switch the ignition off.

Message

Applies to: vehicles with cruise control system

CRUISE / Speed control system: currently unavailable. See owner's manual

If the indicator light turns on and this message appears, the cruise control system has been deactivated. There is a temporary malfunction, for example the brakes are overheating. Switch the cruise control system on again later.

Efficiency assist

Description

Applies to: vehicles with efficiency assist

Efficiency assist can assist the driver with predictive information in order to reduce fuel consumption. When you remove your foot from the accelerator pedal, efficiency assist controls downhill mode with recuperation and coasting mode, depending on the situation.

Depending on vehicle equipment, the system may access data from the navigation system, the camera behind the windshield, and the radar sensors.

Adjusting the efficiency assist

You can adjust efficiency assist functions individually. The settings depend on the vehicle equipment.

– **Predictive messages** or **Accelerator pedal feedback** informs the driver if the foot should be removed from the accelerator pedal in order to drive more efficiently ⇨ *page 148*.⇨ *page 148*
– **Predictive control** uses adaptive cruise assist in order to react automatically to situations ahead ⇨ *page 149*.

Situation symbols

Depending on vehicle equipment, the following symbols may be shown. The symbols indicate the situation to which the efficiency assist is responding.

Some symbols only appear if **Predictive messages** are switched on, and some symbols only appear if **Predictive control** and adaptive cruise assist* are switched on.

Symbol	Description
	**Slow down** (Predictive messages only)
	**Predictive control active** (Predictive messages only) Additional symbols are shown in the **Driver assistance** display.
	**Speed limit** (example)
	**Exit** ahead
	**Intersection** ahead
	**Traffic circle** ahead

WARNING

Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 136*.

Tips

– The functions depend on the navigation data* being up-to-date and correct identification by the traffic sign recognition*.
– The system only detects traffic signs that specify a speed limit.
– Except for the road network, which is recorded in the navigation system's map information, certain functions may not be available.
– The display in the instrument cluster is based on the units of measurement used for speed in the country where the vehicle is being operated. As a result, a display of 50 in the instrument cluster can mean either km/h or mph, depending on the country.
– Specific settings are stored automatically in the active personal profile.

Predictive messages and accelerator pedal feedback

Applies to: vehicles with efficiency assist

Requirements

– The cruise control system* or the adaptive cruise assist* controls must not be active.
– The vehicle speed must be at least 20 mph (30 km/h).
– The remaining distance until the situation is reached must be large enough to allow the system to react to the situation.

Predictive messages

The symbol  appears in the instrument cluster display if efficiency assist recommends removing your foot from the accelerator pedal.

Additional symbols that indicate the situation to which the efficiency assist is reacting are shown in the **Driver assistance** display ⇨ *page 148, Situation symbols*.

Accelerator pedal feedback*

The accelerator pedal gives the driver haptic feedback if efficiency assist recommends removing the foot from the accelerator pedal.

Settings

You can switch functions off or adjust them individually. The settings depend on the vehicle equipment.

Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Efficiency assist**.

Possible settings:

– **Predictive messages**
– **Accelerator pedal feedback**

WARNING

– Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 136*.

– Pay attention to traffic and the area around your vehicle when efficiency assist is switched on. The driver is always responsible for assessing the traffic situation.

Tips

– The traffic signs on the road always take priority over the display. The driver is always responsible for adhering to the regulations applicable in the country where the vehicle is being operated.
– When a route is planned using the navigation system*, then system displays messages based on an assumed route. Without route guidance, the system displays messages based on an assumed route.
– The wording of the message may vary depending on the selected Audi drive select* mode and the selected gear. No messages are displayed when in the "S" driving program.
– Specific settings are stored automatically in the active personal profile.

Predictive control

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist and efficiency assist

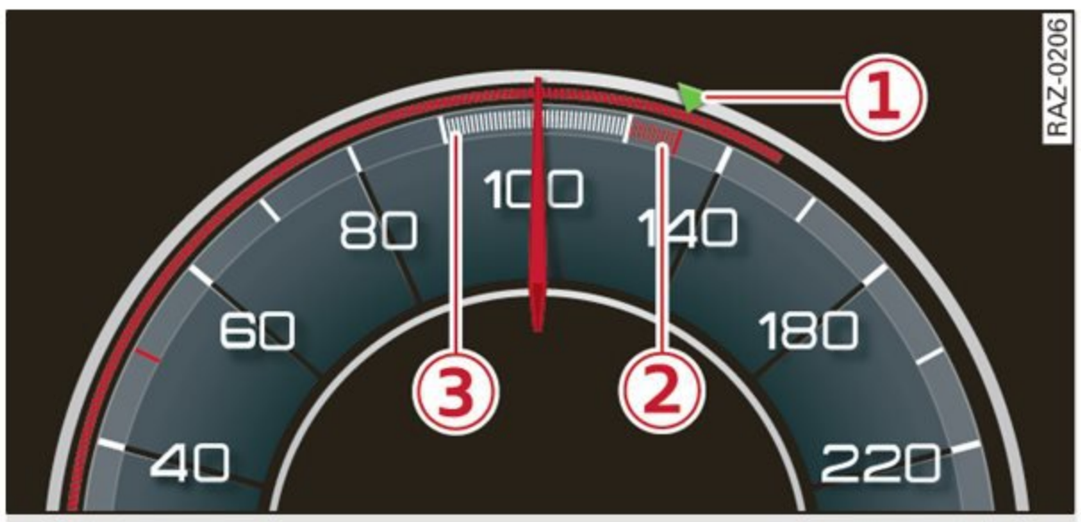


Fig. 116 Instrument cluster: speedometer: predictive control display

During predictive control[1)], the adaptive cruise assist uses data from the efficiency assist. The system adapts the speed set in the adaptive cruise assist to the speed limits that are detected and the layout of the road. After that, the system accelerates up to the speed that was set.

After switching on the ignition, the availability of predictive control is indicated by a message when the adaptive cruise assist is first activated.

Requirements

– The adaptive cruise assist must be actively regulating ⇨ *page 153*.
– The system can only react to speed limits that are 20 mph (30 km/h) or higher.

Display in the speedometer

① The marking shows the set speed (regulated speed that was set by the driver or by predictive control).
② The red band shows the difference between the speed limit and the set speed that is set.
③ The gray band shows if the vehicle speed is planned to drop below the set speed due to the road layout.

Setting predictive control

You can switch off predictive control functions or adjust them individually. The settings depend on the vehicle equipment.

Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Driver assistance** > (⚙) > **Adaptive cruise assist** > **Predictive control**.

Possible settings:

Set speed limit – adjusts to speed limits. You can also set **With tolerance** if desired. In this scenario, you may fall below or exceed the set speed in favor of increased efficiency.

Adaptation to route ahead – can be switched **off** or be set individually from **slow** to **fast**. The setting influences vehicle handling with predictive control, for example the speed for driving through curves.

Overriding control

The driver can override the predictive control at any time by pressing the accelerator or brake pedal. If the system changes the vehicle speed to adapt to speed limits, you can change the speed using the lever ⇨ *page 153, fig. 122*. ▶

1) This is not available in some countries.

Messages

If there is a malfunction and a message with **Adaptive cruise assist**: **traffic light** is displayed, the efficiency assist functions are unavailable or limited.

A message that indicates the cause and possible solution may appear with some displays. The weather conditions may be too poor or a sensor may be covered. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇨ *page 137, fig. 108* and try to turn on the systems again later.

If the malfunction remains, drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

WARNING

- Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 136*.
- Pay attention to traffic and the area around your vehicle when predictive control is switched on. The driver is always responsible for assessing the traffic situation.
- The system does not consider “right of way” rules and does not respond to traffic lights, so lack of driver attention in these situations can increase the risk of an accident.
- The speed when driving through curves may be different from what you as a driver would do or may not be suitable for the weather and road conditions. If necessary, apply the brakes and reduce the selected speed to be maintained in the **Adaptation to route ahead** setting to reduce the risk of an accident.

Tips

- Predictive control can exceed or drop below the maximum permitted speed. The driver is responsible for adhering to the permitted speed limit.
- The traffic signs on the road always take priority over the display. The driver is always responsible for adhering to the regulations applicable in the country where the vehicle is being operated.
- If a speed limit is detected, the marking ① of the set speed limit will be adjusted even if the adaptive cruise assist is not actively regulating.
- Control by the system depends on which adaptive cruise assist driving program is set or on the selected Audi drive select* mode.
- After switching on the ignition and first driving onto a freeway or similar road without a speed limit, the system will regulate the speed to 80 mph (130 km/h)[1)]. Then the system adjusts to the last speed set by the driver.
- There is no adaptation to speed limits when driving through highway interchanges and when driving on or off the expressway.
- Incorrect values from the camera-based traffic sign recognition* or outdated navigation system map data can lead to incorrect or implausible control.
- When route guidance is switched on, the system adapts to the route provided by the navigation system. Driving without route guidance or leaving a route can result in implausible control.
- Specific settings are stored automatically in the active personal profile.

Adaptive cruise assist

General information

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the adaptive cruise assist may consist of the following functions:

Within the limits of the system, the **adaptive speed and distance control** assists the driver in controlling the speed and the set distance to the vehicle driving ahead. If the system detects a vehicle driving ahead, the adaptive cruise assist can brake and accelerate your vehicle within the limits of the system. On open roads with no traffic, it ▶

1) In certain countries

functions like a cruise control system. The stored speed is maintained. When approaching a vehicle driving ahead, the adaptive cruise assist automatically brakes to match that vehicle's speed and then maintains the set distance as much as possible. As soon as the system does not detect a vehicle driving ahead, adaptive cruise assist accelerates up to the set speed.

The additional **lane guidance** assists the driver with corrective steering in order to stay in the lane. You can adjust if the adaptive cruise assist will provide support with lane guidance ⇨ *page 154, Switching lane guidance on and off*.

In **stop-and-go traffic and in traffic jams**, the vehicle may brake to a full stop and then may also start driving again automatically under certain conditions.

Applies to: vehicles with efficiency assist: **Predictive control** can adjust the speed based on traffic and road conditions ⇨ *page 149, Predictive control*.

WARNING

Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 136*.

Tips

For an explanation on conformity with the FCC regulations in the United States and the Industry Canada regulations, see ⇨ *page 317*.

Limitations

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist

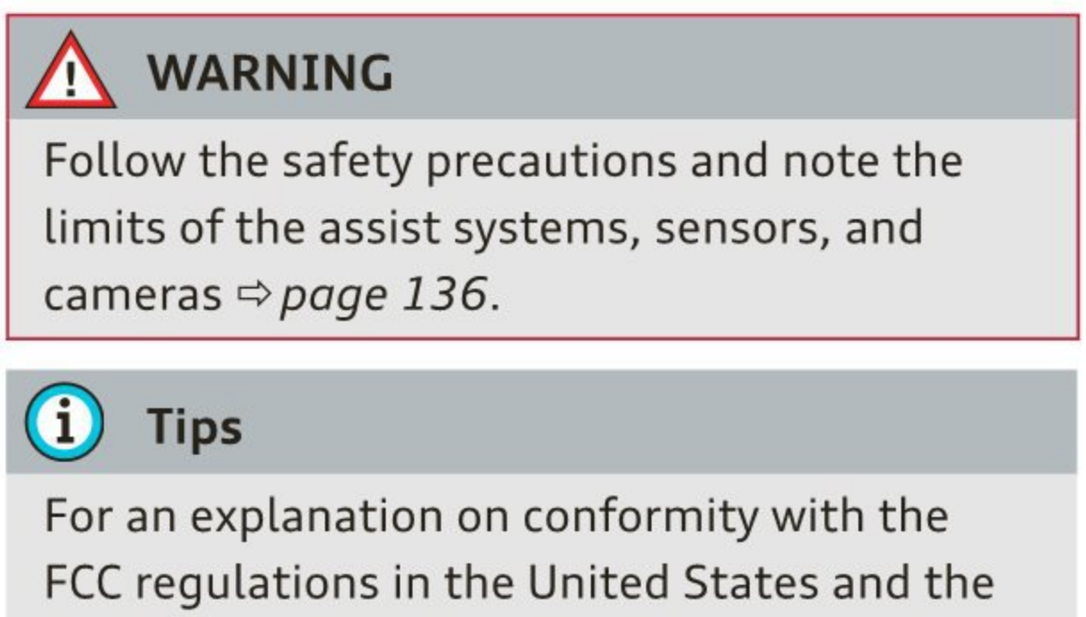


Fig. 117 Example: vehicle changing lanes and stationary vehicle

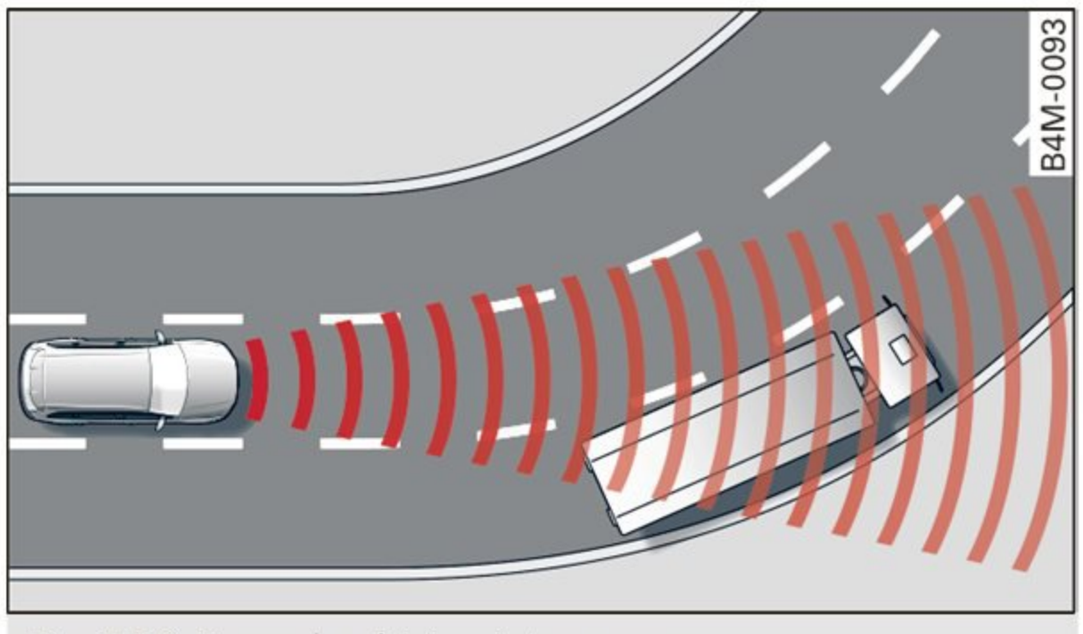


Fig. 118 Example: driving into a curve

In some situations, the adaptive cruise assist function is limited and you must assume control of the vehicle when necessary, for example by applying the brakes.

- If a vehicle that was already detected ① turns or changes lanes, the adaptive cruise assist will react to the vehicle ahead of it ②.
- When driving into a curve ⇨ *fig. 118* and out of a curve, the adaptive cruise assist may react to a vehicle in the adjacent lane and apply the brakes. You can override the system by pressing the accelerator pedal briefly.
- The adaptive cruise assist works with the various sensors and cameras in the vehicle. Vehicles can only be detected once they are within the area and range covered by the sensors ⇨ *page 137, fig. 107*.
- When driving around tight curves, a vehicle driving ahead that was previously detected may no longer be detected, and the adaptive cruise assist may accelerate unexpectedly.
- The adaptive cruise assist does not react to a stationary vehicle in the same lane if the system expects that you can easily drive around the stationary vehicle by turning the steering wheel.
- The adaptive cruise assist may not react to stationary obstacles, such as the end of a traffic jam, especially at high speeds.
- The adaptive cruise assist has a limited ability to detect vehicles that are a short distance ahead, off to the side of your vehicle, or moving into your lane.
- Objects that are difficult to detect, such as motorcycles, vehicles with high ground clearance, or vehicles with an overhanging load, may be detected late or not detected at all.

– The adaptive cruise assist does not respond to people, animals, or objects that are crossing or approaching from the opposite direction.

WARNING

Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 136*.

Display overview

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist

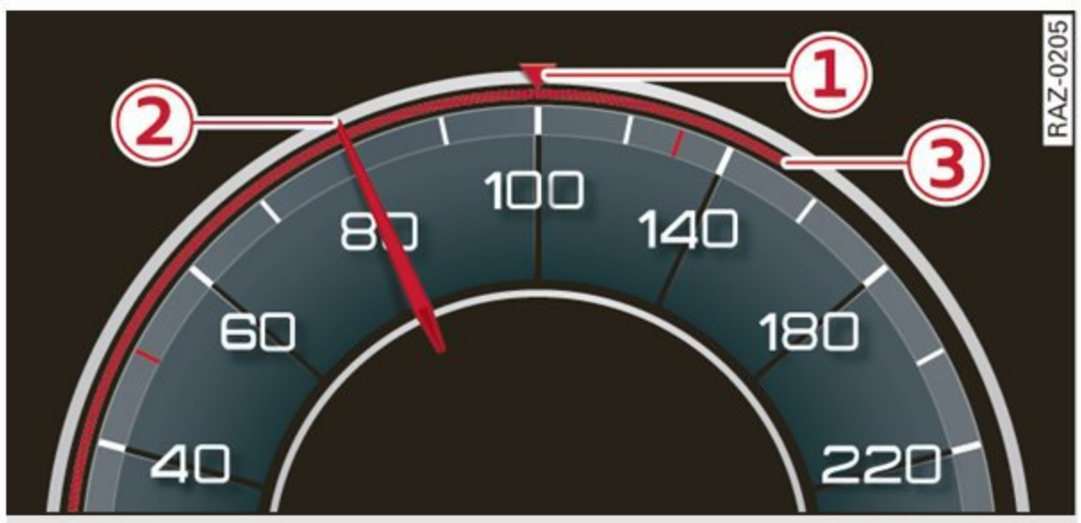


Fig. 119 Instrument cluster: display in speedometer

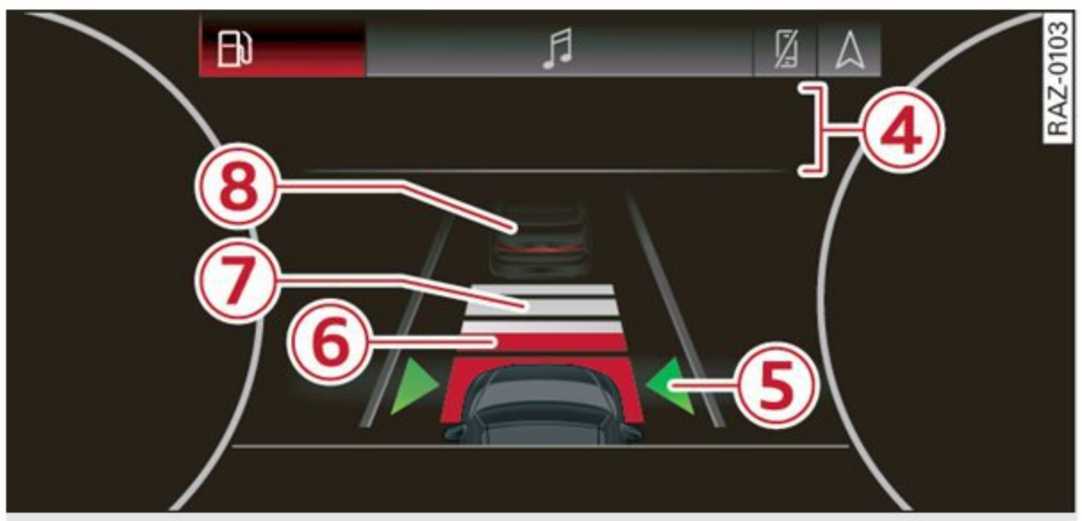


Fig. 120 Instrument cluster: driver assistance display

Indicator lights and messages in the speedometer inform you about the driving situation and the settings. In the **Driver assistance** display ④ - ⑧, you can find more detailed information about the system.

Display in the speedometer

① Marking for the set speed
② Current vehicle speed
③ Available speed range for adaptive cruise assist (example)

Image in the Driver assistance display

The display only appears when the **Driver assistance** display is open in the on-board computer ⇨ *page 15*.

④ Messages and settings
⑤ Lane guidance active or not active .

⑥ If you fall below the set distance, the distance bars turn red from the bottom upward.
⑦ Set target distance
⑧ Detected vehicle driving ahead

Indicator lights

– The speed/distance control is active. No vehicles were detected ahead. The stored speed is maintained.

– The speed/distance control is active. A vehicle was detected ahead. The adaptive cruise assist controls the speed and distance from the vehicle driving ahead, and accelerates and brakes automatically.

- The speed/distance control is active but the vehicle is not **ready to drive**. A vehicle was detected ahead. Your vehicle is stationary and will not start driving automatically.

- The speed/distance control is active but the vehicle is not **ready to drive**. No vehicles were detected ahead. Your vehicle is stationary and will not start driving automatically.

– The automatic braking is not enough to maintain a sufficient distance to a vehicle driving ahead. You must intervene ⇨ *page 157, Driver intervention request*.

– Lane guidance is active.

– There is no lane guidance.

* This indicator light appears if steering activity is no longer detected. Always keep your hands on the steering wheel so you can be ready to steer at any time.

WARNING

Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 136*.

Using adaptive cruise assist

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist



Fig. 121 Lever: using adaptive cruise assist



Fig. 122 Operating lever: changing the speed

Switching on

► To switch on the adaptive cruise assist, pull the lever up to position (1) until it engages.

Storing the speed and activating regulation

If you have switched the system on, you can set the current speed as the "regulated speed" and activate regulation:

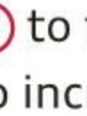
► Press the SET button (2). The set speed is indicated with a marking in the speedometer (1) ⇨ *page 152, fig. 119* and shown in the instrument cluster ⇨ ⚠.
► To store the speed when stationary, the brake pedal must also be pressed.

You can set any speed between 20 mph (30 km/h) and the maximum possible speed range (3).

Pausing cruise control

The cruise control can be paused at any time while driving or when stationary.

► Press the lever away from you in the direction of the arrow to pause the cruise control. Or
► Press the brake pedal.

The  indicator light turns off.

Resuming regulation

The previously set speed can be resumed at any time after a pause.

► To resume cruise control while driving, pull the lever toward you in the direction of the arrow.
► To resume cruise control when stationary, pull the lever toward you in the direction of the arrow while pressing the brake pedal.

Changing the speed

► To increase or decrease the set speed in smaller increments, briefly tap the lever toward (+) or (-) to the first level.
► To increase or decrease the set speed in larger increments, briefly tap the lever toward (+) or (-) to the second level.
► To increase or decrease the set speed quickly, hold the lever toward (+) or (-) until the marking in the speedometer (1) ⇨ *page 152, fig. 119* has reached the desired speed.

Preselecting a speed

You can also preselect the set speed when adaptive cruise assist is not active by moving the lever in the desired direction toward (+) or (-). Activate the previously selected speed by pulling the lever toward you in the direction of the arrow.

Switching off

If you do not want to use the adaptive cruise assist for a longer period of time, you can switch it off.

► To switch off the adaptive cruise assist, push the lever away from you to position (0) until it engages.

The indicator light and the set speed will turn on.

⚠ WARNING

– Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 136*.
– The activated adaptive cruise assist is only an assist system, and the driver is still ▶

responsible for controlling the vehicle. The driver is especially responsible for braking, steering, starting to drive, and controlling the speed and the distance from other vehicles.
– Activate the adaptive cruise assist only if the surrounding conditions permit it. Always adapt your driving style to the current visual, weather, road, and traffic conditions.
– Switch the adaptive cruise assist off temporarily when driving in turning lanes or highway exits. This prevents the vehicle from accelerating to the stored speed when in these situations.
– If you press the SET ② button when driving at speeds below 20 mph (30 km/h), then 20 mph (30 km/h) will be set because that is the minimum speed that can be set. If no vehicle is detected ahead of you, the vehicle will accelerate up to that speed.

Tips

– Always keep your hands on the steering wheel. The driver is always responsible for adhering to the regulations applicable in the country where the vehicle is being operated.
– If you switch the ignition or the adaptive cruise assist off, the stored speed is erased for safety reasons.
– When the adaptive cruise assist is switched on, the ESC and the ASR are switched on automatically.
– The system cannot be switched off if the road exceeds the maximum possible grade for safe operation.

Switching lane guidance on and off

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist and lane guidance



Fig. 123 Turn signal lever: switching lane guidance on and off

Within the limits of the system, lane guidance provides corrective steering to assist the driver with keeping the vehicle in the center of the lane as much as possible. This feature can be deactivated.

▸ Press the ⇨ *fig. 123* button to switch lane guidance on or off. When switching on, the indicator light turns on briefly and a message appears.

Overview of displays and lane guidance limitations

Lane guidance is not active when the indicator light is white.

This may be due to the following reasons:
– The necessary lane marker lines have not been detected (for example, in a construction zone or because the lines are obstructed by snow, dirt, water, or lighting)
– The lane is too narrow or too wide
– The curve is too narrow
– Visibility is obstructed by a rise or dip.
– The driver's hands are not on the steering wheel

WARNING

Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 136*.

Tips

– Always keep your hands on the steering wheel. The driver is always responsible for adhering to the regulations applicable in the country where the vehicle is being operated.
– It is recommended to only switch on lane guidance on well-constructed roads.
– Specific settings are stored automatically in the active personal profile.

Setting the distance

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist

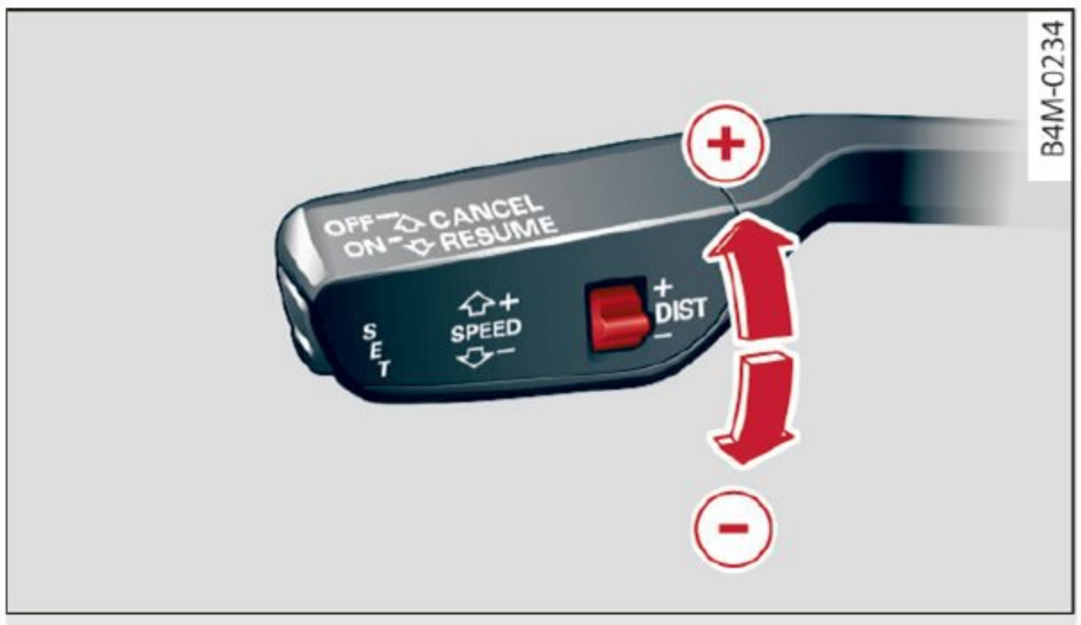


Fig. 124 Operating lever: setting the distance

If you adjust the speed, you must also change the time gap to the vehicle driving ahead. The higher the speed, the greater the distance that is needed.

- ▸ Tap the rocker switch to display the distance that is currently set.
- ▸ To increase or decrease the distance in increments, tap the switch again toward (+) or (-).

The newly set distance is shown briefly, for example with the indicator light. In the **Driver assistance** display, a graphic display is shown instead of the indicator lights ⇨ *page 152, fig. 120*. The display matches the functions of the indicator lights.

When approaching a vehicle driving ahead, the adaptive cruise assist brakes to the set speed and then maintains the set distance. If the vehicle driving ahead accelerates, then the adaptive cruise assist will also accelerate up to the speed that you have set.

The following distances can be set:

Symbol	Meaning
	The time between is approximately 1 second. This setting corresponds to a distance of approximately 92 feet (28 m) when traveling at 62 mph (100 km/h).
	The time between is approximately 1.3 seconds. This setting corresponds to a distance of approximately 118 feet (36 m) when traveling at 62 mph (100 km/h).
	The time between is approximately 1.8 seconds. This setting meets the general recommendation of “half the speed shown on the speedometer”. This corresponds to a distance of approximately 164 feet (50 m) when traveling at 62 mph (100 km/h).
	The time between is approximately 2.4 seconds. This setting corresponds to a distance of approximately 219 ft (67 m) when traveling at 62 mph (100 km/h).
	The time between is approximately 3.6 seconds. This setting corresponds to a distance of approximately 328 ft (100 m) when traveling at 62 mph (100 km/h).

WARNING

Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 136*.

Tips

– When setting the distance, the driver is responsible for adhering to any applicable legal regulations.
– Depending on the selected driving program and distance, driving behavior when accelerating may vary from moderate to sporty ⇨ *page 157, Adjusting the adaptive cruise assist*.
– The distances provided are specified values. Depending on the driving situation and how the vehicle ahead is driving, the actual ▶

distance may be more or less than these target distances.

Overriding control

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist



Fig. 125 Lever: overriding the control

Requirement: the adaptive cruise assist must be switched on.

Overriding control

- ▸ To accelerate manually, pull the lever toward you in the direction of the arrow and hold it there, or press the accelerator pedal.
- ▸ To resume the usual cruise control, release the lever or remove your foot from the accelerator pedal.

When you are in the **Driver assistance** display, the message **Adaptive cruise assist: overridden** appears.

WARNING

- Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 136*.
- Resting your foot on the accelerator pedal could override the cruise control. Braking interventions and corrective actions by the system may not occur.

Driving in stop-and-go traffic

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist

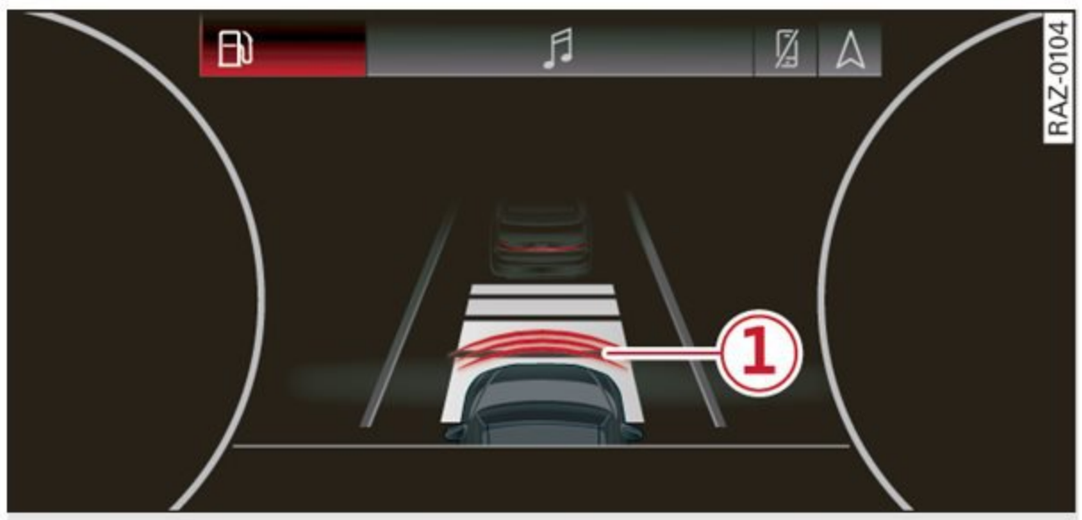


Fig. 126 Instrument cluster: safe start monitor

Stopping with adaptive cruise assist

The adaptive cruise assist also assists you in stop-and-go traffic. Within the limits of the system, your vehicle may brake and remain at a stop if a vehicle driving ahead stops.

Starting to drive with adaptive cruise assist[1)]

As long as the message **ready to drive** and  is displayed, your vehicle will begin driving when the vehicle ahead starts to move ⇨ ⚠.

If you are stopped for several seconds, your vehicle will no longer drive autonomously for safety reasons, and the message will turn off.

- ▸ To extend **ready to drive** for several seconds or reactivate, pull the lever briefly towards you in the direction of the arrow ⇨ *page 156, fig. 125*.
- ▸ To resume manual control of the vehicle, tap the accelerator pedal.

Safe start monitor

The vehicle can still start to drive even if certain obstacles are detected when starting to drive ⇨ ⚠. For example, if an obstacle is detected by the ultrasonic sensors for parking system plus, the  indicator light will warn you of the danger.

If you are in the **Driver assistance** display, the display ① ⇨ *fig. 126* and the message **WARNING!** also appear. An audio signal will also sound. Your vehicle will drive more slowly when starting. This may also occur in some situations when there is no apparent obstacle. ▶

1) This is not available in some countries.

▸ Press the brake pedal to slow your vehicle down.

WARNING

– Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 136*.
– If the message **ready to drive**[1)] appears, your vehicle will start driving even if there is an obstacle between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead. To reduce the risk of an accident, always make sure there are no obstacles between your vehicle and the vehicle driving ahead.

Tips

For safety reasons, adaptive cruise assist is only active if:
– The driver's safety belt is fastened
– All doors and the hood are closed
– Your vehicle is not stopped for a long period of time

Driver intervention request

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist

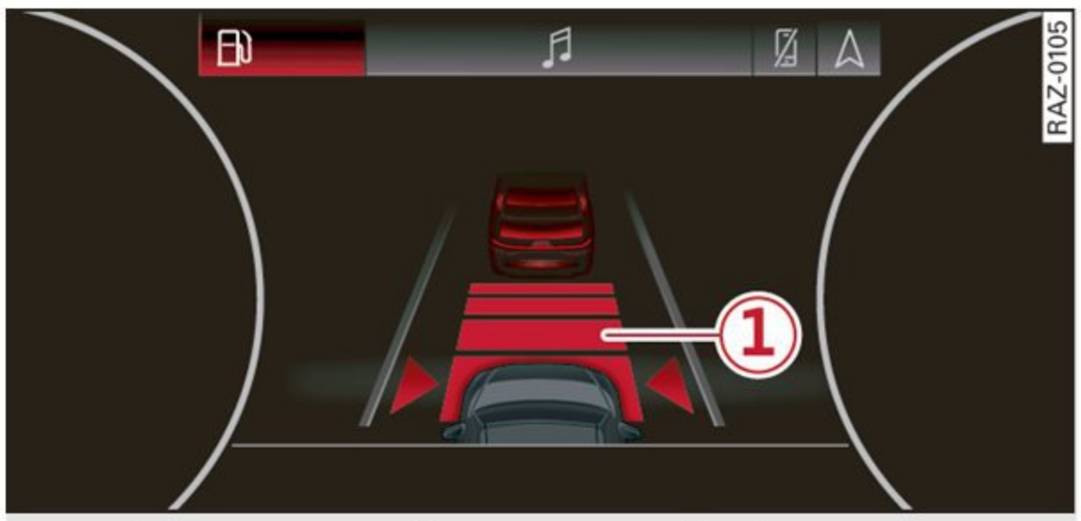


Fig. 127 Instrument cluster: request for driver intervention

The request for driver intervention instructs you to resume manual control of the vehicle if the adaptive cruise assist braking function is not able to maintain a sufficient distance to the vehicle ahead. The system will warn you of the hazard with the indicator light and the message **DISTANCE!**.

The display (1) only appears when the **Driver assistance** display is open in the on-board computer ⇨ *page 15*.

WARNING

Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 136*.

Adjusting the adaptive cruise assist

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist

You can adjust the adaptive cruise assist to your own preferences. The settings depend on the vehicle equipment.

▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Driver assistance** > (⚙) > **Adaptive cruise assist**.

Possible settings:

Driving program – depending on the driving program and the distance that are set, the vehicle handling will be adjusted from **Sport** to **Moderate** and the lane guidance haptic feedback will be adjusted.

Store last distance - the last distance that was set will be stored after the ignition is switched off. If the distance is not stored, distance (time distance of approximately 1.8 seconds) is automatically preset every time the ignition is switched on.

Applies to: vehicles with efficiency assist

Predictive control – when predictive control is switched on, the system reacts automatically to situations ⇨ *page 149*.

Tips

Specific settings are stored automatically in the active personal profile.

1) This is not available in some countries.

Messages

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist

If , or is displayed when there is a malfunction, the adaptive cruise assist functions may be unavailable or may be limited.

A message that indicates the cause and possible solution may appear with some displays. The weather conditions may be too poor or a sensor may be covered. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇨ *page 137, fig. 108* and try to turn on the systems again later.

If the malfunction remains, drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Narrow area

This message appears in the **Driver assistance** display if the adaptive cruise assist is adjusting the speed in a narrow area, for example a construction zone.

Please take over steering and pay attention to traffic!

This message appears if steering activity is no longer detected. Always keep your hands on the steering wheel so you can be ready to steer at any time.

Adaptive cruise assist: Please take over!

This message appears if the vehicle rolls back when starting on a slight incline, even though the systems are active. Press the brake pedal to prevent the vehicle from rolling or starting to move.

Adaptive cruise assist: limited availability. See owner's manual

This message appears when the sensor view is limited, for example, when weather conditions are too poor or a sensor is covered. You can switch on the adaptive cruise assist, but certain functions such as assistance in narrow areas will not be available. Under certain circumstances, some objects may be detected late or may not be detected at all. Be especially careful. However, cleaning the area in front of the sensors ⇨ *page 137, fig. 108* may correct the malfunction.

Distance warning

Description

Applies to: vehicles with distance warning

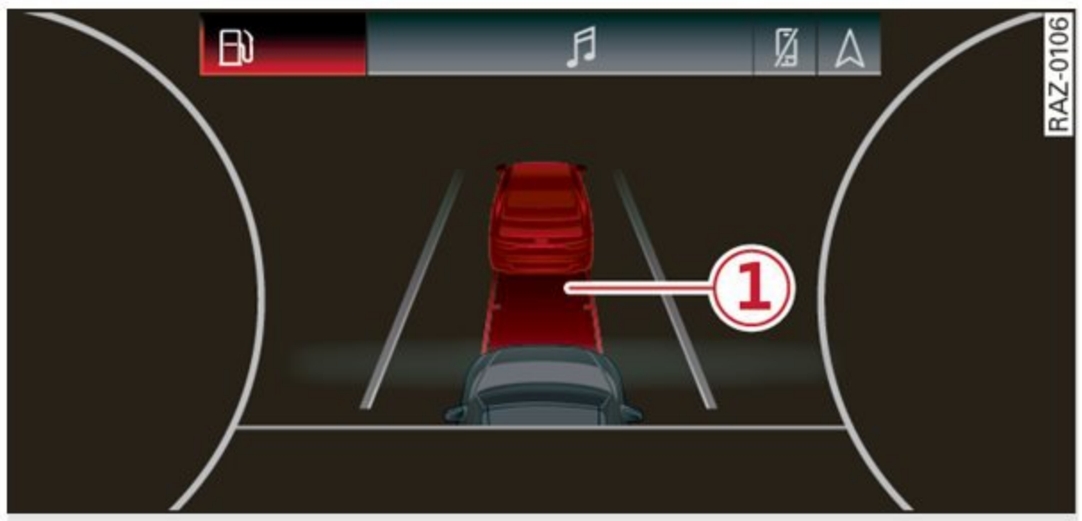


Fig. 128 -Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist:- Instrument cluster: distance warning

At speeds above approximately 40 mph (65 km/h), this function measures the distance to the vehicle ahead as time. If the distance falls below the warning threshold, the system warns you of the hazard with the indicator light.

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist: The display (1)* only appears if you have opened the **Driver assistance** display in the on-board computer ⇨ *page 15* and the adaptive cruise assist is inactive.

Adjusting the distance warning

The system can be switched on and off in the MMI ⇨ *page 139*.

You may be able to adjust the warning threshold for the distance warning individually depending on vehicle equipment.

– Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Driver assistance** > (⚙) > **Distance warning**

Messages

If or is displayed when there is a malfunction, the distance warning functions may be unavailable or may be limited.

A message that indicates the cause and possible solution may appear with some displays. The weather conditions may be too poor or a sensor may be covered. Clean the area in front of the ▶

sensors ⇨ *page 137, fig. 108* and try to turn on the systems again later.

If the malfunction remains, drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

WARNING

Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 136*.

Tips

- The driver is always responsible for adhering to the regulations applicable in the country where the vehicle is being operated.
- You may fall below the warning threshold briefly when passing or when quickly approaching a vehicle driving ahead. There is no warning in this scenario. A warning is given only if you fall below the warning threshold for an extended period of time.

Lane departure warning

General information

Applies to: vehicles with lane departure warning

The lane departure warning can detect lane marker lines within the limits of the system. If you are approaching a detected lane marker and it appears likely that you will leave the lane, the system can warn you with corrective steering and a steering wheel vibration, if necessary.

The system functions in the speed range of approximately 40 mph - 155 mph (65 km/h - 250 km/h).

Applies to: vehicles with lane departure warning and without side assist: Even if the system is ready, it will not warn you if you activate a turn signal before crossing the lane marker line. In this case, it assumes that you are changing lanes intentionally.

Applies to: vehicles with lane departure warning in combination with side assist: If the turn signal is activated, the lane departure warning is ready, and a lane change has been classified as critical by the lane departure warning due to vehicles traveling beside you or due to approaching vehicles, then a noticeable corrective steering movement will occur briefly before exiting the lane. This will attempt to keep your vehicle in the lane.

WARNING

Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 136*.

Description

Applies to: vehicles with lane departure warning

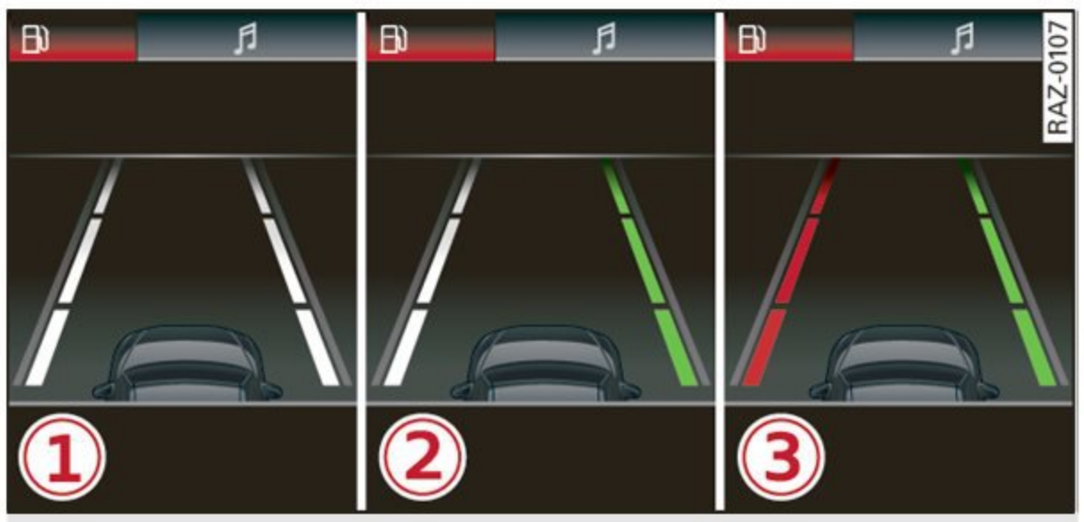


Fig. 129 Instrument cluster: driver assistance display

Switching the lane departure warning on and off

The lane departure warning is automatically activated as soon as the ignition is switched on [1].

- To switch the system off or on, select OFF on the lower display ⇨ *page 22*.

Display and warning

The availability and warning readiness is indicated with the , and indicator lights on the respective side.

You can also open the **Driver assistance** display in the on-board computer ⇨ *page 15*. The display matches the functions of the indicator lights. ▶

[1] In certain countries

Display or indicator light	Meaning on the corresponding side
① White line(s)	The lane departure warning is switched on but not ready to provide warnings.
② Green line(s)	The lane departure warning is switched on and ready to provide warnings.
③ Red line	The lane departure warning will warn you before leaving a lane. The steering wheel can also warn you with a vibration.

The lane departure warning is ready to provide warnings if an object is detected on at least one side of the individual lane.

If the indicator light turns on, the lane departure warning is not ready to provide warnings. This may be due to the following reasons:

– The necessary lane marker lines have not been detected (for example, in a construction zone or because the lines are obstructed by snow, dirt, water, or lighting)
– The speed is below the activation speed
– The lane is too narrow or too wide
– The curve is too narrow
– Visibility is obstructed by a rise or dip.
– The driver's hands are not on the steering wheel

WARNING

– Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 136*.
– The system warns the driver that the vehicle is leaving the lane using corrective steering. The driver is always responsible for keeping the vehicle within the lane.
– Corrective steering may not occur at all in certain situations, such as during heavy braking. Always be ready to intervene.

Tips

– Always keep your hands on the steering wheel. The driver is always responsible for adhering to the regulations applicable in the country where the vehicle is being operated.
– The system does not provide any corrective steering or steering wheel vibrations if it detects that you are passing another vehicle.

Adjusting the lane departure warning

Applies to: vehicles with lane departure warning

You can switch the optional steering wheel vibration warning for the lane departure warning on and off. The settings depend on the vehicle equipment.

– Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Driver assistance** > (⚙) > **Lane departure warning** > **Vibration warning**.

Tips

Specific settings are stored automatically in the active personal profile.

Messages

Applies to: vehicles with lane departure warning

If or is displayed when there is a malfunction, the lane guidance functions may be unavailable or may be limited.

A message that indicates the cause and possible solution may appear with some displays. The weather conditions may be too poor or the camera may be covered. Clean the area in front of the camera ⇨ *page 138, fig. 109* and try to turn on the systems again later.

If the malfunction remains, drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Tips

Always keep your hands on the steering wheel. The driver is always responsible for adhering to the regulations applicable in the country where the vehicle is being operated.

Audi pre sense

Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with Audi pre sense

Within the limits of the system, the Audi pre sense functions can initiate measures in certain driving situations to protect the vehicle occupants and other road users. Depending on the vehicle equipment, various Audi pre sense systems may be installed:

- **Audi pre sense basic** can react during emergency and dangerous braking maneuvers and unstable driving situations (such as oversteering or understeering).
- **Audi pre sense front**[1)] can detect an impending frontal impact and react with warnings, braking interventions, and preemptive safety measures for the vehicle occupants.
- **Audi pre sense rear** monitors the rear traffic behind your vehicle and can react to an impending rear impact.
- **Audi pre sense side** can detect an impending side impact from cross-traffic and vehicles coming from the side, and can initiate preemptive safety measures.
- The **evasive steering assist** can assist during an evasive maneuver recognized as critical with steering movement and by braking individual wheels individually.
- The **turn assist** can detect vehicles in the opposite lane and react with braking maneuvers.

Audi pre sense preemptive safety measures

Applies to: vehicles with Audi pre sense

Depending on the vehicle speed and the vehicle equipment, the following functions may be initiated in certain situations:

- Visual and audio warnings
- Activation of the emergency flashers[1)]
- Reversible tensioning of safety belts
- Closing the windows and panoramic glass roof
- Adjusting the seats
- Other preemptive safety measures by individual systems

WARNING

Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 136*.

Tips

- Depending on the risk situation that is detected and the selected Audi drive select* mode, not all preemptive safety measures may be initiated under certain circumstances. Certain functions can be adjusted or skipped if necessary.
- Audi pre sense may be restricted or unavailable under certain circumstances, for example if:
  - There are passengers with unfastened safety belts
  - It has only been several seconds since the ignition was switched on The indicator light turns on
  - When driving in reverse
  - There is an airbag control module malfunction
  - The ESC is limited, switched off, or malfunctioning ⇨ *page 130*

Audi pre sense basic

Applies to: vehicles with Audi pre sense basic

Audi pre sense basic is automatically active at speeds of approximately 20 mph (30 km/h) and higher. Audi pre sense basic can trigger the Audi pre sense preemptive safety measures during emergency braking and dangerous braking maneuvers as well as in unstable driving situations, such as oversteering or understeering.

WARNING

Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 136*.

1) This is not available in some countries.

Audi pre sense front

Applies to: vehicles with Audi pre sense front

The **Audi pre sense front** uses the data from the camera and calculates the probability of a rear-end collision. Within the limits of the system, an impending frontal impact with vehicles, pedestrians[1)], or cyclists[1)] may be detected in both urban and rural speed ranges.

Audi pre sense front is active at speeds of approximately 6 mph (10 km/h) and higher. It can react to pedestrians[1)] or cyclists[1)] at speeds up to approximately 50 mph (85 km/h), and can react to vehicles at speeds up to approximately 155 mph (250 km/h).

Early warning/acute warning

The system can recognize various dangerous situations. The **early warning** occurs if:

– A vehicle driving ahead brakes suddenly
– Your own vehicle approaches a vehicle in front of you that is traveling at a significantly slower speed or that is stationary
– A pedestrian or cyclist[1)] is standing in the lane or is moving into the lane

The message **Audi pre sense** and a warning tone will warn you about the danger.

The brakes may also be applied as an **acute warning** when there is an impending collision. You will also be warned by an indicator in the instrument cluster display. When this warning occurs, it may only be possible to avoid a collision by swerving or braking strongly.

Automatic deceleration

If you do not react to the acute warning, Audi pre sense front can brake the vehicle to a full stop within the limits of the system [1)]. This reduces the vehicle speed in the event of a collision.

Automatic braking force increase

If Audi pre sense determines that you are not braking strongly enough when a collision is imminent, it can increase the braking force based on the situation.

Take-over

If the message **Please take over!** appears, the vehicle has been braked to a stop by Audi pre sense and you must resume control of the vehicle.

WARNING

– Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 136*.
– Audi pre sense front cannot overcome natural physical laws. It is a system designed to assist and it cannot prevent a collision in every circumstance. The driver must always intervene. The driver is always responsible for braking at the correct time. Do not let the increased safety provided tempt you into taking risks. This could increase your risk of a collision.
– Audi pre sense front does not react to certain objects, such as animals, crossing or oncoming vehicles, bars, railings, or railcars.
– Audi pre sense front may be limited or unavailable when driving in curves.

Tips

Keep in mind that Audi pre sense front can apply the brakes unexpectedly. Always secure any cargo or objects that you are transporting to reduce the risk of damage or injury.

Audi pre sense rear

Applies to: vehicles with Audi pre sense rear

Within the limits of the system, **Audi pre sense rear** uses data from radar sensors in the rear area of the vehicle and calculates the probability of a rear-end collision with the vehicle behind you.

Audi pre sense preemptive safety measures can be initiated if the risk of a collision with the vehicle behind you is detected. ▶

1) This is not available in some countries.

WARNING

– Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 136*.
– Audi pre sense rear does not react to pedestrians, animals, crossing objects, and objects not detected as vehicles.

Tips

Audi pre sense rear functions may also switch off if there is a malfunction in the side assist system.

Audi pre sense side

Applies to: vehicles with Audi pre sense side

Audi pre sense side uses data from the extra radar sensors installed in the front and rear areas of the vehicle, and other sensors can react to side impacts from cross-traffic and vehicles coming from the side.

Audi pre sense side is active at speeds up to approximately 35 mph (60 km/h). The Audi pre sense preemptive safety measures can be triggered when a collision risk is detected.

WARNING

– Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 136*.
– Audi pre sense side does not react to pedestrians, animals, and objects not detected as vehicles.

Tips

The Audi pre sense side functions may also switch off if there is a malfunction in the intersection assistant*.

Evasive steering assist

Applies to: vehicles with evasive steering assist

The evasive steering assist can help you to steer the vehicle around an obstacle detected in a critical area. If you avoid an obstacle after the acute warning, then the evasive steering support assists you by specifically braking individual wheels and applying slight steering adjustment to correct the steering wheel angle as long as you are actively steering. The swerve assist is available at speeds between approximately 20 mph and 90 mph (30 km/h - 150 km/h).

WARNING

– Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 136*.
– The evasive steering assist does not react to pedestrians, animals, crossing objects, and objects not detected as vehicles.

Tips

– If the ESC is limited, switched off, or malfunctioning ⇨ *page 130*, the evasive steering assist functions may also not be available.
– An indicator in the instrument cluster will inform you when there is an intervention.

Turn assist

Applies to: vehicles with turn assist

When your vehicle is turning

The turn assist can assist you with a braking intervention when starting to drive or when driving slowly, to reduce the risk of your vehicle colliding with an oncoming vehicle when you are making a left turn[1)]. The braking intervention causes your vehicle to stay in its lane. The function is only available when the turn signal is turned on and at speeds up to maximum of 6 mph (10 km/h).

WARNING

– Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 136*.

1) When making a right turn in countries with left-hand drive vehicles.

– The turn assist does not react to pedestrians, animals, crossing objects, and objects not detected as vehicles.

Tips

– If the ESC is limited, switched off, or malfunctioning ⇨ *page 130*, the turn assist functions may also not be available.
– An indicator in the instrument cluster will inform you when there is an intervention.
– If the system is switched off, it switches on again automatically once the ignition is switched on again[1)].
– Specific settings are stored automatically in the active personal profile.

Adjusting Audi pre sense

Applies to: vehicles with Audi pre sense

The system can be switched on and off in the MMI ⇨ *page 139*.

You can adjust the Audi pre sense functions to your preferences. The settings depend on the vehicle equipment.

► Applies to MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Driver assistance** > (⚙) > **Audi pre sense**.

Possible settings:

– **Turn assist**
– **Evasive steering support**

Prewarning[1)] - the early warning can be switched off or the Audi pre sense warning time can be set (**Early**/**Medium**/**Late**).

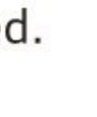
Set the warning time for the early warning to **Early** at first. If this causes undesired early warnings to appear, then set the warning time to **Medium**. The **Late** warning time should only be set in special circumstances.

Tips

– Switch Audi pre sense off when you are not using public streets, when loading the vehicle onto a vehicle carrier, train, ship, or other type of transportation, or when towing the vehicle. This can help to prevent an undesired intervention from the Audi pre sense system.

Messages

Applies to: vehicles with Audi pre sense

If  or is displayed when there is a malfunction, the Audi pre sense functions may be unavailable or may be limited.

A message that indicates the cause and possible solution may appear with some displays. The weather conditions may be too poor or a sensor may be covered. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇨ *page 137, fig. 108* and try to turn on the systems again later.

If the malfunction remains, drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

1) In certain countries

Side assist

Description

Applies to: vehicles with side assist

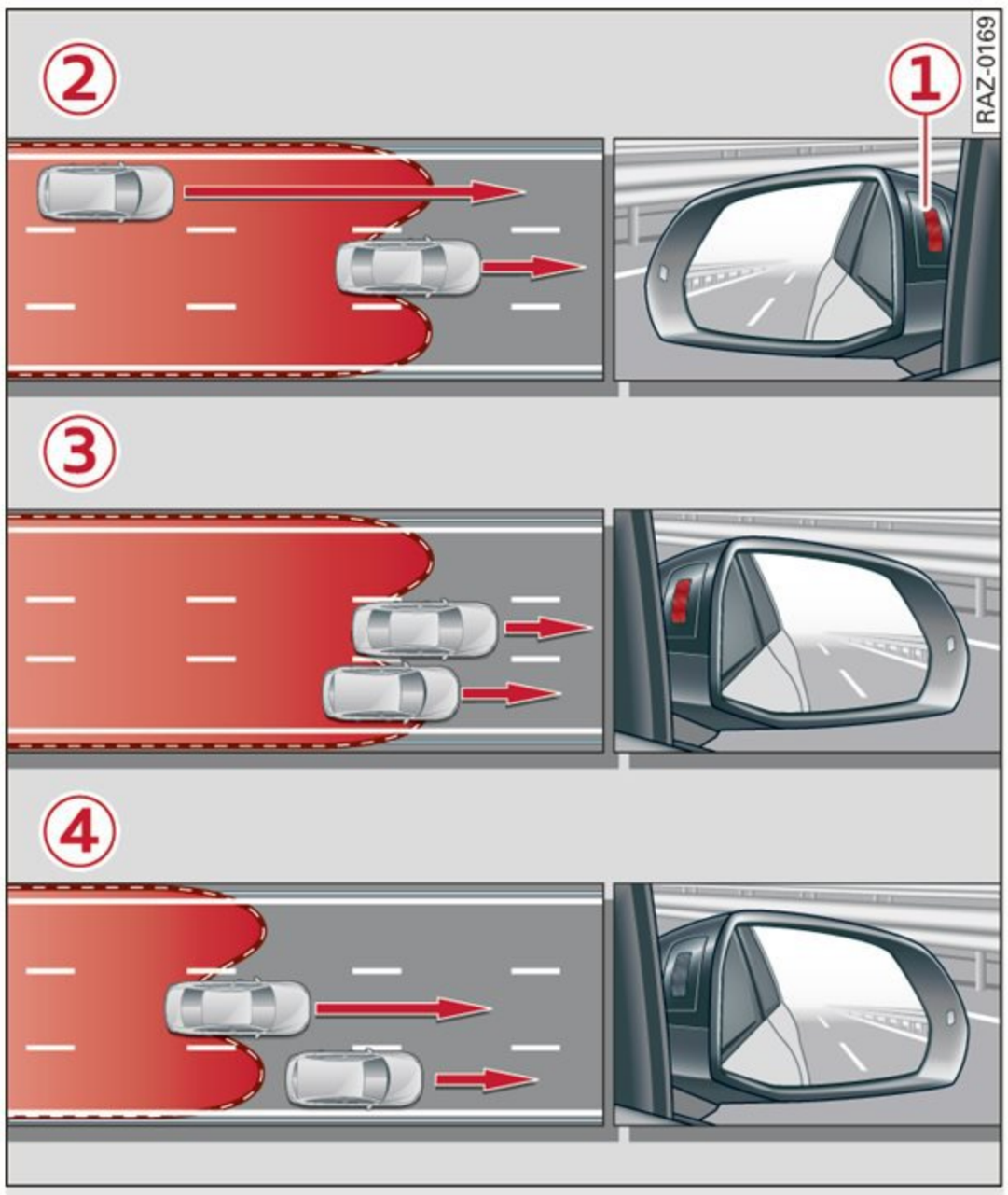


Fig. 130 Diagram: driving situations and displays in the exterior mirror (example)

General information

Side assist monitors the blind spot and traffic in the adjacent lanes behind the vehicle. Within system limits, side assist can detect traffic that is approaching from behind and provide a warning when you are changing lanes and turning. The system uses the data from the radar sensors at the rear corners of the vehicle.

The side assist is active at walking speeds and higher. If an object that is classified as critical is approaching, the display in the exterior mirror ① on the corresponding side of the vehicle will light up.

Driving situations

The system can provide warnings about the following risks:

② **Approaching vehicles**: a vehicle may be classified as critical in some cases, even if it is farther away. The faster a vehicle approaches, the sooner the display will turn on.

③ **Vehicles traveling in the same direction**: the display will turn on if vehicles traveling in the same direction as your vehicle are classified as critical. The side assist warns you of all detected vehicles when they are in the “blind spot” or before they reach that point.

④ **Vehicles you are passing**: the display only turns on if you slowly pass a detected vehicle (difference in speed between the two vehicles is less than 9 mph (15 km/h)). There is no display if you pass a vehicle more quickly.

Information stage

At the information level, the side assist informs you of detected objects that are classified as critical. This is even possible when your vehicle is stationary and the turn signal is turned on, so that the system can also assist you when turning. From speeds of approximately 6 mph (10 km/h) and higher, the system will warn you of detected objects that are classified as critical, even if the turn signal is not turned on.

The display remains dim in the information stage so that you are not distracted while looking forward.

Warning stage

If you activate a turn signal and the display flashes brightly, side assist is warning about objects that have been classified as critical.

Depending on the vehicle equipment and other driver assistance systems, the display may also flash if you have not activated a turn signal. If you are approaching a detected lane marker line and it appears you will be leaving the lane, the display will warn you about detected vehicles that are classified as critical. You can also be warned with corrective steering ⇨ *page 159, Lane departure warning*.

Detection range

The radar sensors are designed to detect the left and right adjacent lanes when the road lanes are the normal width. In some situations, the display may turn on even though there is no vehicle located in the area that is critical for a lane change. For example: ▶

– If the lanes are narrow or if you are driving on the edge of your lane. If this is the case, the system may have detected a vehicle in another lane that is *not* adjacent to your current lane.
– If you are driving through a curve. Side assist may react to a vehicle that is in the same lane or one lane over from the adjacent lane.
– If side assist reacts to other objects (such as roadside structures like guard rails).

WARNING

– Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 136*.
– The display may not appear on time when vehicles are approaching or being passed very quickly.

Tips

– If the window glass in the driver's door or front passenger's door has been tinted, the display in the exterior mirror may be incorrect.
– For an explanation on conformity with the FCC regulations in the United States and the Industry Canada regulations, see ⇨ *page 317*.

Adjusting side assist

Applies to: vehicles with side assist

The system can be switched on and off in the MMI ⇨ *page 139*. If the system is activated, the displays will turn on briefly when the ignition is switched on.

Adjusting the brightness

You can adjust the brightness of the display in the exterior mirror. The settings depend on the vehicle equipment.

► Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Driver assistance** > (⚙) > **Lane change warning** > **Brightness**

The display brightness is automatically adapted to the ambient light. If the automatic adaptation has already reached the upper or lower limit, no change will be apparent when the setting is changed, or it will only become visible when the ambient light changes. Adjust the brightness to a level where the display in the information stage will not disrupt your view ahead. If you change the brightness, the display will briefly show the brightness level in the information stage.

Messages

Applies to: vehicles with side assist

If  or  is displayed when there is a malfunction, the side assist and exit warning system functions may be unavailable or may be limited.

A message that indicates the cause and possible solution may appear with some displays. The weather conditions may be too poor or a sensor may be covered. Clean the sensor area in the vehicle rear and try to turn the systems on again later.

If the malfunction remains, drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Exit warning

Description

Applies to: vehicles with exit warning system

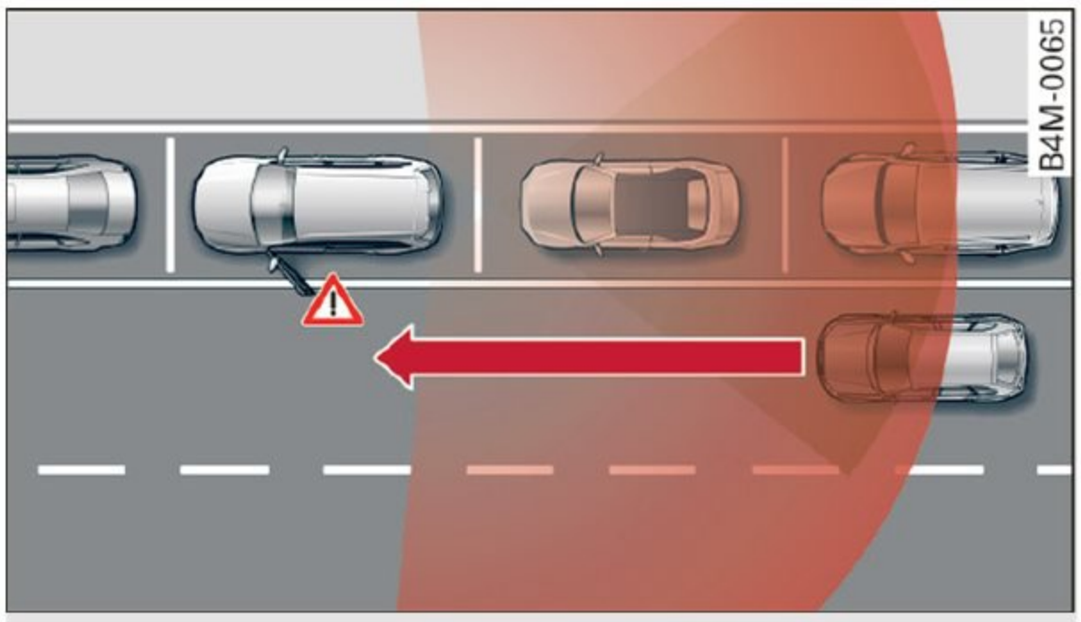


Fig. 131 Diagram: approaching traffic detected

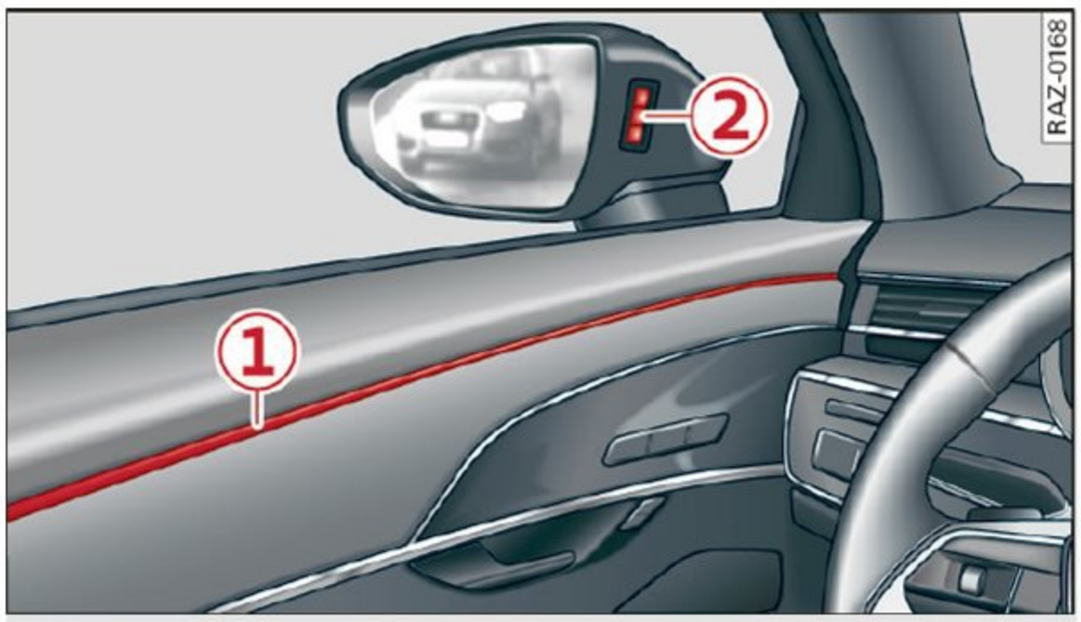


Fig. 132 Front door: warning strip (diagram)

Within system limits, the exit warning system can detect traffic approaching from behind such as vehicles, and provide assistance based on this information when you are exiting the vehicle. The system uses the data from the radar sensors at the rear corners of the vehicle ⇨ *fig. 131*.

General information

If you pull a door handle while the vehicle is stationary and an object classified as critical is approaching, the warning strip ① and the display on the exterior mirror ② will light up on the corresponding side of the vehicle. The opening of the door will also be slowed briefly.

If the door is opened, the displays on that side will flash. If another road user that is classified as critical is approaching while a door is already open, the displays on that door will turn on.

The same messages apply for the exit warning system and side assist ⇨ *page 166*.

Switching the exit warning on and off

– The system can be switched on and off in the MMI ⇨ *page 139*.

WARNING

– Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 136*.
– Always pay attention to traffic and to the area around your vehicle. The exit warning system does not replace the attention of the vehicle occupants. The vehicle occupants are always responsible for opening the doors and exiting the vehicle.
– The exit warning system does not respond to people and cannot warn you about every type of approaching objects, such as cyclists. Always monitor the traffic as well as the vehicle's surroundings with direct eye contact.
– The display may not appear in time when vehicles are approaching very quickly.
– The exit warning system does not react to stationary objects or pedestrians.
– The exit warning system will not provide alerts if your vehicle is pulled too far into the parking space so that it is hidden by adjacent vehicles.

Tips

– The exit warning system can be available for up to approximately three minutes after unlocking the vehicle and opening the door as well as after switching off the ignition. Then the displays flash briefly and the system switches off.
– The system is not available when towing a trailer. There is no guarantee the system will switch off when using a retrofitted trailer hitch. Do not use these functions when towing a trailer.
– For an explanation on conformity with the FCC regulations in the United States and the Industry Canada regulations, see ⇨ *page 317*.

4N0012721BB

Intersection assistant

Description

Applies to: vehicles with intersection assistant

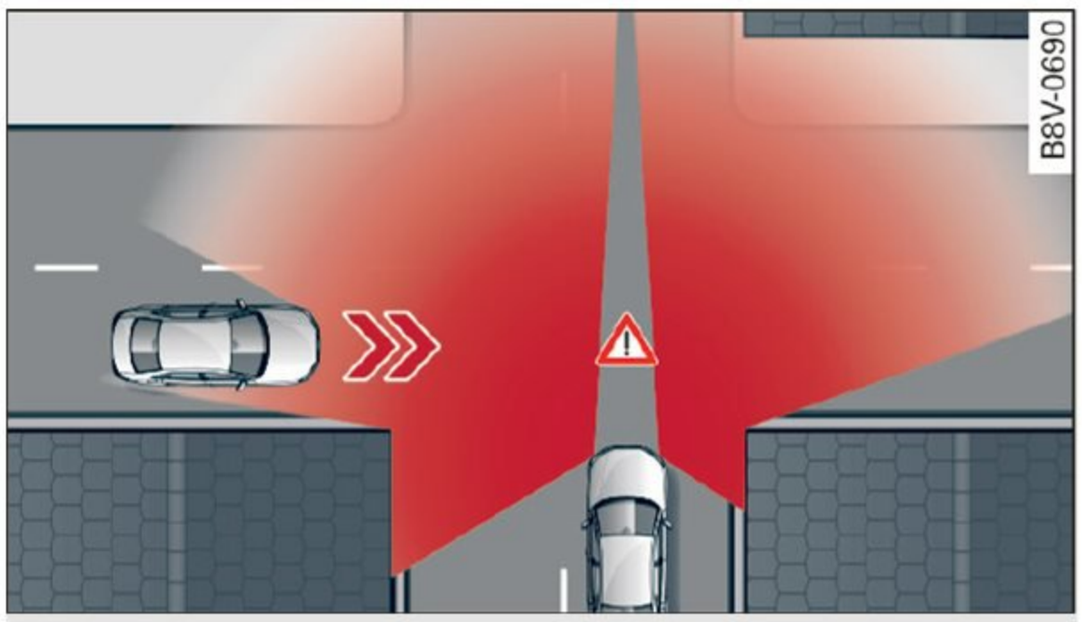


Fig. 133 Diagram: detected cross traffic

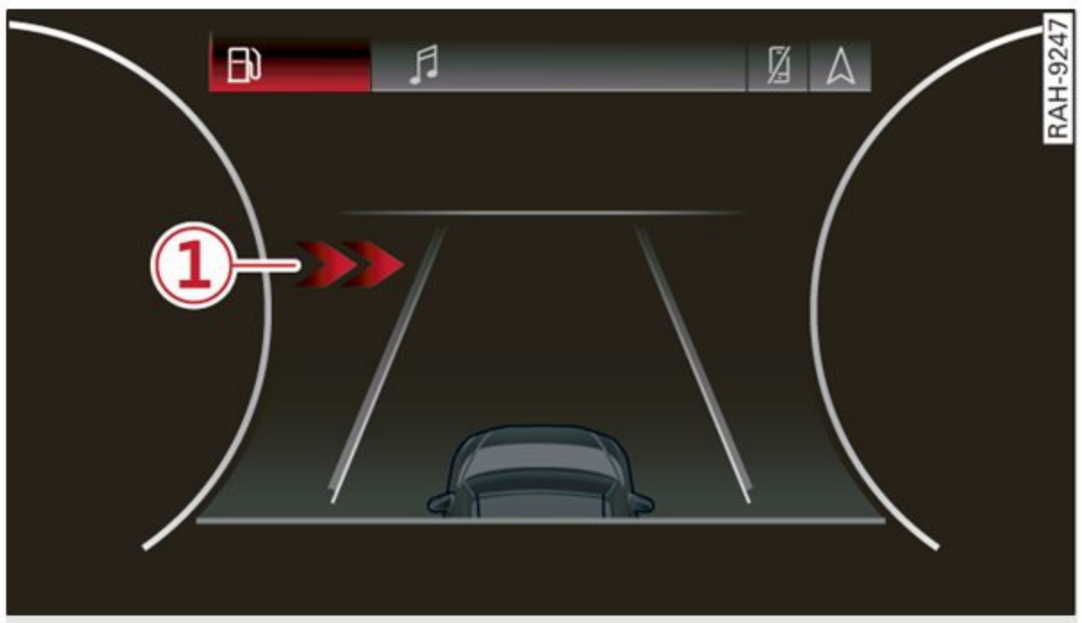


Fig. 134 Instrument cluster: directional display from the intersection assistant

General information

The **intersection assistant** can warn the driver of approaching cross traffic in complex intersections ⇨ *fig. 133*.

The system monitors intersections and exit ramps using the sensors installed in the vehicle that detect the front and side areas around the vehicle. Moving objects that are approaching from behind, such as cars, are detected within the limits of the system ⇨ ⚠. The system can also warn the driver of a potential collision with detected approaching cross traffic in intersections and exit ramps with poor visibility.

Requirements for using the intersection assistant:

– The intersection assistant must be switched on in the MMI ⇨ *page 139*.
– The speed must not be higher than approximately 18 mph (30 km/h).
– The “D” gear is selected.

Displays, warnings, and braking

– **Display**: the red arrow ① can indicate the direction from which the cross traffic is approaching. The indicator in the upper display only appears when the parking aid is activated. For vehicles with peripheral cameras only in the **Front** and **Corner view (front)** camera views. The display only appears in the instrument cluster ⇨ *fig. 134* when the **Driver assistance** display is open in the on-board computer ⇨ *page 15*.
– **Warnings**: the message **Cross traffic!** can warn you of critical cross traffic when driving forward. There may also be an audible signal.
– **Automatic brake activation**: if you do not react to a warning, a brief braking by the system can warn you of a potential collision with an approaching object when driving forward at speeds up to approximately 6 mph (10 km/h).

Messages

If , or is displayed when there is a malfunction, the intersection assistant functions may be unavailable or may be limited.

A message that indicates the cause and possible solution may appear with some displays. The weather conditions may be too poor or a sensor may be covered. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇨ *page 137, fig. 108* and try to turn on the systems again later.

If the malfunction remains, drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

WARNING

– Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 136*.
– The intersection assistant will not provide alerts about people and cannot warn you about every type of approaching objects, such as cyclists. Always monitor the traffic as well as the vehicle's surroundings with direct eye contact.
– The system may not react if vehicles are approaching very fast. ▶

Tips

For an explanation on conformity with the FCC regulations in the United States and the Industry Canada regulations, see ⇨ *page 317*.

Emergency assist

Description

Applies to: vehicles with emergency assist

General information

Within the limits of the system, the emergency assist detects if the driver is inactive. In these instances, the system warns the driver, assumes control of the vehicle if necessary, and brings the vehicle automatically to a stop in the lane.

Regardless of the speed, the emergency assist is automatically available when the adaptive cruise assist* is activated. When the adaptive cruise assist* is deactivated, the system is only active at speeds higher than approximately 40 mph (65 km/h).

Emergency assist functions

Within the limits of the system, the emergency assist monitors the driver's steering, accelerator, and brake pedal activity. Depending on the severity of the situation, it may initiate visual, audio, and haptic warnings in stages:

– Reduces the speed
– Messages
– Lowers the volume of the Infotainment system
– Audible warning
– Tightening of the safety belt
– A brief application of the brakes

If the driver remains inactive despite the warnings, the emergency assist controls the vehicle within the limits of the system:

– The Audi pre sense preemptive safety measures are triggered ⇨ *page 161*.
– The vehicle will stay in the lane and will be braked to a stop.
– As soon as the vehicle comes to a full stop, the emergency flashers are activated[1)] and the vehicle prepares for the vehicle passengers to be rescued. The parking brake is set, "P" gear is engaged, the doors are unlocked, and the interior lighting is activated. If there is no movement for several seconds, the emergency call [1)] will be made if necessary.

Overriding the emergency assist

You can override the emergency assist ⇨ ⚠:

– Move the steering wheel. Or
– Press the brake pedal. Or
– Press the accelerator pedal distinctly.

When stationary, you can end the emergency assist by leaving the "P" position or releasing the parking brake ⇨ *page 119*.

Switching the emergency assist on and off

The system can be switched on and off in the MMI ⇨ *page 139*.

Messages

If SOS or SOS is displayed when there is a malfunction, the emergency assist functions may be unavailable or may be limited.

A message that indicates the cause and possible solution may appear with some displays. The weather conditions may be too poor or a sensor may be covered. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇨ *page 137, fig. 108* and try to turn on the systems again later.

If the malfunction remains, drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

WARNING

– Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 136*.
– The emergency assist is an assist system that should only be used in cases of emergency to take over control of the vehicle and bring it to a stop.

1) This function is not available in every market and on all vehicle equipment levels.

Tips

– Depending on the severity of the detected situation, not all safety measures will be initiated. Certain functions can be adjusted or skipped if necessary.
– If the emergency assist was triggered, it will only be available again after a brief period.
– Specific settings are stored automatically in the active personal profile[1)].
– An indicator in the instrument cluster will inform you when there is an intervention.

1) This function is not available in every market and on all vehicle equipment levels.

Parking and maneuvering

Introduction

Depending on the vehicle equipment, various parking aids will help you when parking and maneuvering.

The **parking system plus** assists you while parking using audio and visual signals to warn you about objects detected in front of, behind, and at the sides* of the vehicle ⇨ *page 171*.

The **rearview camera** shows the area behind the vehicle in the MMI display. The lines in the rearview camera image help you to park and maneuver ⇨ *page 173*.

The **peripheral cameras** are an addition to the rearview camera and help you to see various areas around the vehicle while parking and maneuvering ⇨ *page 173*.

The **rear cross-traffic assist** can warn you of approaching cross traffic when driving in reverse or exiting a parking space ⇨ *page 177*.

WARNING

Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 136*.

Tips

Practicing parking in a traffic-free location or parking lot to become familiar with the systems is recommended. Practice parking in good light and weather conditions.

Parking system plus

Switching on and off

Applies to: vehicles with parking system plus

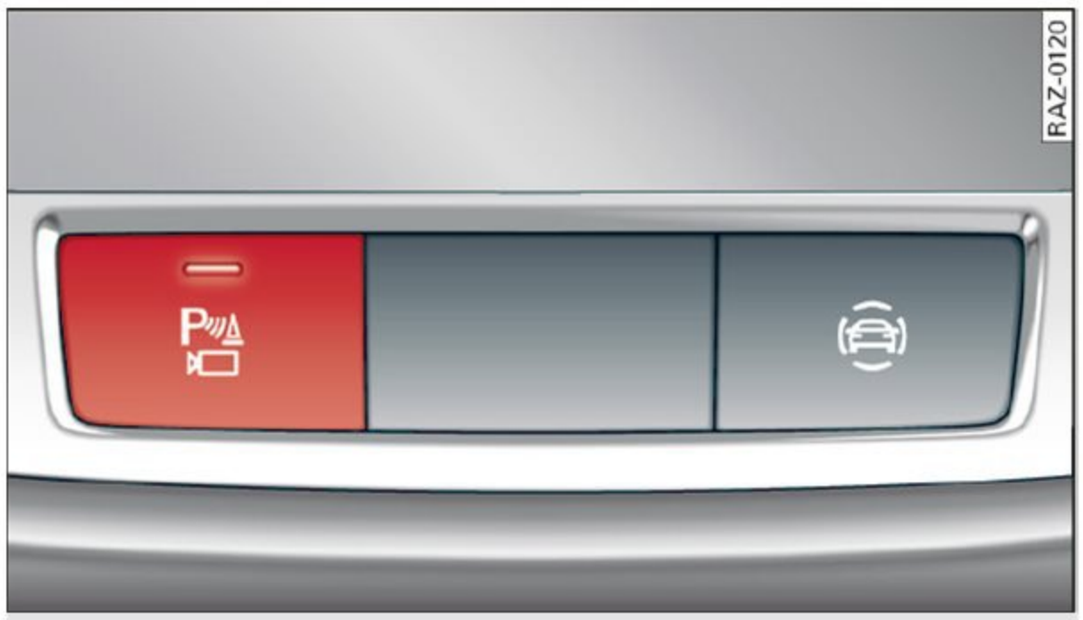


Fig. 135 Center console: parking aid button (example)

The parking system plus uses audio and visual warnings to help you avoid obstacles when parking.

Switching on and off

Requirement: the vehicle speed must be under approximately 6 mph (10 km/h).

- ▸ Press the P or P button in the center console. When switching on, a brief tone sounds and the LED in the button turns on.

Switching on automatically

- ▸ The system switches on automatically when reverse gear is engaged while the engine is running. A brief tone will sound.
- ▸ If **Automatic activation** is switched on in the MMI and if the vehicle approaches) an obstacle at speeds below approximately 6 mph (10 km/h), the parking aid will switch on automatically. Audible signals will sound once the obstacle is within the sensor detection area.

Switching off automatically

The distance indicator for the parking system plus switches off automatically when driving forward faster than 6 mph (10 km/h).

WARNING

Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 136*.

Note

Keep enough distance from the curb to avoid damage to the rims.

Tips

If the parking aid is switched off, it can only be reactivated automatically when one of the following conditions is met:

– The vehicle speed exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h)
– The ignition is switched off and back on again
– The parking brake is set and then released
– The "P" gear is engaged and released again

Warnings

Applies to: vehicles with parking system plus

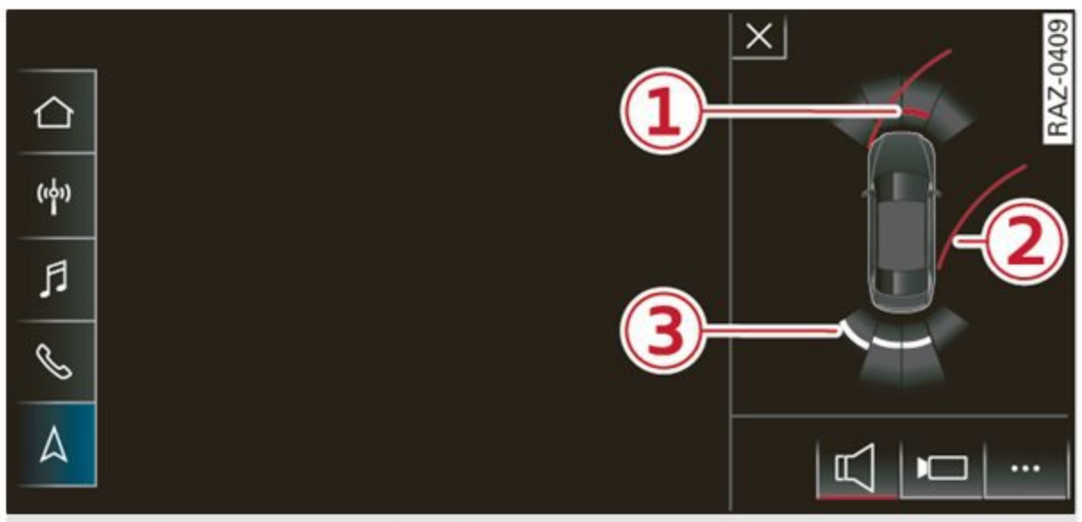


Fig. 136 Upper display: distance indicator

If the sensors detect an obstacle, audible and visual signals will warn you.

Audio signals

The closer your vehicle gets to a detected obstacle, the shorter the time between the audible signals. A continuous tone sounds when an obstacle is less than approximately 1 foot (0.30 m) away from the front or rear of the vehicle. Do not continue driving forward or in reverse ⇨ (!).

The audio warnings can be switched off until the next time the parking aid is switched on by pressing on the upper display. The volume can be changed in the settings ⇨ *page 178*.

Visual warnings

The visual warnings in the upper display help you to detect the critical vehicle area and to estimate the distance to an obstacle.

Red segments (1) show detected obstacles that are in your vehicle's path. The red lines (2) mark the expected direction of travel based on the steering angle. A white segment (3) indicates a detected obstacle that is outside of the vehicle's path. As your vehicle comes closer to the obstacle, the segments move closer to the vehicle. The collision area has been reached when the next to last segment is displayed. Obstacles in the collision area, including those outside of the vehicle's path, are shown in red. Do not continue driving farther.

Error messages

If a sensor or speaker is faulty, P will appear in the MMI. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

If is displayed in the MMI, the ultrasonic sensor indicated is icy or dirty. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇨ *page 137, fig. 108*.

If P is displayed when there is a malfunction, the parking system functions may be unavailable or may be limited.

A message that indicates the cause and possible solution may appear with some displays. The weather conditions may be too poor or a sensor may be covered. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇨ *page 137, fig. 108* and try to turn on the systems again later.

If the malfunction remains, drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

WARNING

– Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 136*.
– Sensors and cameras have spots in which the surrounding area cannot be detected. Objects, animals, and people may only be detected with limitations may not be detected at all. Always monitor the traffic and the vehicle's surroundings directly and do not become distracted. ▶

Note

Keep enough distance from the curb to avoid damage to the rims.

Tips

If the distance to an obstacle remains constant, the volume of the distance warning gradually lowers after a few seconds until it is muted (this does not apply to the continuous tone). If the obstacle comes closer than it was before the sound was muted, the tone will sound again. If the obstacle becomes farther away than it was before the sound was muted, no tone will sound. Pay attention to the vehicle's surroundings when you start to drive.

Rearview camera and peripheral cameras

Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with rearview camera/peripheral cameras

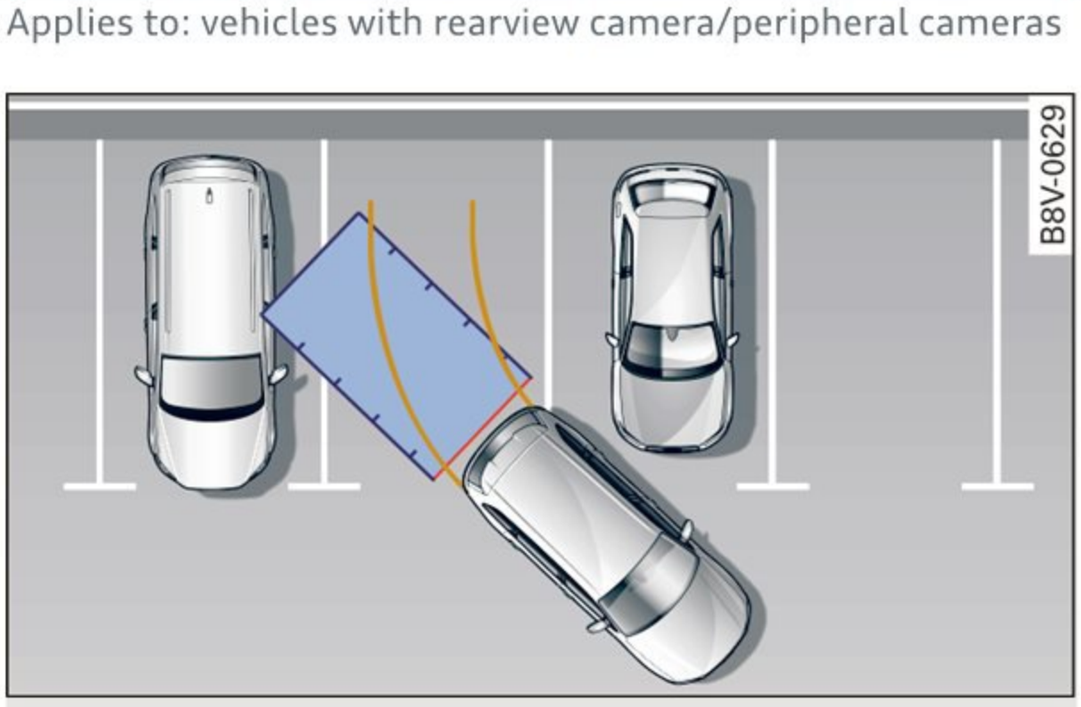


Fig. 137 Diagram: lines to aid in parking

Depending on the vehicle equipment, a rearview camera or multiple peripheral cameras may be available.

The **rearview camera** helps you to park or maneuver using the orientation lines.

The **peripheral cameras** expand the vehicle overview to include various views around the vehicle that can be selected.

WARNING

Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 136*.

Switching on and off

Applies to: vehicles with rearview camera/peripheral cameras

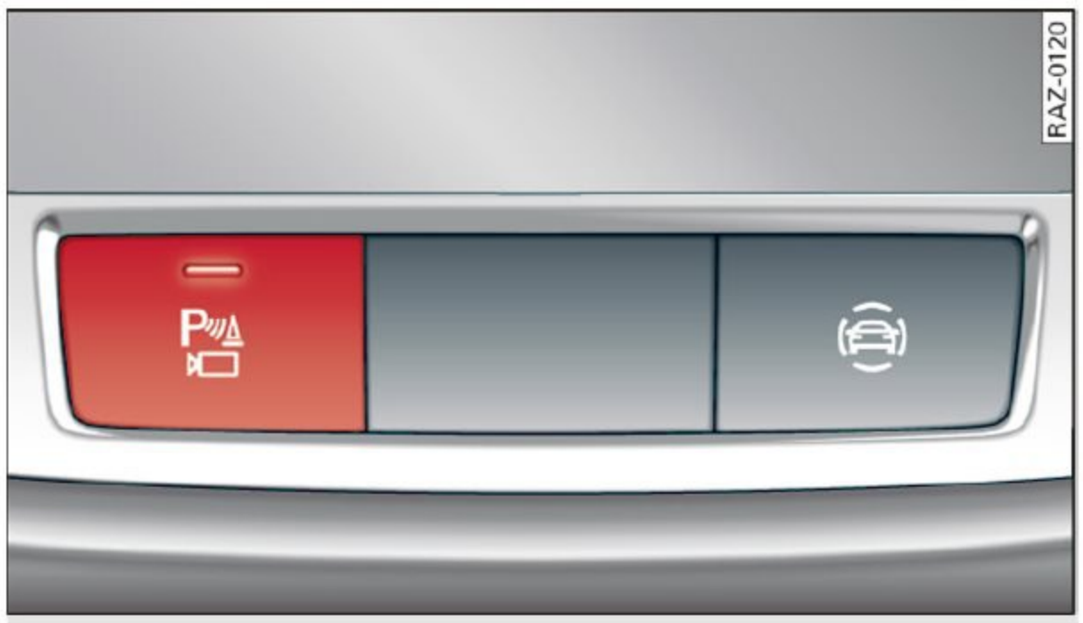


Fig. 138 Center console: parking aid button

Switching on and off

Requirement: the vehicle speed must be under approximately 6 mph (10 km/h).

- Press the button in the center console. When switching on, a brief tone sounds and the LED in the button turns on. Or
- Select on the upper display if the visual distance indicator is shown ⇨ *page 172, fig. 136*.

Switching on automatically

The system switches on automatically when reverse gear is engaged while the engine is running. A brief tone will sound.

Switching off automatically

The system switches off automatically when driving forward faster than 6 mph (10 km/h).

WARNING

Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 136*.

Warnings

Applies to: vehicles with rearview camera/peripheral cameras

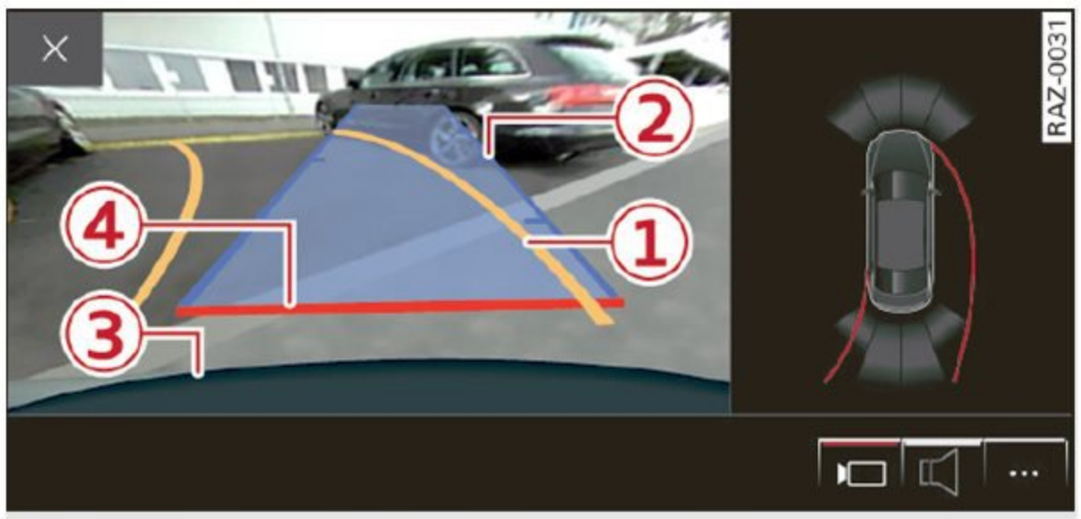


Fig. 139 Upper display: aiming at a parking space

When parking with the rearview camera or peripheral camera, the parking system plus audio and visual warnings* will also assist you ⇨ *page 172*.

For vehicles with peripheral cameras, the area surrounding the vehicle is shown on the side of the display. You can switch between the optical display and camera image ⇨ *page 178*.

Visual orientation lines

① The orange orientation lines show the vehicle's direction of travel ⇨ (!). Turn the steering wheel until the orange orientation lines align with the parking space.

② Use the blue markings to help you estimate the distance to an obstacle. Each marking represents approximately 3 feet (1 m). The blue area represents an extension of the vehicle's outline by approximately 16 feet (5 meters) to the rear.

③ You can recognize the rear bumper in the lower display.

④ You should stop driving in reverse when the red orientation line touches the edge of an object, at the latest.

Symbols

If /// is displayed and the display area represented by that symbol is not available, then the camera on the that side is not available. The power exterior mirrors may have been folded in or a door or the luggage compartment lid may have been opened.

If is displayed, there is a system malfunction and the display area represented by that symbol is not available. The camera is not working in this area.

If is displayed, the respective ultrasonic sensor is icy or dirty. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇨ *page 137, fig. 108*.

If one of the symbols continues to be displayed, drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction repaired.

WARNING

- Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 136*.
- Sensors and cameras have spots in which the surrounding area cannot be detected. Objects, animals, and people may only be detected with limitations may not be detected at all. Always monitor the traffic and the vehicle's surroundings directly and do not become distracted.

Note

- The orange orientation lines ① show the direction the rear of the vehicle will be traveling, based on on the steering wheel angle. The front of the vehicle swings out more than the rear of the vehicle. Maintain plenty of distance so that an exterior mirror or a corner of the vehicle does not collide with any obstacles.
- Keep enough distance from the curb to avoid damage to the rims.
- Only use the images provided by the camera on the rear of the vehicle when the luggage compartment lid is completely closed. Make sure any objects you may have mounted on the luggage compartment lid do not block the rearview camera.

Tips

Applies to: vehicles with air suspension: The accuracy of the orientation lines and blue surfaces on the camera display decreases when the vehicle is raised or lowered with the air suspension.

Operating the peripheral cameras

Applies to: vehicles with peripheral cameras

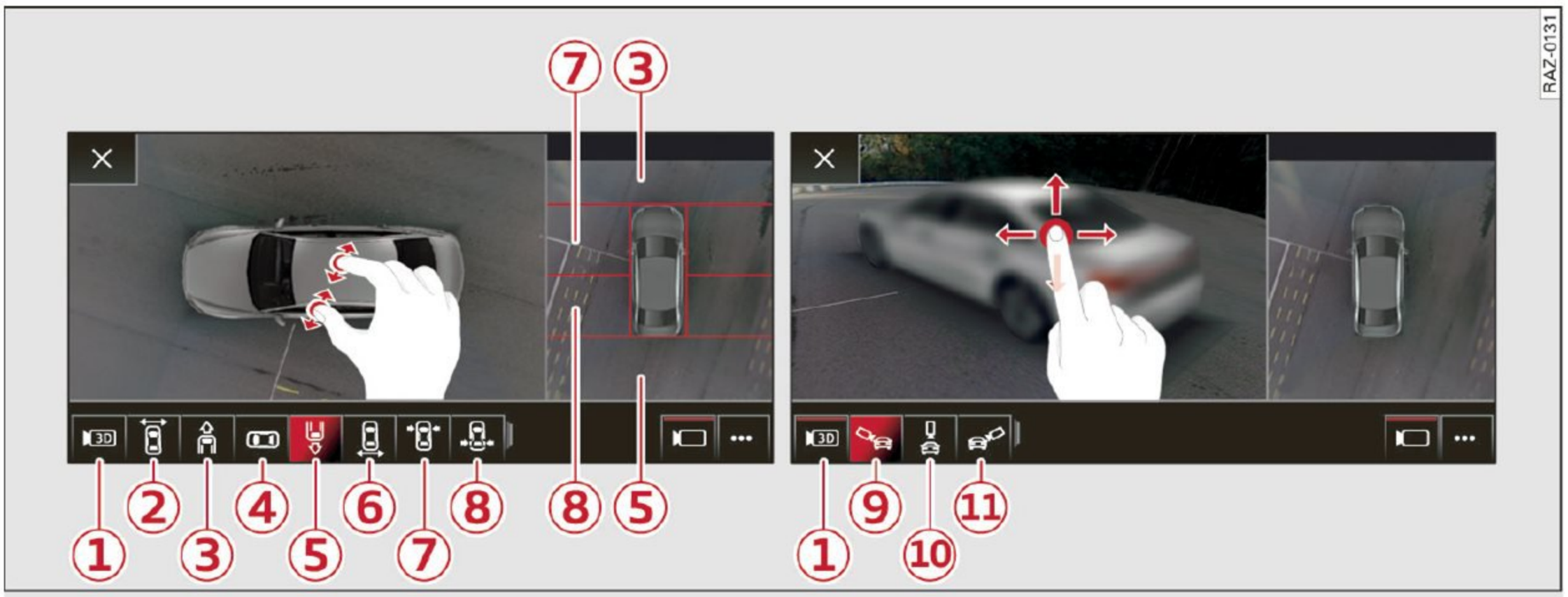


Fig. 140 Upper display: left side: surrounding area. Right side: 3D surroundings.

On vehicles with peripheral cameras, you can select among different views.

The camera views can be controlled with the touch display. In certain views, you can zoom in or out on the displayed area, and move, tilt, or rotate the **3D surroundings**.

Selecting the views

- ▸ To display the entire selection bar, tap the current view ② or swipe at the edge of the selection bar from left to right.
- ▸ To select a view, select the desired view ② - ⑧ on the upper display, or tap in an area on the side **View** of the screen [1)].
- ▸ To select a **3D surroundings** view, first press the 3D symbol ① and then the desired **3D surroundings** view ⑨ - ⑪.

Switching the views quickly

To switch the views quickly (for example, from **Corner view (front)** to **Front**):

- ▸ Press the camera image twice. Or
- ▸ Pull two fingers apart or together in a sideways motion on the camera image.

Zooming in and out on the views

Applies to: surroundings and 3D surroundings views

- ▸ To zoom in or out on an area, place two fingers on that area and push them apart or pull them together ⇨ *fig. 140*, left side.

Moving the view

Applies to: surroundings and 3D surroundings views

- ▸ To move the view, press and pull it in any direction using one finger.
- ▸ To re-center the **3D surroundings**, press twice on the camera image.

Tilting or rotating the views

Applies to: 3D surroundings view

- ▸ To tilt or rotate the **3D surroundings**, use your finger to drag it in any direction ⇨ *fig. 140*, on the right side.
- ▸ To re-center the **3D surroundings** behind the vehicle, press twice on the camera image. ▶

1) Requirement: the vehicle surroundings (**Camera**) must be selected and visible in the side **View** of the screen ⇨ *page 178*.

	Symbol/Description	Description
①	3D	Switch between **3D surroundings** and **Surroundings**
②	**Corner view (front)** or display the selection bar	This view makes it easier to drive out of tight parking spaces or areas and intersections with poor visibility. It shows an almost 180° panorama view in front of the vehicle.
③	**Front**	This view assists you in using the full area for maneuvering in front of the vehicle.
④	**Surrounding**	This view helps you to maneuver and position the vehicle more precisely. The area around the vehicle is shown using the camera images. The vehicle image is shown by the system ⇨ ⚠.
⑤	**Rear**	This view assists you in using the full area for maneuvering behind the vehicle. This is the rearview camera image.
⑥	**Corner view (rear)**	This view can assist you when driving out of tight parking spaces or areas with poor visibility. It shows an almost 180° panorama view behind the vehicle.
⑦	**Front tires**	This view helps you to see the distance between the front tires and the curb and the steering wheel angle when parking.
⑧	**Rear tires**	This view helps you to detect the distance between the rear wheels and the curb when parking.
⑨ ⑩ ⑪	**3D surroundings**	In these views, you can see the areas surrounding the vehicle in 3D when parking. The vehicle surrounding views are created from the camera images and sensor data. The vehicle image is shown by the system ⇨ ⚠.

WARNING

- Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 136*.
- The **Surroundings** and **3D surroundings** are created from the individual camera images. The vehicle image is shown by the system. Objects and obstacles above the camera are not displayed.

Note

Only use the images provided by the camera on the rear of the vehicle when the luggage compartment lid is completely closed. Make sure any objects you may have mounted on the luggage compartment lid do not block the rearview camera.

Tips

- Depending on the selected gear, it will automatically switch between the **Front** and **Rear** views. If you switch the view manually, the automatic front/rear camera change will be temporarily deactivated.
- When first activated while a forward gear is engaged, the **Corner view (front)** is displayed.

Rear cross-traffic assist

Applies to: vehicles with rear cross-traffic assist

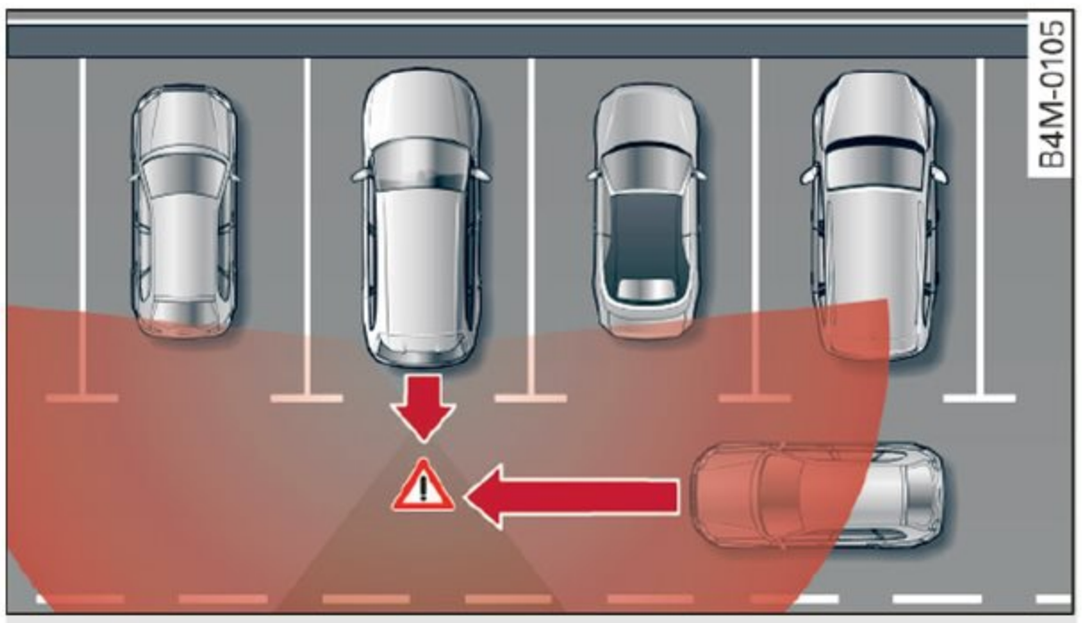


Fig. 141 Diagram: rear cross-traffic assist

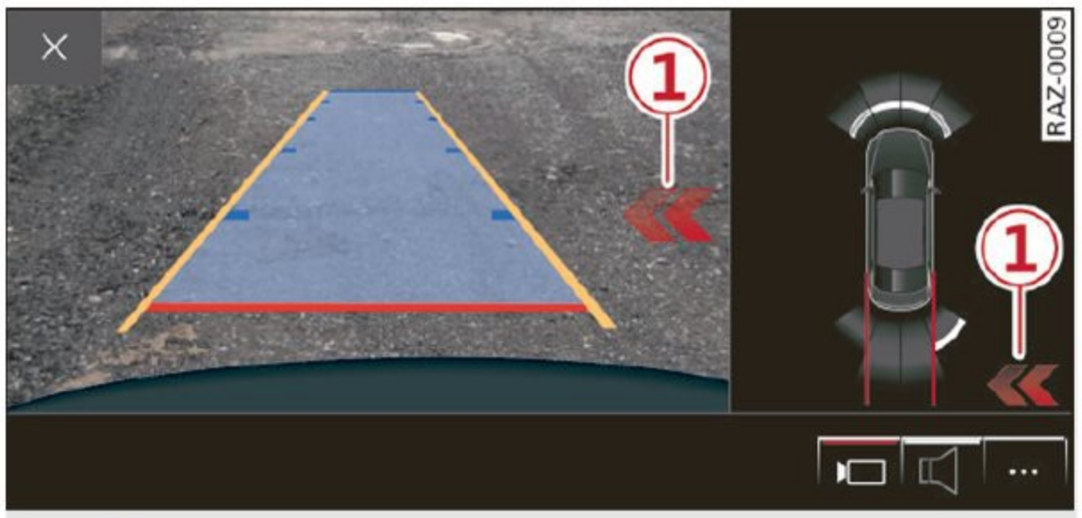


Fig. 142 Upper display: rear cross-traffic assist display

The rear cross-traffic assist can warn you of a potential collision with approaching cross-traffic detected when driving in reverse. Within the limits of the system, the system monitors the areas behind and next to the vehicle using the radar sensors when exiting a parking space. Moving objects that are approaching, such as cars, are detected ⇨ *fig. 141* ⇨ ⚠.

Requirements for using the rear cross-traffic assist:

– The rear cross-traffic assist must be switched on in the parking system settings in the MMI ⇨ *page 178*.
– Reverse gear must be engaged and the speed while driving in reverse must not be higher than 6 mph (10 km/h).

Displays, warnings, and braking

– **Display**: the indicator (1) in the upper display only appears when the parking aid is activated. For vehicles with peripheral cameras, this only happens in the **Rear** and **Corner view (rear)** camera views. Arrows show the direction from which the cross traffic is approaching.
– **Audible warnings**: an audio signal may sound as an additional warning when driving in reverse.
– **Automatic brake activation**: if you do not react to a warning, a brief braking by the system can warn you of a potential collision with an approaching object.

The audible warning signal and the automatic brake activation occur only when driving in reverse.

Messages

If , or is displayed when there is a malfunction, the rear cross traffic assist functions may be unavailable or may be limited.

A message that indicates the cause and possible solution may appear with some displays. The weather conditions may be too poor or a sensor may be covered. Clean the sensor area in the vehicle rear and try to turn the systems on again later.

If the malfunction remains, drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

WARNING

– Follow the safety precautions and note the limits of the assist systems, sensors, and cameras ⇨ *page 136*.
– The rear cross-traffic assist will not provide alerts about people and cannot warn you about every type of approaching objects, such as cyclists. Always monitor the traffic as well as the vehicle's surroundings with direct eye contact.
– The system may not react if objects are approaching very quickly.
– The rear cross-traffic assist will not provide alerts if your vehicle is parallel parked or if your vehicle is pulled too far into the parking space so that it is hidden by adjacent vehicles.

Tips

– Once an automatic brake activation occurs, the system cannot initiate another activation for several seconds.
– If there is an acoustic warning signal from the rear cross-traffic assist, then the parking system may not warn you of detected obstacles under certain circumstances.
– For an explanation on conformity with the FCC regulations in the United States and the Industry Canada regulations, see ⇨ *page 317*.

Adjusting the parking aids

You can adjust the parking aid to your preferences. The settings depend on the vehicle equipment.

▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Parking aid**.
▸ Applies to: MMI: Select ⋯ on the upper display when the parking aid is active.

Possible settings:

Activating automatically

View – switches between the visual display (**Graphic**) and vehicle surroundings (**Camera**) in the side view on the screen.

Clean rearview camera – starts cleaning the rearview camera.

Front volume – volume for the front area.

Rear volume – volume for the rear area.

Entertainment fader – the volume of the audio/video source is lowered when the parking system is turned on.

Rear cross-traffic assist

Tips

– Specific settings are stored automatically in the active personal profile.
– The new level is demonstrated briefly* when the volume is adjusted.

Telephone

Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

You can make calls in your vehicle using the MMI. You have various options for this depending on the vehicle equipment and the range of functions on your cell phone.

Handsfree

Once you have connected your mobile device to the MMI via Bluetooth, you can use the handsfree system. You can make calls using the antenna on your mobile device.

Car phone function*[1)]

Applies to: vehicles with car phone

In conjunction with Audi connect Infotainment*, the car phone function is available via an embedded mini SIM card.

With the car phone function and the Audi phone box*, calls are made using the exterior antenna on the vehicle. Using the external antenna helps when there is a low signal and also provides better reception quality ⇨ *page 182*.

WARNING

- Medical experts warn that mobile devices can interfere with the function of pacemakers. Always maintain a minimum distance of about 8 inches (20 cm) between the mobile device antenna and the pacemaker:
  - Do not carry the mobile device in a pocket directly over the pacemaker when the phone is switched on.
  - Switch the mobile device off immediately if you suspect it may be interfering with the pacemaker.
- Do not use the voice recognition system* ⇨ *page 37* in emergencies because your voice may change in stressful situations. The system may take longer to dial the number or may not be able to dial it at all. Dial the emergency number manually.
- Switch your mobile device off in areas where there is a risk of an explosion. These locations are not always clearly marked. This may include gas stations, fuel and chemical storage facilities or transport vehicles, or locations where fuel vapors (such as propane or gasoline vapor in vehicles or buildings), chemicals or large quantities of dust particles (such as flour, sawdust or metal) may be present in the air. This also applies to all other locations where you would normally turn your vehicle engine off.
- The demands of traffic require your full attention. Always read the chapter ⇨ *page 19, Traffic safety information*.

Note

Read the information about Audi connect, and be sure to note the connectivity costs section ⇨ *in Using a Wi-Fi hotspot on page 199*.

Tips

- The Bluetooth connection range is limited to inside the vehicle. It can also be affected by local conditions and interference with other devices.
- To learn which Bluetooth connections and which of the functions in your mobile device are supported, check with your mobile device service provider or the database for mobile devices at www.audiusa.com/bluetooth.
- If you use the car phone function*, it is recommended to use the Wi-Fi hotspot* in the vehicle ⇨ *page 198* so that the apps on your mobile device continue to have Internet access.
- When the car phone function* is active, Audi connect Infotainment* is available through your personal or embedded SIM card[2)3)].

1) Not available in all countries. Only in conjunction with Audi connect Infotainment* and Audi phone box*.

2) SIM card installed in the vehicle at the factory.

3) Not available in all countries.

4N0012721BB

Setup

Connecting a mobile device to the MMI

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

Requirement

The vehicle must be stationary and the ignition must be switched on.

The Bluetooth settings must be open on your mobile device during the connection setup.

The Bluetooth function and visibility of the MMI ⇨ *page 250* and mobile device must be switched on.

The mobile device that will be connected must not be connected to any other Bluetooth device.

The MMI must only be connected to one mobile device.

Connecting a cell phone using Bluetooth

- ▸ Press **PHONE** on the home screen.
- ▸ Follow the system instructions. The available Bluetooth devices will be displayed after several seconds.
- ▸ Press on the desired mobile device in the list of displayed Bluetooth devices.
- ▸ To update the list, press ↻.
- ▸ A PIN for a secure Bluetooth connection will be generated.
- ▸ Confirm the PIN on your mobile device, or
- ▸ Enter the PIN for connecting on your cell phone. The time allowed for entering the PIN is limited to approximately 30 seconds.
- ▸ Enter your SIM card PIN in the MMI [1].
- ▸ Pay attention to any additional system prompts displayed on your mobile device or the MMI, for example if the system should connect automatically in the future. Depending on the mobile device, you may also need to download contacts and confirm access to your messages separately.

Connecting a mobile device via USB

- ▸ Press **PHONE** on the home screen.
- ▸ Follow the system instructions.

After connecting successfully

After connecting successfully, information about the connected profiles will appear. You can also change the profiles later ⇨ *page 250*.

In addition, the mobile device contacts will be automatically loaded into the MMI. This process can take several minutes, depending on the number of contacts.

The telephone functions will also be available in the instrument cluster ⇨ *page 193* and the Rear Seat Remote* ⇨ *page 193*.

Note

Always follow the information found in ⇨ ⓘ *in Using a Wi-Fi hotspot on page 199*.

Tips

- – You can apply additional settings to connected mobile devices under **Connected devices** ⇨ *page 249*.
- – You can also search for the MMI on your mobile device using the Bluetooth device search.
- – You only have to pair your device one time. Bluetooth devices that are already paired automatically connect to the MMI when the Bluetooth function is switched on, when they are within range, and when the ignition is switched on. The last connected mobile device is given first priority.
- – Authorizing the MMI connection on your mobile device will make it possible to connect automatically.
- – Pay attention to any system prompts displayed on your mobile device or the MMI, for example if the system should connect automatically in the future. Depending on the mobile device, you may also need to download contacts and confirm access to your messages separately.

1) Not available in all countries. Applies to mobile devices with Bluetooth SIM Access Profile in conjunction with Audi connect Infotainment* and Audi phone box*.

– You will receive the PIN (SIM) and the PUK (Personal Unlocking Key) along with the SIM card from your cell phone service provider. If you enter a PIN (SIM) incorrectly three times[1)] in a row, the SIM card will be locked and must be unlocked by entering the PUK.
– When leaving the vehicle, the Bluetooth connection to the mobile device will automatically disconnect. Depending on your mobile device, phone calls in progress may be automatically redirected from the MMI to your mobile device so that you can continue the call on your phone.
– You can obtain more information from your mobile device service provider or from your mobile device user guide. For information on using the telephone, visit www.audiusa.com/bluetooth or contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Operating two mobile devices through the MMI

Applies to: vehicles with telephone, and Audi phone box

You can connect two mobile devices to the MMI, for example your business and your personal mobile device. You can use both mobile devices to make calls in the vehicle.

Connecting another mobile device

Requirement: a mobile device must be connected to the MMI.

► Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **PHONE** > . Follow the system instructions, or
► Applies to: MMI:Select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **Connected devices** > **Telephone 1** or **Telephone 2** > **New connection**.

See ⇨ *page 180, Connecting a mobile device to the MMI*.

Switching between two mobile devices

Requirement: phone 1 and phone 2 must be connected to the MMI.

► Applies to: MMI:Select on the home screen: **PHONE** > > **Switch telephones**: the device name of your active mobile device will be displayed.

Tips

– The device name of the active mobile device (such as myPhone) will be displayed in the **PHONE** menu.
– If telephone 1 does not connect automatically to the MMI when the ignition is switched on, you can use a previously-connected telephone 2 in the **PHONE** menu via .
– You can send and receive messages on phone 1 and on phone 2 ⇨ *page 188*.
– On mobile devices with multi-SIM functionality, the MMI only accesses one SIM card. You can switch between SIM cards using the mobile device.

Disconnecting a mobile device

The mobile device will be disconnected from the MMI and removed from the list of paired devices.

► To disconnect a connected device, use the connection manager ⇨ *page 250*.

1) The number of attempts depends on the SIM card.

Using the Audi phone box

Applies to: vehicles with Audi phone box

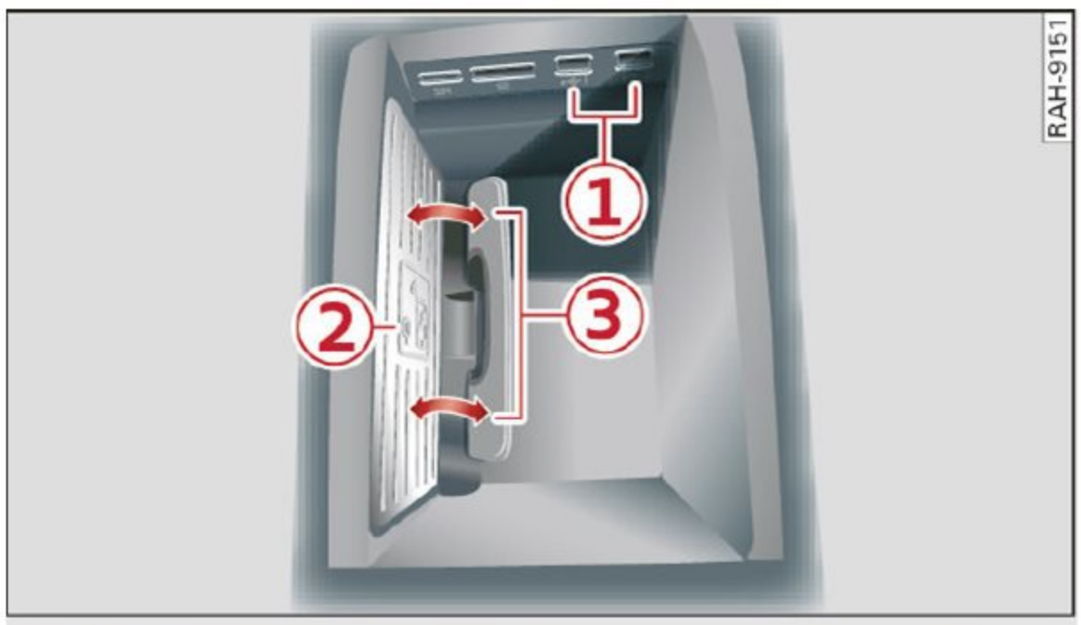


Fig. 143 Storage compartment under the center armrest: Audi phone box with holder* and connections (diagram)

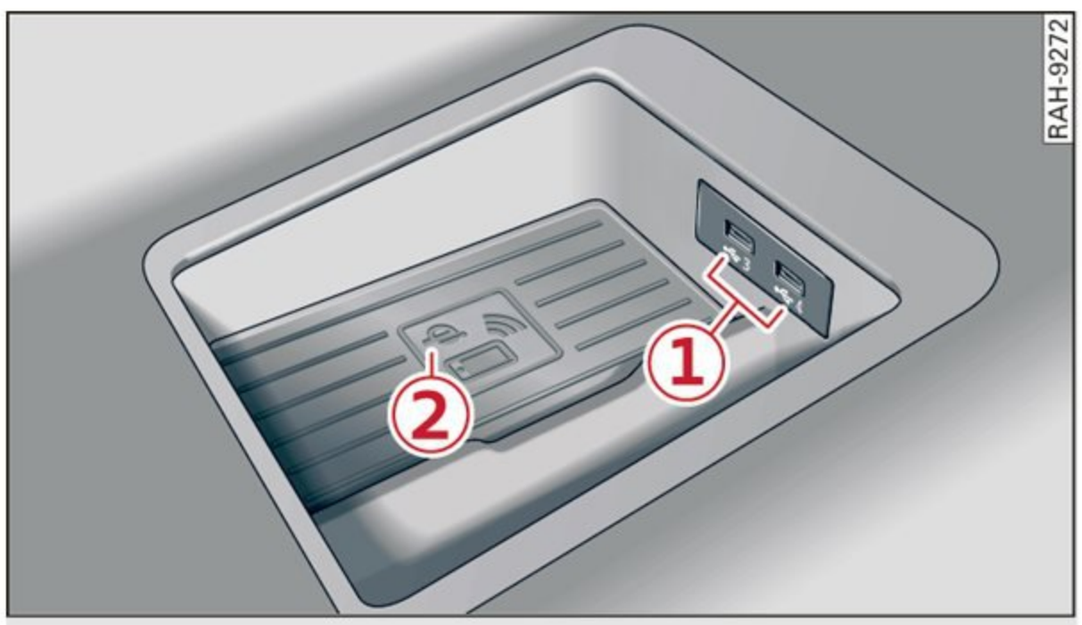


Fig. 144 Storage compartment under the center armrest: Audi phone box with connections (diagram)

You can charge your mobile device battery wirelessly* using the Audi phone box. You can make calls through the exterior antenna* on the vehicle. Using the external antenna* helps when there is a low signal and also provides better reception quality.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, an Audi phone box may be installed with or without a holder.

– **Audi phone box with holder***: unfold the Audi phone box holder ③. Position the mobile device so that the back of it is on the ⫧ symbol ② ⇨ *fig. 143* between the Audi phone box and the holder.
– Position the mobile device in the Audi phone box centered on the ⫧ symbol ② ⇨ *fig. 144* with the display facing up.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, you may then be able to use the following functions:

– **Connect to the external vehicle antenna***[1)]
– **Wirelessly* charge the mobile device**. Requirement: the ignition must be switched on. The charging function must be switched on in the MMI. You must have a Qi-capable[2)] mobile device.

You can also **Charge a mobile device using the USB adapter**: connect your mobile device to the Audi music interface using a USB adapter cable ① /⇨ *fig. 144*.

You can charge your mobile device using specific USB adapters ⇨ *page 235, fig. 165*.

Reminder signal

When the device reminder signal is switched on, you will be notified that your mobile device is still in the Audi phone box when you leave the vehicle.

Requirement:

– A Qi-capable[2)] mobile device must be in the Audi phone box, or
– Your mobile device must be connected to the Audi music interface by a USB adapter, and the Audi smartphone interface must be active, or
– Your iPhone® must be connected to the MMI via Bluetooth® ⇨ *page 180* and must be charging through the Audi music interface using a USB adapter.

Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **General** > **Device reminder signal**.

The following settings are available:

– **Signal tone**
– **Spoken cue***: this setting is switched on at the factory.
– **Off**

1) Not available in every market. These are additional car phone functions only in conjunction with Audi connect Infotainment*.

2) The Qi standard makes it possible to charge your mobile device wirelessly.

– **Show pop-ups***: when this function is switched on, the charge status of your mobile device is displayed. You will also be reminded not to forget your mobile device when leaving the vehicle. Messages will appear in the MMI when using your Audi phone box in the front*. Messages will appear on the Rear Seat Remote when using the Audi phone box in the rear*.
– **Front wireless charging***: when this function is switched on, you can charge your Qi-capable mobile device wirelessly in the Audi phone box.
– **Rear wireless charging**: when the function is switched on, you can charge your Qi-capable mobile device wirelessly in the rear* Audi phone box.

WARNING

– Loose objects can be thrown around the vehicle interior during sudden driving or braking maneuvers, which increases the risk of an accident. Store objects securely while driving.
– The mobile device may become hot during wireless charging. Pay attention to the temperature of your mobile device and be careful when removing it from the Audi phone box.
– An alternating magnetic field is used for wireless charging. Maintain a minimum distance of approximately 2.4 in (6 cm) to the Audi phone box charging plate. The thresholds for prolonged exposure at this distance comply with ICNIRP1998. Therefore, interactions such as irritation of sensory organs, malfunctions of active implants (such as pacemakers, infusion pumps, or neurostimulators) or effects on passive implants (such as prosthetic limbs) is highly unlikely. If you have an implant, consult a medical specialist if you have any questions. You can also switch the function for wireless charging in the front* Audi phone box on and off separately. You can continue to charge your mobile device using a cable connection.

Note

Applicable to U.S.A.

Operation of the Audi phone box is subject to the following requirements of the Federal Communications Commission:
– This is a CONSUMER device.
– BEFORE USE, you MUST REGISTER THIS DEVICE with your wireless provider and have your provider´s consent. Most wireless providers consent to the use of signal boosters. Some providers may not consent to the use of this device on their network. If you are unsure, contact your service provider.
– You MUST operate this device with approved antennas and cables as specified by the manufacturer. Antennas MUST be installed at least 20 cm (8 inches) from any person.
– You MUST cease operating this device immediately if requested by the FCC or a licensed wireless service provider.
– WARNING: E911 location information may not be provided or may be inaccurate for calls served by using this device.

Note

Applicable to Canada

In Canada, operation of a Zone Enhancer, such as an Audi Phone Box, is subject to the following requirements of the Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada (ISED):
– This is a CONSUMER device.
– BEFORE USE, you **MUST** meet all requirements set out in **CPC-2-1-05**.
– You MUST operate this device with approved antennas and cables as specified by the manufacturer. Antennas MUST NOT be installed within 20 cm of any person.
– You MUST cease operating this device immediately if requested by ISED or a licensed wireless service provider.
– **WARNING**: E911 location information may not be provided or may be inaccurate for calls served by using this device.

Tips

- The Audi phone box is not available in all countries. For additional information, contact an authorized Audi dealership.
- Only one mobile device at a time can be charged wirelessly in the Audi phone box.
- You can switch the front and rear Audi phone box charging function on and off separately.
- Strong transmission quality cannot be guaranteed if more than one mobile device is in the box.
- To reduce the risk of malfunctions, make sure the mobile device is positioned correctly in the Audi phone box.
- Make sure there are no objects between the Audi phone box and the mobile device.
- Placing the mobile device in a bag or protective sleeve inside the Audi phone box can interfere with the connection to the external antenna.
- Metallic objects in the Audi phone box block the wireless charging of your mobile device and calls made using the exterior antenna.
- The maximum charging output is 5 watts.
- The charging time and temperature will vary depending on the mobile device being used.
- If you are not using the Audi phone box with the holder*, you can close the holder ③ ⇨ *fig. 143*.
- You can purchase a USB adapter from an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility, or at specialty stores.
- Audi recommends using Audi Genuine Accessories. Audi has verified their reliability, safety, and suitability.

Using the telephone

Accessing the telephone functions

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

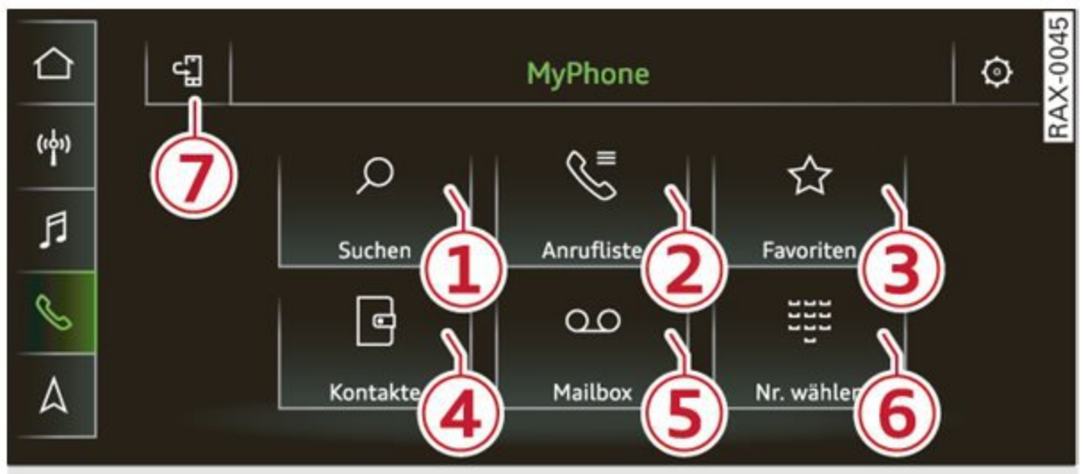


Fig. 145 MMI: selection menu

Requirement: a mobile device must be connected to the MMI ⇨ *page 180*.

▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **PHONE**.

The following telephone functions will be available ⇨ *fig. 145*:

① Search
② Call list ⇨ *page 184*
③ Favorites ⇨ *page 185*
④ Contacts ⇨ *page 185*
⑤ Voicemail ⇨ *page 186*
⑥ Dial number ⇨ *page 187*
⑦ Switching between two mobile devices ⇨ *page 191*

The device name for your mobile device, such as MyPhone, is displayed in the **PHONE** menu.

Opening the call list

Applies to: vehicles with telephone



Fig. 146 MMI: dialing a phone number from the call list

Requirement: the call list must contain a phone number.

▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **PHONE** > **Call list**.

Possible call list symbols ⇨ *fig. 146*:

① Missed calls
② Dialed numbers
③ Received calls
④ Edit call list
⑤ Displaying a business card ⇨ *page 185*
⑥ Number of interactions with a contact

If more than one interaction with a contact or number has already taken place, the last one is always displayed in the form of an arrow ①, ② or ③.

Press and hold a contact or a phone number in the list until the **Options** menu appears. Depending on your mobile device, the following options may be available:

– **Save as a shortcut**: see ⇨ *page 22, Shortcuts*.
– **Edit number**: edit a phone number before dialing it. Press **Dial** and start the call.
– **Show history**: Requirement: you must have already had more than one interaction with a contact. All interactions with a contact or a number are displayed.
– **Store as favorite**: see ⇨ *page 185*.
– **Send text message**: see ⇨ *page 188*.
– **Send e-mail**: see ⇨ *page 190*.

Tips

The call list can only be edited via the MMI.

Managing favorites

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

You can store the desired number for a contact as a shortcut in the favorites bar.

Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **PHONE** > **Favorites**.

Storing an existing phone number as a favorite:

► Press **Call list**.
► Press on a contact in the list until the **Options** menu appears.
► Press **Store as favorite**. **The favorite has been stored** will appear briefly.

Deleting stored favorites

► Select: **Favorites** > ✎ > *one or multiple favorites*, or **Select all** > **Delete**.
► Press **Done**.

Tips

– The names of the favorites in the MMI match the names of the contacts.
– Stored favorites on the mobile device will not appear on the MMI.
– If there are multiple mobile devices, you can create separate favorites in the MMI for each mobile device.

Opening contacts

Applies to: vehicles with telephone



Fig. 147 MMI: business card (example)

You can connect multiple mobile devices to the MMI and manage up to four private phone books in the MMI.

After connecting a mobile device, the mobile device contacts are imported into the MMI.

Requirement: a mobile device must be connected to the MMI ⇨ *page 180*. You must have at least one contact stored in your mobile device.

► Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **PHONE** > **Favorites**.

Contacts are displayed in alphabetical order and can be sorted by first or last name ⇨ *page 192,* **Sort order**.

The contacts can be opened in the **PHONE** menu and in the **NAVIGATION** menu.

Displaying a business card

To open a business card, press on a contact in the directory. The business card shows you details about a contact. ▶

If you press on a contact in the business card, there are multiple options available:

① Store as favorite ⇨ *page 185, Managing favorites*
② Options
③ Call
④ Send text message ⇨ *page 188*
⑤ Start navigation
⑥ Send e-mail ⇨ *page 190*

Business card options

Press ②.

– **Send contact***: you can select **Text message** or **E-mail** ⇨ *page 188*.
– **Add destination**: you can add a business or private address. Also see ⇨ *page 217, Contacts as navigation destinations*.
– **Read out name**[1)]: the MMI automatically creates a name tag that can be read aloud for each entry ⇨ *page 37*.
– **Save as a shortcut**: see ⇨ *page 22, Shortcuts*.

Contact options

Press on a contact in the list until the **Options** menu appears.

– **Send contact**: you can select **Text message** or **E-mail** ⇨ *page 188*.
– **Send text message**: see ⇨ *page 188*.
– **Send e-mail**: see ⇨ *page 190*.
– **Store as favorite**: see ⇨ *page 185*.
– **Save as a shortcut**: see ⇨ *page 22, Shortcuts*.

Deleting contacts

– **Deleting all contacts**: select: **Contacts** > ✎ > **Delete all**. All contacts are deleted only in the MMI.
– **Deleting imported contacts**: requirement: you must have imported at least one contact. Select: **Contacts** > ✎ > *one or more contacts*, or **Select all** > **Delete imported contacts** > **Done**. The imported contacts are deleted.

Tips

– Pay attention to any synchronization prompts on your mobile device when downloading contacts. Requests to synchronize the contacts must be confirmed so that your mobile device contacts can be loaded into the MMI.
– The contact display in the MMI depends on the mobile device being used. For more information on compatible mobile devices, visit www.audiusa.com/bluetooth or contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
– Only the contacts of the mobile device being actively used are displayed.
– The contacts from the mobile device may not be transferred in alphabetical order. If there are too many entries, contacts with different first letters may be missing in the MMI.
– If contacts are loaded from the mobile device into the MMI, the contacts on the SIM card will no longer be displayed in the MMI.
– The contacts in the local MMI memory are always visible and can be accessed by other users.
– After switching off the ignition and exiting the vehicle, the mobile device directory will be loaded when the MMI is started again if the mobile device is within range and the Bluetooth function is switched on in the mobile device and the MMI.
– Only the contacts in the local MMI memory can be deleted.

Listening to voicemail

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **PHONE** > **Voicemail**.

Requirement: there must be no voicemail number stored.

– **Entering the voicemail number**: enter the desired number. Press **OK**. ▶

1) Not available in all languages.

Requirement: a voicemail number must be stored.

– **Dialing the voicemail number**: press **Voicemail**. The call begins immediately.

Tips

– This service must be set up and activated in advance by the cell phone service provider. You can obtain more information from your cell phone service provider.
– The voicemail number depends on the cell phone service provider.

Dialing a telephone number

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

Depending on the vehicle equipment, you have the following options for dialing a phone number:

– Using text input in the MMI ⇨ *page 23, Text input*.
– Using voice operation ⇨ *page 37*.

Making an emergency call

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

Requirement: a mobile device must be connected to the MMI via Bluetooth.

▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **PHONE** > **Dial number** > *the emergency call number specific to the country (for example, 911)* > **Dial**.

WARNING

– Because your phone works with radio signals, a connection cannot be guaranteed under all circumstances. Do not rely on only your phone when it comes to essential communication (such as during a medical emergency).
– Always follow the instructions given by the emergency personnel during an emergency call and only end the call when they instruct you to do so.

Tips

Emergency numbers are not the same everywhere. Find out which emergency number is used in your current location.

Answering/ending a call

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

Applies to: vehicles with multifunction steering wheel plus

▸ To accept or end a call, press the ✆ button on the multifunction steering wheel. For operation, see ⇨ *page 13*.

You can use the following options on the MMI when there is an incoming call:

– **Answering an incoming call**: press **Answer**.
– **Declining a call**: press **Decline**.
– **Declining a call with a text message***: Requirement: the function must be enabled in the settings. Press **Decline with text**.
– **Silencing the ringtone**: press **Mute**.

Caller information: the name, phone number or **Unknown** will appear in the MMI depending on if the caller has been stored as a contact and if the phone number has been transmitted. A picture may also be displayed, depending on whether you have assigned a picture to a contact in your directory and if it was transferred to your MMI. You can find out if your mobile device supports this function from your mobile device network provider, your mobile device owner's manual, or at www.audiusa.com/bluetooth.

Tips

– The radio or media playback is muted during a phone call.
– Missed calls are displayed with a symbol in the status bar of the MMI display ② ⇨ *page 20, fig. 15*.

During a phone call

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

The following options may be possible during a call depending on the mobile device being used and the type of connection: ▶

- ▸ **End call**: end the current phone call.
- ▸ **Mute**: the other person on the call will no longer be able to hear you. You will still be able to hear the other person. To switch the microphone back on, press **Unmute**.
- ▸ **Hold/Resume**: place your current phone call on hold and answer another.
- ▸ **Send tone sequence**: press **Numbers**. You can enter tone sequences (DTMF) and send them to the other party on the call.
- ▸ **Answering an incoming call**: if there is an incoming call while another call is active, you can select **Replace** to put the existing call on hold and answer the incoming call.
- ▸ **Declining an incoming call**: press **Decline** to decline an incoming call.
- ▸ **Muting the incoming call**: press **Mute**.
- ▸ **Other call options**: press **More**.

Requirement: two phone calls must be in progress.

- ▸ **Conference call***: add a call on hold and up to five active parties (depending on the cell phone service provider) to the conference call.
- ▸ **Swap call**: alternate between two phone calls while one of the calls is on hold. Press on the respective call. Selecting **End call** will end the active phone call. A call that was placed on hold stays on hold and can be taken off hold with **Resume**.
- ▸ **Answering an incoming call**: if there is an incoming call while a call is active and another one is on hold, select **Replace** to replace the existing call with the incoming call.

Press **More**.

– **Transferring a call***: press **Transfer call to mobile device** to transfer the existing call from the MMI to your mobile device or Bluetooth® headset*.
– **Transfer audio to Rear Seat Remote***: press **Transfer audio to Rear Seat Remote** to transfer the current phone call from the MMI or Bluetooth® headset* to the Rear Seat Remote.
– **Switch to hands-free mode***: Requirement: you must have a phone call in progress on your mobile device or your Rear Seat Remote*. Press **Switch to hands-free** to transfer the call from your mobile device or Rear Seat Remote* back to the MMI.
– **Add call**: Select: **Call list/Contacts/Favorites** > *select an entry from the list* or press **Dial phone number** and enter a phone number. Then the active call will be on hold.
– **Remove conference member***: Requirement: you must have started a conference call. You can remove conference call members individually when a conference call is active. Press on the contact you would like to remove.
– **Microphone input level**: you can adjust the microphone input during a phone call using the slider.

Connected devices: see ⇨ *page 249*.

Telephone settings: see ⇨ *page 191*.

Tips

– To be notified of an incoming call during a phone call, the *call waiting* function in your mobile device must be switched on when using the **Handsfree** profile. You can obtain more information from your mobile device service provider or from your mobile device user guide.
– You can have one active call at a time.
– When leaving the vehicle, the Bluetooth connection to the mobile device will automatically disconnect. Depending on your mobile device, phone calls in progress may be automatically redirected from the MMI to your mobile device so that you can continue the call on your phone.
– The display of an incoming phone call in the MMI may still be visible for a few seconds after a call is answered or ignored depending on the mobile device in use.

Messages

Text messages

Applies to: vehicles with Audi telephone function or cell phones with Bluetooth Message Access Profile (MAP)

Depending on the mobile device being used and the mobile network contract, you may be able to receive and send text messages using the MMI. ▶

Requirement: your mobile device must be connected to the MMI via Bluetooth Message Access Profile (MAP) ⇨ *page 180*.

► Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **MESSAGES** > (✉) > **text message (SIM)*/text message (phone 1)/text message (phone 2)***.

Inboxes

– **New text message**: press on a template in the list or dictate a text message. Press **Add** and select one or more recipients from your contacts. To remove a recipient, press **Delete**. Press **Send**.
– **Inbox**: displays all received text messages.
– **Sent**: displays all sent text messages.
– **Outbox**: displays all text messages to be sent.
– **Drafts***: text messages that have not been sent yet by the mobile device are displayed on the MMI.
– **Deleted***: deleted text messages are displayed.
– **User-defined***: folders defined by the user are transferred from your mobile device.

Message options

The following options are available when you select a text message:

– **Read out*** the text message[1)].
– **Reply**: a reply can be sent to the selected message in the **Inbox**.
– To switch to the previous or the next message, press 〈 or 〉.
– **More**: options

When you press **More**, the following options are available:

– **Call**: Requirement: a number must be stored. You can call the contact.
– **Forward**: the selected text message can be forwarded to other recipients. Text can also be added before sending.
– **Navigate**: Requirement: the contact must have a navigation address stored with it in the directory. You can start route guidance.
– **Extract numbers**: Requirement: the message must contain a number. You can extract a number from a text message.
– **Send again**: Requirement: the text message must be in the **Outbox**. The selected text message can be resent.

Press on an entry in the **Inbox** until the **Options** menu appears.

– **Reply**: a reply can be sent to the selected message in the **Inbox**.
– **Forward**: the selected text message can be forwarded to other recipients. Text can also be added before sending.

Settings

Press ⚙.

– **Automatically forward text message to mobile device***[2)]: when this function is switched on, text messages will also be automatically stored on your mobile device.
– **New text message notification**: when this function is switched on, you will be notified when new text messages are received. New text messages are indicated with an envelope ✉ in the MMI status bar.
– **Text message center***: the number for the text message center of your cell phone service provider is displayed. If no number has been stored yet, you can enter the text message center number. You can obtain more information from your cell phone service provider.
– **Delete text messages from SIM card***: if the memory capacity on the SIM card is full, an envelope with a line through it is displayed in the MMI status bar. You can continue to send text messages, but you cannot receive new text messages. To delete all sent text messages from the SIM card, select **All sent messages**. To delete all read text messages from the SIM card, select **All read messages**.

Delete text message

Select: *a mailbox* > ✎ > *one or more text messages* > **Delete** > **Done**. ▶

1) Not available in all languages.
2) Function is not supported on all mobile devices.

Tips

- Please note that you may have to activate the receiving and sending of text messages depending on the SIM card being used (for example, when using a multi-SIM). You can obtain more information from your mobile device service provider or from your mobile device user guide.
- For more information on compatible mobile devices, visit www.audiusa.com/bluetooth or contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
- You need a mobile device with Message Access Profile that also supports the sending function to be able to send text messages through the MMI.
- Messages that are deleted in the MMI are also deleted in the mobile device automatically.
- Only new received messages may be displayed depending on your mobile device.

E-mail

Applies to: MMI and mobile devices with Bluetooth Message Access Profile

Depending on the type of mobile device being used, you may be able to receive and send e-mails through the MMI.

Requirement: your mobile device must be connected to the MMI via Bluetooth Message Access Profile (MAP) ⇨ *page 180*. You can find out if your mobile device supports this function by checking your mobile device owner's manual.

▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **MESSAGES** > (✉) > **e-mail (phone 1)/e-mail (phone 2)***.

Inboxes

- **New e-mail**: press on a template in the list. Press **Add** and select one or more recipients from your contacts. To remove one or all recipients, press **Delete**. Press **Send**.
- **Inbox**: displays all received e-mails. To update the list, press ⟳.
- **Sent**: displays all sent e-mails.
- **Outbox**: displays all e-mails to be sent.
- **Drafts**: e-mails that have not been sent yet are displayed.
- **Deleted**: deleted e-mails are displayed.
- **User-defined***: folders defined by the user are transferred from your mobile device.

Message options

The following options are available when you select an e-mail:

- **Read out*** the e-mail[1)].
- **Reply**: a reply can be sent to the selected e-mail in the **Inbox**.
- To switch to the previous or the next message, press 〈 or 〉.
- **More**: options

When you press **More**, the following options may be displayed depending on your mobile device and the applicable mail folder:

- **Call**: Requirement: a number must be stored. You can call the contact.
- **Forward**: the selected e-mail can be forwarded to other recipients. Text can also be added before sending.
- **Extract e-mail add.**: you can extract the e-mail address from an e-mail.
- **Navigate**: Requirement: the contact must have a navigation address stored with it in the directory. You can start route guidance.
- **Extract numbers**: Requirement: the text in the e-mail must contain a number. You can extract a number from an e-mail.
- **Show all recipients***: you can display the recipients of an e-mail.
- **Show attachmts.***: you can display a list of attachments to an e-mail.
- **Send again**: the selected e-mail in the **Outbox** and **Sent** mailboxes can be sent again.

Press on an entry in the **Inbox** until the **Options** menu appears.

- **Reply**: a reply can be sent to the selected e-mail. ▶

1) Not available in all languages.

– **Reply all**: a reply can be sent for the selected e-mail and it will be sent to all of the entered recipients.
– **Forward**: the selected e-mail can be forwarded to different recipients.

Settings

Press ⚙.

– **New e-mail notification**: when this function is switched on, you will be notified when new e-mails are received. New e-mails are indicated with an envelope ✉ in the MMI status bar.

Deleting e-mails

Select: *a mailbox* > ✎ > *one or more e-mails* > **Delete** > (**Done**).

Note

Always follow the information found in ⇨ ⓘ *in Using a Wi-Fi hotspot on page 199*.

Tips

For more information on compatible mobile devices, visit www.audiusa.com/bluetooth or contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Settings

Phone settings

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **PHONE** > ⚙.

Switching between two mobile devices

Requirement: phone 1 and phone 2 must be connected to the MMI.

Switch telephones: the device name of your active mobile device is displayed. You can switch the phone by pressing the button.

Private mode: call lists only in Rear Seat Remote*

Applies to: MMI with Rear Seat Remote

To allow contacts and call details to only be displayed on the Rear Seat Remote display, activate private mode.

Declining a call with a text message*

When this function is switched on, you can decline an incoming call with a text message.

Call options*

The following options may be available depending on the mobile device:

– **Call forwarding**: you can switch the forwarding of incoming calls to your voicemail or to another phone number on and off. You can check if the function is activated or deactivated with **Status**.
– **Call waiting**: you will be alerted to an incoming call during a phone call when the function is switched on. You can check if the function is activated or deactivated with **Status**.
– **Send own number**: sending your phone number with an outgoing call can be switched on and off. With the **Net.-depen.** setting, the setting listed in the contract with the cell phone service provider is used. The settings only apply to the **PHONE** menu in the MMI. Please note that the settings on your mobile device will apply after disconnecting the Bluetooth connection. You can determine which setting is active with **Status**.

Ringtone and volume settings

– **Ringtone and message volume**: you can adjust the volume of the selected ringtone and the notification volume when a message is received by moving the position of the slider.
– **Ringtone***: available ringtones are played using the **Ringtone** function. Press on an entry in the list.
– **Microphone input level**: you can adjust the microphone input level using the slider.

Turn on car phone or data module

Applies to: vehicles with car phone/data module

When this function is switched on, you can use the car phone or data module.

As long as the car phone was **not** turned off separately the last time it was used, it will turn on automatically when the ignition is switched on.

Edit voicemail number

You can change your voicemail number. ▶

Enable VoLTE

When this function is switched on, Voice over LTE* will be supported.

Network settings

– **Login to mobile phone network**: select to log into your cell phone service provider network automatically or manually.
– **Network selection**: Requirement: the data module must be switched on and **Login to mobile phone network** must be set to **Manual**. Select a network manually from the list of available networks at the present location.

Car phone serial number (IMEI):

Applies to: vehicles with car phone

The serial number (IMEI) of your car phone is displayed.

Tips

– Several mobile devices can be paired with the MMI, but only two* mobile devices can be actively connected.
– To delete all paired Bluetooth devices, the **Bluetooth** function can be reset to the factory default settings ⇨ *page 249*.

Directory settings

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **PHONE** > **Contacts** > ⚙.

Switching between two mobile devices

Requirement: telephone 1 and telephone 2 must be connected.

Switch telephones: the device name of your active mobile device is displayed. You can switch the phone by pressing the button.

The directory for the selected phone will be displayed.

Hide grayed-out contacts

When this function is switched on, contacts that have no phone numbers stored for them will be hidden.

Sort order

You can sort the contacts in alphabetical order according to **Last name, First name** or **First name Last name**.

Download contacts

Requirement: a mobile device must be connected to the MMI.

To update the contacts in the MMI, you can manually download your mobile device contacts. Depending on the mobile device, you may need to disconnect and reconnect the Bluetooth connection to update the contacts.

Memory capacity

The MMI Memory capacity is displayed.

You can manage up to 23,000 contacts in the MMI. You can also download up to 5,000 contacts from maximum four mobile devices. You can also import up to 3,000 contacts from a storage medium.

Importing and exporting contacts

Requirement: an SD card must be in the SD card reader* ⇨ *page 232* or a USB storage device must be connected to the Audi music interface ⇨ *page 235*.

Contacts in vCard format (.vcf) can be imported or exported from the MMI.

– **Importing contacts from a storage medium**: Select: **Import contacts** > **Search for import data** > **SD card 1** or **USB device 1/USB device 2** > *desired contacts* or **Select all contacts** > **Start import**.
– **Exporting contacts to a storage device**: Requirement: Only previously imported contacts can be exported. Select: **Export contacts** > **Find source for exporting** > **SD card 1** or **USB device 1/USB device 2** > *desired contacts* or **Select all contacts** > **Start export**.

Tips

– Always read and follow the chapter on Audi connect ⇨ *page 198*.
– For additional information on the myAudi account, visit www.audiusa.com/myaudi. ▶

– The imported contacts are stored in the local MMI memory.
– Never save important data on memory cards or USB storage devices. Audi is not responsible for damaged or lost files and media.
– Contacts that were downloaded from a mobile device cannot be exported.
– There should be no other files or folders on the storage medium containing the contacts to be imported.
– Apple devices and MTP devices (such as smartphones) are not recognized as USB storage devices.

Mobile phone network settings

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **Connection settings** > **Mobile phone network**.

Switching the car phone or data module on*

Applies to: vehicles with car phone/data module

See ⇨ *page 191*.

Instrument cluster

Telephone

Applies to: vehicles with multifunction steering wheel and telephone

In the instrument cluster display, you can control the MMI functions with the multifunction steering wheel. For operation, see ⇨ *page 13* and ⇨ *page 39, Additional function buttons*.

Requirement: the Telephone tab must be selected in the instrument cluster.

▸ Press the ☰ button. See also ⑥ ⇨ *page 13, fig. 5*.

Possible options:

– **Call list**: Requirement: the call list must contain a phone number.
– **Favorites**: Requirement: favorites must be stored in the MMI.
– **Switch telephones**: Requirement: two cell phones must be connected to the MMI.
– **Back to call**: Requirement: there must be a call in progress.

Tips

– The call list can only be edited via the MMI.
– Depending on the selected function, it may be necessary to use the MMI.

Rear Seat Remote

Pairing a mobile device

Applies to: vehicles with Rear Seat Remote and Audi phone box

You can make calls with the exterior antenna* on the vehicle using the Rear Seat Remote. Using the external antenna* helps when there is a low signal and also provides better reception quality.

When making phone calls, you can leave the Rear Seat Remote in the holder or remove it. If you hold the Rear Seat Remote in your hand, the screen will automatically switch to the **Phone** menu when there is an active phone call. Pay attention to the positioning of the screen so that the other person on the call can hear you.

You can use the phone functions with the Rear Seat Remote. You can adjust settings in the MMI, for example, the Bluetooth settings for connecting with the mobile device.

Requirement

The Bluetooth function and visibility of the MMI and mobile device must be switched on.

The Bluetooth settings must be open on your mobile device during the connection setup.

The mobile device that will be connected must not be connected to any other Bluetooth device.

Connecting a mobile device

▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **PHONE** > **Connect** > ⊕.
▸ In the **Connected devices** menu, press on the desired mobile device in the list.
▸ A PIN for a secure Bluetooth connection will be generated.
▸ Confirm the PIN on your mobile device, or ▶

- ▸ Enter the PIN for connecting on your cell phone. The time allowed for entering the PIN is limited to approximately 30 seconds.
- ▸ If you would like to prevent the MMI from accessing your call list and contacts, enable **Private mode** ⇨ *page 196* / ⇨ *page 191*.
- ▸ Enter your SIM card PIN in the Rear Seat Remote [1].
- ▸ Pay attention to any additional system prompts displayed on your mobile device or the Rear Seat Remote, for example if the PIN should be saved for future use.

Connecting another mobile device

Requirement: a connected mobile device must be displayed on the Rear Seat Remote.

- ▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **PHONE** > > **Connect**.

Switching between two mobile devices

Requirement: two connected mobile devices must be displayed on the Rear Seat Remote.

- ▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **PHONE** > .

The device name of your active mobile device will be displayed.

WARNING

Follow the safety precautions ⇨ *page 24, Rear Seat Remote*.

Using the telephone

Applies to: vehicles with Rear Seat Remote and telephone

The following possible phone functions will be available:

– Search
– Call list ⇨ *page 184*
– Contacts ⇨ *page 195*
– Presets ⇨ *page 185*
– Voicemail ⇨ *page 186*
– Select number ⇨ *page 187*

Possible functions during an incoming call:

– **Answering an incoming call**: press **Answer**.
– **Declining a call**: press **Decline**.
– **Declining a call with a text message***: press .
– **Silencing the ringtone**: press **Mute**.

Requirement: there must be a call in progress.

The following options may be possible during a call depending on the mobile device being used and the type of connection:

– **End call**: you can end a phone call.
– **Mute**: the other person on the call will no longer be able to hear you. You will still be able to hear the other person. To switch the microphone back on, press **Unmute**.
– **Hold/Resume**: you can place the existing call on hold and resume it again.
– **Answering an incoming call**: if there is an incoming call while another call is active, you can select **Replace** to put the existing call on hold and answer the incoming call.
– **Declining an incoming call**: press **Decline** to decline an incoming call.
– **Send tone sequence**: press **Numbers**. You can enter tone sequences (DTMF) and send them to the other party on the call.

Press **More**.

– Possible options depending on whether you are holding the Rear Seat Remote or it is in the holder:
– **Transfer call***: press **Transfer audio to MMI** or **Transfer call to mobile device**.
– **Hands-free***: requirement: a call must be in progress on your mobile device, headset, or the MMI. Press **Hands-free** to transfer the call back to the Rear Seat Remote.
– **Adding an additional call**: press **Additional call** Select: **Search** > **Call list/Contacts/Favorites** > *select an entry from the list*, or press **Dial phone number** and enter a phone number. Then the active call will be on hold. ▶

1) Not available in all countries. Applies to mobile devices with Bluetooth SIM Access Profile in conjunction with Audi connect Infotainment* and Audi phone box*.

– **Conference call***: you can add a call on hold and up to five active parties (depending on the cell phone service provider) to the conference call.

– **Remove conference member***: Requirement: you must have started a conference call. You can remove conference call members individually when a conference call is active. Press on the contact you would like to remove.

Call list

Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **PHONE** > **Call list**.

– **Displaying a business card**: press ⓘ. All interactions with a contact or a number and the details about a contact will be displayed.

Press and hold a number in the call list until the **Options** menu appears.

– **Calling**: press the desired number.
– **Edit no.**: edit the phone number.

Contacts

Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **PHONE** > **Favorites**.

– **Search**: press 🔍.
– **Speakers**: press 🔊.
– **Displaying a business card**: the business card shows you details about a contact. Press on a contact in the list.

Favorites

Requirement: favorites must be created in the MMI.

You can display the favorites.

Tips

– Follow the safety precautions ⇨ *page 24, Rear Seat Remote*.
– The call list and favorites can only be edited through the MMI.
– You can have one active call at a time.
– Favorites stored in the MMI may be displayed in the Rear Seat Remote depending on your mobile device.

– Missed calls are indicated by a number on the call list. After the call list has been opened, the display of missed calls disappears.

Connected devices

Applies to: vehicles with Rear Seat Remote and telephone



Fig. 148 Rear Seat Remote: connected devices

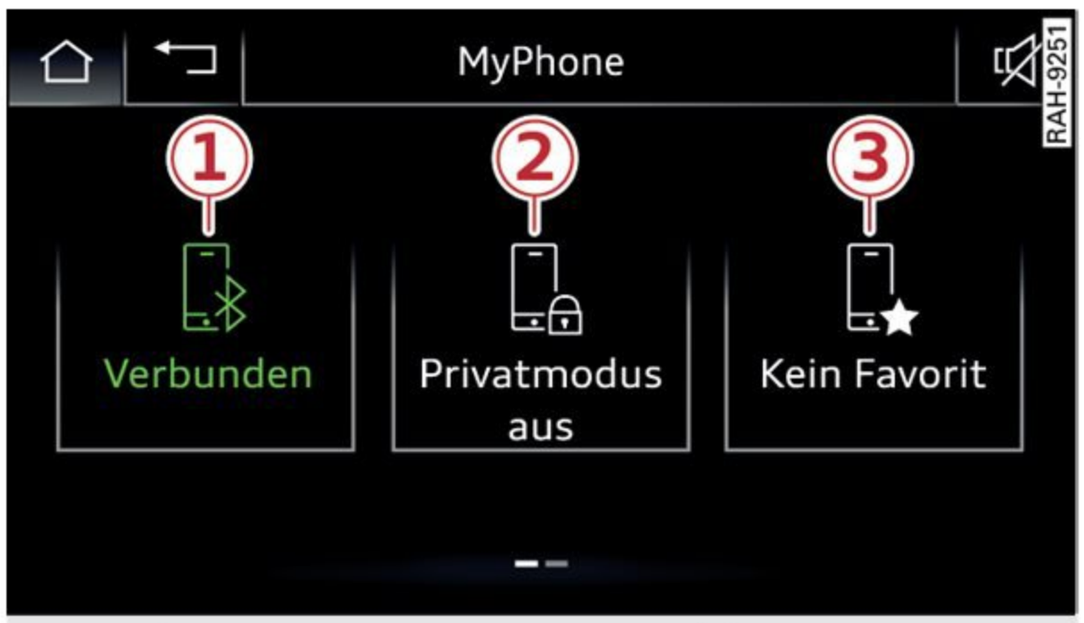


Fig. 149 Rear Seat Remote: connected devices: options

You can connect two mobile devices to the MMI and use them to make phone calls with the Rear Seat Remote.

▸ Press **DEVICES** on the home screen.

This possible selection is show in the list of all devices that are already connected ⇨ *fig. 148*:

① Device names
② Mobile device connected via SAP[1)]
③ SIM card in SIM card reader
④ Mobile device via handsfree profile

Press a mobile device in the list of devices already connected. The **status** is displayed in the respective category ⇨ *fig. 149*:

① **Connected/Not connected** ▶

1) SIM Access Profile

② **Private mode on/Private mode off**

③ **Favorite/Not a favorite**

Connecting a mobile device

Requirement:

– The Bluetooth settings must be open on your mobile device during the connection setup.
– The Bluetooth function and visibility of the MMI and mobile device must be switched on.
– The mobile device that will be connected must not be connected to any other Bluetooth device.
– The Rear Seat Remote is not connected to a mobile device via the MMI.

Your mobile device must not appear in the list of devices already connected.

– **New connection**: press ⊕. Search for and connect a mobile device.

If your mobile device appears in the list of devices already connected.

– Press on a Bluetooth device that is not connected, for example ④ ⇨ *fig. 148*.
– Press **Not connected**.

Disconnecting a mobile device

– Press on a connected Bluetooth device, for example ① ⇨ *fig. 148*.
– Press **Connected** ① ⇨ *fig. 149*. The selected Bluetooth device is disconnected.

Deleting a mobile device

– Press on a Bluetooth device ⇨ *fig. 148*.
– Press **Delete**.

Activating private mode

– Press on a connected Bluetooth device, for example ① ⇨ *fig. 148*.
– If you would like to deny MMI access to information such as your call list and contacts, press **Private mode off** ② ⇨ *fig. 149*. The private mode will be activated.

Activating the car phone*

– Press on a connected Bluetooth device, for example ① ⇨ *fig. 148*.
– To use the car phone, press **Car phone off**.

Storing a mobile device as a favorite

– Press on a connected Bluetooth device ⇨ *fig. 148*.
– To set a Bluetooth device as a favorite, press **Not a favorite** ③ ⇨ *fig. 149*.

Troubleshooting

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

Problem	Solution
Pairing the mobile device to the MMI failed.	Make sure the requirements for connecting a cell phone have been met ⇨ *page 180*, or make sure you did not accidentally decline the PIN for establishing a connection on your cell phone. If necessary, repeat the pairing process ⇨ *page 180*.
After pairing, **not all contacts or no contacts** have been loaded into the MMI.	Avoid using special characters in names. Avoid using contact groups on your cell phone. Check for prompts on your mobile device when connecting via Bluetooth.
	Applies to: vehicles with Rear Seat Remote: Check if private mode is active ⇨ *page 196*.

Problem	Solution
Certain **telephone functions** are grayed out or not available.	The telephone functions depend on the mobile device service provider and the mobile device you are using. You can obtain more information from your mobile device service provider, in your mobile device user guide, or online at www.audiusa.com/bluetooth.
Some **telephone functions** may be switched off or not available, even though the mobile device is supported.	On corporate phones, some Bluetooth settings may not be compatible or the mobile device Bluetooth function may be deactivated. You can obtain more information from your system administrator.
Applies to: vehicles with Audi phone box: Wireless charging of your mobile device is not working or has been interrupted.	Check if wireless charging with the Audi phone box is switched on. Check if your mobile device is Qi-capable. Check if your mobile device is positioned correctly in the Audi phone box ⇨ *page 182* and *no* other objects are between them.
The **MESSAGES** menu is not available.	Check if the *Show messages* option is on your mobile device and it is enabled.

Audi connect

Introduction

Depending on the country and the vehicle equipment, the following functions may be available:

– Audi connect Infotainment
– Audi connect vehicle control

Tips

– The availability of services depends on the subscription.
– AUDI AG provides access to services from third party providers. Permanent availability cannot be guaranteed, because that depends on the third party provider.
– You can also find more information on Audi connect online at www.audiusa.com.

Audi connect Infotainment

Description

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect Infotainment

With Audi connect Infotainment services, online information is transmitted directly to the vehicle.

An Internet connection is required to use Audi connect Infotainment. Depending on the country and the vehicle equipment, the following options may be available:

– Embedded SIM card

WARNING

To reduce the risk of an accident, only use Audi connect Infotainment services when road and traffic conditions permit. Always read and follow the notes in ⇨ *page 19, Traffic safety information*.

Tips

– Use of the LTE* mobile network standard is not available in every country. Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility or your cell phone service provider for additional information.
– Audi connect Infotainment services are only available within the cell phone network coverage from your cell phone service provider.
– Availability, scope, providers, screen display, and costs of services may vary depending on the country, model, model year, end device and rates.

Embedded SIM card

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect Infotainment and an embedded SIM card

The data connection for Audi connect Infotainment services is made through an embedded SIM card (eSIM card) that is installed in the vehicle. You can use the Audi connect Infotainment services immediately.

Note

– The connection costs for Audi connect Infotainment services are included in the price of Audi connect Infotainment. Please note that charges may apply when using certain services. For example, this applies to Internet radio/podcasts or for services that use the Wi-Fi hotspot, such as online media sources. Depending on the country, data plans may need to be purchased for these services ⇨ *page 203*. For additional information, see www.audiusa.com/myaudi.
– In certain situations, the Wi-Fi hotspot data connection may be established as a replacement for the SIM card on your Wi-Fi device. This feature depends on the configuration of your Wi-Fi device and operating system. This could result in fees depending on your cell phone service provider, especially if you are using this feature while abroad. A flat rate data plan is strongly recommended. For more information, contact your cell phone service provider or refer to the owner's manual for your Wi-Fi device.

Using a Wi-Fi hotspot

Applies to: vehicles with Wi-Fi hotspot

You can connect up to eight Wi-Fi devices (such as smartphones) with the MMI Wi-Fi hotspot. If the MMI is connected to the Internet ▶

⇨ *page 198*, the connected Wi-Fi devices can also use the MMI's Internet connection.

Requirement: the ignition must be switched on.

- ▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **Connection settings** > **Wi-Fi** Switch on the Wi-Fi hotspot.
- ▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **Connection settings** > **Wi-Fi** > **Wi-Fi hotspot settings** The access data for the Wi-Fi hotspot is displayed. Switch on the visibility of the Wi-Fi hotspot if necessary.
- ▸ Switch the Wi-Fi function on in your mobile device and connect it to the MMI Wi-Fi hotspot using the authentication data that is shown.
- ▸ Follow any additional system prompts on your Wi-Fi device if necessary.

Your device is successfully connected with the MMI's Wi-Fi hotspot.

WARNING

- It is only safe to use tablets, laptops, mobile devices and other similar devices when the vehicle is stationary because, like all loose objects, they could be thrown around the inside of the vehicle in a crash and cause serious injuries. Store these types of devices securely while driving.
- To reduce the risk of an accident, use the Audi connect Infotainment services with a Wi-Fi hotspot only in the rear seat when the vehicle is in motion, or only when the vehicle is stationary.
- Do not use any wireless devices on the front seats within range of the airbags while driving. Also read the warnings in the chapter ⇨ *page 87, Airbag system*.
- As the driver, do not allow usage of the Wi-Fi hotspot to distract you from driving, as this could increase the risk of an accident.

Note

- In certain situations, the Wi-Fi hotspot data connection may be established as a replacement for the SIM card on your Wi-Fi device. This feature depends on the configuration of your Wi-Fi device and operating system.
- This could result in fees depending on your cell phone service provider, especially if you are using this feature while abroad. A flat rate data plan is strongly recommended. For more information, contact your cell phone service provider or refer to the owner's manual for your Wi-Fi device.
- Applies to: embedded SIM card usage: The connection costs for Audi connect Infotainment services are included in the price of Audi connect Infotainment. Please note that charges may apply when using certain services. For example, this applies to Internet radio/podcasts or for services that use the Wi-Fi hotspot, such as online media sources. Depending on the country, data plans may need to be purchased for these services ⇨ *page 203*. For additional information, see www.audiusa.com/myaudi.
- You are responsible for all precautions taken for data protection, anti-virus protection, and protection against loss of data on mobile devices that are used to access the Internet through the Wi-Fi hotspot.

Audi connect Infotainment services

Configuration

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect Infotainment

Some Audi connect Infotainment services must be configured through your personal myAudi account before using them for the first time ⇨ *page 40*.

Tips

- For some Audi connect Infotainment services, you may also have to enter your myAudi access information when accessing services in the MMI.
- Some Audi connect Infotainment services must be activated at www.audiusa.com/myaudi.
- Regardless of the key user and additional users, you can only connect one myAudi account to your vehicle.
- For detailed information on configuration, visit www.audiusa.com/myaudi.

Services

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect Infotainment

Depending on the country and the vehicle equipment, the following services may be available:

Weather

Applies to: MMI

▸ Press **WEATHER** on the home screen.

Editing settings: Select: **WEATHER** > ⊞.

Adding a location: select: **In a new city** > *enter the desired location*.

▸ To permanently set weather for a location, press on *a location*.

▸ To always show the weather based on the vehicle position, press on the crosshairs.

Requirement: route guidance must be active.

▸ To show the weather at the destination, press on 🏁.

Removing a location: select: ✎ > *one or more locations* or **Select all** > **Delete**.

News

▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **NEWS**.

If you logged in to myAudi in your vehicle ⇨ *page 40*, personalized newsfeeds can be displayed.

Twitter

Requirement: you must have connected your vehicle with myAudi ⇨ *page 40*. You must have connected your myAudi account with Twitter.

You can only connect one Twitter account with your myAudi account. Not all settings can be adjusted in the MMI. Some can only be adjusted through the Twitter website.

▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **NEWS** > ⊞. Press on a Twitter entry in the list.

Calendar

Requirement: the myAudi app must be installed and open on your mobile device. Access to your calendar must be enabled on your mobile device.

You must be logged into the myAudi app with your myAudi login data and you must have selected your vehicle. The Wi-Fi function on your mobile device and the MMI must be enabled and your mobile device must be paired to the MMI Wi-Fi hotspot ⇨ *page 198*.

You can display the your mobile device calendar on the MMI.

▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **CALENDAR**.

WARNING

– It is only safe to use tablets, laptops, mobile devices and other similar devices when the vehicle is stationary because, like all loose objects, they could be thrown around the inside of the vehicle in a crash and cause serious injuries. Store these types of devices securely while driving.

– Do not use any wireless devices on the front seats within range of the airbags while driving. Also read the warnings in the chapter ⇨ *page 87, Airbag system*.

Note

Read the information about Audi connect, and be sure to note the connectivity costs section ⇨ ⓘ *in Using a Wi-Fi hotspot on page 199*.

Audi connect vehicle control services

Description

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect vehicle control

With Audi connect vehicle control services [1], you can utilize various services using the myAudi app or online at www.audiusa.com/myaudi.

Tips

– Accessing specific data or controlling functions remotely depends on the charge level of the vehicle battery. Therefore, these functions only have limited availability after switching off the ignition. ▶

1) Depends on the country and equipment.

– An eSIM card establishes the Internet connection for Audi connect vehicle control services. The costs for this are included in the price of Audi connect vehicle control services. The cell phone network, for example, must be available to use these services.

Setup

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect vehicle control

▸ Register at www.audiusa.com/myaudi.
▸ Set the key user ⇨ *page 41*.
▸ Install the myAudi app on your mobile device and log in with your login information.

Tips

It may also be necessary to enter your 4-digit myAudi PIN when accessing some Audi connect vehicle control services.

Services

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect vehicle control

Depending on the country and the vehicle equipment, the following services may be available:

Remote locking and unlocking

Requirement: the vehicle must be parked and the ignition must be switched off.

This service allows you to unlock or lock your vehicle.

Vehicle status report

This service transfers driver information system data to a server. Depending on the vehicle equipment, certain data may be accessed, such as the remaining range or mileage. The values may differ from the values displayed in the vehicle.

Car Finder

This service transmits the parking location to a server when the ignition is switched off. The vehicle location, your location, or the route to your vehicle can be displayed. The new parking location cannot be determined with this service if the vehicle is moved after shutting the vehicle off and without switching the ignition on and off again, for example if the vehicle is towed or stolen.

Online Audi service request

Requirement: the service must be activated online at www.audiusa.com/myaudi and an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi service facility must be selected.

This service transmits service-relevant data to your selected authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi service facility. They will contact you before your next service appointment.

Stolen Vehicle Locator

This service assists you in locating your vehicle if it is stolen.

– Contact the police. You receive a Case ID.
– Call the service hotline and give your Case ID.

The service hotline will forward the established data to the police. You receive the Audi Service hotline number when you purchase your vehicle.

Geofencing Alert

Requirement: a key user must be set in the vehicle ⇨ *page 41*.

This service allows you to set permitted and forbidden zones for your vehicle as well as set time limits for these zones. If your vehicle leaves a permitted zone or enters a forbidden zone, you will be notified with a push notification and/or an e-mail.

Speed Alert

Requirement: a key user must be set in the vehicle ⇨ *page 41*.

You can set up to two speed limits for your vehicle using this service. If your vehicle exceeds a set speed limit, you will be notified with a push notification and/or e-mail.

Valet Alert

Requirement: a key user must be set in the vehicle ⇨ *page 201*.

If you give your vehicle to a parking service, you can set a zone and a speed limit using the myAudi app. If the vehicle leaves the zone or exceeds ▶

the speed limit, you will be notified with a push notification and/or e-mail.

WARNING

Do not ignore messages and warning or indicator lights that turn on in the vehicle because of the information in the vehicle status report. This could lead to break downs in on the road, accidents and serious injuries.

Tips

For some services, you can select if you would like to be notified with a push notification and/or an e-mail.

Settings

Cell phone network

▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **Connection settings** > **Mobile phone network**.

Depending on the country, vehicle equipment, and connection type, the following functions may be available:

Data connection settings

Using the **Data connection settings** menu, you can set when the system should connect to the Internet. The Internet connection disconnects automatically once the requested Audi connect Infotainment service no longer requires any data.

– **Data roaming**: data roaming is switched off at the factory. To use a data connection outside of the country, data roaming must be switched on. The setting is stored for the current SIM card or the mobile device that is currently connected.
– **Allow MMI online services**: when this function is switched on, a data connection is automatically established in order to use Audi connect Infotainment services.
– **Allow Audi tablet online services**: when this function is switched on, a data connection is automatically established in order to use Audi connect Infotainment services on the Audi tablet.
– **Allow Wi-Fi devices**: when this function is switched on, you can allow or deny Internet connections.

Access point

The connection is configured automatically based on the SIM card being used. The following values can be changed. Press Apply settings to store the values. You can obtain more information from your cell phone service provider.

– **Access Point Name (APN)**: the access point depends on the cell phone service provider and is assigned automatically.
– **User name**: your cell phone service provider assigns the user name for your online profile.
– **Password**: your cell phone service provider assigns the password for your online profile.
– **Apply settings:**: saves the changed settings.
– **Reset configuration**: resets the connection settings.

Data usage counter

Your current data usage is displayed.

– **Reset counter**: you can reset your usage statistics to zero.
– **Warning limit**: you can set a warning limit for your data usage (GB/MB).

WARNING

Always follow the information found in ⇨ ⚠ *in Using a Wi-Fi hotspot on page 199*.

Note

Always follow the information found in ⇨ ⓘ *in Using a Wi-Fi hotspot on page 199*.

Tips

For more information on roaming charges, contact your cell phone service provider.

Wi-Fi settings

Applies to: vehicles with Wi-Fi hotspot

Requirement: the ignition must be switched on.

▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **Connection settings** > **Wi-Fi** ▶

Depending on the country and the vehicle equipment, the following functions may be available:

Wi-Fi

When the function is switched on, the MMI's Wi-Fi hotspot is active and Wi-Fi devices can be connected to the hotspot.

Wi-Fi hotspot settings

The Wi-Fi connection between the MMI and your Wi-Fi device is encrypted. You can change the following information if needed.

- **Access point (SSID)**: name of the Wi-Fi hotspot.
- **Password**: a random password was set at the factory in the MMI. The password can be changed. The encryption method requires a password to be at least eight characters long. Choose a secure password.
- **Visible to others**: you can switch the visibility of the Wi-Fi hotspot on or off.

WARNING

Always follow the information found in ⇨ ⚠ *in Using a Wi-Fi hotspot on page 199*.

Note

Read the information about Audi connect, and be sure to note the connectivity costs section ⇨ ⓘ *in Using a Wi-Fi hotspot on page 199*.

Data plans[1)]

Applies to: vehicles with data plans

Requirement: you must have created a myAudi account at www.audiusa.com/myaudi. Your vehicle must be registered in your myAudi account.

You can purchase data plans at www.audiusa.com/myaudi.

WARNING

- As the driver, do not allow usage of the Wi-Fi hotspot to distract you from driving, as this could increase the risk of an accident.
- It is only safe to use tablets, laptops, mobile devices, and other similar devices when the vehicle is stationary because, like all loose objects, they could be thrown around the inside of the vehicle in a crash and cause serious injuries. Store these types of devices securely while driving.
- Do not use any wireless devices on the front seats within range of the airbags while driving. Also read the warnings in the chapter ⇨ *page 87*.

Note

Read the information about Audi connect, and be sure to note the connectivity costs section ⇨ ⓘ *in Using a Wi-Fi hotspot on page 199*.

Tips

If driving out of the country, applicable data plans must be purchased.

Troubleshooting

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect Infotainment

The information that follows lists some troubleshooting options. They depend on the equipment. ▶

1) Not available in every market.

Problem	Solution
Audi connect Infotainment services: individual Audi connect Infotainment services are grayed out or not available.	Some Audi connect Infotainment services must be activated or configured through your personal myAudi account before using them for the first time. You can find detailed information online at www.audiusa.com/myaudi.
Wi-Fi hotspot: it is not possible to connect through Wi-Fi.	Check if Wi-Fi is activated in the MMI ⇨ *page 202*. Delete all existing Wi-Fi connections on your mobile device and restart it.

Emergency call

Overview

Applies to: vehicles with emergency call function

An emergency call is a combination of data transmission and a phone call. The data transmission from your vehicle forwards important information, such as the vehicle and position data, to the emergency call center.

Depending on the country and the vehicle equipment, the following functions may be available:

With the **emergency call**, you can call for help in dangerous situations as quickly as possible. Use this function when emergency help is needed ⇨ *page 205*.

– eCall system through a third-party provider (TPS emergency call)

With **online roadside assistance**, you can request assistance if there is a breakdown or a minor accident ⇨ *page 206*.

Tips

You can find what data will be transferred at www.audiusa.com.

Emergency call

Operation

Applies to: vehicles with emergency call function

The services are provided through a SIM card installed in the vehicle. Services are provided assuming that the cell phone network required for the installed SIM card is functioning and available for use. The available services set by Audi AG are only available within the cell phone network coverage area for the cell phone service provider selected by Audi AG.

Tips

– This service cannot be deactivated in the Infotainment system settings.
– The availability of the TPS emergency call is limited to certain times.
– The costs for call and data connections for TPS emergency calls is included in the price of the services.

Functions

Applies to: vehicles with emergency call function

A TPS emergency call can be made manually or automatically ⇨ *page 205*.

Making an emergency call

Applies to: vehicles with emergency call function



Fig. 150 Front headliner: cover for the emergency call button

Requirement: the LED ② must be green.

Manual emergency call

Requirement: the ignition must be switched on.

- ▸ Tap the cover ① to open it.
- ▸ Press and hold the emergency call button until the LED ② blinks green. The emergency call will be made.
- ▸ If the emergency call button is pressed by mistake, then press it again immediately and hold it until the LED stays green. The emergency call will be canceled.

Automatic emergency call

The vehicle electrical system initiates an automatic emergency call under certain circumstances, for example if an airbag deploys. The LED in the emergency call button ② blinks green. The emergency call will be made. It cannot be canceled.

LED status

– **Green** – the emergency call function is available. ▶

– **Red** – there is a malfunction in the emergency call function. Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. Note the messages about the availability of the emergency function ⇨ *page 206*.
– **Off** – the emergency call function is not available, perhaps because no network is available.

Tips

If the emergency call is canceled due to a poor connection, then the system automatically tries to connect again.

Messages

Applies to: vehicles with emergency call function

SOS Emergency call function: malfunction! Restricted functionality. Please contact Service

If this indicator light turns on and this message appears, the emergency call function is restricted. For example, you cannot call the emergency call center, but data may still be transmitted under certain circumstances. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

SOS Emergency call function: malfunction! Function unavailable. Please contact Service

If this indicator light turns on and this message appears, you cannot make an emergency call. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Online roadside assistance

Description

Applies to: vehicles with online roadside assistance

An online roadside assistance call [1] is a combination of data transmission and a phone call. The data transmission from your vehicle forwards important information to the Audi service center, such as the vehicle and position data.

Calling online roadside assistance

Applies to: vehicles with online roadside assistance



Fig. 151 Front headliner: online roadside assistance button

Calling online roadside assistance

- Press the button (3). The LED in the button turns red. The online roadside assistance call will be made.
- If you press the button (3) by mistake, then press it again. Or
- Applies to: MMI:Press **Cancel** or **End call**.

Audi incident assistance

A minor accident may be detected by the vehicle electrical system. You are able to select between online roadside assistance and an emergency call in the MMI.

Tips

If the roadside assistance call is canceled due to a poor connection, then the call must be made again.

[1] The availability of the services offered depends on the country and may change in the future.

Navigation

Opening navigation

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

The navigation system directs you to your destination, around traffic incidents, and on alternative routes, if desired.

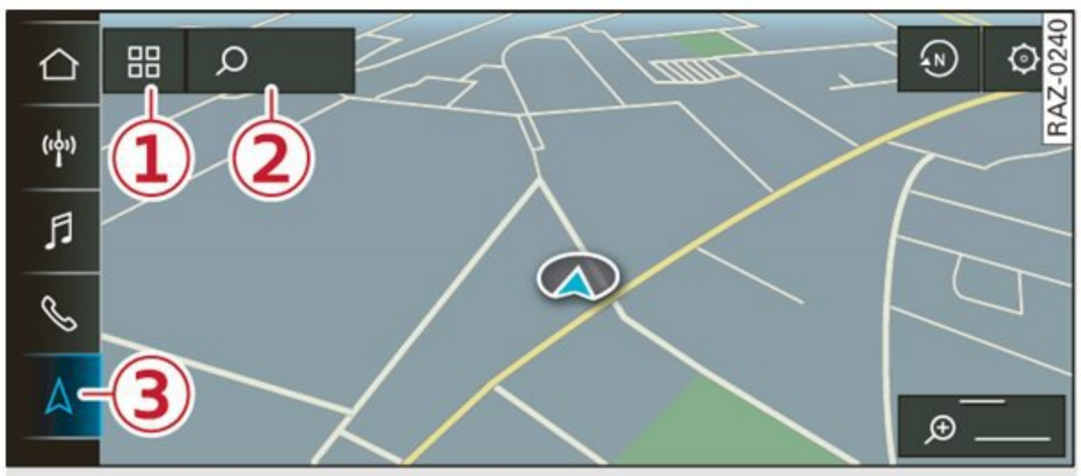


Fig. 152 Upper display: standard map: route guidance is not started

Opening navigation

▸ Applies to: MMI: Press **NAVIGATION** on the home screen.

After accessing the navigation for the first time, the map is displayed.

Opening navigation using the multifunction steering wheel

▸ Applies to: multifunction steering wheel: Select the Navigation tab in the instrument cluster.
▸ To display navigation when route guidance has started, select in the instrument cluster: the ☰ button > **Map**.

Accessing navigation through the Audi tablet

Applies to: Audi tablet

You can search for destinations on the Audi tablet and send them to the MMI.

Requirement: the Audi tablet must be connected to the MMI ⇨ *page 33, Connecting to the MMI*.

▸ Press **MAP** on the home screen.

The map operation and the navigation functions available on the Audi tablet match are very similar to operating the MMI ⇨ *page 214, Map operation*.

Sending a destination to the MMI

Applies to: Audi tablet

Requirement: you must be able to receive navigation destinations on the MMI ⇨ *page 34, Settings*.

▸ Press 🔍.
▸ Enter one or more search terms into the input field.
▸ Press on the desired destination in the results list.
▸ Press **Send destination to MMI**.

Receiving a destination on the MMI

Applies to: vehicles with Audi tablet

Requirement: the **Received destination** notification must be displayed. See ⇨ *page 21, Notification center*.

▸ **Navigating to the received destination**: press 🏁 in the notification on the upper display. Route guidance will start immediately.
▸ **Displaying details**: press the address in the notification on the upper display. The Details menu will be displayed ⇨ *page 212*.

The following functions are available in the MMI:

① Open the **Select destination** menu ⇨ *page 208, fig. 153*.
② Open intelligent search directly ⇨ *page 209*.
③ **Switch between the map and the menu**: press △ repeatedly until the desired function is displayed.

You can find additional information about the map update at ⇨ *page 214, Map operation*.

⚠ WARNING

– The demands of traffic require your full attention. Always read the chapter ⇨ *page 19, Traffic safety information*.
– The route calculated by the navigation system is a driving recommendation. Follow the traffic regulations that are applicable in the country where you are operating the vehicle. In the event that the driving directions contradict traffic regulations, always follow the traffic regulations applicable in the country where you are operating the vehicle to reduce the risk of an accident.

– Applies to: Audi tablet: Note the safety precautions ⇨ *page 28, Rear Seat Entertainment (Audi tablet)*.

Note

Read the information about Audi connect, and be sure to note the connectivity costs section ⇨ *in Using a Wi-Fi hotspot on page 199*.

Tips

– Snow and obstructions on the GPS antenna or trees and large buildings can impair satellite reception and affect the system's ability to determine the vehicle position. Several deactivated or malfunctioning satellites can also interrupt GPS reception and affect the system's ability to determine the vehicle position.
– Because street names sometimes change, the names stored in the MMI may in rare cases differ from the actual street name.
– Applies to: multifunction steering wheel: Depending on the selected function, operation using the upper display may be required.
– Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect Infotainment: Depending on the country and vehicle equipment, additional services may be available.

myAudi navigation

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect Infotainment

MMI navigation works seamlessly with the myAudi app.

Your destinations (favorites, last destinations) are synchronized through your myAudi account. All top destinations are available in the vehicle and in the myAudi app.

To download the destinations automatically into the vehicle, we recommend linking the access data from your myAudi account to your personal profile ⇨ *page 40*.

myAudi navigation functions:

– You can send destinations and routes from the myAudi app to the vehicle ⇨ *page 211*.
– Active route guidance in the myAudi app can be continued in the MMI.
– Depending on the situation, it may be possible to continue active route guidance from the MMI in the myAudi app to continue navigating to the destination after leaving the vehicle.

Note

Read the information about Audi connect, and be sure to note the connectivity costs section ⇨ *in Using a Wi-Fi hotspot on page 199*.

Entering a destination

Select destination

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system



Fig. 153 Upper display: Select destination menu

Opening a menu

Applies to: MMI

▸ Press **NAVIGATION** on the home screen.
▸ If the map is displayed, press ⊞ ① ⇨ *page 207, fig. 152*.

The following functions are available ⇨ *fig. 153*:

① **Intelligent search** 209
② **Entering an address** 209
③ **Last destinations** 210
④ **Favorites** 210
⑤ **POIs** 210
⑥ **Contacts** 211
⑦ **Received destinations & routes** . . 211

Intelligent search for navigation destinations

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

Using the intelligent search, you can enter the data for a navigation destination in any order all at once (for example, 5th Avenue New York). You can search for points of interest, contacts, previous destinations, received destinations, and routes or favorites to navigate to the desired destination.

Opening a menu

- Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **NAVIGATION** > 🔍.

Intelligent search

- Enter one or more search terms into the input field. See ⇨ *page 23, Text input*.
- Press on the desired destination in the results list. The **Details** menu will be displayed.
- Press **Start**. Route guidance will be activated and the map will be displayed ⇨ *page 213, fig. 155*.

If the MMI is connected to the Internet ⇨ *page 198, Audi connect*, the **Intelligent search** automatically includes results from the Internet. See ⇨ (!).

Change search area

Requirement: route guidance must be active.

- Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **NAVIGATION** > 🔍.
- To change the search area, press 🚗 / ⓐ / 🏁⇨ *table on page 211* repeatedly until the desired search area is selected.

Online search[1)]

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system and online search

You can use the results from a search engine provider to find a navigation destination.

Requirement: the MMI must be connected to the Internet ⇨ *page 198, Audi connect*.

- Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **NAVIGATION** > 🔍 > **G**.
- Enter one or more search terms into the input field.
- The search engine provider shows suggestions 🔍 to narrow down the search.
- Press on suggestions until the desired destination appears in the results list. If necessary, use one finger to swipe upward or downward until the suggestions 🔍 or destinations 📍 appear.
- Press on the desired destination 📍. The **Details** menu will be displayed.
- Press **Start**.

Route guidance will be activated and the map will be displayed. ⇨ *page 213, fig. 155*

Note

Read the information about Audi connect, and be sure to note the connectivity costs section ⇨ (!) *in Using a Wi-Fi hotspot on page 199*.

Tips

– The MMI input suggestions depend on the last navigated destinations.
– The navigation system always searches for the fastest route. You can find information on alternative routes under ⇨ *page 216*.

Entering an address

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

As an alternative to the intelligent search, you can also enter an address in stages.

Opening a menu

- Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **NAVIGATION** > (⊞) > **Enter address**.

Enter a destination using an address

- Press on the respective input field and enter an address.
- Press on **Apply**. The **Details** menu will be displayed.
- Press **Start**.

1) AUDI AG provides access to services from third party providers. Permanent availability cannot be guaranteed, because that depends on the third party provider.

Route guidance will be activated and the map will be displayed ⇨ *page 213, fig. 155*.

Destination entry for a street intersection

▸ Select: **Intersection** > *enter a street* > **Start**.

Loading previous destinations

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

Your last destinations and routes can be loaded directly as a navigation destination.

As soon as you start route guidance, the destination is automatically saved in the last destinations. Your previous destinations are marked with the ⏲ symbol.

If you have met the requirements for myAudi navigation, your previous destinations will be synchronized with your myAudi account ⇨ *page 208*.

Accessing previous destinations

▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **NAVIGATION** > (⊞) > **Last destinations** > *select a desired destination* > **Start**.

▸ Applies to: multifunction steering wheel: Select in the instrument cluster: Navigation tab > ☰ button > **Last destinations** > *desired destination*.

Changing and loading a previous destination

▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **NAVIGATION** > (⊞) > **Last destinations** > ✎≡ > ✎ > *change the address* > **Use address** > **Start**.

Restore last tour

Requirement: a route with at least two stopovers must have already been canceled.

Your last route is labeled with the ⏲ symbol.

▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **NAVIGATION** > (⊞) > **Last destinations** > **Restore last tour**. Route guidance will start immediately.

Deleting previous destinations

▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **NAVIGATION** > (⊞) > **Last destinations** > ✎≡ > *select one or more entries* or **Select all** > **Delete** > (**Done**).

Tips

The last route will be automatically deleted from the list if you start a new route guidance after canceling the route.

Setting a favorite as the destination

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

You can access frequent destinations in the favorites. You can quickly and easily start route guidance using the home address or business address function.

Requirement: a favorite must be stored ⇨ *page 216*.

▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **NAVIGATION** > (⊞) > **Favorites** > *select a desired destination* > **Start**. Or

▸ Applies to: multifunction steering wheel: Select in the instrument cluster: Navigation tab > ☰ button > **Favorites** > *desired destination*.

POIs (point of interest)

Applies to: vehicles with a navigation system and Audi connect Infotainment

Search for points of interest such as restaurants. If the MMI is connected to the Internet, points of interest will be automatically included in the search.

▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **NAVIGATION** > ⊞ > **Points of interest**.

The system always searches in the search area that is currently selected ⇨ *table on page 211*.

▸ **Searching for points of interest**: enter the name of a POI.

▸ **Searching for a point of interest in a specific category**: Select: *a category* (for example, restaurants) > *a point of interest*.

▸ **Changing the search area**: Requirement: route guidance must be active. Press ⌖/📍/🏁 repeatedly until the desired search area ⇨ *table on page 211* is selected.

Sorting points of interest

Requirement: the MMI must be connected to the Internet ⇨ *page 198, Audi connect*. You must have a category selected.

- ▸ Press on the respective symbol for sorting until the desired sorting order is selected.

Search areas in detail

Symbol	Meaning
	**Search nearby**
	**Search along the route**
	**Search at destination/Search at stopover**

Search nearby: the points of interest will be listed starting from the immediate vicinity around the vehicle position.

Search along the route: points of interest along the route can only be selected during active route guidance. The points of interest are located directly along or in the immediate vicinity of the calculated route. You can select points of interest from various categories. For example, you can search for a hotel or parking lot along route.

Search at destination/Search at stopover: points of interest near a destination or a stopover can only be selected during active route guidance. You can select points of interest from various categories. For example, you can search for a hotel or parking lot at the destination.

Note

Read the information about Audi connect, and be sure to note the connectivity costs section ⇨ *in Using a Wi-Fi hotspot on page 199*.

Tips

Distances to points of interest are displayed as a straight-line distance from your current location. The actual distance from your current location to the point of interest is updated automatically. The list of points of interest that were found is not resorted when this happens.

Selecting contacts as destinations

Applies to: vehicles with MMI and navigation system

You can navigate directly to contacts.

Requirement: an address with navigation data or a navigation destination must already be assigned to a contact ⇨ *page 217*.

- ▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **NAVIGATION** > (⊞) > **Contacts** > *a contact*.
- ▸ Press on an address.
- ▸ Check the address and change it, if necessary. Start navigation ⇨ *page 209, Entering an address*.

Route guidance will be activated and the map will be displayed ⇨ *page 213, fig. 155*.

Additional functions for contacts in navigation can be found under ⇨ *page 217*.

Tips

– Addresses that have been imported from your mobile device into the MMI can also be used as a destination.

– If a contact is grayed out in the directory, this contact has neither a destination nor an address assigned to it.

Loading received destinations and routes

Applies to: vehicles with a navigation system and Audi connect Infotainment

You can search for destinations or routes in the myAudi app and send to the vehicle.

Requirement: the MMI and the mobile device must be connected to the Internet ⇨ *page 198, Audi connect*. You must have the myAudi app installed on your mobile device.

- ▸ Send a destination or route in the myAudi app to the vehicle.
- ▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **NAVIGATION** > (⊞) > **Received destinations and routes**.
- ▸ Make sure you are logged into the vehicle and the myAudi app with the same myAudi account. The received destination and routes will be loaded automatically. ▶

- ▸ **Navigating to a destination**: press on a destination.
- ▸ **Deleting destinations**: select: ✎ > *one or more entries* or **Select all** > **Delete** > (**Done**).

Note

Read the information about Audi connect, and be sure to note the connectivity costs section ⇨ *in Using a Wi-Fi hotspot on page 199*.

Destination details

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

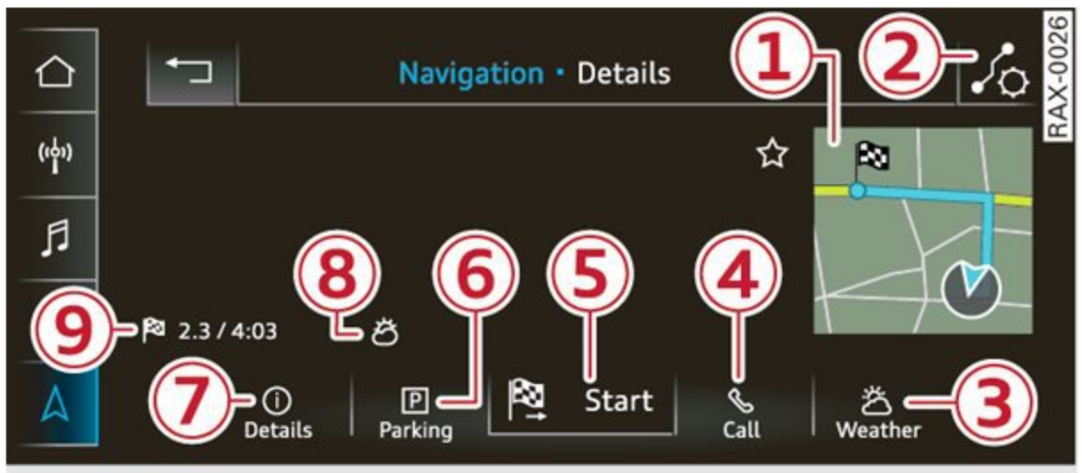


Fig. 154 Upper display: diagram: details

After you have selected a destination, the details ⇨ *fig. 154* will be displayed. Route guidance is will not be active yet.

The following functions or information can be displayed ⇨ *fig. 154*: Certain functions require an active Internet connection.

① **Map preview**: to zoom in on the map preview, press on the map.

② **Route criteria**: see ⇨ *page 222*.

③ **Weather**: Requirement: the MMI must be connected to the Internet ⇨ *page 198, Audi connect*. Also see ⇨ *page 200*.

④ Applies to: MMI and telephone

Call: Requirement: a mobile device must be connected to the MMI ⇨ *page 180*. You will make a direct call to the phone number that is stored for the destination.

⑤ **Start**: starts navigation to the displayed destination directly. The map will be displayed ⇨ *page 214, Map operation*.

⑥ **Parking**: press **Parking** to search for a parking space at the destination. You can use the parking space as the destination or stopover.

⑦ **Details***: Requirement: the MMI must be connected to the Internet ⇨ *page 198, Audi connect*.

⑧ **Weather at the destination***: Requirement: the MMI must be connected to the Internet ⇨ *page 198, Audi connect*.

⑨ **Display of distance/driving time to the destination**

Note

Read the information about Audi connect, and be sure to note the connectivity costs section ⇨ *in Using a Wi-Fi hotspot on page 199*.

Selecting a destination from the map

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

A point on the map can be used as the destination.

Opening the map

Applies to: MMI

- ▸ Press **NAVIGATION** on the home screen.
- ▸ If necessary, press △ to display the map.

Adjusting the scale

- ▸ Select: ⊕/Ⓐ > *select a scale*.

Marking the destination

- ▸ Press and hold a point on the map until a marking appears ㉑ ⇨ *page 213, fig. 156*. **Or**: the address of the selected destination is displayed ⑯ ⇨ *page 213, fig. 156*.

Setting the map content (such as POIs) as the destination

Requirement: map content must be displayed ⇨ *page 221*.

- ▸ Press on map content on the map (for example, ㉒ ⇨ *page 213, fig. 156*).

Selecting the destination

- ▸ Select: ⑮ ⇨ *page 213, fig. 156*. **Or**:
- ▸ To display destination details, press on ⑯ ⇨ *page 213, fig. 156* > **Start**.

Route guidance will be activated and the map will be displayed ⇨ *page 213, fig. 155*.

Stopovers and route plan

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

You can enter additional destinations during active route guidance.

Entering a stopover

Requirement: route guidance must be active.

▸ Enter a destination ⇨ *page 209*.

Displaying stopovers or the route plan

All destinations are listed in the route plan.

▸ Press on ⑦ ⇨ *page 213, fig. 155* on the map.

Editing stopovers

▸ Press on ⑦ ⇨ *page 213, fig. 155* on the map.
▸ **Adding a stopover**: Select: **Add destination** > *select a destination* > **Add**.
▸ **Moving a stopover**: press ✎. Touch the ⬍ symbol and move the entry to the desired position. Press **Done**.
▸ **Deleting a stopover**: Select: ✎ > *one or more entries* or **Select all** > **Delete** > (**Done**).

Stopping route guidance

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

Requirement: route guidance must be active and the map must be displayed.

▸ Applies to: MMI: Press ⚑ ③ ⇨ *page 213, fig. 155*. Or:
▸ Applies to: multifunction steering wheel: Select in the instrument cluster: Navigation tab > ☰ button > **Cancel route guidance**.

Map

Map functions

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system



Fig. 155 Upper display: diagram: active route guidance (standard map)



Fig. 156 Upper display: diagram: marked map item (standard map)

Opening the map

Applies to: MMI

▸ Press **NAVIGATION** on the home screen.
▸ If necessary, press △ to display the map.

The following list gives an overview of the information displayed on the map. Press on any function (for example, alternative routes) to show additional options.

① Destination input ⇨ *page 208*
② Intelligent search ⇨ *page 209*
③ Cancel route guidance ⇨ *page 213*
④ Current route
⑤ Request spoken prompt
⑥ Alternative routes ⇨ *page 216*
⑦ Display active destinations, stopovers, or route plan. The distance to the destination including the calculated arrival time is displayed ⇨ *page 213*.
⑧ The trailer mode* function is switched on ⇨ *page 222*

⑨ Traffic information ⇨ *page 219*

⑩ Altitude

⑪ Displays the maximum permitted speed[1)]: within city limits, on expressways, and on highways.

⑫ Current vehicle position

⑬ Route information ⇨ *page 222*

⑭ Name of the street on which you are currently driving

⑮ Start route guidance for the marked destination ㉑ ⇨ *page 212, Selecting a destination from the map*

⑯ Display details for the destination ⇨ *page 212*

⑰ POI search within the vicinity of a marking

⑱ Adjust the map orientation. Also see ⇨ *page 221*

⑲ Navigation settings ⇨ *page 221*

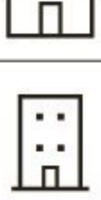
⑳ Adjust the scale. Set scale. **Or**: press on the magnifying glass shown to adjust the automatic zoom ⇨ *page 221*.

㉑ Marked destination. See ⇨ *page 212, Selecting a destination from the map*

㉒ Map contents (points of interest, favorites). When there are multiple map contents in the immediate vicinity, the symbols are shown stacked on the map. To display a list of individual symbols, press ⑯ ⇨ *fig. 156*. Press on a POI in the list.

㉓ Center the map to the current vehicle position

Additional possible symbols on the map

Symbol	Meaning
	Home address ⇨ *page 216, Favorites*
	Business address ⇨ *page 216, Favorites*
	Favorites ⇨ *page 216*
	Previous destinations display

Traffic information display on the map or map preview

Color-coded markings along the route indicate the traffic flow:

Green: traffic is flowing freely.

Yellow: stop-and-go traffic.

Red: traffic jam or traffic obstructions.

Shaded markings indicate the length of the area with congestion.

Traffic information

– **Colored warning symbols**: traffic incidents ahead that are on your route.
– **Grayed out warning symbols**: traffic incidents that are not on your route.
– All traffic incidents will display in color when route guidance is inactive.
– **Warning symbols with arrow**: traffic incident that you have been routed around, for example  .

You can adjust the display of colored markings for traffic information on the maps ⇨ *page 221*.

Map operation

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

You can operate the map ⇨ *page 213, fig. 155* with the movements described in the following information.

Moving the map

▸ Drag your finger across the map in the desired direction.

Moving the map quickly

▸ Drag your finger across the map in the desired direction and lift your finger off the screen.

Zooming in on the map

▸ Place two fingers on the map and pull your fingers apart. **Or**: double tap on the map with one finger. ▶

1) Only applies to vehicles without camera-based speed limit display.

Zooming out on the map

► Place two fingers on the map and pull your fingers together. **Or**: double tap on the map with two fingers.

Rotating the map

► Rotate the map using two fingers.

Tilting the map

► Drag upward or downward with two fingers.

Tips

Certain gestures may not be available on all touch displays or in every menu.

Navigation view with route guidance started

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

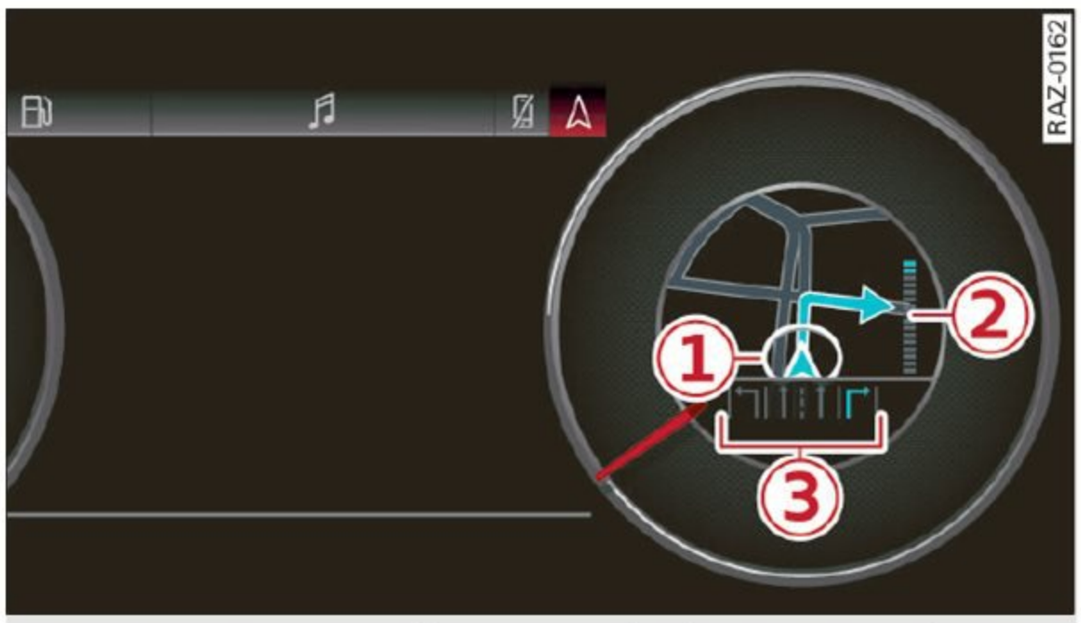


Fig. 157 Instrument cluster: standard view: a turn during active route guidance

Requirement: route guidance must be on ⇨ *page 208*.

The following information will be displayed in the driver information system, if available:

① Current vehicle position

② A bar graph appears when there is an upcoming turn. The fewer the bars that are shown, the shorter the distance is until the turn. If there is no upcoming turn immediately ahead, the distance to the destination or stopover, the calculated arrival time, and a direction arrow for the upcoming maneuver will be displayed in the right speedometer. If there is no upcoming maneuver, the distance to the next maneuver will be displayed.

③ Lane recommendation

Personal route assistance

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system and personal route assistance

Your MMI can learn the routes that you drive frequently (such as your daily commute to work and back) and suggest route guidance based on the current vehicle position.

When the function is switched on, the MMI records the routes driven regardless of whether or not you are using navigation.

Without starting route guidance, your MMI checks the traffic conditions and shows possible traffic incidents for the possible routes to be driven.

Opening personal routes

Requirement: personal route assistance must be switched on ⇨ *page 222*. Route guidance must not be active. A notification is displayed.

► The MMI displays up to three suggestions. Press on a suggestion. Route guidance will start.

Alternative routes

A message will be displayed if there is a major traffic incident (more than a seven-minute delay) regardless of which menu is selected; a notification will appear. If the MMI has calculated an alternative route, you can select it as the route.

► Press on the notification.

The alternative routes will be displayed ⇨ *page 216, Alternative routes*.

As soon as you switch off personal route assistance, your personal routes will no longer be recorded. Routes that were already stored remain stored.

Deleting personal routes

► Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **NAVIGATION** > ⚙ > **Personal route assistance** > **Delete recordings from the last 24 hours** or **Delete all personal routes and destinations**. ▶

Tips

If personal route assistance is switched off and you press 🏁, the personal route assistance settings will be displayed ⇨ *page 222*.

Alternative routes

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system



Fig. 158 Upper display: diagram: display of alternative routes in the overview map

Opening alternative routes

Requirement: route guidance must be started ⇨ *page 208* and the map must be displayed ⇨ *page 214*.

- Press ⑥ ⇨ *page 213, fig. 155*.

① Move route

You can move the route up to the next destination or stopover.

- Press ☝. The ☝ symbol will be displayed on the map.
- Press and hold ☝, and use your finger to pull the route to the desired position. Repeat this step until the desired route appears.
- Press ✓.
- To cancel, press on the current route ③. **Or**: press ⮌.

② Block route

You can block the current route for a certain distance starting from the vehicle position, for example to drive around upcoming streets or tunnel closures. The navigation system automatically calculates an alternative route and the length of the blocked route. The route to be avoided that you have entered applies only to the current route and must be set again, if needed. The areas you have selected to avoid will appear with red and white shading on the map.

- **Block route**: press ② ⇨ *fig. 158*.
- **Cancel route block**: press ⃠.

③ Current route

The distance to the destination and the calculated arrival time will be displayed for the current route.

④ Alternative route

As long as traffic information is available, the congestion along the route including the time delay will be displayed. The distance to the destination and the calculated arrival time will be displayed for the alternative route.

Select route

- Press on the information window for the applicable alternative route (for example ④ ⇨ *fig. 158*).

Additional functions

Favorites

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

You can access frequent destinations in the favorites. You can quickly and easily start route guidance using the home address or business address function.

Accessing favorites

- Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **NAVIGATION** > ⊞ > **Favorites**.

If you have met the requirements for myAudi navigation, your favorites list will be synchronized with your myAudi account ⇨ *page 208*.

Storing favorites

- Press ☆ in the details ⇨ *page 212, fig. 154*. **Or**: press **Store as favorite** in the options ⇨ *page 221*.

Storing a home address or business address

- Press **Home address** or **Business address**. When accessed for the first time, you will be prompted to set the address.
- Select: **Create now** > *enter a destination* > **OK**. ▶

Editing a home address or business address

Requirement: the favorites list must be displayed. Your home address or business address must be stored.

- ▸ Press **Home address** or **Business address** until the **Options** menu is displayed.
- ▸ Select: **Change address** > *enter a destination* > (**Set as destination**) or (*Add to address*) > **OK**.

Editing a favorite

Requirement: the favorites list must be displayed. At least one preset must be stored.

- ▸ **Setting a favorite as a destination**: press on a favorite.
- ▸ **Rename favorite**: press on a favorite until the **Options** menu is displayed. Select: **Change name** > *select a name* > **OK**.
- ▸ **Deleting a favorite**: select: ✎ > *one or more entries* or **Select all** > **Delete** > (**Done**).

Requirement: the favorites list must be displayed. At least two favorites must be stored.

- ▸ **Moving a favorite**: press ✎. Touch the ⬍ symbol and move the entry to the desired position. Press **Done**.

Tips

- After deleting the home address or business address, only the address is deleted and the entry will still be displayed in the favorites.
- Please note when moving favorites that items 1 and 2 are reserved for the home address and business address.

Contacts as navigation destinations

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

Two addresses (private/business) can be added as destinations for each contact. Addresses for contacts on your mobile device are displayed as a mailing address.

Accessing contacts

- ▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **NAVIGATION** > ⊞ > **Contacts**.

Adding a destination to a contact

Requirement: a mobile device must be connected to the MMI ⇨ *page 180*. **Or**: you must have imported contacts ⇨ *page 192, Importing and exporting contacts*. The **Hide grayed-out contacts** option must be switched off ⇨ *page 217*. There must be no business address or private address stored for the desired contact.

- ▸ Select: *a contact* > ••• > **Add destination**.
- ▸ Follow the system instructions.

Settings

- ▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **NAVIGATION** > (⊞) > **Contacts** > ⚙.

Hide grayed-out contacts

When the function is switched on, contacts that have no address or navigation destination stored will be hidden in navigation. You can find information for additional settings under ⇨ *page 192, Directory settings*.

Tips

If you add a navigation destination to a contact, the destination will only be stored in the MMI. The MMI does not change any contacts on your phone.

Parking information

Applies to: navigation system and parking information

In supported areas, you can display parking along the route.

Requirement: the **Parking** notification must be switched on ⇨ *page 21, Notification center*. The MMI must be connected to the Internet ⇨ *page 198, Audi connect*. Route guidance must be active, you must be close to your destination, and a notification must be displayed. **Or**: a point is marked on the map.

- ▸ Press on the notification. **Or**: press on 🅿 on the map.
- ▸ To navigate to a parking: space, press on a colored marking on the map.
- ▸ Select: 🏁 > **Start**.

Depending on availability, colored markings on the map indicate the probability of open parking spaces.

Color	Meaning
Green	High probability
Orange	Medium probability
Red	Low probability

Note

Read the information about Audi connect, and be sure to note the connectivity costs section ⇨ *in Using a Wi-Fi hotspot on page 199*.

Satellite map

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system and satellite map

You can display the navigation map with satellite images.

Requirement: the MMI must be connected to the Internet ⇨ *page 198, Audi connect*.

▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **NAVIGATION** > ⚙ > **Map settings** > **Satellite map**[1)].

The map view is based on data packets received from the Internet in the form of satellite images, which are then combined with the roadways from the ⇨ *page 213, fig. 155* standard map view.

Note

Read the information about Audi connect, and be sure to note the connectivity costs section ⇨ *in Using a Wi-Fi hotspot on page 199*.

Tips

– The satellite map[1)] is updated regularly whenever the function is opened. The process may take several seconds.
– When the satellite map display is switched on [1)] with the 3D position map type, the display automatically switches to the 2D map type when driving through tunnels.
– Depending on the Internet connection, the standard map may also be displayed when the satellite map is switched on [1)].
– Also read the information in the chapter ⇨ *page 198*.

Map update

Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with MMI and navigation system

Depending on the country, the following options may be available for updating your map material:

– Map updates through **online map update*** ⇨ *page 218*.
– Import map updates from the **SD card*** or **USB connection*** to your MMI ⇨ *page 219*.
– Map update at an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. This can result in additional costs.

Online map update

Applies to: vehicles with MMI, navigation system, and Audi connect Infotainment

Using map update online, you can update the map material in your navigation system directly from your vehicle.

Using your vehicle position, the MMI identifies regions which you are frequently in. Based on this, update data for these regions are available for your MMI.

Start map update

Applies to: MMI

Requirement: the MMI must be connected to the Internet ⇨ *page 198, Audi connect*.

▸ A notification for a map update will appear in the upper display.
▸ If the option **Automatic online map update** ⇨ *page 219* is switched on, the MMI will start the map update. **Or**: ▶

[1)] AUDI AG provides access to services from third party providers. Permanent availability cannot be guaranteed, because that depends on the third party provider.

- ▸ Press on the notification. **Or**: access the notification in the notification center on ⇨ *page 21* and press on the notification.
- ▸ If the **Automatic online map update** option ⇨ *page 219* is switched off, press on **Allow once** or **Always allow**.

The MMI will start the map update. The progress of the download and installation will be shown in the upper display.

When the update has ended, a notification will be displayed.

Note

Read the information about Audi connect, and be sure to note the connectivity costs section ⇨ *in Using a Wi-Fi hotspot on page 199*.

Tips

Because of the high volume of data, downloading large country packages or the whole package to your PC from your myAudi account, storing it on an SD card or a USB stick, and then importing it to your MMI is recommended ⇨ *page 219*.

Map update using an SD card or USB connection

Applies to: vehicles with MMI, navigation system, and Audi connect Infotainment

With the map update, you can update the map material in your navigation system.

Requirement: you must have created a myAudi account at www.audiusa.com/myaudi. Your vehicle must be registered in your myAudi account.

Prepare map update

- ▸ Load the map update at www.audiusa.com/myaudi and store it on an SD card or on a USB flash drive. For additional information, see www.audiusa.com/myaudi.

Start map update

Requirement: a map update for your vehicle must be on an SD card or a USB flash drive.

- ▸ Insert the SD card in your vehicle's SD card reader ⇨ *page 232*. **Or**: connect the USB flash drive to the Audi music interface ⇨ *page 236*. A notification for a map update will appear in the upper display.
- ▸ Press on the notification. **Or**: access the notification in the notification center on ⇨ *page 21* and press on the notification. The update package is shown.
- ▸ Press **Next**. The installation status is shown in the upper display.
- ▸ When the update has ended, a notification will be displayed.

Map updates settings

Applies to: vehicles with a navigation system and Audi connect Infotainment

- ▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **System maintenance**.

Automatic online map update: when the function is switched on, map updates will be automatically downloaded and installed.

Note

Read the information about Audi connect, and be sure to note the connectivity costs section ⇨ *in Using a Wi-Fi hotspot on page 199*.

Traffic information

Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system



Fig. 159 Upper display: diagram: traffic information overview

Open traffic information

Requirement: the map must be displayed ⇨ *page 214*.

- ▸ Press (9) ⇨ *page 213, fig. 155*.

Display traffic report details

- ▸ Press on the traffic report (2) ⇨ *fig. 159*.

▸ To display the previous or next traffic report, press ←/→.

The following information can be displayed ⇨ *fig. 159*:

① A message will appear if the MMI calculates a better route for the current route guidance. More information can be found under ⇨ *page 220*.

② A traffic message is displayed. The distance to the hazardous area is calculated from the current vehicle position.

③ The traffic messages are sorted by street name. When route guidance is active, traffic information for your current route is sorted at the top. If there are multiple traffic messages for the same street, an arrow is displayed in front of the street name in the line. Press that line to display all of the traffic information.

When route guidance is active, traffic incidents along your route will be displayed in the upper section of the list.

Note

Read the information about Audi connect, and be sure to note the connectivity costs section ⇨ ⓘ *in Using a Wi-Fi hotspot on page 199*.

Tips

– Particularly critical traffic information, such as warnings about wrong-way drivers, is automatically displayed as a notification.
– This is not available in some countries.

Better route

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

By receiving traffic, your MMI calculates a better route if available and the possible time saved compared to the current route. You can decide which route you would like to use.

A notification will appear for several seconds if your MMI calculates a better route for the current route guidance.

A message will also appear in the traffic information overview ① ⇨ *page 219, fig. 159*.

Accept better route

Requirement: a notification about a better route must be displayed.

▸ Press . The better route is used for route guidance and the route is recalculated. **Or**: press the notification in the central area. The better route with the calculated arrival time is displayed ⇨ *page 216, Alternative routes*. Press on a better route (for example ④ ⇨ *page 216, fig. 158*).

Online traffic information

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system and online traffic information

The MMI can receive real-time online traffic information about congestion, accidents, road construction, and other incidents.

Requirement: the MMI must be connected to the Internet ⇨ *page 198, Audi connect*. Traffic information must be switched on in the MMI ⇨ *page 221*.

Traffic information will be displayed on the standard map ⇨ *page 213, fig. 155*.

Online traffic information is also displayed on the standard map ⇨ *page 218*.

Note

Read the information about Audi connect, and be sure to note the connectivity costs section ⇨ ⓘ *in Using a Wi-Fi hotspot on page 199*.

Tips

– Having the **Online traffic information** function switched on provides the most accurate reports of traffic situations and traffic forecasting. Your vehicle transmits and processes its anonymous, encrypted position information at regular intervals to the traffic data provider. You can switch off data transfer at any time ⇨ *page 311*.
– The **online traffic information** network is not available in all countries, and the coverage is not nationwide.

Options and settings

Options

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

Context-specific functions and settings may be available depending on the vehicle equipment.

Requirement: a list with navigation destinations (such as last destinations) must be displayed.

▸ Press on an item until the **Options** menu is displayed.

Store as favorite

See ⇨ *page 216*.

Edit address

You can edit an address for the next destination entry and navigate to the destination. Select: **Edit address** > *enter a street* > **Use address** > **Start**. If the address is permanently stored (for example, in the favorites), the stored entry will not be changed.

Change address

See ⇨ *page 216, Favorites*.

Entering an address

See ⇨ *page 217, Contacts as navigation destinations*.

Change name

See ⇨ *page 216, Favorites*.

Save as a shortcut

See ⇨ *page 22, Shortcuts*.

Settings

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

You can adjust the navigation system settings in the instrument cluster and in the MMI display separately. The settings depend on the country and vehicle equipment.

Accessing settings

▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **NAVIGATION** > ⚙.

Accessing settings using the multifunction steering wheel

▸ Applies to: multifunction steering wheel: Select in the instrument cluster: Navigation tab > ☰ button.

Please note that a setting applied to the multifunction steering wheel is only valid for the instrument cluster map.

Map settings

Satellite map: see ⇨ *page 218*.

Traffic: you can display current traffic information on the map. See ⇨ *page 214, Traffic information display on the map or map preview*

– **Free flow of traffic**
– **Traffic obstructions**
– **Traffic information**

Map colors

– **Automatic**: the map display adapts to the lighting conditions (for example, by changing from day to night when driving through a tunnel).
– **Day** or **Night**

Map orientation

– **2D map** or **2D north**: the current vehicle position is displayed. The map is oriented in the direction of travel or to the north.
– **3D map**: the current vehicle position is shown on a three-dimensional map and is oriented in the direction of travel.
– **Overview**: the entire route from the vehicle position to the destination or the next stopover is displayed on the map. The map is oriented to the north.

Automatic zoom

– **On**: the map scale is adapted automatically depending on the type of road being traveled (expressway, highway, other roads) so that you always have an optimal overview of the road ahead. When route guidance is active, the scale is adjusted automatically for a better detailed view when there are upcoming maneuvers.
– **Intersection**: when route guidance is active, the scale is adjusted automatically for a better detailed view when there are upcoming maneuvers. ▶

4N0012721BB

– **Off**

MMI map contents: you can switch the display of additional information (such as POIs) on the map in the upper display on or off.

– Always follow ⇨ (!) for the following map content:

– **3D city model**

– The weather forecast is displayed on a 3 mile (5 km) scale on the map.

Voice guidance

Voice guidance: you can adjust the navigation prompts. With the **Traffic** setting, the MMI will only give prompts if there are traffic incidents on your route.

Voice guidance during phone call

Entertainment fader during navigation: the audio playback volume is temporarily lowered when navigation prompts are active.

Route criteria

You can adjust which route criteria should be allowed or avoided for the route calculation.

HOV/carpool lanes

Highways

Toll roads

Ferries

Route information

When this function is switched on and route guidance is active, route information (13) ⇨ *page 213, fig. 155* is displayed. The next maneuver will be displayed at the bottom. POIs and traffic information will also be displayed. Press route information to display a preview of the next maneuver on the map. You can switch the following information on or off in route information.

– **POIs along the route**

– **Traffic information**

Personal route assistance

Personal route assistance is switched off at the factory.

Your trips are recorded and destinations are suggested by the MMI when this function is switched on ⇨ *page 215*.

Trailer mode

Trailer mode is switched off at the factory.

When the function is switched on, the maximum permitted speed for vehicles with trailers is included during route guidance and the calculated arrival time is adjusted accordingly. When the function is switched on, the symbol (8) ⇨ *page 213, fig. 155* is displayed on the map.

Presentation mode

In presentation mode, the system simulates driving along the planned route without the vehicle actually moving. You can use **Specify starting point** when you would like to calculate a route starting from a location other than the current vehicle position, for example. **Simulating route guidance**: start route guidance and press **Presentation mode**.

Note

Read the information about Audi connect, and be sure to note the connectivity costs section ⇨ (!) *in Using a Wi-Fi hotspot on page 199*.

Tips

You can adjust the volume of navigation prompts during voice guidance using the On/Off knob ⇨ *page 19*. Also see ⇨ *page 248*.

Troubleshooting

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

The information that follows lists some troubleshooting options. They depend on the equipment. ▶

Problem	Solution
Intelligent search: the desired destination cannot be found.	The destination might not be entered in the navigation database. **Or**: check the spelling of the term that was searched. Check the current search area ⇨ *page 209* and use another, if necessary.

4N0012721BB

Radio

Opening the radio

The radio supports the FM, AM and SiriusXM (satellite radio) bands. Using the HD Radio receiver also allows you to receive radio stations on the FM and AM bands in digital format.*

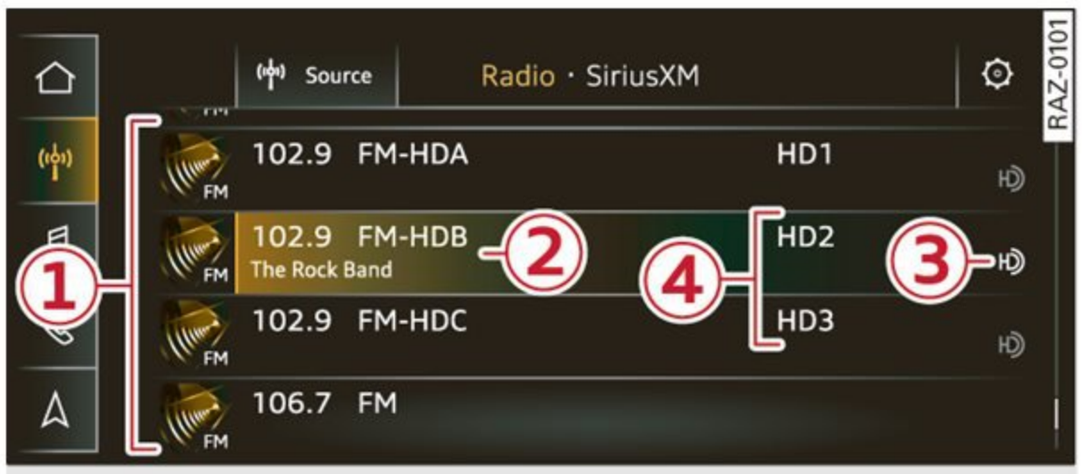


Fig. 160 Upper display: station list



Fig. 161 Upper display: SiriusXM channel list

Depending on the station list, the following information may be displayed:

① **Station list**

Shows the station that is currently playing. The station list updates automatically.

② **Stations**

Depending on availability, the station name as well as program information, for example, may be displayed.

③ **HD Radio technology**

FM/AM stations that can be received by digital radio are marked with the HD Radio technology symbol HD.

If reception quality declines, the radio automatically switches to the analog FM/AM station depending on availability.

④ **Additional stations**

Digital HD Radio stations* may contain multiple additional stations*. If you lose reception, the additional stations* are muted since they can no longer be received.

⑤ **Radio ID**

Your radio ID and contact data for your satellite radio provider are displayed.

⑥ **Channel number**

⑦ **Smart Favorite**

See ⇨ *page 227*.

Adjusting the radio using the MMI

- ▸ Applies to: MMI: To set a station, select on the home screen: **RADIO** > **Source** > *select a station list* > *select a station*.
- ▸ Applies to: MMI: To set a frequency band, select on the home screen: **RADIO** > **Source** *a frequency band*.
- ▸ To select a frequency, follow the instructions under ⇨ *page 226, Free text search*.

Adjusting the radio using the multifunction steering wheel

Requirement: radio mode must be on.

- ▸ Select the Radio/Media tab using the multifunction steering wheel.
- ▸ To switch between radio and media, select the ☰ button > **Switch to radio/Switch to media**.
- ▸ Turn the left thumbwheel to display the station list.
- ▸ To switch to a different source, press the ☰ button.
- ▸ To select a station or a source, turn and press the left thumbwheel.

Adjusting the radio using the Rear Seat Remote

Applies to: vehicles with Rear Seat Remote

Requirement: the Rear Seat Remote must be connected to the MMI ⇨ *page 26*.

- ▸ Applies to: Rear Seat Remote: Press **RADIO** on the home screen.

Operation of the available radio functions using the Rear Seat Remote is very similar to operation in the MMI ⇨ *page 225*.

Adjusting the radio using the Audi tablet

Applies to: vehicles with Audi tablet

Requirement: the Audi tablet must be connected to the MMI ⇨ *page 33*.

- ▸ Applies to: Audi tablet: Press **RADIO** on the home screen.

Operation of the available radio functions in the Audi tablet is very similar to operation in the MMI ⇨ *page 225*.

WARNING

Note the safety precautions ⇨ *page 24, Rear Seat Remote* and ⇨ *page 28, Rear Seat Entertainment (Audi tablet)*.

Tips

– Contact the SiriusXM* provider if you would like to receive satellite programming.
– Buildings, tunnels, bridges, open areas, other vehicles or objects on the vehicle roof can affect reception.
– Satellite radio is not available in Alaska and Hawaii.
– Applies to: multifunction steering wheel: Depending on the selected function, operation through the MMI may be required.

Radio functions

Overview

You can control the central radio functions in the playback view.

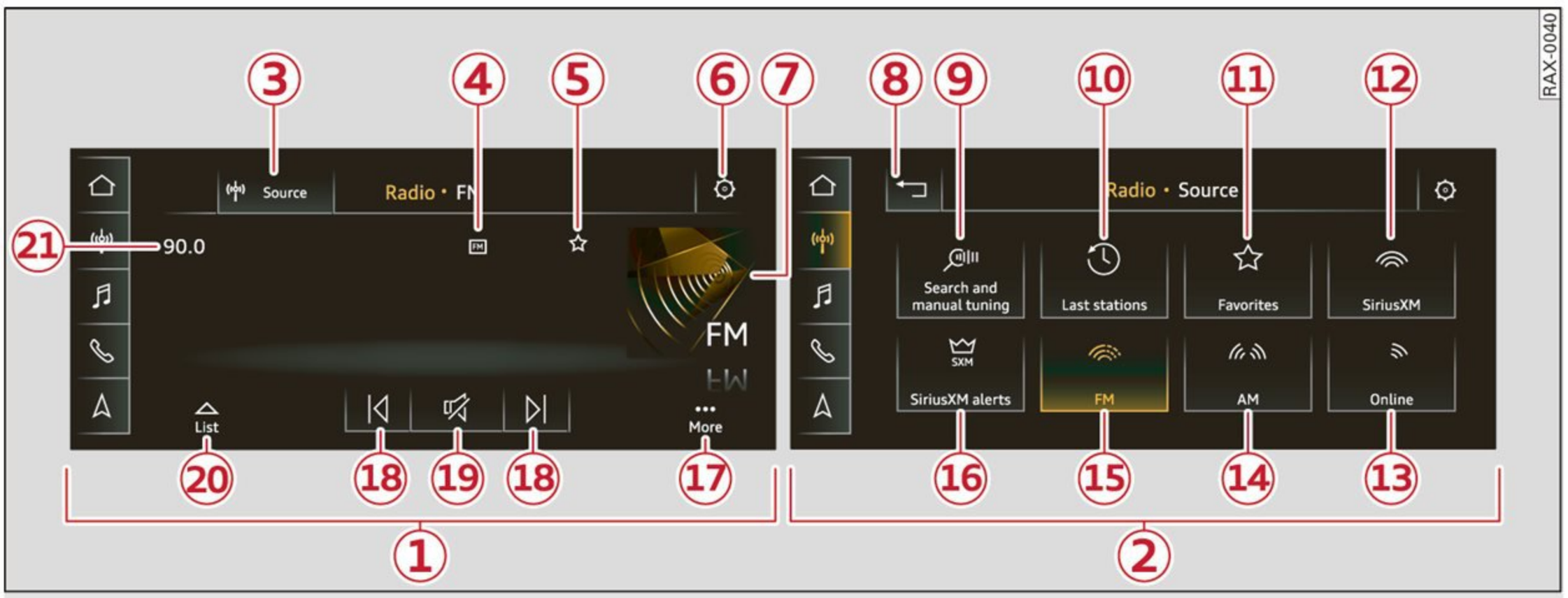


Fig. 162 Upper display: left side: playback view of radio functions, right side: sources

▸ Applies to: MMI: **Opening the playback view** ①: Select on the home screen: **RADIO** > *a radio station*.
▸ Applies to: MMI: **Opening sources** ②: Select on the home screen: **RADIO** > **Source**.

The following table gives an overview of the symbols and radio functions.

	Symbol/Description	Description
①	**Playback view**	You can control the central radio functions in the playback view.
②	**Sources**	The available sources are displayed and can be accessed in the radio.
③	**Source** button	Displays sources in the Radio menu.
④	**Frequency band**	Shows the current station frequency band. If a symbol with the **WEB** label is displayed, then the station is being streamed from online. Always follow the information found in ⇨ ⓘ.
⑤	**Presets**	**Storing a preset**: press ☆. See ⇨ *page 227, Presets*

4N0012721BB

	Symbol/Description	Description
⑥	**Settings**	See ⇨ *page 230*
⑦	**Station logo**	Displays the station logo, if available. **Switching between picture views**: press the station logo. Use one finger to swipe to the right or left to switch between the **Station logo** and **Cover art**. Cover art: the album cover is displayed if available. Always follow the information found in ⇨ ⓘ.
⑧	**Back**	Go back one level.
⑨	**Search**	See ⇨ *page 226, Free text search*
⑩	**Last stations**	Displays recently played stations from all frequency bands. See ⇨ *page 227*
⑪	**Presets**	See ⇨ *page 227, Presets*
⑫	**Station list**	Displays stations from the **SiriusXM** frequency band.
⑬	**Online***	See ⇨ *page 227, Online radio*
⑭	**AM**	Displays the station list for the **AM** frequency band.
⑮	**FM**	Displays the station list for the **FM** frequency band.
⑯	**SiriusXM alerts**	Overview of songs, artists, or teams from the stored SiriusXM alerts being currently received ⇨ *page 229*.
⑰	**More**	Access options for the current station ⇨ *page 229, Options*.
⑱	⏮/⏭	Select the previous/next station.
⑲	🔊/🔇	Unmutes or mutes playback.
⑳	**List**	Displays the station list. See ⇨ *page 224, Opening the radio*
㉑	**Info section**	Depending on availability, the station name as well as program information, for example, may be displayed. Also see ⇨ *page 230,* **Online additional data**

Note

Read the information about Audi connect, and be sure to note the connectivity costs section ⇨ ⓘ *in Using a Wi-Fi hotspot on page 199*.

Tips

– Not all functions are available in every source and on every touch display.
– Applies to: MMI: To select the previous or next station, drag your finger to the left or right in the playback view in the center of the display.

Free text search

Applies to: vehicles with free text search

Using the free text search, you can select the order that the search terms are entered in the input field. Search in all frequency bands for a station name, channel number, or program type, such as **News**. *You can also select the frequency.*

▶ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **RADIO** > **Source** > **Search**.

Selecting a frequency: enter a frequency. Press on a frequency in the results list.

The following information may be available: ▶

Symbol	Description
	Results from the list: **Last stations**
	Results from the list: **Presets**
	Results from a **Station list**
For example, FM	Station frequency band

Last stations

Applies to: vehicles with last stations

You can listen to the last stations that were played in all frequency bands.

▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **RADIO** > **Source** > **Last stations**.

– **Listening to previously played stations**: press *a station*.
– **Deleting last stations**: select: ✎ > *select one or more stations* or **Select all** > **Delete** > (**Done**).

Presets

Applies to: vehicles with favorites

You can store your favorite stations from every frequency band in the presets list.

Setting presets using the MMI

▸ Applies to: MMI: To play a preset, select on the home screen: **RADIO** > **Source** > **Presets** > *a preset*.
▸ To store a preset, press ☆ (5) ⇨ *page 225, fig. 162*. **Or**: press **Store as preset** in the options ⇨ *page 229*.

Requirement: the presets list must be displayed. At least one preset must be stored.

▸ To delete a preset, select: ✎ > *select one or more stations* or **Select all** > **Delete** > (**Done**).

Requirement: the presets list must be displayed. At least two presets must be stored.

▸ To move a preset, press ✎. Touch the ⇕ symbol and move the entry to the desired position. Press **Done**.

Smart favorites

SiriusXM channels are stored in the presets as smart favorites with the ★ SMART symbol. After switching the ignition and the MMI on, the smart favorites store radio programs at a specific time. Press on a smart favorite. You have the following options:

– **Pause** or **Start**: press II or ▷.
– **Selecting the previous or next track**: press ⏮ or ⏭.
– **Going to the beginning of a recording or live program**: press and hold ⏮ or ⏭.
– **Setting the playback point**: you can adjust the playback position using the knob.
– **Going to a live program**: press LIVE.

Online radio

Applies to: MMI with Audi connect Infotainment and online radio

You can listen to various radio stations or podcasts on the Internet using online radio.

Requirement: the MMI must be connected to the Internet ⇨ *page 198, Audi connect*.

▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **RADIO** > **Source** > **Online**.

The following functions are available in the online radio menu:

– **Search**: you only can search for online radio stations in this search. You can search for station names and categories.
– **Last played station**: the station that was played last will start playing.
– **Top stations**: select a station from the list of popular online radio stations.
– **Filtering the list**: Select: 🔍 > (*select a category*) > *select a station name*. The following categories are available:
– **Countries**
– **Genres**
– **Languages**

Other categories may be available depending on the country and vehicle equipment. ▶

Podcasts

– Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **RADIO** > **Source** > **Online** > **Podcasts**.

The following functions are available:

– **Listening to a podcast**: select: *a podcast* > *a podcast episode*.
– **Search**: press .

The following functions are available in the podcast playback view:

– **Displaying the podcast episodes**: press **List**.
– **Starting or stopping the podcast**: press ▷ or II.
– **Previous or next podcast**: press ⋈ or ⋈. **Or**: use one finger to drag the center of the display to the left or right.
– **Changing the playback point**: you can adjust the playback position using the knob.
– **Displaying the online radio menu**: press .
– **Switching to radio**: press **Source**. The sources in the Radio menu are displayed.

Podcast favorites

You can store podcasts in the **Podcast favorites**.

Storing a podcast favorite: requirement: the podcast playback view must be displayed. Press ☆. **Or**: press **Save podcast** in the options ⇨ *page 229, Options*.

Requirement: at least one entry must be stored in the **Podcast favorites**.

– **Listening to a podcast favorite**: press on the desired podcast.
– **Browsing podcast favorites**: use your finger to swipe to the left or right.
– **Displaying all podcast favorites**: press **All**.
– **Deleting a favorite**: Select: **All** > > *select one or more podcasts* or **Select all** > **Delete** > (**Done**).

Requirement: at least two favorites must be stored.

– **Moving a favorite**: Select: **All** > . Touch the ⇕ symbol and move the entry to the desired position. Press **Done**.

Note

Read the information about Audi connect, and be sure to note the connectivity costs section ⇨ *in Using a Wi-Fi hotspot on page 199*.

Tips

– Depending on the Internet connection and network traffic, the connection may be lost when online radio is playing.
– Online radio reception may not be possible if Internet service is throttled.
– The use of online radio depends on the service availability of the third party provider.
– The range and screen display of online media services from third party providers in the vehicle can vary.
– AUDI AG only provides access to online radio and does not assume any responsibility for the content of these services.

Radio text

Applies to: vehicles with radio text

Information that accompanies the program (such as artist, composer, song) is displayed in the radio text.

Opening radio text

▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **RADIO** > *select a frequency band (such as FM)* > *select a station* > **More** > **Radio text**.

Displaying previous radio text entries: drag your finger downward. The last radio text entries are displayed if they are available.

Browsing through radio text entries: drag your finger upward or downward on the screen.

If a radio text entry is displayed with a color, a phone number or a navigation destination for the station is available as radio text plus information.

Tips

The availability of radio text and Radio Text Plus depends on the radio station.

SiriusXM alerts

Applies to: vehicles with SiriusXM

You can see an overview of your favorite artists, favorite songs, or teams that are currently being broadcast on a SiriusXM channel.

▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **RADIO** > **Source** > **SiriusXM alerts**.

After you have saved a SiriusXM alert, you can see an overview in the **SiriusXM alerts** menu of the songs, artists, or teams being currently received and can play them directly from there.

Storing a SiriusXM music alert

Requirement: an artist or song must be playing on a SiriusXM channel.

– Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **RADIO** > **Source** > **SiriusXM** > *select a channel* > **More** > **Artist as SXM alert/Title as SXM alert**.

Storing a SiriusXM game alert

– Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **RADIO** > ⚙ > **Manage SiriusXM alerts** > **Store SiriusXM game alerts** > *select an entry from the list*.

Playing a song/artist/team from a SiriusXM alert (option 1)

Requirement: a SiriusXM music/game alert must be stored and must be currently broadcast on a SiriusXM channel.

– Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **RADIO** > **Source** > **SiriusXM alerts** > *select an entry from the list*.

Playing a song/artist/team from a SiriusXM alert (option 2)

Requirement: a SiriusXM music/game alert must have been received.

– Press on the notification. **Or**: access the notification in the notification center on ⇨ *page 21* and press on the notification.

Managing SiriusXM alerts

Requirement: a SiriusXM alert must be stored.

– Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **RADIO** > ⚙ > **Manage SiriusXM alerts** > **Selected SiriusXM music alerts/Selected SiriusXM game alerts**.

When the function is switched on ☑, a SiriusXM alert will be received.

Deleting SiriusXM alerts: Select: **Selected SiriusXM music alerts/Selected SiriusXM game alerts** > ✎ > *select one or more alerts* or **Select all** > **Delete** > (**Done**).

Options and settings

Options

Requirement: the playback view ① ⇨ *page 225, fig. 162* must be displayed.

▸ Press **More**. **Or**:

Requirement: a list with radio stations or podcasts* must be displayed. See ⇨ *page 224, fig. 160*.

▸ Press on an entry in the list until the **Options** menu appears.

Depending on the selected source, the following functions may be available.

Storing a favorite

See ⇨ *page 227, Presets*.

Radio text

See ⇨ *page 228*.

Scan

All channels on the current playlist will be played for several seconds each.

Scan smart favorites

All smart favorites will be played for several seconds. The stored song on the smart favorite channel will be played from the beginning. See ⇨ *page 227*. To switch to the previous or next smart favorite, press the On/Off knob briefly to the left or right. ▶

Artist as SXM alert

The artist being currently played will be stored as a SiriusXM (SXM) alert. See ⇨ *page 229*.

Title as SXM alert

The song being currently played will be stored as a SiriusXM (SXM) alert. See ⇨ *page 229*.

Team 1 as game alert/Team 2 as game alert

You can store your team as a SiriusXM game alert. See ⇨ *page 229*.

Radio through the Audi tablet

Applies to: vehicles with Audi tablet

Playback occurs on the respective Audi tablet*.

Save podcast

See ⇨ *page 228, Podcast favorites*.

Save as a shortcut

See ⇨ *page 22, Shortcuts*.

Settings

▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **RADIO** > ⚙.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the following settings may be available.

HD Radio FM/HD Radio AM*

You can switch HD Radio reception on or off.

SiriusXM Tune Start*

If you play a smart favorite when this function is switched on, the song currently playing on the channel will play from the beginning.

Managing SiriusXM alerts*

See ⇨ *page 229*.

SiriusXM channel sorting*

You can set how the channels are sorted in the SiriusXM channel list:

– **Channel number**: the channels are sorted in ascending order according to their channel number.
– **Channel name**: the channels are listed in alphabetical order.
– **First category, then channel number**: the channels are sorted by their category and then by their channel number.
– **First category, then channel name**: the channels are sorted by their category and then by their channel names.

SiriusXM category filter*

The stations shown in the station list can be filtered by your personal preferences and by program type. The program categories that you can select depend on what is offered by your provider. When the **Unsubscribed channels** function is switched off, unsubscribed channels will be hidden.

SiriusXM subscription status*

This option is available when your subscription is about to expire or has already expired. The expiration date for your license is displayed.

Call SiriusXM*: the contact information for your satellite radio provider is displayed. To call your satellite radio provider using the MMI, press **Call SiriusXM***.

Online additional data

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect Infotainment

Requirement: the MMI must be connected to the Internet ⇨ *page 198*.

If available, various information about the song currently playing (such as station logos, cover, artist) will be loaded from the Internet when this function is switched on.

Preferred online radio data rate

Applies to: MMI with Audi connect Infotainment and online radio

You can set the data rate for online radio ⇨ *page 227*.

For optimal sound playback, press **High**. To reduce data usage, press **Low**.

Note

Read the information about Audi connect, and be sure to note the connectivity costs section ⇨ *in Using a Wi-Fi hotspot on page 199*.

Troubleshooting

The information that follows lists some trouble-shooting options. They depend on the equip-ment.

Problem	Solution
A station is no longer displayed in the station list.	Store the station as a preset in advance. Access the presets using the presets list ⇨ *page 227*.
Online radio: no playback from online radio.	Check if a suitable data plan was purchased ⇨ *page 203*.

Media

General information

There are various media drives and connections available in the MMI. For example, you can play media files using the SD card reader or connect your mobile devices to the Audi music interface and operate them through the MMI.

Media and format restrictions: the MMI (including the SD card reader and the USB storage device connection*) was tested with a variety of products and media available in the market. However, there may be cases where individual devices or media and audio/video files may not be recognized, may play only with restrictions, or may not play at all.

Restricted functionality: reset the **Media** to the factory default settings if functionality is restricted.

Digital Rights Management: please note that the audio/video files are subject to copyright protection.

The media drives do not play files that are protected by DRM and are identified with the symbol 🔒.

Data security: never store important data on SD cards, CDs/DVDs, or mobile devices. Audi AG is not responsible for damaged or lost files and media.

Loading times: the more files/folders/playlists there are on a storage medium, the longer it will take to load. To reduce the amount of time it takes the audio/video files to load, use a storage medium that only contains audio/video files, and create subfolders (for example, for each artist or album).

Additional information: when playing, audio files are automatically displayed with any additional information that is stored (such as the artist, track and album cover). If this information is not available on the storage medium, the MMI will check the Gracenote metadata database. However, in some cases, the additional information may not be displayed.

Note

Read the information about Audi connect, and be sure to note the connectivity costs section ⇨ *in Using a Wi-Fi hotspot on page 199*.

SD card reader

The SD card reader is in the storage compartment under the front center armrest.

Inserting the SD card

- The angled corner of the SD card must face toward the right front side when being inserted.
- Slide the SD card into the card reader slot until the SD card clicks into place.

The SD card reader is accessed and operated through the MMI ⇨ *page 237*.

Note

– Only use one-piece SD cards. If adapter cards (SD cards with more than one piece) are used, the card could fall out of the adapter when driving because of vibrations. Individual pieces could then become stuck in the drive and impair the functionality.
– To reduce the risk of damaging drives and data carriers, always keep data carriers in a sleeve and never expose them to direct sunlight.

DVD drive

General information

The functionality of individual storage mediums may be limited due to the variety of blank CDs/DVDs available and the various capacities. Audio CDs or video DVDs with copy protection, CDs/DVDs that do not conform to the standard, and multisession CDs may have limited playback or may not play at all. AUDI AG recommends finalizing the recording process when creating multisession CDs. Multisession DVDs are not supported. ▶

WARNING

The installed optical readers contain a class 1 laser (IEC 60825-1:2014 Ed. 3.0). When used according to regulations, the laser is not dangerous. Opening the drive is not permitted and could cause permanent injuries to the eyes.

Note

To reduce the risk of damaging the drive and data carriers:

– Always store data carriers in a protective sleeve and do not expose them to direct sunlight
– Do not use damaged, dirty, or laminated data carriers
– Do not use single CDs/DVDs with an 8 cm diameter, non-circular CDs/DVDs (shaped CDs), cleaning CDs, and protective rings
– Never force CDs/DVDs into the drive. Discs are pulled in automatically.

Tips

The thermal protection switch stops playback temporarily when outside temperatures are too high.

DVD drive

Applies to: vehicles with a DVD drive

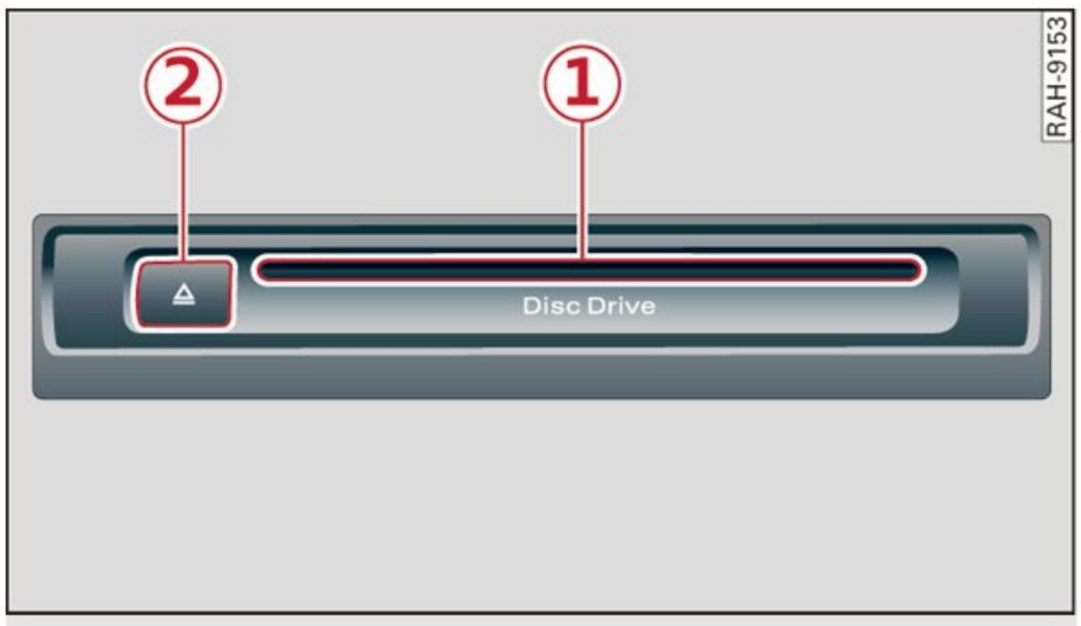


Fig. 163 Glove compartment: DVD drive

Loading a CD/DVD

▸ Slide the CD/DVD straight into the DVD slot ① with the label facing up. The CD/DVD will be automatically pulled in.

Ejecting a CD/DVD

▸ Press the button ②.

The CD/DVD is pulled in again automatically if it is not removed from the DVD slot within approximately ten seconds after ejecting it.

The DVD drive is accessed and operated through the MMI ⇨ *page 237*.

Tips

– Playback cannot be guaranteed with media files that have a high data rate.
– Always read the chapter ⇨ *page 232, General information*.

DVD changer

Applies to: vehicles with DVD changer

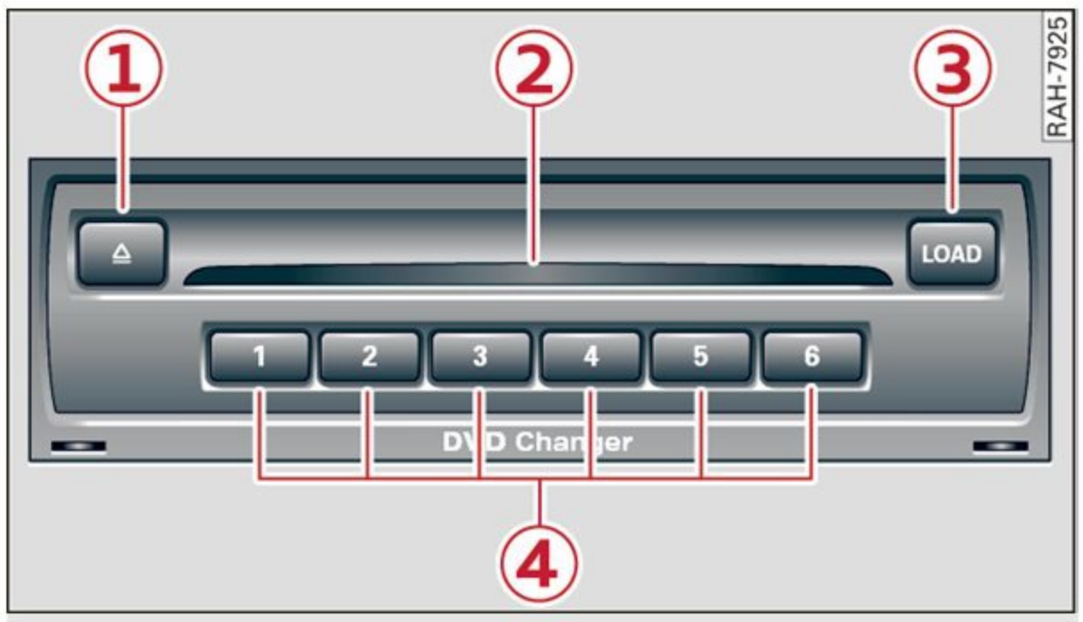


Fig. 164 Between the rear seat backrests: DVD changer

▸ **Loading a CD/DVD**: press the button ③ ⇨ *fig. 164*. The DVD changer is not ready to load if the LED in the DVD slot is red. The LEDs in the DVD slot ② blink green when the DVD changer is ready to load. Slide the CD/DVD straight into the DVD slot ② with the label facing up. The CD/DVD is automatically loaded in the next empty position in the DVD changer. The button for that position ④ lights up.
▸ **Loading multiple CDs/DVDs at the same time**: press and hold the button ③ longer than two seconds. Wait until the green LEDs in the DVD slot ② start to blink. Slide the CDs/DVDs one after the other straight into the slot ② with the label facing up. The CDs/DVDs are automatically loaded in the next empty positions in the DVD changer.
▸ **Loading a CD/DVD into a specific position**: press the button ③. The next empty position ▶

④ blinks. The occupied positions light up and do not blink. Press the button for the desired position and remove the CD/DVD if necessary. Slide the CD/DVD you would like to load straight into the DVD slot ② with the label facing up.

- **Ejecting the current CD/DVD**: press the button ① briefly two times. The CD/DVD is pulled back into the DVD changer automatically if it is not removed from the DVD slot within 30 seconds of ejecting it.
- **Ejecting any CD/DVD**: press the button ① and then press a blinking button ④.
- **Ejecting all CDs**: press and hold the button ① longer.
- **Canceling the loading process**: press the button ③ again during the loading process.

Six CDs/DVDs can be loaded into the DVD changer. For information on the properties of supported data mediums, refer to ⇨ *page 244*.

The DVD drive is accessed and operated through the MMI ⇨ *page 237*.

Tips

Always read the chapter ⇨ *page 232, General information*.

Bluetooth audio player

Applies to: vehicles with Bluetooth audio player

With the Bluetooth audio player, you can play music wirelessly through the MMI from your Bluetooth-capable mobile device (such as a cell phone).

Requirement: the vehicle must be stationary and the ignition must be switched on. The Bluetooth settings will open on your mobile device during the connection setup. The Bluetooth function and visibility of the MMI ⇨ *page 249* and mobile device must be switched on.

Connecting a mobile device

- Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **MEDIA** > **Source** > **Connect external device** > **New connection**. The available Bluetooth devices will be displayed after several seconds.
- Press on the desired mobile device in the list of displayed Bluetooth devices.
- To update the list, press ⟳.
- A PIN for a secure Bluetooth connection will be generated.
- Confirm the PIN on your mobile device. **Or**: enter the PIN for the connection setup on your mobile device. The time allowed for entering the PIN is limited to approximately 30 seconds.

After connecting successfully, the mobile device will be displayed in the **Connected devices** menu as a Bluetooth audio player.

- Playing media: see ⇨ *page 237*.

Tips

- Check for any connection requests on your Bluetooth device.
- Multiple Bluetooth audio players can be connected to the MMI, but only one at a time can be active as a Bluetooth audio player. See ⇨ *page 249*.
- The supported media functions (such as shuffle, list view, categories, search, options) depend on the Bluetooth device being used.
- Note the volume setting on your Bluetooth device. AUDI AG recommends setting your mobile device to the maximum volume when using it as a Bluetooth audio player.
- For more information on supported devices, visit www.audiusa.com/bluetooth or contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Online media

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect Infotainment and online media

You can play and operate various online media services, such as music streaming services, using the MMI.

Requirement: a supported online media service must be available in the country where the vehicle is being operated.

Connecting online media:

- Connect the MMI to the Internet ⇨ *page 198, Audi connect*. ▶

- ▸ Switch on the Wi-Fi hotspot in the MMI ⇨ *page 202, Wi-Fi settings*.
- ▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **MEDIA** > **Source** > **Connect online media**.
- ▸ Switch the Wi-Fi function on in your mobile device and connect it to the MMI Wi-Fi hotspot ⇨ *page 198*.
- ▸ Install and start the myAudi app on your mobile device.
- ▸ Log in to your myAudi account in the myAudi app and select your vehicle.

Your mobile device must be connected to the MMI and must be highlighted. When you press the highlighted device, it will be disconnected.

Starting online media:

- ▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **MEDIA** > **Source**. All online media services supported in your country will be displayed.
- ▸ Press on the desired online media service and follow the system instructions.

WARNING

- – It is only safe to use tablets, laptops, mobile devices and other similar devices when the vehicle is stationary because, like all loose objects, they could be thrown around the inside of the vehicle in a crash and cause serious injuries. Store these types of devices securely while driving.
- – Do not use any wireless devices on the front seats within range of the airbags while driving. Also read and follow the warnings in ⇨ *page 87, Airbag system*.

Note

- – Read the information about Audi connect, and be sure to note the connectivity costs section ⇨ ! *in Using a Wi-Fi hotspot on page 199*.
- – There generally are additional costs when using an online media service account, especially when it is used internationally.

Tips

- – Depending on the Internet connection and network traffic, the connection may disconnected when online media sources are playing.
- – Online media usage depends on the service availability of the third party provider.
- – Audi AG simply makes the access to online media services possible through the MMI and does not take any responsibility for the contents of the online media services.
- – Always read the chapter ⇨ *page 198*.
- – Depending on the mobile device being used, there may be interruptions during media playback and when using the myAudi app. To avoid interruptions when using a mobile device, do not lock the screen on your mobile device and keep the myAudi app in the foreground.

Multimedia connections

USB adapter cable

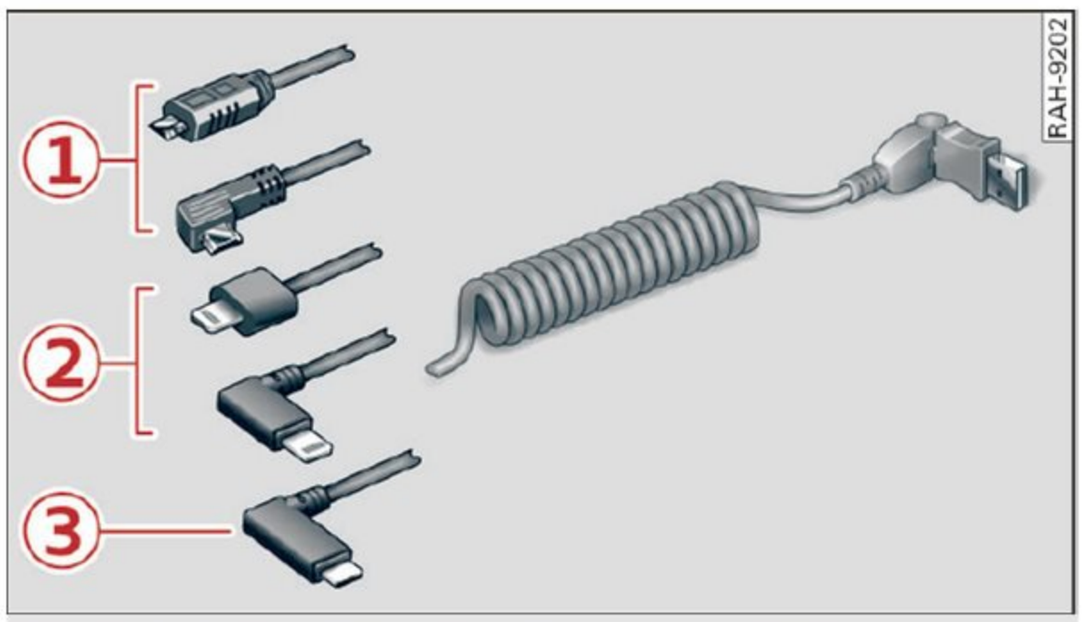


Fig. 165 Audi Genuine Accessories: USB adapter

You can connect your mobile devices through the Audi music interface to the MMI using the USB adapter and charge the battery at the same time.

You can purchase the USB adapter cable from an authorized Audi dealer or at specialty stores:

① USB adapter for devices with a micro USB connection

② USB adapter for devices with an Apple Lightning connection

③ USB adapter for devices with USB type C connection

Note

Handle the USB adapter carefully. Do not allow it to be pinched. ▸

Tips

Mobile devices with an Apple Dock connector can only be charged using a USB adapter designed for devices with an Apple Dock connector. Data cannot be transmitted.

Audi music interface

Connect your mobile devices to the Audi music interface in order to operate them through the MMI and charge the batteries.

The Audi music interface USB ports are located in the storage compartment under the front and rear* center armrest and are labeled with the ⇢ symbol.

Connecting or charging mobile devices using a USB adapter

▸ Connect the matching USB adapter to the Audi music interface USB port and connect it to the mobile device, such as a smartphone.

The battery will charge automatically.

Disconnecting a mobile device from the Audi music interface

▸ Remove the USB adapter cable from the Audi music interface.

Mobile devices connected to the Audi music interface can be started and operated using the MMI ⇨ *page 237*.

Connecting multiple mobile devices: if a mobile device (such as a smartphone) is connected at the respective USB port on the Audi music interface, then all devices can be used as a playback source.

WARNING

Driving requires your complete and undivided attention. As the driver, you have complete responsibility for safety in traffic. Never operate mobile devices while driving, because this increases the risk of an accident.

Note

– Pull the cable out of the Audi music interface carefully so that the USB ports are not damaged.
– Use a USB extension cable to connect devices that have an integrated USB connector (such as a USB stick) to reduce the risk of damage to your USB device and the Audi music interface.
– Extremely high or low temperatures that can occur inside vehicles can damage mobile devices and/or impair their performance. Never leave mobile devices in the vehicle in extremely high or low temperatures.

Tips

– Always follow the information found in ⇨ *page 97*.
– When you switch the ignition off, the USB ports are still supplied with power until the energy management intervenes.
– Do not use an additional adapter cable or USB extension cable to connect mobile devices to the Audi music interface that already have a cable or that must be connected with a USB adapter cable (⇨ *page 235, fig. 165*). Using an additional adapter or US extension cable may impair functionality.
– Functionality is not guaranteed for mobile devices that do not conform to the USB 2.0 specification.
– USB hubs are not supported.
– Video playback through the Audi music interface is not supported on Apple and MTP devices (such as smartphones).
– iPod or iPhone malfunctions also affect the operation of the MMI. Reset your mobile device in these situations.
– Audi recommends updating the iPod or iPhone software to the latest version. Refer to your mobile device owner's manual for more information.
– The USB adapter on the Audi music interface will support iPod touch or iPhone devices from the 5th generation or newer with the lightning connector.
– For more information about the Audi music interface and supported devices, check the Audi database for mobile devices at www.audiusa.com/mp3 or contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Playing media

Media sources

The following sources can be selected depending on the vehicle equipment:

– **SD card** ⇨ *page 232*
– **USB** ⇨ *page 236*
– **DVD drive** ⇨ *page 233*
– **Connect external device**: you can connect external devices via Bluetooth and use the Bluetooth audio player ⇨ *page 234*. Or you can connect an external device directly to the Audi music interface ⇨ *page 236*.
– **Connect online media** ⇨ *page 234*
– **DVD changer** ⇨ *page 233*

Accessing media

Playing media files using the MMI

▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **MEDIA** > **Source** > *a source*. Depending on the connected device or online media service*, the symbol for a source may change. The device name may be displayed (for example: myPhone).
▸ Select a track from the categories in the media center ⇨ *page 238*.

Playing media files using the multifunction steering wheel

Requirement: a media drive must contain media files ⇨ *page 237*.

▸ Select the Radio/Media tab using the multifunction steering wheel.
▸ Turn the left thumbwheel to display the playlist.
▸ To switch to a different source, press the ☰ button.
▸ To select a media file or a source, turn and press the left thumbwheel.
▸ To switch between radio and media, select the ☰ > **Switch to radio**/**Switch to media**.

Playing media files using the Rear Seat Remote

Applies to: vehicles with Rear Seat Remote

Requirement: the Rear Seat Remote must be connected to the MMI ⇨ *page 26*.

▸ Applies to: Rear Seat Remote: Press **MEDIA** on the home screen.

Operation of the available media functions with the Rear Seat Remote is very similar to operation in the MMI ⇨ *page 240*.

Playing media files using the Audi tablet

Applies to: vehicles with Audi tablet

Requirement: the Audi tablet must be connected to the MMI ⇨ *page 33*.

▸ Applies to: Audi tablet: Press **MEDIA** on the home screen.

If a media source is available in the MMI and is supported by the Audi tablet, it can be selected as the media source. Operation of available media functions in the Audi tablet is very similar to operation in the MMI ⇨ *page 240, Media functions*.

Audi tablet media source

Requirement: media files must be stored on the SD card in the Audi tablet or on the internal flash drive.

▸ Applies to: Audi tablet: Select on the home screen: **MEDIA** > **Source** > **Local media source**.
▸ Select a title from the media center ⇨ *page 238*.

Playlists in the Audi tablet media source

▸ Applies to: Audi tablet: Select on the home screen: **MEDIA** > **Source** > **Local media source** > **Playlists**.
▸ **Creating a new playlist**: select: ✎☰ > **Create new playlist** > *enter a name* > **Create**.
▸ **Renaming a playlist**: select: ✎☰ > ✎ > *enter a name* > **Save**.
▸ **Deleting a playlist**: select: ✎☰ > 🗑.
▸ **Adding files to a playlist**: press on a song or an album until the **Options** menu is displayed. Select: **Add to playlist** > *select a list* > **Add**.
▸ **Playing a playlist**: select: *a playlist* > *a song*.

WARNING

Note the safety precautions ⇨ *page 24, Rear Seat Remote* and ⇨ *page 28, Rear Seat Entertainment (Audi tablet)*.

Tips

– For safety reasons, the video image is only displayed when the vehicle is stationary. Only the sound from the video plays while driving.
– Applies to: multifunction steering wheel: Depending on the selected function, operation through the MMI may be required.
– Applies to: Audi tablet
  – In some markets, this function ⇨ *page 242,* **Play on Audi tablet** only supports audio files.
  – The file formats supported by the Audi tablet may differ from the MMI. A message will appear if you attempt to play a file format that is not supported.

Media center

Various categories are available in the media center for selecting media files or browsing through through media sources.

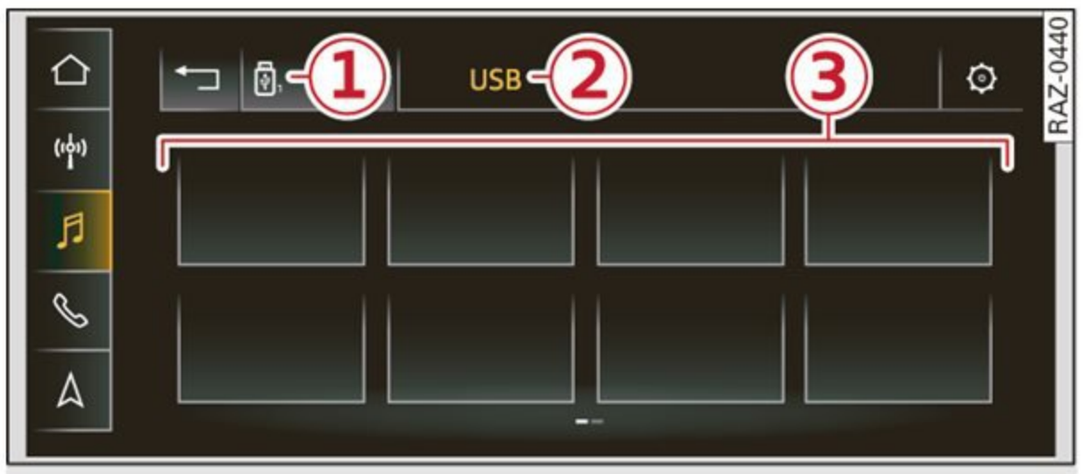


Fig. 166 Upper display: media center view

You can browse through your music collection using the categories in the media center, such as albums. You can browse either through any available source (for example, the SD card) or the active source. While browsing through the media center, the music from the active source will continue to play.

Opening the media center

- Applies to: MMI: Searching any source: select on the home screen: **MEDIA** > **Source** > *a source* > *a category*.
- Searching through the active source: select in the playlist view ⇨ *page 240* > ⊞ > *a category*.

① Source symbol

Symbol for the source you are currently browsing. Depending on the connected device or online media service*, the symbol for a source may change. As an example, ⇨ *fig. 166* shows a USB stick connected to the Audi music interface.

② Source device name

Device name of the source you are currently browsing.

③ Categories

The categories in the media center depend on the source, the mobile device, and the connection type. Only search results within the active source are shown.

Search

If a source supports the search, the category will be displayed. See ⇨ *page 241*.

Last played track

The last played media file will be played.

Artists

All available artists are displayed. Select: *an artist* > *an album* > *a song*.

Playlists

All playlists and smart playlists in the source are displayed. Select: *a playlist* > *a song*.

Smart playlists

– **Last played tracks**: the tracks that were displayed last are displayed.
– **Most played tracks**: the tracks that are played most frequently are displayed.

Directories

The folder structure or track/chapter list is displayed. Select: *a folder* > *a song*. ▶

Compilations

You can control your playlists through the MMI. Select: *a playlist* > *a song*.

Composers

All available composers are displayed. Select: *a composer* > *an album* > *a song*.

Radio

Press on a radio station.

Audio books

You can control your audio books on the MMI. Press on an audio book.

Podcasts

You can control your podcasts through the MMI. Select: *a podcast* > *a podcast episode*.

Genres

All available genres are displayed. Select: *a genre* > *an artist* > *an album* > *a song*.

Videos

All available video files are displayed. Press on a video.

Tracks

All available tracks are displayed. Press on a track.

Albums

All available albums are displayed. Select: *an album* > *a track*.

Note

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect Infotainment

- Cloud services and category radio always require an Internet connection.
- Read the information about Audi connect, and be sure to note the connectivity costs section ⇨ *in Using a Wi-Fi hotspot on page 199*.

Tips

- Only the categories supported by the medium are available.
- For safety reasons, the video image is only displayed when the vehicle is stationary. Only the sound from the video plays while driving.
- When synchronizing a portable device with Cloud services, playlists may display incorrectly in the MMI. Use the media center in the device.

Tips

Applies to: iPod/iPhone

Also read the information on the Audi music interface and the supported devices ⇨ *page 235*.

Media functions

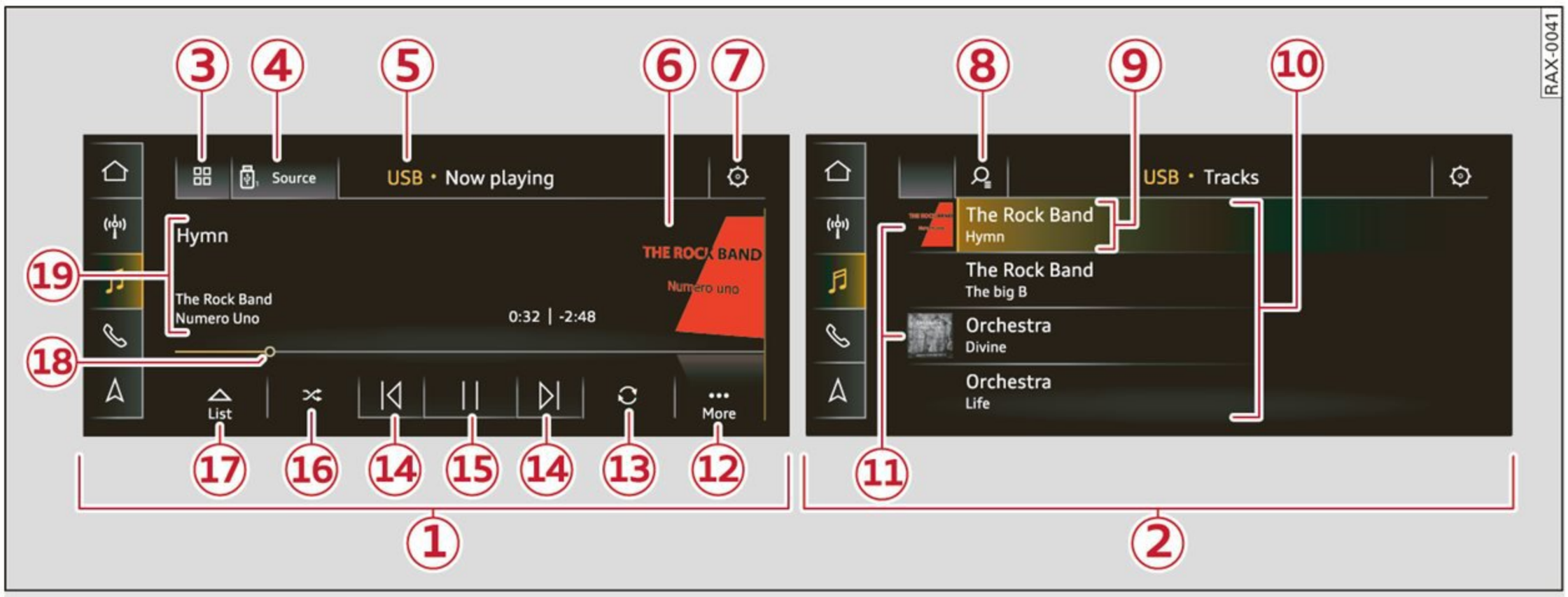


Fig. 167 Upper display: left side: playback view, right side: playlist

- Applies to: MMI: **Opening playback view** ①: select on the home screen: **MEDIA** > **Source** > *a source* > *select a category* (for example, artists > *album*) > *select a track*.
- **Opening a playlist** ②: Select **List** in the playlist view ⑰.

The following table gives an overview of the symbols and media functions.

	Symbol/Description	Description
①	**Playback view**	You can control the central media functions in the playback view.
②	**Playlist**	Displays the playlist. Highlights the track that is currently playing.
③	**Categories** menu	The media center categories will be displayed based on the active source. See ⇨ *page 238*.
④	**Source** button	Displays sources in the Media menu.
⑤	**Source/device name**	Applies to: playback view: Device name of the source that is currently playing.
		Applies to: media center view: Source that you are currently browsing. See ⇨ *page 238*.
⑥	**Album cover** in the playback view	Requirement: a media source with album covers must be selected. **Or**: the covers must be available online ⇨ *page 243*, **Online additional data**. Displays the current album cover. **Displaying playlists**: press on the cover.
⑦	**Settings**	See ⇨ *page 243*
⑧	**Filter**	Filtering the current list.
⑨	**Current track information**	Display of **Track** and **Artist**. Highlights the track that is currently playing.
⑩	**List**	**Browsing in the list**: drag your finger upward or downward. ▶

	Symbol/Description	Description
(11)	**Album cover** in the playlist	Requirement: a media source with album covers must be selected. **Or**: the covers must be available online. ⇨ *page 243,* **Online additional data**. Displays the current album cover. For tracks belonging to one album, the album cover is displayed one time.
(12)	**More**	Accessing options ⇨ *page 242*
(13)	**Off**	**Switching between off/playlist/track**: press (13).
	Playlist	The tracks in the current playlist will repeat continuously in a loop.
	Tracks	The current track will repeat continuously in a loop.
(14)	⏮/⏭	**Selecting the previous/next track (or station/chapter*)**: press ⏮ or ⏭. **Jumping to the beginning of a track**: press on ⏮ after the first ten seconds of play time.
(15)	▷/II	Start or stop playback
(16)	**Shuffle**	When this function is switched on, all files in the playlist will play in random order.
(17)	**List**	The playlist (2) is displayed.
(18)	**Playback position**	You can adjust the playback position using the knob.
(19)	**Info section**	Display of **Track**, **Artist** and **Album**.

DVD functions

Applies to: DVD video

The following functions are available in the playback view:

– Requirement: the vehicle must be stationary and a DVD* must be playing.
– **Display the DVD main menu**: press on the upper display. Press **DVD menu**.
– **Using the DVD main menu**: press the desired function.
– **Switching to the media functions**: press on the upper display. Select: ⮌ > *select a chapter*. **Or**: start the movie in the DVD main menu and press on the upper display.
– **Adjusting the aspect ratio**: press on the upper display. Select: **Aspect ratio** > *an aspect ratio* > **OK**. See ⇨ *table on page 242*.

Tips

– Not all functions are available in every source and on every touch display.
– Applies to: MMI: To select the previous or next track, drag your finger to the left or right in the playback view in the center of the display.

Opening the search

Applies to: vehicles with free text search

You can search in all active sources, for example for tracks and video files.

Opening the search

Requirement: the selected source must support the search function. The media center ⇨ *page 238* is displayed.

▸ Press **Search**.

Entries that contain the entered search term are listed in the results list. Each result is marked with the symbol for a category in the media center ⇨ *page 238*.

You can search for the following categories:

– Artists
– Albums
– Tracks
– Genres
– Videos

Tips

Only files in the active source will be searched.

Options and settings

Options

Context-depending functions and settings may be available depending on the selected source, the connected mobile device, and the connection type.

Requirement: the playback view must be displayed. See (1) ⇨ *page 240, fig. 167*.

▸ Press **More**. **Or**:

Requirement: a list (for example, a playlist (2) ⇨ *page 240, fig. 167*) must be displayed.

▸ Press and hold an element until the **Options** menu is displayed.

Play more like this

The track currently playing is quickly analyzed for features such as artist, genres, mood, and beat, and a smart playlist with similar tracks will be shown.

More from this album

Based on the track that is currently playing, an intelligent playlist with other tracks from this album will be displayed.

More from this artist

Based on the track that is currently playing, an intelligent playlist with other tracks from this artist will be displayed. The system will search for artists in the source that is currently playing.

More from this genre

Based on the track that currently playing, an intelligent playlist with other tracks from this genre will be displayed.

Save as a shortcut

See ⇨ *page 22, Shortcuts*.

Play

The selected track or all tracks in the folder will be displayed.

Play on Audi tablet

Applies to: vehicles with Audi tablet

Playback occurs on the respective Audi tablet*.

Language[1)]

You can set the language manually. The language and audio format options depend on the video DVD.

Subtitles[1)]

You can manually select subtitles for playback. The languages available depend on the DVD.

Aspect ratio

The **Auto** aspect ratio setting is recommended. If you press on an aspect ratio, you will see a preview of the setting on the screen. Press **OK** to apply the selected aspect ratio.

The following table gives an overview of the aspect ratios. The possible aspect ratios depend on the source or video file being played.

Aspect ratio	Description
Auto	The MMI detects the picture format of the source and displays the image in the optimum ratio.
4:3, **16:9**, **Cinema**	The image is fixed in the corresponding ratio. Select one of these options if the image is distorted or a section of the image is cut off or blurry when **Auto** is selected.
Zoom	The image is enlarged to fill the entire display.
Original	The image is displayed in the ratio of the source format. Select this option if the image is distorted or a section of the image is cut off or blurry when **Auto** is selected.

1) Depending on the DVD, this may not be possible during playback.

Settings

▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **MEDIA** > ⚙.

Online additional data

Requirement: the MMI must be connected to the Internet ⇨ *page 198*.

If available, various information about the track currently playing (such as the cover) will be loaded from the Internet when this function is switched on.

DVD playback parental control*

Playback of video DVDs can be restricted based on age restrictions using parental control.

Displaying the parental control menu

– Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **MEDIA** > ⚙ > **DVD playback parental control**.
– Enter the PIN for parental control. The PIN set at the factory is **1234**.
– Press **OK**.

Switching the rating level on and off

– Requirement: the parental control menu must be displayed.
– Select: **Set rating level** > *select a rating level (for example, level 5)* > ⮌. **Or**: to remove all restrictions, select **Off**.
– Eight different protection levels can be set for parental control. If you set the parental control level at Level 5, all DVDs from levels 1-5 can be played. Video DVDs with a higher level will not play.

Changing the PIN

– Requirement: the parental control menu must be displayed.
– Select: **Change PIN** > *enter a new PIN for parental control* > **OK**.
– Repeat the entry and press **OK**.

DVD changer in repeat mode*

Applies to: vehicles with DVD changer

– **One disk**: a CD/DVD that is playing [1] repeats when the end is reached.
– **All disks**: when an audio CD finishes playing, the DVD changer switches to the next occupied DVD slot and starts playback automatically.

Tips

– Not all video DVDs have parental control.
– The protection levels for the parental control are based on the US standards from the Motion Picture Association of America (MPAA). Note that the age levels for video DVDs in European countries may differ.
– PIN entry for parental control will be locked for approximately one minute if you enter the incorrect PIN three times in a row. The PIN can only be reset by an authorized Audi dealer.

1) Video DVDs may function differently.

Supported media and file formats

Overview

The DVD drive, SD card reader, and the USB storage device connection support the following media file properties:*

	Audio files						Video files		
Supported media	**SD/SDHC/SDXC/MMC memory cards**: with a capacity of up to 256 GB **DVD drive**: audio CDs (up to 80 min) with CD text (artist, album, song)*, CD-ROMs with a capacity of up to 700 MB; DVD±R/RW; DVD video; DVD audio with audio tracks that are compatible with a DVD video player; **Audi music interface**: mobile devices (such as an iPod ⇨ *page 235*, MTP player, USB storage device in "USB Device Subclass 1 and 6" that conforms to USB 2.0: USB sticks, USB MP3 players (Plug-and-Play-capable), external USB flash drives and hard drives								
File system	**Memory cards**: exFAT, FAT, FAT32, NTFS **USB storage device**: FAT, FAT32, NTFS **USB storage device partitions (primary/logical***: 2 per USB-connection **CD/DVD file system:** ISO9660, Joliet, UDF								
Metadata	**Album cover**: GIF, JPG, PNG with max. 800x800 px. The album cover from the medium or from Gracenote* is displayed, depending on availability.								
Format	MPEG 1/2 Layer 3	Windows Media Audio 9 and 10	MPEG 2/4	Opus	FLAC	ALAC	MPEG 1/2	MPEG4 AVC (H.264)	Windows Media Video 9
File extension	.mp3	.wma	.m4a; .m4b; .aac	.opus .ogg .oga	.flac	.m4a	.mpg; .mpeg	.mp4; .m4v; .mov; .avi	.wmv; .asf
Playlists	.M3U; .PLS; .WPL; .M3U8; .ASX								
Characteristics	up to maximum 320 kbit/s and 48 kHz sampling frequencies				48 kHz sampling frequency		up to maximum 10 Mbit/s and 1920x1080 px at maximum 30 fps		
Number of files	**DVD drive***: maximum 1,000 files per media source **USB storage device and memory cards**: maximum 50,000 files per medium; maximum 1,000 files per playlist/directory								

Tips

- The media drives do not support the Windows Media Audio 9 Voice format.
- For compressing MP3 files, AUDI AG recommends a bit rate of at least 160 kbit/s. The display showing the remaining play time may differ for audio files with variable bit rate.
- Special characters (such as those in ID3 tag information) may display differently or may not always display, depending on the system language.
- The manufacturer of the storage device can provide information about its "USB Device Subclass".
- Some MTP player functions are not supported, such as rating music tracks and video playback.

DVD changer

Applies to: vehicles with DVD changer

The DVD changer supports the following media: audio CDs (up to 80 min) with CD text (artist, album, track)*, DVD video; DVD audio with audio tracks that are compatible with a DVD video player.

Troubleshooting

The information that follows lists some troubleshooting options. They depend on the equipment.

Problem	Solution
Audi music interface/**Bluetooth audio player**: the mobile device is not supported.	Read the instructions in the chapter ⇨ *page 235, Multimedia connections*/⇨ *page 234, Bluetooth audio player*. You can learn about supported mobile devices in the Audi database for mobile devices at www.audiusa.com/bluetooth.
Audi music interface: the mobile device is not recognized as a source.	For many mobile phones or mobile devices, playback is not possible when the battery level is too low (less than 5% charge level). The mobile device will only be recognized as a media source in the MMI after connecting if the battery charge level is sufficient.
Audi music interface: malfunctions during audio playback through an iPod/iPhone.	The **Bluetooth audio player** function is switched on. Switch this function off ⇨ *page 249* when you are not using the **Bluetooth audio player**.
Audi music interface: audio playback through the connected mobile device is not possible.	Make sure the USB mode *MTP* is selected in the settings on your mobile device.
Bluetooth audio player: interference with track display and audio playback.	Playback interference can occur when using the **Bluetooth audio player** if a music player app from a third party provider is open. AUDI AG recommends using the integrated media player on your Bluetooth device (such as a smartphone).
Online media: connection failed between the MMI and the myAudi app.	To establish a connection to the MMI, the MMI connection switch must be switched on in the myAudi app status screen.
Online media: no playback of online media.	Check if a suitable data plan has been purchased.
Wi-Fi hotspot: your Wi-Fi device is disconnected from the Wi-Fi hotspot.	Make sure the network optimization functions are switched off in the Wi-Fi settings or in the network settings for your Wi-Fi device. For additional information, refer to the user guide for your Wi-Fi device.

Audi smartphone interface

Setup

Applies to: vehicles with Audi smartphone interface

You can connect your smartphone to the MMI with a cable or wirelessly using the Audi smartphone interface. Certain content on your smartphone is adapted in the MMI while driving and can be operated through the MMI.*

Requirement

The vehicle must be stationary and the ignition must be switched on.

An iPhone generation 5 or newer with Lightning connector and iOS 7.1.2 operating system or higher is required. **Or**:

A smartphone with the Android Auto app and Android 5.0 Lollipop operating system or higher is required.

- ▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **Connected devices** > **Audi smartphone interface** > **New connection**.
- ▸ Connect your smartphone to the Audi music interface ⇨ *page 236* using a USB adapter ⇨ *page 235, fig. 165*. **Or**:
- ▸ To connect your iPhone wireless*, switch on the Bluetooth function and Wi-Fi on your iPhone. Open the CarPlay settings in your iPhone. In the MMI, press on your smartphone in the list of displayed devices.
- ▸ To update the list, press ⟳.
- ▸ Follow the system instructions.
- ▸ Pay attention to any additional system prompts on your smartphone, if applicable.

Applies to: MMI: If you declined use of Apple CarPlay or Android Auto the first time you connected your smartphone, then select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **Connected devices** > **Audi smartphone interface** > *a smartphone*.

- ▸ Follow the system instructions.

WARNING

Driving requires your complete and undivided attention. As the driver, you have complete responsibility for safety in traffic. Never operate mobile devices while driving, because this increases the risk of an accident.

Note

Read the information about Audi connect, and be sure to note the connectivity costs section ⇨ *in Using a Wi-Fi hotspot on page 199*.

Tips

– The functions that can be used depend on the following factors, among others:
  – The brand of your smartphone
  – The version of the operating system in your smartphone
  – The software version of the app used
  – The USB adapter cable and correct connection
  – Your cell phone service provider
  – The customized settings on your smartphone
– One of the factors above or a combination of any of them could cause your smartphone to be incompatible with the Audi smartphone interface. Compatibility cannot be guaranteed for all types of smartphones. For more information and assistance, refer to the user guide and the manufacturer of your smartphone.
– Please note that you can only connect your smartphone via the front Audi music interface in order to use the Audi smartphone interface.
– Wireless CarPlay* is not available in all countries.
– If the connected smartphone has voice control, you can operate your smartphone using the external voice recognition system ⇨ *page 38*.
– The menu language shown in the MMI is based on the settings in your smartphone.
– Some MMI functions are not available when there is an active Audi smartphone interface connection.
– You cannot connect any mobile devices via Bluetooth when an Apple CarPlay connection is active. ▶

– Usage of the Audi smartphone interface depends on the availability of services through third party providers.
– AUDI AG merely provides access to third party services through the MMI and does not assume any responsibility for the content of these services.

Troubleshooting

Applies to: vehicles with Audi smartphone interface

The information that follows lists some troubleshooting options. They depend on the equipment.

Problem	Solution
Audi smartphone interface cannot be opened.	Check the battery charge level on your smartphone. Check the USB cable and use a different one if necessary. Check if Android Auto or Apple CarPlay is available in the country where the vehicle is being operated.
	Android Auto: check if the Android Auto app is installed on your smartphone.
Connecting the smartphone to the MMI failed.	Make sure that you are using the correct USB adapter and check if the USB adapter is connected correctly to your smartphone and the Audi music interface ⇨ *page 235*.
	Apple CarPlay: check if Apple CarPlay is activated on your smartphone.
	Android Auto: check in the Android Auto app if Android Auto permits new vehicles.
	Wireless connection: open the settings for Bluetooth and CarPlay on your smartphone. Remove your vehicle. Open the connection manager in the MMI ⇨ *page 249*. Delete your smartphone in the Telephone 1 and Audi smartphone interface submenus. Repeat the connection process. Restart the MMI ⇨ *page 19*. Restart your smartphone.
The smartphone is not automatically detected.	Make sure that you are using the correct USB adapter and check if the USB adapter is connected correctly to your smartphone and the Audi music interface ⇨ *page 235*. Check if the requirements needed to connect a smartphone have been met.

4N0012721BB

Additional settings
System settings

Introduction

General settings are described in this chapter. You can find specific settings in the chapters about those settings. The available settings depend on the vehicle equipment.

Date and time

▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **General** > **Date & time**.

Possible settings:

– **Set date and time automatically**
– **Date**
– **Time**
– **Date format**
– **Use 24h time format**
– **Automatic time zone**
– **Time zone**
– **Automatic daylight saving time**
– **Manual daylight saving time**

Measurement units

▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **General** > **Measurement units**.

Possible settings:

– **Speed**
– **Distance**
– **Temperature**
– **Pressure**
– **Consumption (engine)**
– **Volume**

Language and keyboard

▸ Applies to MMI: Select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **Language & keyboard**.

Language

You can change the languages for the display, navigation announcements, and the voice recognition system.

Keyboard

See ⇨ *page 23*.

Sound

Requirement: an audio source must be selected.

▸ Applies to MMI: Select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **Sound**.

▸ Applies to: Rear Seat Remote/Audi tablet: Select on the home screen: **Sound**.

Possible settings:

– **Treble**
– **Bass**
– **Balance/fader**
– **Speed-dependent volume control**
– **Subwoofer**
– **Surround Level**

Focus

You can optimize the sound distribution for various locations in the vehicle.

3D effect

You can adjust the intensity of the 3D effect. With the **Medium** setting, you will hear an optimal 3D effect for all sources.

Factory settings

Applies to: Rear Seat Remote: You can reset the sound settings.

Announcements and tones

▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **Announcements & tone**.

Possible settings:

– **Volume of announcements**
– **Welcome sound**

WARNING

Adjust the volume of the audio system so that signals from outside the vehicle, such as police and fire sirens, can be heard easily at all times.

Tips

The volume is automatically adjusted to a preset level when the MMI is switched on.

Bluetooth

► Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **Connection settings** > **Bluetooth**

► Applies to: Rear Seat Remote: Select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **Connection** > **Bluetooth**.

Bluetooth

You can select a setting for visibility of the MMI to other Bluetooth devices. To connect a new Bluetooth device, the **Visible** setting must be selected. If **Invisible** is selected, a Bluetooth connection will only be possible with paired devices. If **Off** is selected, no Bluetooth device can be connected.

Bluetooth audio player

When this function is switched on, the profile will load automatically when your Bluetooth audio player is within range.

Bluetooth name

The MMI's Bluetooth name is displayed and can be changed.

Software update

► Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **System maintenance** > **Software update**.

► If necessary, insert a storage medium with the update data into the corresponding drive ⇨ *page 244*.

► Press **Search for updates**.

► Select the corresponding update.

► Press **Next**.

► Follow the instructions in the display.

WARNING

– Perform the installation only when the vehicle is stationary. Otherwise, this increases the risk of an accident

– If the installation fails, contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Note

The connection costs for the software update are included in the Audi connect pricing.

Tips

The length of the process depends on the size of the update.

Factory settings

► Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **System maintenance** > **Restore factory settings**.

► Select the desired functions individually, or

► Select the option **Select all**.

► Press **Apply**. The settings will be reset. The key user will remain stored.

► To also delete the key user, select **Remove key user**.

► To completely delete a smartphone that is paired with the Audi smartphone interface, reset **Audi smartphone interface** and **Bluetooth**.

Tips

– Make sure that not only the settings were deleted but also the stored data, if necessary.

– The system may restart when the settings are reset. This may take a few minutes.

Connected devices

Connection manager

Requirement: the vehicle must be stationary and the ignition must be switched on. ▶

▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **Connected devices**.

Possible menu items:

– **Telephone 1**
– **Telephone 2**
– **Data connection**
– **Audio player**
– **WLAN hotspot**
– **Headset**

myAudi app

This function is available if the myAudi app is installed on your mobile device and started, and if the mobile device is connected with the vehicle's Wi-Fi hotspot.

Audi smartphone interface

You can connect your smartphone to the MMI ⇨ *page 246*.

Note

Always follow the information found in ⇨ *Using a Wi-Fi hotspot on page 199*.

Connection options

Connecting a device

Requirement: Bluetooth visibility must be activated in the MMI ⇨ *page 249* and mobile device.

▸ Applies to: MMI: Select a submenu, such as **Telephone 1**.
▸ To search for and connect your mobile device, press the **New connection** button ⇨ *page 180*.

Selecting a connected device

▸ Applies to: MMI: Select a submenu, such as **Telephone 1**.
▸ Select your mobile device from the list of connected devices. The connection will be made.

Disconnecting a connected device

▸ Applies to: MMI: Select a submenu, such as **Telephone 1**.
▸ Press on the connected mobile device. The selected device will be disconnected from the MMI.

Additional options

Depending on the selected function, additional options may be available.

▸ Applies to: MMI: Press and hold a Bluetooth device until the **Options** menu is displayed.
▸ Select one of the items in the menu.

Bluetooth profiles

You can switch desired profiles on or off.

Favorite*

To set a paired mobile device as the default phone, activate this function.

When the mobile device is in range and the Bluetooth function on the mobile device and in the MMI is switched on, the default phone will be given priority over the other Bluetooth devices and will be connected directly to the MMI.

Legal information

General information

Information on the software licenses can be found online at www.audi.com/softwareinfo.

Information in the MMI

▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **General**.

License subscription

The information about subscriptions is located here.

Legal information

Possible options:

– **Software information**
– **About Audi connect**

Rear Seat Remote

Applies to: vehicles with Rear Seat Remote

▸ Applies to: Rear Seat Remote: Select on the home screen: **SETTINGS**.

Possible options:

– **Software information**
– **Legal information**

Audi smartphone interface

Applies to: vehicles with Audi smartphone interface

Requirement: a smartphone must be connected to the MMI ⇨ *page 246*.

► Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **Connected devices** > **Audi smartphone interface**.
► Press and hold an item until the associated options are displayed.
► Press **Legal notes**.

Instrument cluster

Requirement: the vehicle must be stationary.

► Applies to: vehicles with multifunction steering wheel: Select in the instrument cluster: Vehicle functions tab ⇨ *page 13*.
► Press the ☰ button on the multifunction steering wheel until the display appears.

Possible options:

– **Engine code**
– **Software information**
– **Version information**

Head-up display

Applies to: vehicles with head-up display

► Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **SETTINGS Display & brightness** > **Head-up display** > **Display content** > **Show the license text in the head-up display**. Information on your licenses will be displayed.

4N0012721BB

Checking and Filling

Fuel

Types of gasoline

The correct gasoline grade is stated on the inside of the fuel filler door.

The vehicle is equipped with a catalytic converter and must only be driven with **unleaded gasoline**.

Audi recommends using TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline. For additional information on TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline, visit www.toptiergas.com.

The individual gasoline grades are differentiated by **octane ratings**. This value is given with (R +M)/2 equating to AKI or in RON.

The headings below match the sticker in the fuel filler door.

UNLEADED FUEL ONLY MIN. (R+M)/2 87 Regular / MIN. RON 91 Regular

Use regular gasoline with minimum 87 AKI / 91 RON ⇨ (!).

The maximum engine power is only reached if premium gasoline 91 AKI / 95 RON is used.

UNLEADED FUEL ONLY PREMIUM MIN. (R +M)/2 91 / SUPER MIN. RON 95

Using premium gasoline with minimum 91 AKI / 95 RON is recommended.

If premium gasoline is not available, you can also use regular gasoline 87 AKI / 91 RON. However this does reduce the engine power slightly.

Note

– Filling the tank just one time with leaded fuel or other metallic additives will cause permanent deterioration to the catalytic converter function.
– When gasoline with an octane rating that is too low is used, high speeds or heavy engine load can lead to engine damage.

Tips

The vehicle may be filled with fuel that has a higher octane rating than what is required by the engine.

Gasoline mixture

Gasoline with alcohol or MTBE (Methyl-Tert-Butyl-Ether)

You can use unleaded gasoline mixed with alcohol or MTBE (generally labeled as oxygenated compounds) as long as the fuel meets the following conditions:

Gasoline with methanol content (methyl alcohol or methanol)

– Anti-Knock Index is at least 87 AKI
– No more than 3% methanol
– More than 2% solvent

Gasoline with ethanol content (ethyl alcohol or ethanol)

– Anti-Knock Index is at least 87 AKI
– No more than 15% ethanol

Gasoline with MTBE content

– Anti-Knock Index is at least 87 AKI
– No more than 15% MTBE

Gasoline adapted to the season

Many gasoline fuels are adapted to the seasons. When the season changes, we recommend refueling at high-traffic gas stations. It is more likely that the gasoline will be suitable for the season there.

Note

– Gasoline with methanol content that does not meet the specified conditions may cause corrosion damage and damage to plastic or rubber components in the fuel system.
– Do not use gasoline that does not meet the specifications.
– If you are unable to find out if a specific gasoline mixture meets the specifications, ask the gas station operator or their fuel supplier.

– Do not use any gasoline mixture whose composition cannot be identified.
– Audi does not assume any responsibility for damage to the fuel system or for performance problems caused by using gasoline mixtures different from those specified. This type of damage also does not fall under the New Vehicle Limited Warranty or under the emissions control system warranty.
– If you notice a higher fuel consumption or poor handling or performance problems due to such gasoline mixtures, we recommend fueling with unblended gasoline.

Gasoline additives

An important issue for many automobile manufacturers is combustion residue in the engine that results from the use of certain fuels.

Although types of gasoline differ depending on the manufacturer, there are similarities. Certain substances in the gasoline may cause deposits in the engine. Additives in the gasoline that should keep the engine and fuel system clean do not all function equally.

Audi recommends using TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline. For additional information on TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline, visit www.toptiergas.com.

If you use incorrect fuels over a long period of time, the maximum engine performance may be impaired by combustion residue.

Note

Damage or malfunctions caused by the use of incorrect types of gasoline are not covered by the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

Refueling

Fueling procedure



Fig. 168 Right rear side of the vehicle: opening the fuel filler door

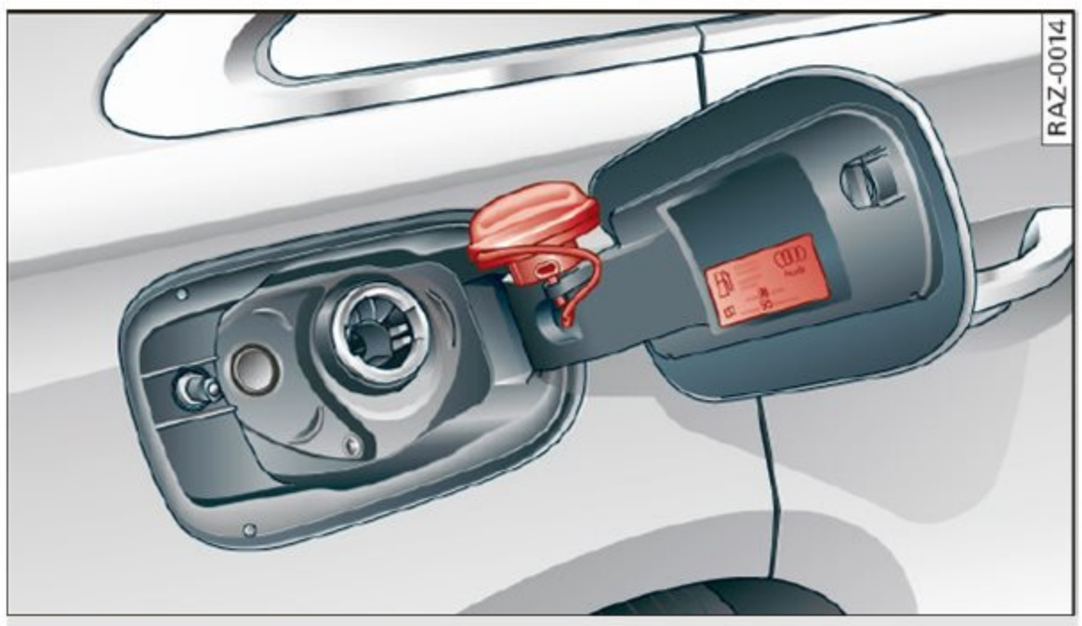


Fig. 169 Fuel filler door with attached fuel cap

The fuel filler door is unlocked or locked by the central locking system.

- ▸ Press on the left side of the fuel filler door to open it ⇨ *fig. 168*.
- ▸ Unscrew the tank cap counterclockwise.
- ▸ Place the cap from above on the open fuel filler door ⇨ *fig. 169*.
- ▸ Insert the fuel pump nozzle all the way into the fuel filler neck.
- ▸ Begin fueling. Once the fuel pump nozzle turns off the first time, the fuel tank is full. Do not continue fueling, or else the expansion space in the tank will be filled with fuel.
- ▸ After the fuel pump has switched off, wait five seconds before removing the nozzle to allow the rest of the fuel to finish dripping into the fuel tank.
- ▸ Turn the fuel cap clockwise until it clicks into place.
- ▸ Close the fuel filler door and then press on the left side until it latches.

The correct fuel type for your vehicle can be found on a label located on the inside of the fuel filler door. For additional information on fuel, see ⇨ *page 252*.

For the tank capacity in your vehicle, refer to the Technical Data ⇨ *page 319*.

To reduce the risk of fuel leaking out or vapors escaping, make sure that the fuel tank is closed correctly. Otherwise the  [1)] indicator light will turn on.

If the central locking system malfunctions, there is a fuel filler door emergency release ⇨ *page 255*.

Messages

Please refuel

If the indicator light turns on for the first time and the message appears, there are about 2.1 gallons (8 liters) of fuel left in the tank.

Please refuel immediately

If the indicator light turns on and this message appears, the fuel tank is almost empty. Refuel the vehicle immediately.

Tank system: malfunction! Please contact Service

There is a malfunction in the fuel tank system. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

WARNING

Improper fueling procedures and improper handling of fuel can lead to explosions, fires, severe burns, and other injuries.

- Do not smoke. Keep away from open flames.
- The ignition must be switched off when refueling.
- Mobile devices, radio devices, and other radio equipment should always be switched off when refueling. Electromagnetic rays could cause sparks and start a fire.
- If you do not insert the fuel pump nozzle all the way into the filler tube, then fuel can leak out. Spilled fuel can ignite and start a fire.
- Never get into the vehicle when refueling. If there is an exceptional situation where you must enter the vehicle, close the door and touch a metal surface before touching the fuel pump nozzle again. This will reduce the risk of electrostatic discharge that can cause flying sparks. Sparks can start a fire when refueling.

WARNING

Transporting fuel containers inside the vehicle is not recommended. Fuel could leak out of the container and ignite, especially during an accident. This can cause explosions, fires, and injuries.

- If you must transport fuel in a fuel container, note the following:
  - Always place the fuel container on the ground before filling. Never fill the fuel container with fuel while it is inside or on the vehicle. Electrostatic discharge can occur while refueling and the fuel vapors could ignite.
  - When using fuel containers made of metal, the fuel pump nozzle must always remain in contact with the container to reduce the risk of static charge.
  - Insert the fuel pump nozzle as far as possible into the filler opening while refueling.
  - Follow the applicable legal regulations in the country where you are driving when using, storing and transporting fuel containers.
  - Make sure that the fuel container meets the industry standards, for example ANSI or ASTM F852-86.

1) Depending on the engine and country

Note

– Remove fuel that has overflowed onto any vehicle components immediately to reduce the risk of damage to the vehicle.
– Never drive until the fuel tank is completely empty. The irregular supply of fuel that results from that can cause engine misfires. Uncombusted fuel may enter the exhaust system and increase the risk of damage to the catalytic converter.

For the sake of the environment

Do not overfill the fuel tank, or fuel could leak out when the vehicle is warming up.

Tips

The fuel filler door on your vehicle does not lock if you lock the vehicle from the inside using the central locking switch.

Fuel filler door emergency release

If the central locking system malfunctions, the fuel filler door can be unlocked manually.



Fig. 170 Right cover in the luggage compartment: removing the cover

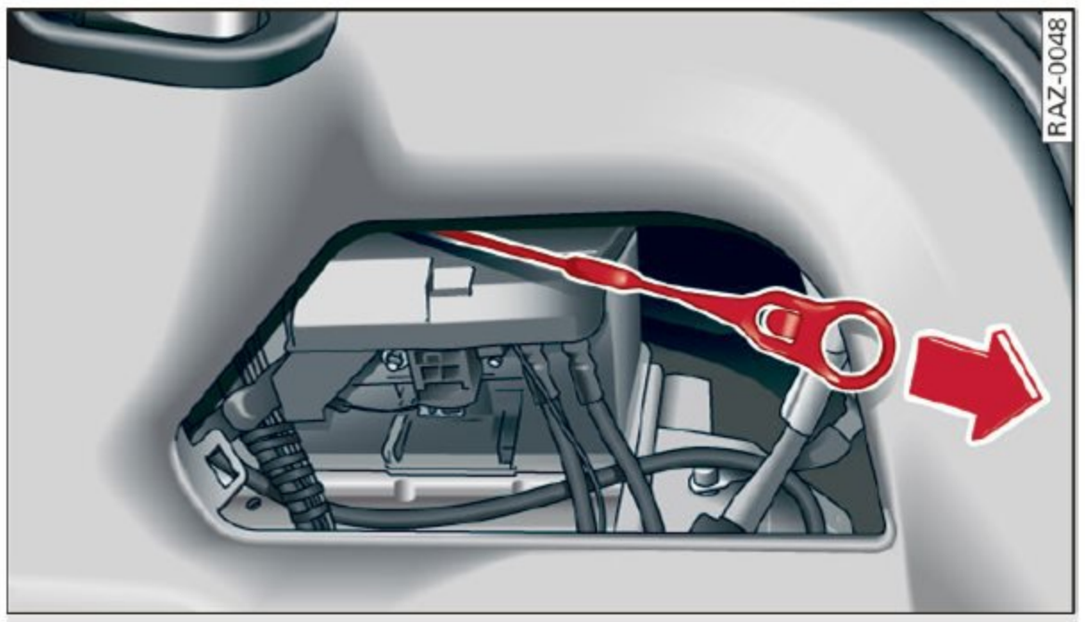


Fig. 171 Luggage compartment: fuel filler door emergency release

The emergency opening mechanism is located behind the right cover in the luggage compartment.

▸ Remove the screwdriver from the vehicle tool kit ⇨ *page 295*.
▸ Carefully insert the flat side of the screwdriver from below into the center of the top slot in the cover ⇨ *fig. 170*.
▸ Use the screwdriver to pull the cover toward the center of the vehicle and remove the cover.
▸ To unlock the fuel filler door, loosen the red loop from the retainer and then pull on the loop carefully ⇨ *fig. 171* ⇨ (!).
▸ Press on the left side of the fuel filler door to open it ⇨ *page 253, fig. 168*.

Note

Only pull on the loop until you feel resistance. You will not hear it release. If you continue to pull, you could damage the emergency release mechanism.

Catalytic converter

The vehicle may only be driven with unleaded gasoline, or the catalytic converter will be destroyed.

Never drive until the tank is completely empty. The irregular supply of fuel that results from that can cause engine misfires. Uncombusted fuel could enter the exhaust system, which could cause overheating and damage to the catalytic converter. ▶

Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL)

If the  indicator light blinks or turns on, there is a malfunction that is causing poor emissions quality and that could damage the catalytic converter. Drive slowly to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction corrected.

The indicator light can also turn on if the fuel filler cap is not closed correctly ⇨ *page 253*[1)].

WARNING

The temperature of the exhaust system is high, both when driving and after stopping the engine.

- Never touch the exhaust tail pipes once they have become hot. This could result in burns.
- Do not park your vehicle over flammable materials such as grass or leaves because the high temperature of the emissions system could start a fire.
- Do not apply underbody protectant in the exhaust system area, because this increases the risk of fire.

Engine compartment

General information

Special care is required if you are working in the engine compartment

For work in the engine compartment, such as checking and filling fluids, there is a risk of injury, scalding, accidents, and burns. For this reason, follow all the warnings and general safety precautions provided in the following information. The engine compartment is a dangerous area in the vehicle. ⇨ ⚠.

WARNING

- Turn the engine off.
- Switch the ignition off.
- Set the parking brake.
- Select the “P” (Park) selector lever position.
- Allow the engine to cool.

WARNING

- Keep children away from the engine compartment.
- Never spill fluids on a hot engine. These fluids (such as the freeze protection contained in the coolant) can catch fire.
- Avoid short circuits in the electrical system.
- Never reach into the radiator fan. The fan is temperature-controlled and can turn on suddenly, even when the ignition is switched off.
- Never open the hood when there is steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment, because there is a risk that you could be burned. Wait until no steam or coolant is escaping.
- Never open the cap on the coolant expansion tank when the engine is warm. The cooling system is under pressure.
- To protect your face, hands, and arms from hot steam or coolant, cover the cap with a thick cloth when opening.
- Do not remove the engine cover under any circumstances. This increases the risk of burns.
- Due to the risk of electric shock, never touch the ignition cable or other components in the electronic high-voltage ignition system when the engine is running or is starting.
- If a gear is engaged while the vehicle is stationary and the engine is running, do not press the accelerator pedal inadvertently. Pressing the accelerator pedal will cause the vehicle to move, and this could result in an accident.
- If inspections or repairs must be performed while the engine is running, moving components (such as the ribbed belt, generator, and radiator fan) pose an additional risk.
- Set the parking brake first and select the “P” (Park) selector lever position.
- Always make sure that no parts of the body, jewelry, ties, loose clothing, and long hair can be caught in moving engine components. Before any work, always remove any jewelry and ties, tie back long ▶

1) Depending on the engine and country

hair, and make sure all clothing fits close to the body to to reduce the risk of anything becoming caught in engine components.

– Pay attention to the following warnings listed when work on the fuel system or on the electrical equipment is required.
  – Do not smoke.
  – Never work near open flames.
  – Always have a working fire extinguisher nearby.
– All work on the battery or electrical system in your vehicle can result in injuries, chemical burns, accidents, or burns. Because of this, all work must be performed **only** by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
– Limit your exposure to exhaust and chemicals to as short a time as possible.

WARNING

California Proposition 65 Warning:

– Engine exhaust, some of its constituents, and certain vehicle components contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects and reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm.
– Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive harms. Wash hands after handling.

Note

When filling fluids, be sure not to add any fluids to the wrong reservoirs. Otherwise severe malfunctions and engine damage will occur.

For the sake of the environment

You should regularly check the ground under your vehicle in order to detect leaks quickly. If there are visible spots from oil or other fluids, bring your vehicle to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to be checked.

Opening and closing the hood

The hood is released from inside the vehicle.

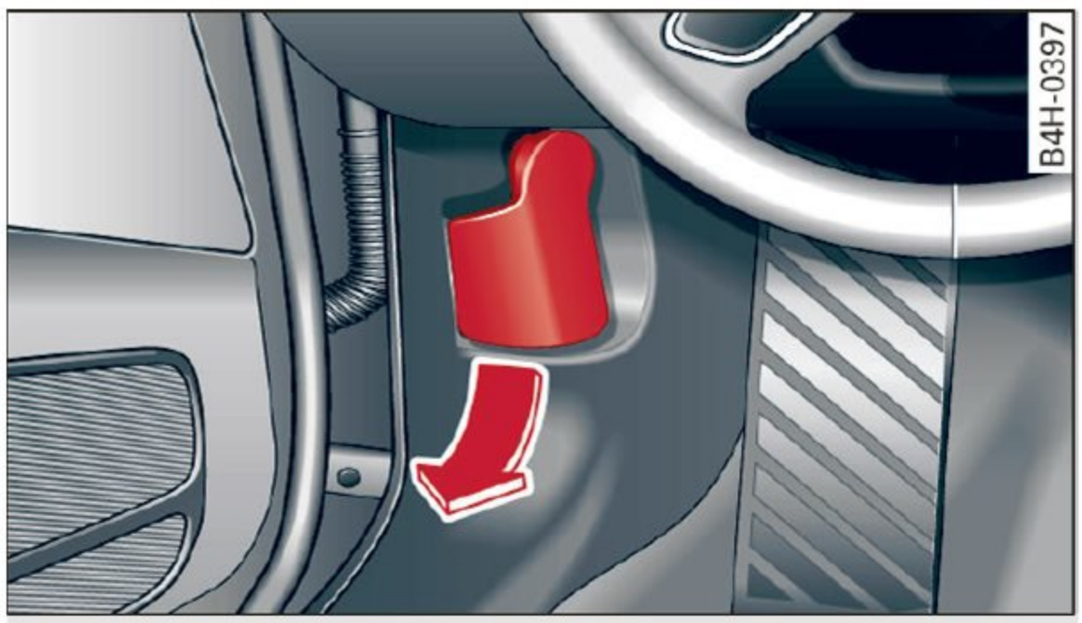


Fig. 172 Footwell: release lever



Fig. 173 Unlocked hood: lever

Make sure the wiper arms are not raised up from the windshield. Otherwise the paint could be damaged.

Opening the hood

- ▸ With the door open, pull the lever below the instrument panel in the direction of the arrow ⇨ *fig. 172*.
- ▸ Raise the hood slightly ⇨ *page 256*.
- ▸ Press the lever ⇨ *fig. 173* in the direction of the arrow. This releases the hooks.
- ▸ Open the hood.

Closing the hood

- ▸ Push the hood down until you override the force of the strut.
- ▸ Let the hood fall lightly into the latch. *Do not press it in.* ⇨ ⚠.

Message

Warning! Hood is not locked. Stop vehicle and check the lock

The hood latch is not locked correctly. Stop immediately and close the hood.

WARNING

– Never open the hood when there is steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment, because there is a risk that you could be burned. Wait until no steam or coolant is escaping.

– For safety reasons, the hood must always be latched securely while driving. Because of this, always check the hood after closing it to make sure it is latched correctly. The hood is latched if the front corners cannot be lifted.

– If you notice that the hood is not latched while you are driving, stop immediately and close it, because driving when the hood is not latched increases the risk of an accident.

Engine compartment overview

The most important check points.

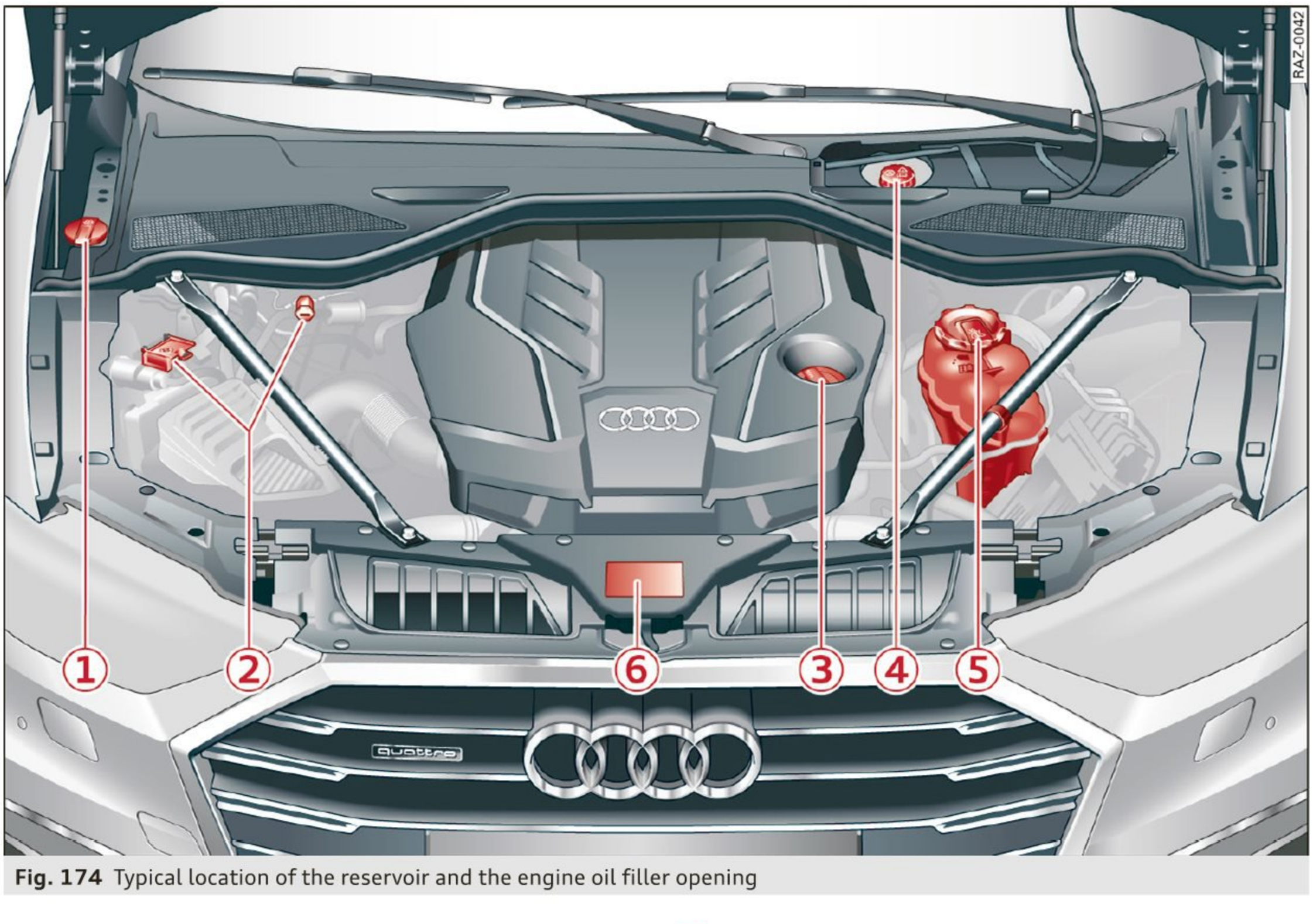


Fig. 174 Typical location of the reservoir and the engine oil filler opening

Follow the safety precautions ⇨ *page 256*.

① Washer fluid reservoir (💧) ⇨ *page 267*

② Jump start point (+) under a cover, (-) with hex head screw ⇨ *page 266, Charging the 12 Volt vehicle battery*, ⇨ *page 301, Jump starting*

③ Engine oil filler opening (🛢) ⇨ *page 260*

④ Brake fluid reservoir (🛞) under a cover ⇨ *page 264*

⑤ Coolant expansion tank (🌡) ⇨ *page 263*

⑥ Engine oil label* with VW standard ⇨ *page 259*

The engine oil filler opening may be located in a different area depending on the specific engine.

Engine oil

If the engine oil level is too low

If you need to add engine oil, use an oil that is listed on the sticker. The sticker is located at the front of the engine compartment ⇨ *page 258, fig. 174*.

If the recommended engine oil is not available, **in an emergency** you may add a maximum of 1 quart (1 liter) of ACEA C3 or API SN engine oil **one time** until the next oil change.

For more information on the correct engine oil for your vehicle, contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. Have the oil changed by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Service Facility.

Audi recommends
Castrol EDGE Professional
Audi recommends using the LongLife high-performance engine oil from Audi Genuine Parts.

Messages

Engine oil pressure

Turn off engine. Oil pressure too low

Stop driving and switch the engine off. Check the engine oil level ⇨ *page 260*.

– If the engine oil level is too low, add engine oil ⇨ *page 260*. Only continue driving once the indicator light turns off.
– If the engine oil level is correct and the indicator light still turns on, turn the engine off and do not continue driving. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Engine oil level

Please add oil immediately.

Stop driving and switch the engine off. Check the engine oil level ⇨ *page 260* and add engine oil immediately ⇨ *page 260*.

Add max. x qt (x l) oil. You can continue driving

Add the amount of oil shown immediately ⇨ *page 260*.

Reducing the oil level

Please reduce oil level

There is too much oil in the engine and there is a risk of damaging the catalytic converter or engine. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have engine oil extracted if necessary. Avoid high engine speeds, full acceleration, and heavy engine loads.

Engine oil sensor

Oil level sensor: oil change necessary. Please contact Service

Fuel has entered the engine oil. This will cause the engine oil level to rise slowly and the engine oil quality to decrease. Do not extract engine oil to reduce the level, because this will increase the risk of engine damage. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have engine oil extracted.

Oil level system: malfunction! Please contact Service

The sensor that checks the engine oil level has malfunctioned. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Oil pressure sensor: malfunction! Please contact Service

The sensor that checks the engine oil pressure has malfunctioned. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Engine warm-up request

Please drive to warm up engine

Fuel has entered the engine oil, either due to low outside temperatures or frequent short drives. Drive until the engine is warm so that the fuel in the engine oil will evaporate. Avoid high engine speeds, full accelerating, and heavy engine loads when doing this. ▶

4N0012721BB

Tips

The oil pressure warning is not an oil level indicator. Always check the oil level regularly.

Checking the engine oil level

The engine oil level can be checked in the MMI.

Follow the safety precautions ⇨ *in General information on page 256*.

- ▸ Park the vehicle on a level surface.
- ▸ Shut the engine off when it is warm.
- ▸ Switch only the ignition back on.
- ▸ Wait approximately two minutes.
- ▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Settings & Service** > **Oil level**.
- ▸ Applies to: Audi tablet: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Oil level**.
- ▸ Read the oil level in the display. Add engine oil if the bar in the oil level indicator is just below "min" ⇨ *page 260*.

Note

If the engine oil level is too low or too high, there is a risk of engine damage.

Tips

The oil level indicator in the display is only an informational display. If the oil level is too low, a minimum oil warning appears in the instrument cluster. Add oil and close the hood. The current oil level will be displayed on the MMI the next time the ignition is switched on.

Tips

The engine oil consumption may be up to 0.5 quart/600 miles (0.5 liter/1,000 km), depending on driving style and operating conditions. Consumption may be higher during the first 3,000 miles (5,000 km). The engine oil level must be checked regularly. It is best to check each time you refuel your vehicle and before long drives.

– Because of the lubrication and cooling of the engine, combustion engines consume oil. The oil consumption varies depending on the engine and may change during the service life of the engine. Engines generally consume more oil at the beginning during the break-in period. Then oil consumption stabilizes after the break-in period.
– Under normal conditions, oil consumption depends on the quality and viscosity of the oil, the engine RPM, the climate conditions, and the road conditions. The dilution of oil from condensation or fuel residue as well as the age of the oil also play a role. Because engine wear increases with mileage, oil consumption will increase again over time until it may be necessary to replace worn components.
– Because all these variables play a role, it is not possible to define an oil consumption standard. Therefore, the oil level must be checked regularly.
– If you believe that your engine has increased its oil consumption, contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to determine the cause. Please note that an exact oil consumption measurement must be done with the necessary care and accuracy and may take time. An authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility is trained in accurately measuring the oil consumption.
– You can find information on engine oil and engine oil capacities for the USA at www.audiusa.com/help/maintenance, or for Canada at www.audi.ca/ca/web/en/customer-area/care-and-maintenance/audi-service-schedules.html, or call 800-822-2834.

Adding engine oil

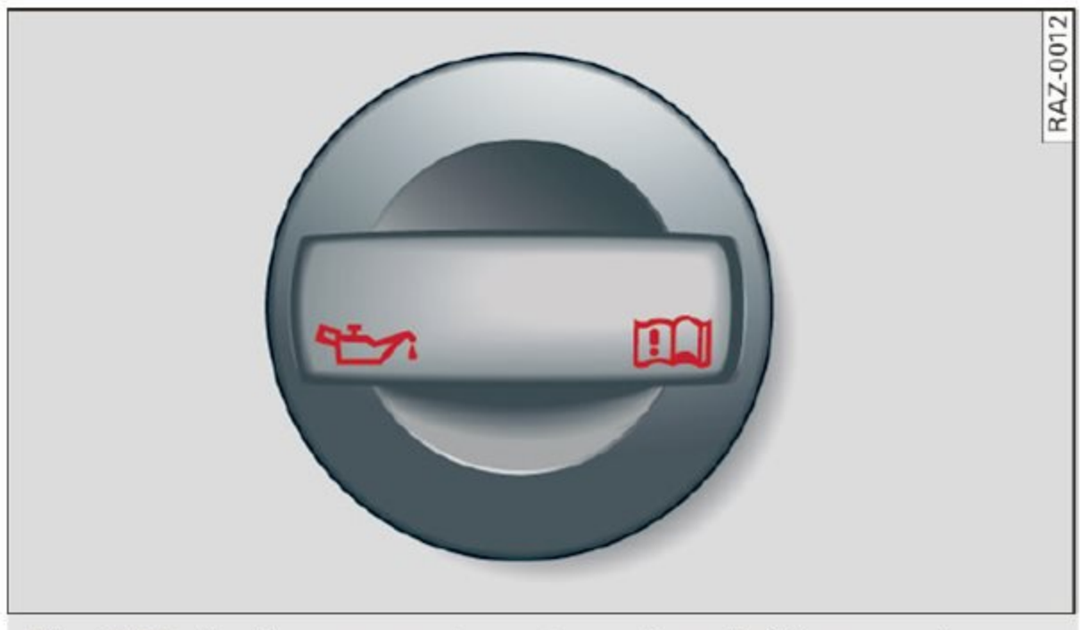


Fig. 175 Engine compartment: engine oil filler opening cover

Follow the safety precautions ⇨ *page 256, General information*.

- ▸ Turn the engine off.
- ▸ Open the hood ⇨ *page 257*.
- ▸ Unscrew the cap for the engine oil filler opening ⇨ *fig. 175*.
- ▸ Carefully add 0.5 quart (0.5 liter) of the correct oil ⇨ *page 259*.
- ▸ Close the engine oil filler opening cap.
- ▸ Close the hood ⇨ *page 257*.
- ▸ Restart the ignition after two minutes and read the current oil level in the MMI ⇨ *page 260, Checking the engine oil level*.
- ▸ Add more oil if necessary.

WARNING

– When adding oil, do not let oil drip onto hot engine components. This increases the risk of a fire.
– You must close the cap on the oil filler opening correctly so that oil does not leak out onto the hot engine and exhaust system when the engine is running, because this is a fire hazard.
– Always clean skin thoroughly if it comes into contact with engine oil.
– Engine oil is poisonous and must be kept out of reach of children.
– Store the engine oil securely in the original container.

Note

– The New Vehicle Limited Warranty does not cover damage or malfunctions if the recommended intended use of the vehicle and maintenance measures listed in the Audi Owner's Manual and the Warranty & Maintenance Booklet were not followed.
– Only use high-grade engine oil that explicitly meets the Audi oil quality standard for your vehicle. Using another oil may cause severe vehicle damage.
– Do not mix any additional lubricants into the engine oil. Damage caused by such additives is not covered by the warranty.

For the sake of the environment

– Oil should never enter the sewer system or come into contact with the ground.
– Follow the legal regulations in the country where you are located when disposing of empty oil containers.

Changing engine oil

We recommend having the oil changed at an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Follow the safety precautions ⇨ *page 256, General information*.

The engine oil must be changed at the intervals specified in the Warranty & Maintenance Booklet. This is very important because the lubrication function of the oil gradually declines during regular vehicle operation.

The engine oil should be changed more frequently under certain circumstances. Have the oil changed more frequently if you often drive short distances, your vehicle is predominantly in stop-and-go traffic situations, is in very dusty environments, or is operated for long periods of time in temperatures below zero.

Cleansing additives in the oil make fresh oil appear darker after the engine has run briefly. This is normal and no reason to change the engine oil more frequently than recommended.

Because correctly disposing of engine oil is difficult and special tools and technical knowledge are needed for an oil change, having your engine oil changed by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility is recommended.

If you change the engine oil yourself, please note the following important information:

WARNING

If you change the engine oil on the vehicle yourself, the following precautions must be followed:
– Wear protective eyewear.
– Due to the risk of scalding, allow the engine to cool down sufficiently. ▶

- Maintain enough distance when you are removing the oil drain plug. While doing this, keep your forearm parallel to the ground to reduce the risk of hot oil dripping down your arm.
- Drain the oil into a container designed for this purpose that is large enough to hold the full amount of oil in your engine.
- Engine oil is poisonous. Always store out of reach of children.
- Prolonged contact of used engine oil with the skin may cause skin damage. Always wash oil off immediately with soap and water to protect your skin.

Note

Do not mix any additives with the engine oil. Additives may cause engine damage that is not covered by your New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

For the sake of the environment

- Before changing the engine oil, make sure you can dispose of the used engine oil correctly.
- Engine oil must always be disposed of correctly. Do not dump it in the yard, in the forest, or in open water, river channels, or sewers.
- Have your used engine oil recycled by bringing it to a used oil collection site or contact a gas station.

Cooling system

Coolant

The engine cooling system is filled with a mixture of purified water and coolant additive at the factory. This coolant must not be not changed.

The coolant level is monitored using the indicator light. However, occasionally checking the coolant level manually is recommended.

If you must add coolant, use a mixture of water and coolant additive. Mixing the coolant additive with distilled water is recommended.

Messages

Turn off engine and check coolant level! See owner's manual

The coolant level is too low.

Stop driving and switch the engine off. Check the coolant level ⇨ *page 263*.

- If the coolant level is too low, add coolant ⇨ *page 263*. Only continue driving once the indicator light turns off.

Coolant temperature: too high. Let engine run while vehicle is stationary

Let the engine run at idle for a few minutes to cool off, until the indicator light turns off.

- If the indicator light does not turn off, do not continue driving the vehicle. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Coolant additive

The coolant additive is made of anti-freezing and corrosion protection agents. Only use the following coolant additives. These additives may be mixed with each other.

Coolant additive	Specification
G12evo	**TL 774 L**
G12++	TL 774 G
G13	TL 774 J

The amount of coolant additive that needs to be mixed with water depends on the climate where the vehicle will be operated. If the coolant additive percentage is too low, the coolant can freeze and damage the engine.

	Coolant additive	Freeze protection
Warm regions	min. 40% max. 45%	min. -13 °F (-25 °C)
Cold regions	min. 50% max. 55%	max. -40 °F (-40 °C)

Note

- Before winter weather begins, have an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi ▶

Service Facility check if the coolant additive in your vehicle matches the percentage appropriate for the climate. This is especially important when driving in colder climates.
– If the appropriate coolant additive is not available in an emergency, do not add any other additive. You could damage the engine. If this happens, only use water and restore the correct mixture ratio with the specified coolant additive as soon as possible.
– Only refill with new coolant.
– Radiator sealant must not be mixed with the coolant.

Adding coolant

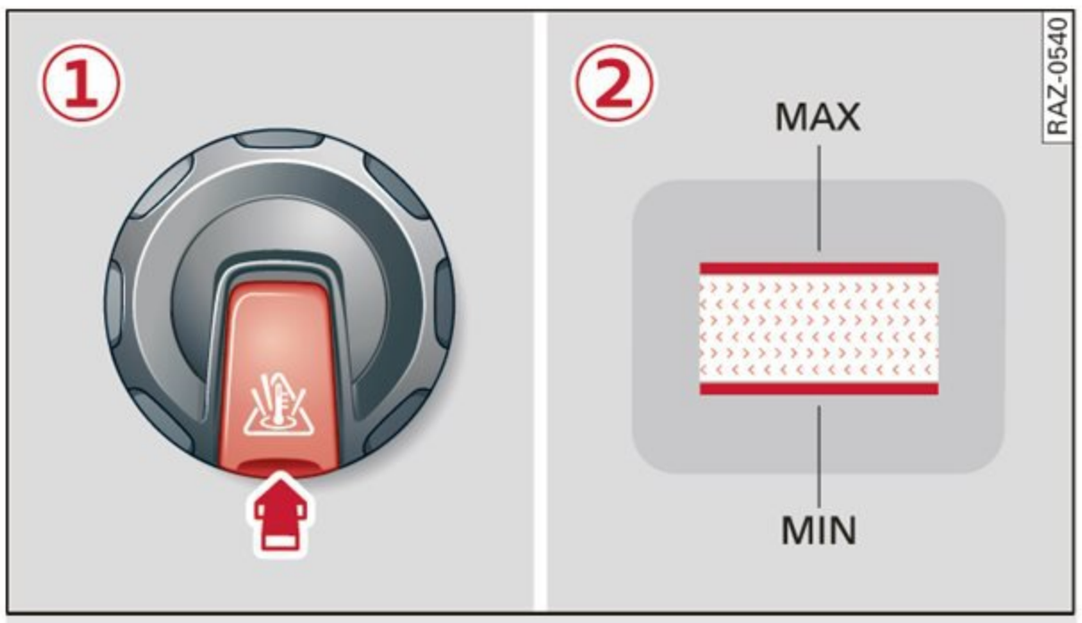


Fig. 176 Engine compartment - coolant expansion tank (diagram): ① cover with release button; ② markings

Follow the safety precautions ⇨ *page 256, General information*.

Checking the engine coolant level

- ▸ Park the vehicle on a level surface.
- ▸ Switch the ignition off.
- ▸ Read the coolant level on the coolant expansion tank ⇨ *page 258, fig. 174*. The coolant level must be between the markings ② ⇨ *fig. 176* when the engine is cold. When the engine is warm it can be slightly above the upper marking.

Adding coolant

Requirement: there must be a residual amount of coolant in the expansion tank ⇨ (!).

- ▸ Allow the engine to cool.
- ▸ Place a large, thick towel on the coolant expansion tank cover.
- ▸ Push the release button ① ⇨ *fig. 176* on the cap and carefully turn it to the left until you feel resistance ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Push the release button again and remove the cap completely.
- ▸ Add coolant mixed in the correct ratio ⇨ *page 262* up to the MAX marking.
- ▸ Make sure that the fluid level remains stable. Add more coolant if necessary.
- ▸ Turn the cap to the right to tighten it until you feel resistance a second time.

Coolant loss usually indicates that there is a leak. Immediately drive your vehicle to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility and have the cooling system inspected. If the cooling system is not leaking, coolant loss can result from the coolant boiling due overheating and then being forced out of the cooling system.

⚠ WARNING

– The engine compartment in any vehicle can be a dangerous area. Stop the engine and allow it to cool before working in the engine compartment. Always follow the information found in ⇨ *page 256, General information*.
– Never open the hood if you can see or hear steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment. This increases the risk of burns. The cooling system is under pressure. When you no longer see or hear steam or coolant escaping, you may open the engine compartment with caution.
– When working in the engine compartment, remember that the radiator fan can switch on even if the ignition is switched off, which increases the risk of injury.
– Coolant additive and coolant can be dangerous to your health. For this reason, store the coolant in the original container and away from children. There is a risk of poisoning.

(!) Note

Do not add coolant if the expansion tank is empty. Air could enter the cooling system and damage the engine. If this is the case, do not continue driving. See an authorized Audi ▶

dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Brake fluid

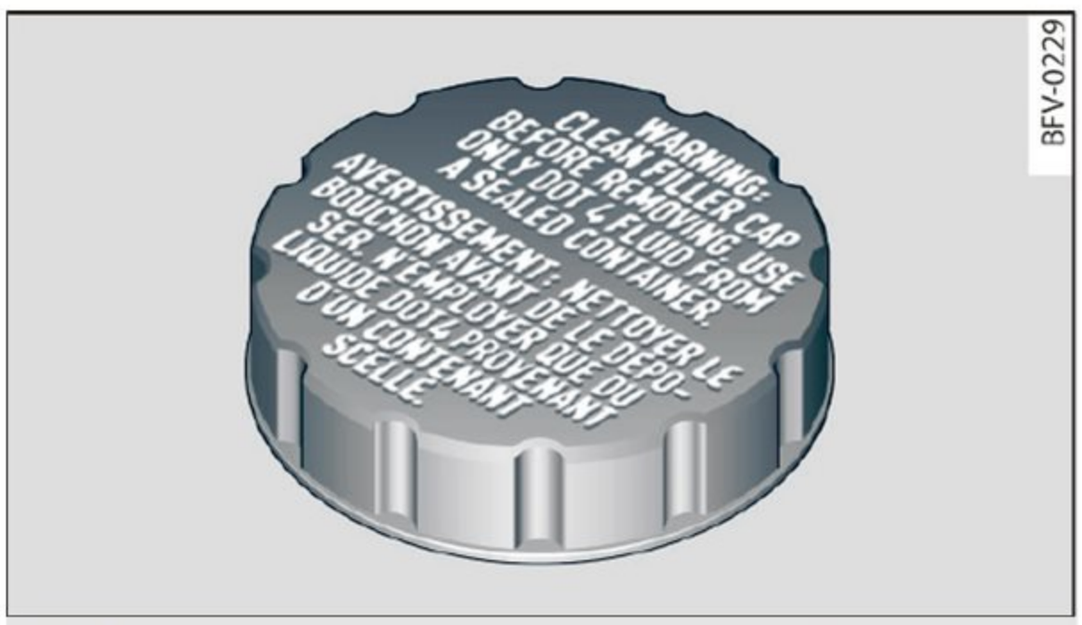


Fig. 177 Engine compartment: cap on brake fluid reservoir

Follow the safety precautions ⇨ *page 256, General information*.

Checking the brake fluid level

- ▸ Slide the cover that is located below the windshield wipers on the driver's side toward the windshield and remove the cover.
- ▸ Read the brake fluid level on the brake fluid reservoir ⇨ *page 258, fig. 174*. The brake fluid level must be between the MIN and MAX markings ⇨ ⚠.

The brake fluid level is monitored automatically.

Message

Brakes: stop vehicle and check brake fluid level

Stop the vehicle and check the brake fluid level. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Changing the brake fluid

Brake fluid should be changed at regular intervals. Have the brake fluid changed by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. The authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility will inform you of the replacement intervals.

WARNING

– If the brake fluid level is below the MIN marking, it can impair the braking effect and driving safety, which increase the risk of an accident. Do not continue driving. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.
– If the brake fluid is old, bubbles may form in the brake system during heavy braking. This could impair braking performance and driving safety, which increases the risk of an accident.
– The brake fluid in your vehicle must meet the standard VW 501 14 and is available at an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. If this brake fluid is not available, another high-grade brake fluid of equivalent quality may be used, and it must meet the U.S. Federal Motor Vehicle Standard (FMVSS) 116 DOT 4, Class 6.

Note

– If the brake fluid level is above the MAX marking, brake fluid may leak out over the edge of the reservoir and result in damage to the vehicle.
– Do not allow any brake fluid to come into contact with the vehicle paint, because it will corrode the paint.

Electrical system

If the / or indicator light turns on, there is a malfunction in the power supply, the battery, or the vehicle electrical system.

/ Electrical system: malfunction! Safely stop vehicle

Do not continue driving and switch the ignition off ⇨ ⚠. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Electrical system: malfunction! Restart not possible. Please contact Service

If you switch the ignition off, you will not be able to restart the vehicle. Vehicle functions/driving stability may be limited. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately.

Electrical system: malfunction! Please contact Service ▸

Switch off all electrical equipment that is not needed. Vehicle functions/driving stability may be limited. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately.

Electrical system: low battery charge. Battery will be charged while driving

The starting ability may be impaired.

If this message turns off after a little while, the vehicle battery has charged enough while driving.

If this message does not turn off, drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

WARNING

When there is an electrical system malfunction, vehicle functions may not work and driving stability may be limited, which increases the risk of an accident. Do not continue driving and switch the ignition off. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Battery

Battery general information

Because of the complex power supply, all work on batteries such as disconnecting, replacing, etc., should **only** be performed by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility ⇨ ⚠.

Multiple batteries with different technologies may be installed in your vehicle:

– Vehicle battery (for example, for starting the engine, basic power supply) ⇨ *page 266, 12 Volt vehicle battery* or ⇨ *page 266, Other battery types*
– Auxiliary battery (for example, for recuperation or optional equipment) ⇨ *page 266, Other battery types*

Not running the vehicle for long periods of time

The battery will gradually drain if the vehicle does not run for long periods of time. To ensure that the vehicle can still be started, the electrical equipment will be limited or switched off. Some convenience functions, such as interior lighting or power seat adjustment, may not be available under certain circumstances. The convenience functions will be available again when you start the engine.

Even when electrical equipment is switched off, the equipment can still drain the battery if the vehicle is not driven for long periods of time. Deep draining results in a chemical reaction that destroys the inside of the battery. The battery must be charged every month to prevent this ⇨ *page 266*. Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for more information.

Winter operation

Cold weather places an especially high load on the 12 Volt vehicle battery. Have the battery checked by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility before cold weather begins.

WARNING

– All work on the battery or electrical system in your vehicle can result in injuries, chemical burns, accidents, or burns. Because of this, all work must be performed **only** by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
– Never connect a charging cable or jump start cable directly to the 12 Volt vehicle battery. Only use the connections in the engine compartment ⇨ *page 266*.

WARNING

California Proposition 65 Warning:
– Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive harms. Wash hands after handling.

Note

– If the vehicle will be parked for long periods of time, protect the battery against the cold so that it will not be destroyed by “freezing” ▶

⇨ *page 266, Charging the 12 Volt vehicle battery*.

– There are electrical components under the cargo floor behind a trim panel that warm up during operation. To reduce the risk of the components overheating, do not store objects such as blankets under the cargo floor. If the components overheat, they will switch off temporarily. This will be indicated by a message that will be displayed in the instrument cluster until the temperature returns to normal.

12 Volt vehicle battery

Explanation of warnings:

	Always wear eye protection.
	Battery acid is highly corrosive. Always wear protective gloves and eye protection.
	Fire, sparks, open flame, and smoking are forbidden.
	A highly explosive mixture of gases can form when charging batteries.
	Always keep children away from battery acid and the battery.
 / 	Always follow the instructions in the operating manual.

For the sake of the environment

Do not dispose of lead batteries in household trash. They contain harmful substances, such as sulfuric acid and lead, and also recyclable raw materials. Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for more information.

Other battery types

Explanation of warnings:

	Fire, sparks, open flame, and smoking are forbidden.
	Always keep children away from battery acid and the battery.
 / 	Always follow the instructions in the operating manual.

WARNING

All work on the batteries must **only** be performed by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

– Gases that escape from these different battery types can be poisonous or flammable.
– The contents of these battery types can be corrosive. If any battery contents come into contact with the skin, flush the affected area for at least 15 minutes with clean water. Then wash the affected area with soap. Have the affected area examined by a medical professional.

Note

Components must not be connected to the battery terminals and wires on these battery types because this increases the risk of damage, for example due to overvoltage.

For the sake of the environment

Do not dispose of these types of batteries in household trash. They contain harmful substances and recyclable raw materials. Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for more information.

Charging the 12 Volt vehicle battery

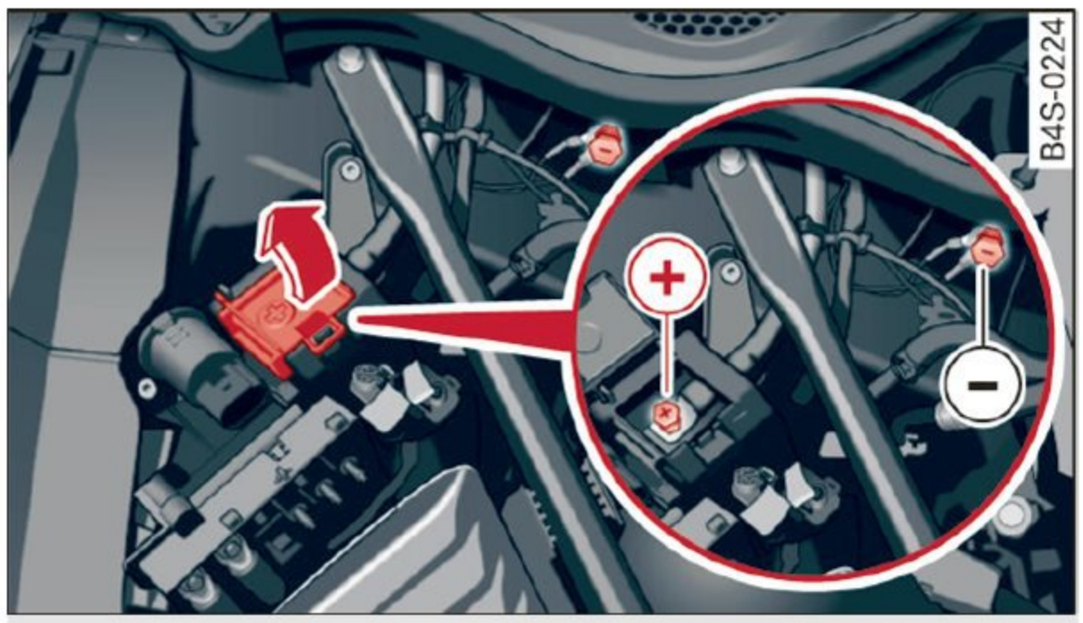


Fig. 178 Engine compartment: connectors for a charger or jump start cables

Note the safety precautions ⇨ *page 256, General information*, ⇨ ⚠ *in Battery general information on page 265* and ⇨ ⚠.

Requirement: only use chargers with a **maximum charging current of 14.8 volts**. The battery cables remain connected. ▶

- ▸ Switch off the ignition and all electrical equipment.
- ▸ Open the hood ⇨ *page 257*.
- ▸ Open the cover on the positive terminal ⇨ *fig. 178*.
- ▸ Clamp the charger terminal clamps to the jump start pins according to the instructions. (Hex head bolt under a cover ⊕, hex head bolt on the vehicle body ⊖).
- ▸ Insert the power cable for the charging device into the socket and switch the device on.
- ▸ At the end of the charging process, switch the charger off and pull the power cable out of the socket.
- ▸ Remove the charging device terminal clamps.
- ▸ Close the cover on the positive terminal.
- ▸ Close the hood ⇨ *page 257*.

⚠ WARNING

– Never connect a charging cable or jump start cable directly to the 12 Volt vehicle battery. Only use the connections in the engine compartment ⇨ *page 266*.
– A highly explosive mixture of gases can form when charging batteries. Only charge the battery in well-ventilated areas.
– A drained battery can freeze at temperatures around 32 °F (0 °C). Do not charge or use a frozen or thawed battery. If ice forms, the battery housing can crack and battery electrolyte can leak out, which increases the risk of an explosion and chemical burns. Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for more information.
– Do not connect or disconnect the charging cable while charging because this increases the risk of an explosion.

Tips

Read all of the manufacturer's instructions for the charger before charging the battery.

Windshield washer system



Fig. 179 Engine compartment: washer fluid reservoir cap

Follow the safety precautions ⇨ *page 256, General information*.

The windshield washer fluid reservoir contains the cleaning solution for the windshield and the headlight washer system ⇨ *fig. 179*, ⇨ *page 258*. The reservoir capacity can be found in ⇨ *page 319*.

To reduce the risk of lime scale deposits on the spray nozzles, use clean water with low amounts of calcium. Always add window cleaner to the water. When the outside temperatures are cold, an anti-freezing agent should be added to the water so that it does not freeze.

Messages

Please add washer fluid

Fill the washer fluid for the windshield washer system and the headlight washer system* when the ignition is switched off.

Note

– The concentration of anti-freezing agent must be adjusted to the vehicle operating conditions and the climate. A concentration that is too high can lead to vehicle damage.
– Never add radiator anti-freeze or other additives to the washer fluid.
– Do not use a glass cleaner that contains paint solvents, because this could damage the paint.

Service interval display

The service interval display detects when your vehicle is due for service.

The service interval display works in two stages:

– **Inspection or oil change reminder:** after driving a certain distance, a message appears in the instrument cluster display each time the ignition is switched on or off. The remaining distance or time is displayed briefly.
– **Inspection or oil change due:** if your vehicle has reached an inspection or oil change interval or both intervals at the same time, the message **Inspection due!** or **Oil change due!** or **Oil change and inspection due!** appears briefly after switching the ignition on or off.

Checking service intervals

You can check the remaining distance or time until the next oil change or next inspection in the Infotainment system.

Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Settings & Service** > **Service intervals**.

Applies to: Audi tablet: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Service intervals**.

Resetting the indicator

An authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility will reset the service interval display after performing service.

If you have changed the oil yourself, you must reset the oil change interval.

Applies to: MMI: To reset the display, select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Settings & Service** > **Service intervals** > **Reset oil change interval**.

Note

– Only reset the oil change indicator if the oil was changed.
– Following the service intervals is critical to maintaining the service life and value of your vehicle, especially the engine. Even if the mileage on the vehicle is low, do not exceed the time for the next service.

Wheels

Wheels and Tires

General information

►Check your tires regularly for damage, such as punctures, cuts, cracks, and bulges. Remove foreign objects from the tire tread.

►If driving over curbs or similar obstacles, drive slowly and approach the curb at an angle.

►Have faulty tires or rims replaced immediately.

►Protect your tires from oil, grease, and fuel.

►Mark tires before removing them so that the same running direction can be maintained if they are reinstalled.

►Lay tires flat when storing and store them in a cool, dry location with as little exposure to light as possible.

WARNING

–Never drive faster than the maximum permitted speed for your tires. This could cause the tires to heat up too much. This increases the risk of an accident because it can cause the tire to burst.

–Always adapt your driving to the road and traffic conditions. Drive carefully and reduce your speed on icy or slippery roads. Even winter tires can lose traction on black ice.

Note

–Please note that summer and winter tires are designed for the conditions that are typical in those seasons. Audi recommends using winter tires during the winter months. Low temperatures significantly decrease the elasticity of summer tires, which affects traction and braking ability. If summer tires are used in very cold temperatures, cracks can form on the tread bars, resulting in permanent tire damage that can cause loud driving noise and unbalanced tires.

–Burnished, polished or chromed rims must not be used in winter driving conditions. The surface of the rims does not have sufficient corrosion protection for this and could be permanently damaged by road salt or similar substances.

4N0012721BB

Tire designations

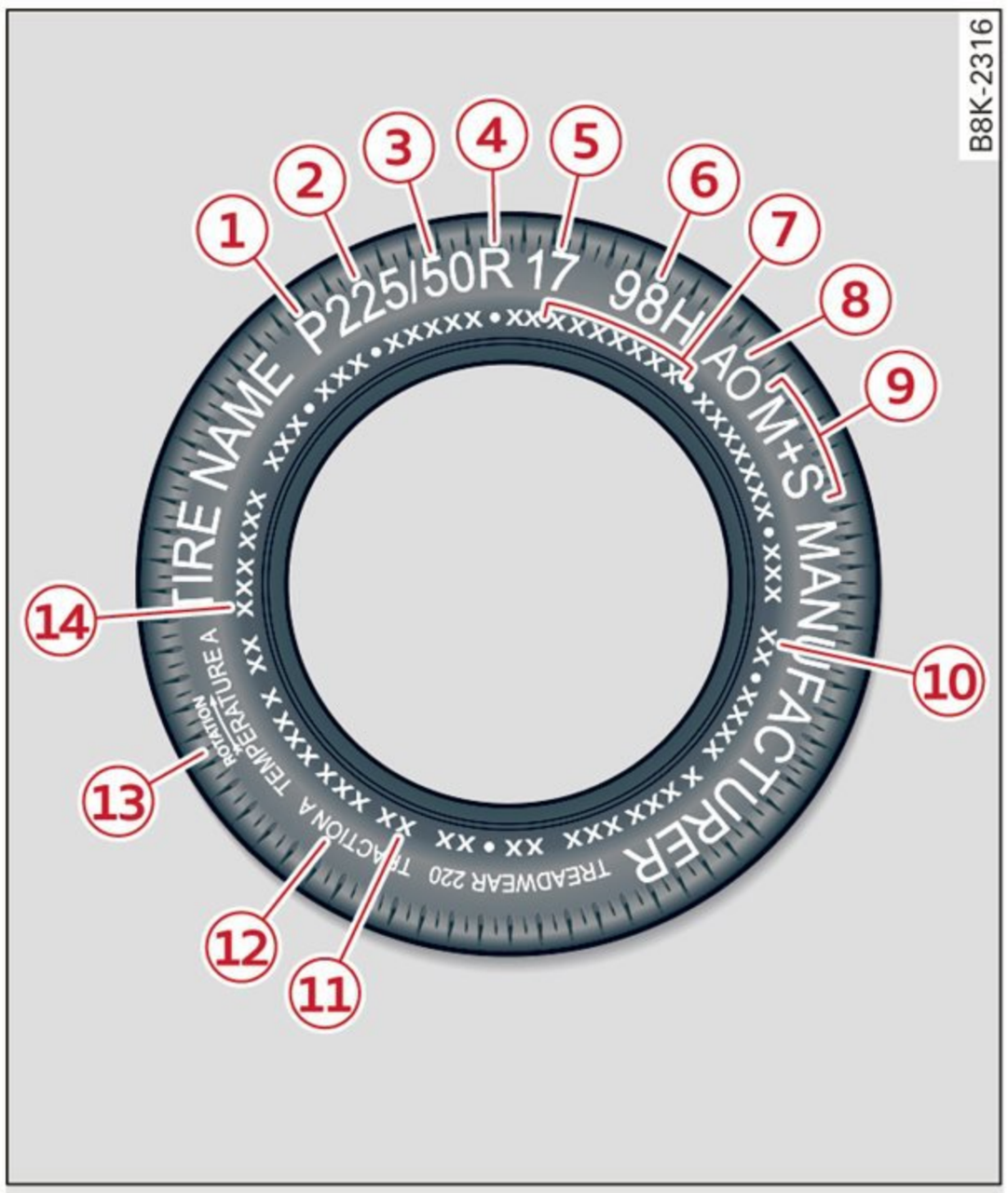


Fig. 180 Tire designations on the sidewall

① Tires for passenger vehicles (if applicable)

"P" indicates a tire for a passenger vehicle. "T" indicates a tire designated for temporary use.

② Nominal width

Nominal width of the tire between the sidewalls in millimeters. In general: the larger the number, the wider the tire.

③ Aspect ratio

Height/width ratio expressed as a percentage.

④ Tire construction

"R" indicates a radial tire.

⑤ Rim diameter

Size of the rim diameter in inches.

⑥ Load index and speed rating

The load index indicates the tire's load-carrying capacity.

The speed rating indicates the maximum permitted speed. Also see ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 269*.

"EXTRA LOAD", "xl" or "RF" indicates that the tire is reinforced or is an Extra Load tire.

Speed rating	Maximum permitted speed
P	up to 93 mph (150 km/h)
Q	up to 99 mph (160 km/h)
R	up to 106 mph (170 km/h)
S	up to 110 mph (180 km/h)
T	up to 118 mph (190 km/h)
U	up to 124 mph (200 km/h)
H	up to 130 mph (210 km/h)
V	up to 149 mph (240 km/h)[a)]
Z	above 149 mph (240 km/h)[a)]
W	up to 168 mph (270 km/h)[a)]
Y	up to 186 mph (300 km/h)[a)]

a) For tires above 149 mph (240 km/h), tire manufacturers sometimes use the code "ZR". ▶

⑦ US DOT number (TIN) and manufacture date

The manufacture date is listed on the tire sidewall (it may only appear on the inner side of the tire):

DOT ... 2218 ...

means, for example, that the tire was produced in the 22nd week of the year 2018.

⑧ Audi Original Tires

Audi Original equipment tires with the designation “AO” have been specially matched to your Audi. When used correctly, these tires meet the highest standards for safety and handling. An authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility will be able to provide you with more information.

⑨ Mud and snow capability

“M/S” or “M+S” indicates the tire is suitable for driving on mud and snow. ❄ indicates a winter tire.

⑩ Composition of the tire cord and materials

The number of plies indicates the number of rubberized fabric layers in the tire. In general: the more layers, the more weight a tire can carry. Tire manufacturers must also specify the materials used in the tire. These include steel, nylon, polyester and other materials.

⑪ Maximum permitted load

This number indicates the maximum load in kilograms and pounds that the tire can carry.

⑫ Uniform tire quality grade standards for treadwear, traction and temperature resistance

Treadwear, traction, and temperature ranges ⇨ *page 286*.

⑬ Running direction

The arrows indicate the running direction of unidirectional tires. You must always follow the specified running direction ⇨ *page 300*.

⑭ Maximum permitted inflation pressure

This number indicates the maximum pressure to which a tire can be inflated under normal operating conditions.

4N0012721BB

Glossary of tire and loading terminology

Accessory weight

means the combined weight (in excess of those standard items which may be replaced) of automatic transmission, power steering, power brakes, power windows, power seats, radio, and heater, to the extent that these items are available as factory-installed equipment (whether installed or not).

Aspect ratio

means the ratio of the height to the width of the tire in percent. Numbers of 55 or lower indicate a low sidewall for improved steering response and better overall handling on dry pavement.

Bead

means the part of the tire that is made of steel wires, wrapped or reinforced by ply cords and that is shaped to fit the rim.

Bead separation

means a breakdown of the bond between components in the bead.

Cord

means the strands forming the plies in the tire.

Cold tire inflation pressure

means the tire pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer for a tire of a designated size that has not been driven for more than a couple of miles (kilometers) at low speeds in the three hour period before the tire pressure is measured or adjusted.

Curb weight

means the weight of a motor vehicle with standard equipment including the maximum capacity of fuel, oil, and coolant, air conditioning and additional weight of optional equipment.

Extra load tire

means a tire designed to operate at higher loads and at higher inflation pressures than the corresponding standard tire. Extra load tires may be identified as “XL”, “xl”, “EXTRA LOAD”, or “RF” on the sidewall.

Gross Axle Weight Rating ("GAWR")

means the load-carrying capacity of a single axle system, measured at the tire-ground interfaces.

Gross Vehicle Weight Rating ("GVWR")

means the maximum total loaded weight of the vehicle.

Groove

means the space between two adjacent tread ribs.

Load rating (code)

means the maximum load that a tire is rated to carry for a given inflation pressure. You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by law.

Maximum load rating

means the load rating for a tire at the maximum permissible inflation pressure for that tire.

Maximum loaded vehicle weight

means the sum of:

(a) Curb weight
(b) Accessory weight
(c) Vehicle capacity weight, and
(d) Production options weight

Maximum (permissible) inflation pressure

means the maximum cold inflation pressure to which a tire may be inflated. Also called "maximum inflation pressure."

Normal occupant weight

means 150 lbs. (68 kilograms) times the number of occupants seated in the vehicle up to the total seating capacity of your vehicle.

Occupant distribution

means distribution of occupants in a vehicle.

Outer diameter

means the overall diameter of an inflated new tire.

Overall width

means the linear distance between the exteriors of the sidewalls of an inflated tire, including elevations due to labeling, decorations, or protective bands or ribs.

Ply

means a layer of rubber-coated parallel cords.

4N00127721BB

Production options weight

means the combined weight of those installed regular production options weighing over 5 lbs. (2.3 kg) in excess of those standard items which they replace, not previously considered in curb weight or accessory weight, including heavy duty brakes, ride levelers, roof rack, heavy duty battery, and special trim.

Radial ply tire

means a pneumatic tire in which the ply cords that extend to the beads are laid at substantially 90 degrees to the centerline of the tread.

Recommended inflation pressure

see ⇨ *page 272*.

Reinforced tire

means a tire designed to operate at higher loads and at higher inflation pressures than the corresponding standard tire. Reinforced tires may be identified as “XL”, “xl”, “EXTRA LOAD”, or “RF” on the sidewall.

Rim

means a metal support for a tire or a tire and tube assembly upon which the tire beads are seated.

Rim diameter

means nominal diameter of the bead seat. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new rim diameter.

Rim size designation

means rim diameter and width.

Rim width

means nominal distance between rim flanges.

Sidewall

means that portion of a tire between the tread and bead.

Speed rating (letter code)

means the speed at which a tire is designed to be driven for extended periods of time. The ratings range from 93 mph (150 km/h) to 186 mph (298 km/h) ⇨ *table on page 270*. You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by law.

The speed rating letter code, where applicable, is molded on the tire sidewall and indicates the ▶

maximum permissible road speeds. See also ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 269*.

Tire pressure monitoring system

means a system that detects when one or more of a vehicle's tires are underinflated and illuminates a low tire pressure warning telltale.

Tread

means that portion of a tire that comes into contact with the road.

Tread separation

means pulling away of the tread from the tire carcass.

Treadwear indicators (TWI)

means the projections within the principal grooves designed to give a visual indication of the degrees of wear of the tread. See ⇨ *page 278, Treadwear indicator* for more information on measuring tire wear.

Uniform Tire Quality Grading

is a tire information system developed by the United States National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) that is designed to help buyers make relative comparisons among tires. The UTQG is not a safety rating and not a guarantee that a tire will last for a prescribed number of miles (kilometers) or perform in a certain way. It simply gives tire buyers additional information to combine with other considerations, such as price, brand loyalty and dealer recommendations. Under UTQG, tires are graded by the tire manufacturers in three areas: treadwear, traction, and temperature resistance. The UTQG information on the tires, molded into the sidewalls.

U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number (TIN)

This is the tire’s “serial number”. It begins with the letters “DOT” and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next two numbers or letters indicate the plant where it was manufactured, and the last four numbers represent the week and year of manufacture. For example,

DOT ... 2218 ...

means that the tire was produced in the 22nd week of 2018. The other numbers are marketing codes that may or may not be used ▶

4N0012721BB

by the tire manufacturer. This information is used to contact consumers if a tire defect requires a recall.

Vehicle capacity weight

means the rated cargo and luggage load plus 150 lbs. (68 kilograms) times the vehicle's designated seating capacity.

Vehicle maximum load on the tire

means that load on an individual tire that is determined by distributing to each axle its share of the maximum loaded vehicle weight and dividing by two.

Vehicle normal load on the tire

means that load on an individual tire that is determined by distributing to each axle its share of the curb weight, accessory weight, and normal occupant weight (distributed in accordance with ⇨ *table on page 281*) and dividing by two.

Occupant loading and distribution for vehicle normal load for various designated seating capacities

Refer to the tire inflation pressure label ⇨ *page 279, fig. 183* for the number of seating positions. Refer to the table ⇨ *table on page 281* for the number of people that correspond to the vehicle normal load.

New tires or wheels

Audi recommends having all work on tires or wheels performed by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. These facilities have the proper knowledge and are equipped with the required tools and replacement parts.

- ►New tires do not yet have the optimum gripping properties. Drive carefully and at moderate speeds for the first 350 miles (500 km) with new tires.
- ►Only use tires with the same design, size (rolling circumference), and as close to the same tread pattern as possible on all four wheels.
- ►Do not replace tires individually. At least replace both tires on the same axle at the same time.
- ►Audi recommends that you use Audi Original Tires. If you would like to use different tires, please note that the tires may perform ►

differently even if they are the same size ⇨ ⚠.

► If you would like to equip your vehicle with a tire and rim combination that is different from what was installed at the factory, consult with an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility before making a purchase ⇨ ⚠.

Because the spare tire* is different from the regular tires installed on the vehicle (such as winter tires or wide tires), only use the spare tire* temporarily in case of emergency and drive carefully while it is in use. It should be replaced with a regular tire as soon as possible.

All four wheels must be equipped with tires that are the same brand and have the same construction and tread pattern so that the drive system is not damaged by different tire speeds. For this reason, in case of emergency, only use a spare tire* that is the same circumference as the regular tires.

⚠ WARNING

–Do not use steel rims that are 17 inches or larger. Otherwise, damage to the vehicle and an accident could result.

–Only use tire/rim combinations and suitable wheel bolts that have been approved by Audi. Otherwise, damage to the vehicle and an accident could result.

–For technical reasons, it is not possible to use tires from other vehicles. In some cases, you cannot even use tires from the same vehicle model.

–Make sure that the tires you select have enough clearance to the vehicle. Replacement tires should not be chosen simply based on the nominal size, because tires with a different construction can differ greatly even if they are the same size. If there is not enough clearance, the tires or the vehicle can be damaged and this can reduce driving safety and increase the risk of an accident.

–Only use tires that are more than six years old when absolutely necessary and drive carefully when doing so.

–Do not use run-flat tires on your vehicle. Using them when ▶

4N0012721BB

not permitted can lead to vehicle damage or accidents.

–If you install wheel covers on the vehicle, make sure they allow enough air circulation to cool the brake system. If they do not, this could increase the risk of an accident.

Tire wear and damage

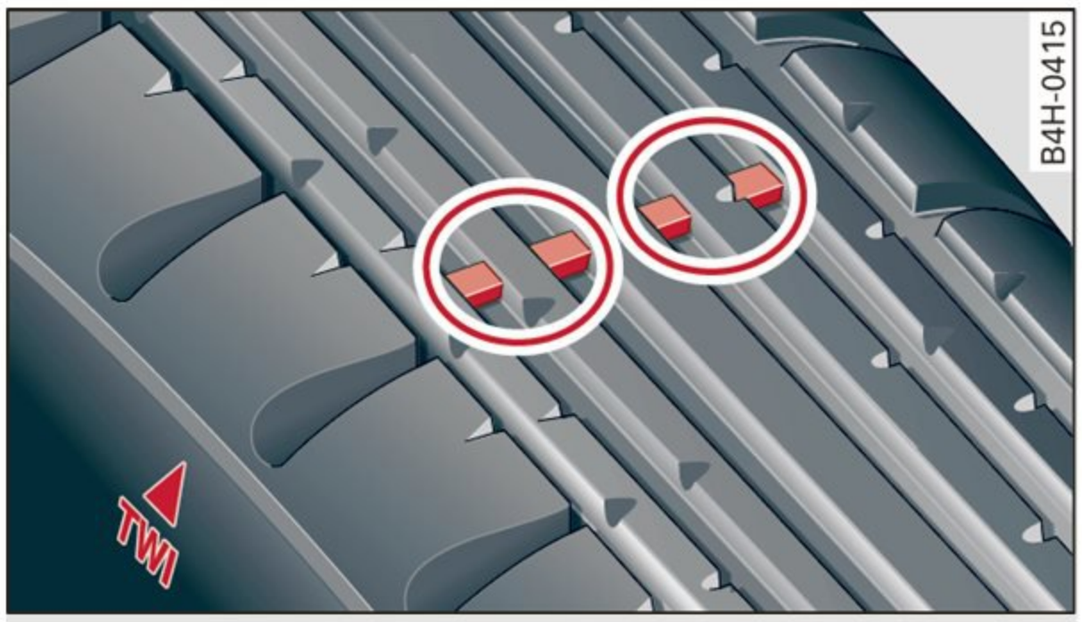


Fig. 181 Tire profile: treadwear indicator

Tire wear

Check the tires regularly for wear.

–Inflation pressure that is too low or high can increase tire wear considerably.

–Driving quickly through curves, rapid acceleration, and heavy braking increase tire wear.

–Have an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility check the wheel alignment if there is unusual wear.

–Have the wheels rebalanced if an imbalance is causing noticeable vibration in the steering wheel. If you do not, the tires and other vehicle components could wear more quickly.

Treadwear indicator

Original equipment tires contain treadwear indicators in the tread pattern, which are bars that are 1/16 in (1.6 mm) high and are spaced evenly around the tire perpendicular to the running direction ⇨ *fig. 181*. The letters “TWI” or triangles on the tire sidewall indicate the location of the treadwear indicators.

The tires have reached the minimum tread depth [1)] when they have worn down to the treadwear indicators. Replace the tires with new ones ⇨ ⚠.

Tire rotation

Rotating the tires regularly is recommended to ensure the tires wear evenly. To rotate the tires, ▶

[1)] Obey any applicable regulations in the country where the vehicle is being operated.

install the tires from the rear axle on the front axle and vice versa. This will allow the tires to have approximately the same length of service life.

For unidirectional tires, make sure the tires are installed according to the running direction indicated on the tire sidewall ⇨ *page 300*.

Hidden damage

Damage to tires and rims can often occur in locations that are hidden. Unusual vibrations in the vehicle or pulling to one side may indicate that there is tire damage. Reduce your speed immediately. Check the tires for damage. If no damage is visible from the outside, drive slowly and carefully to the nearest authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the vehicle inspected.

WARNING

Tread that has worn too low or uneven tread depths on the tires can reduce driving safety. This can increase the risk of an accident because it has a negative effect on handling, driving through curves, and braking, and because it increases the risk of hydroplaning when driving through deep puddles.

Tire pressure

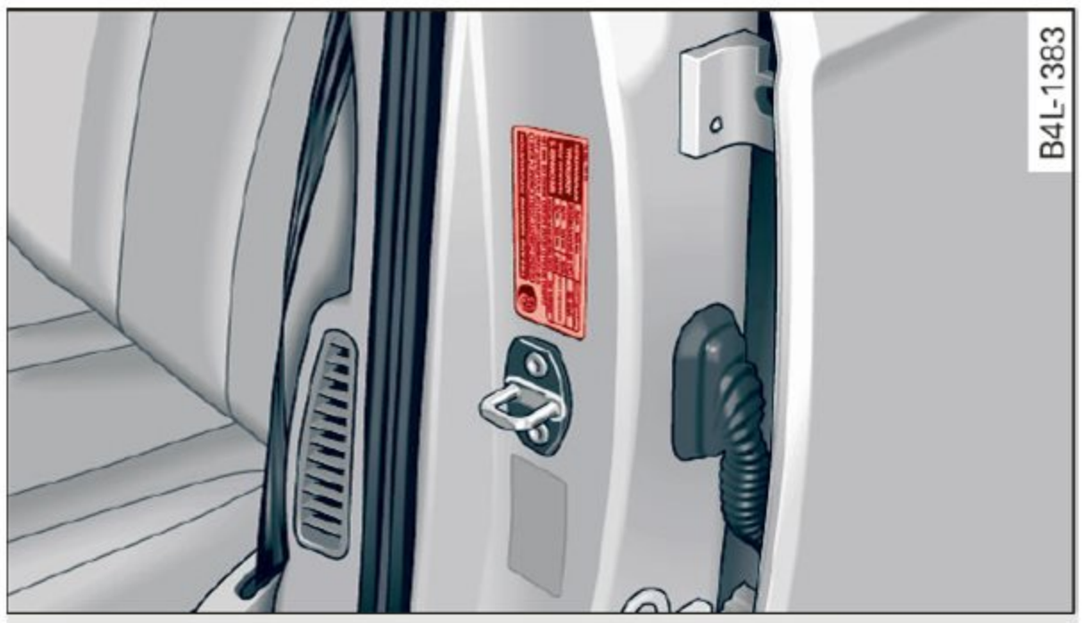


Fig. 182 Driver's side B-pillar: tire pressure label

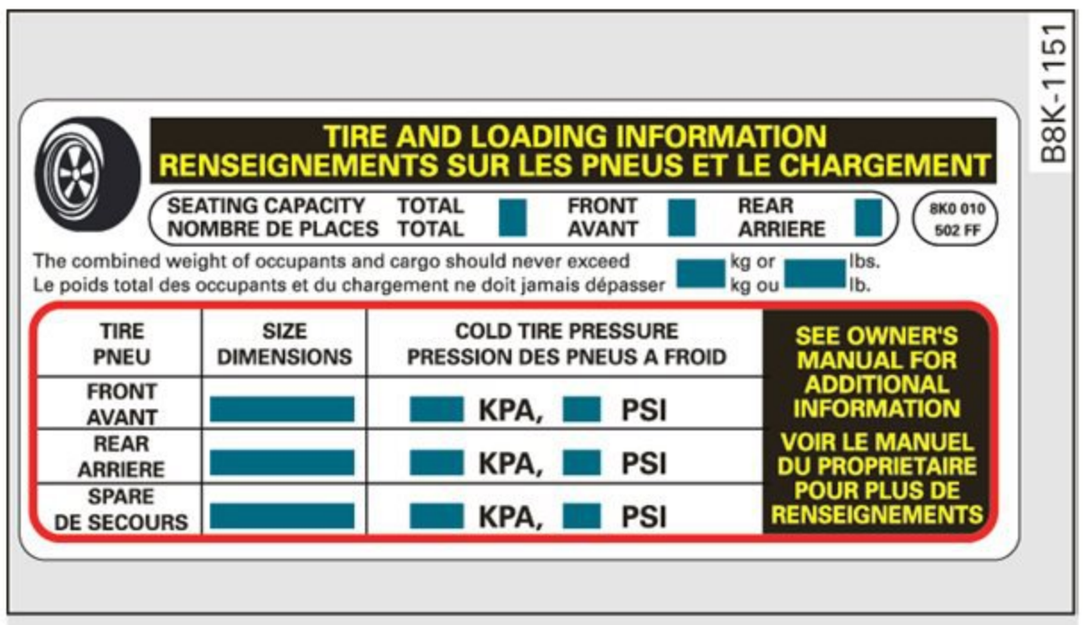


Fig. 183 Tire pressure label

The correct tire pressure for tires installed at the factory is listed on a label. The label is located on the B-pillar ⇨ *fig. 182*, ⇨ *fig. 183*.

Use the tire pressure specified for a normal vehicle load when the vehicle is partially loaded ⇨ *table on page 281*. If driving the vehicle when fully loaded, you must increase the tire pressure to the maximum specified pressure ⇨ ⚠. ▶

Checking and correcting tire pressure

- ▶Check the tire pressure at least once per month and also check it before every long drive.
- ▶Always check the tire pressure when the tires are *cold*. Do not reduce the pressure if it increases when the tires are warm.
- ▶Check the label ⇨ *fig. 183* for the correct tire pressure based on vehicle load.
- ▶Correct the tire pressure if necessary.
- ▶Store the new tire pressure in the MMI ⇨ *page 288*.
- ▶Check the pressure in the spare tire*. Always maintain the maximum temperature that is specified for the tire.

WARNING

Always adapt the tire pressure to your driving style and the vehicle load.

–Overloading can lead to loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of an accident. Read and follow the important safety precautions in ⇨ *page 281*.

–The tire must flex more if the tire pressure is too low or if the vehicle speed or load are too high. This heats the tire up too much. This increases the risk of an accident because it can cause the tire to burst and result in loss of vehicle control.

–Incorrect tire pressure increases tire wear and has a negative effect on driving and braking behavior, which increases the risk of an accident.

Note

Replace lost valve caps to reduce the risk of damage to the tire valves.

For the sake of the environment

Tire pressure that is too low increases fuel consumption.

Tire pressure table

Please note that the information contained in the following table was correct at the time of printing, and the information is subject to change. If there are any differences, you should always follow the tire pressure sticker ⇨ *page 279, fig. 182*. ▶

Make sure that the tire designation on your tire matches the designation on the tire pressure label and the tire pressure table.

The following table lists recommended tire pressures in cold tires according to the load and the size of the tires installed.

Model/ Engine	Tire designation	Tire pressure							
		Normal load (up to 2/3* people)[a]				Maximum load			
		Front		Rear		Front		Rear	
		PSI	kPA	PSI	kPA	PSI	kPA	PSI	kPA
A8 L: 3.0L 6-cylinder	255/45 R19 104H	35	240	32	220	38	260	38	260
	255/45 R19 104Y	35	240	32	220	35	240	35	240
	265/40 R20 104H	35	240	32	220	38	260	38	260
	265/40 R20 104Y	35	240	32	220	35	240	35	240
	275/35 R21 103Y	35	240	32	220	35	240	35	240
A8 L: 4.0L 8-cylinder	255/45 R19 104H	38	260	33	230	41	280	41	280
	255/45 R19 104Y	35	240	32	220	38	260	38	260
	265/40 R20 104H	38	260	33	230	41	280	41	280
	265/40 R20 104Y	35	240	32	220	38	260	38	260
	275/35 R21 103Y	35	240	32	220	38	260	38	260

a) **Vehicles with four seating positions:** two people in the front, **Vehicles with five seating positions:** two people in the front, one person in the rear

WARNING

Please note the important safety precautions regarding tire pressure ⇨ *page 279* and load limits ⇨ *page 281*.

Tires and vehicle load limits

There are limits to the amount of load or weight that any vehicle and any tire can carry. A vehicle that is overloaded will not handle well and is more difficult to stop. Overloading can not only lead to loss of vehicle control, but can also damage important parts of the vehicle and can lead to sudden tire failure, including a blowout and sudden deflation that can cause the vehicle to crash.

Your safety and that of your passengers also depends on making sure that load limits are not exceeded. Vehicle load includes everybody and everything in and on the vehicle. These load limits are ▶

technically referred to as the vehicle's **Gross Vehicle Weight Rating** ("GVWR").

The "GVWR" includes the weight of the basic vehicle, all factory installed accessories, a full tank of fuel, oil, coolant and other fluids plus maximum load. The maximum load includes the number of passengers that the vehicle is intended to carry ("seating capacity") with an assumed weight of 150 lbs. (68 kg) for each passenger at a designated seating position and the total weight of any luggage in the vehicle. If you tow a trailer, the weight of the trailer hitch and the tongue weight of the loaded trailer must be included as part of the vehicle load.

The **Gross Axle Weight Rating** ("GAWR") is the maximum load that can be applied at each of the vehicle's two axles.

The fact that there is an upper limit to your vehicle's Gross Vehicle Weight Rating means that the total weight of whatever is being carried in the vehicle (including the weight of a trailer hitch and the tongue weight of the loaded trailer) is limited. The more passengers in the vehicle or passengers who are heavier than the standard weights assumed mean that less weight can be carried as luggage.

The Gross Vehicle Weight Rating and the Gross Axle Weight Rating are listed on the safety compliance sticker label located on the driver's side B-pillar.

WARNING

Overloading a vehicle can cause loss of vehicle control, a crash or other accident, serious personal injury, and even death.

–Carrying more weight than your vehicle was designed to carry will prevent the vehicle from handling properly and increase the risk of the loss of vehicle control.

–The brakes on a vehicle that has been overloaded may not be able to stop the vehicle within a safe distance.

–Tires on a vehicle that has been overloaded can fail suddenly, including a blowout and sudden deflation, causing loss of control and a crash.

–Always make sure that the total load being transported – ▶

including the weight of a trailer hitch and the tongue weight of a loaded trailer – does not make the vehicle heavier than the vehicle's Gross Vehicle Weight Rating.

Determining correct load limit

Use the example below to calculate the total weight of the passengers and luggage or other things that you plan to transport so that you can make sure that your vehicle will not be overloaded.

Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit

1. Locate the statement "THE COMBINED WEIGHT OF OCCUPANTS AND CARGO SHOULD NEVER EXCEED XXX KG OR XXX LBS" on your vehicle's placard (tire inflation pressure label) ⇨ *page 279, fig. 183*.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from "XXX" kilograms or "XXX" pounds shown on the sticker ⇨ *page 279, fig. 183*.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the "XXX" amount equals 1400 lbs. and there will be five 150 lbs. passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs. (1400-750 (5 x 150) = 650 lbs.)
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.
6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

►Check the tire sidewall (⇨ *page 270, fig. 180*) to determine the designated load rating for a specific tire.

4N0012721BB

Wheel bolts and rims

Wheel bolts

Wheel bolts must be clean and loosen/tighten easily. You will need a special adapter to loosen the anti-theft wheel bolts* ⇨ *page 298*.

Rims

Rims with a bolted rim ring* or with bolted wheel covers* consist of multiple pieces. These components were bolted together using special bolts and a special procedure. You must not repair or disassemble them ⇨ ⚠.

WARNING

Wheel bolts that are tightened or repaired incorrectly can become loose and result in loss of vehicle control, which increases the risk of an accident. For the correct tightening specification, see ⇨ *page 300, Finishing*.

- Always keep the wheel bolts and the threads in the wheel hub clean and free of grease.
- Only use wheel bolts that fit the rim.
- Always have damaged rims repaired by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. Never repair or disassemble rims yourself, because this increases the risk of an accident.

Loose wheel warning

Applies to: vehicles with loose wheel warning

Within the limits of the system, the loose wheel warning in the instrument cluster warns you if one or more wheels are loose.

Using the ABS sensors, the loose wheel warning system compares the vibration characteristics of the individual tires. If one or more wheels are loose, it will be indicated in the instrument cluster display with the indicator light and a message. If only one wheel is affected, the location of that wheel will be indicated.

Messages

Wheel bolts loose. Please safely stop the vehicle and check all wheel bolts!

Loose wheel warning for at least one wheel ⇨ ⚠. Check the wheel bolts on all wheels with the wheel wrench (vehicle tool kit). Have the tightening specification checked as soon as possible with a torque wrench. Drive carefully until then. For the correct tightening specification, see ⇨ *page 300, Finishing*.

Wheel assessment active. Please continue driving carefully

After this message appears and you have checked the wheel bolts, the assessment phase begins when the vehicle is in motion. This may take several minutes.

Loose wheel warning: malfunction! See owner's manual

There is a system malfunction. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

WARNING

Wheel bolts that are tightened incorrectly can become loose and result in loss of vehicle control, which increases the risk of an accident.

- If a message appears, reduce your speed immediately and avoid any hard steering or braking maneuvers. Stop as soon as possible and check the wheel bolts.
- Check your wheels for damage. Have the damaged wheels checked and/or replaced immediately by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
- Under certain conditions (such as a sporty driving style, winter conditions, or unpaved roads), the message may be delayed.
- The driver is responsible for ensuring that the wheels are attached correctly.

Tips

- The loose wheel warning system can also stop working when there is an ESC malfunction.
- Using snow chains may result in a system malfunction.

Winter tires

Winter tires significantly improve the vehicle's handling when driving in winter conditions. Because of their construction (width, compound, tread pattern), summer tires provide less traction on ice and snow.

- Use winter tires on all four wheels.
- Only use winter tires that are approved for your vehicle.
- Please note that the maximum permitted speed may be lower with winter tires ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 269*. An authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility can inform you about the maximum permitted speed for your tires.
- Check the tire pressure after installing wheels ⇨ *page 279*.

The effectiveness of winter tires is reduced greatly when the tread is worn down to a depth of 0.16 in (4 mm). The characteristics of winter tires also decrease greatly as the tire ages, regardless of the remaining tread.

For the sake of the environment

Reinstall summer tires at the appropriate time, because they provide better handling when roads are free of snow and ice. Summer tires cause less road noise, tire wear, and fuel consumption.

Tips

You can also use all season tires instead of winter tires. Please note that in some countries where winter tires are required, only winter tires with the ❄ symbol may be permitted.

Snow chains

Snow chains improve both driving and braking in winter road conditions.

- Only install snow chains on the front wheels.
- Check and correct the seating of the snow chains after driving a few feet, if necessary. Follow the instructions from the manufacturer.
- Note the maximum speed of 30 mph (50 km/h). Observe the local regulations.

Use of snow chains is only permitted with certain rim/tire combinations due to technical reasons. Check with an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to see if you may use snow chains.

Use **fine-mesh snow chains**. They must not add more than 0.40 inch (10.5 mm) in height, including the chain lock.

You must remove the snow chains on roads without snow. Otherwise, you could impair driving ability and damage the tires.

WARNING

Using incorrect snow chains or installing snow chains incorrectly can result in loss of vehicle control, which increases the risk of an accident.

Note

– Snow chains can damage the rims and wheel covers* if the chains come into direct contact with them. Remove the wheel covers* first. Use coated snow chains.
– Do not install and use snow chains if there is a malfunction in the air suspension, because the vehicle height will be very low. If you drive with snow chains anyway, the wheel housings and other vehicle components can be severely damaged.

Tips

When using snow chains, it may be advisable to limit the ESC ⇨ *page 130*.

Low-profile tires

Applies to: vehicles with low-profile tires

Compared to other tire/rim combinations, low-profile tires offer a wider tread surface and a larger rim diameter with shorter tire sidewalls. This results in an agile driving style. However, it may reduce the level of comfort and increase road noise when driving on roads in poor condition. ▶

Low-profile tires can become damaged more quickly than standard tires when driving over large bumps, potholes, manhole covers, and curbs. Therefore, it is particularly important to maintain the correct tire pressure ⇨ *page 279*.

To reduce the risk of damage to the tires and rims, drive very carefully on poor roads.

Check your wheels regularly every 2,000 mi (3,000 km) for damage. For example, check for bulges/cracks on the tires or deformations/cracks on the rims.

After a heavy impact or damage, have the tires and rims inspected or replaced immediately by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Low-profile tires can wear out faster than standard tires.

Uniform tire quality grading

– Tread wear
– Traction AA A B C
– Temperature A B C

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire side wall between tread shoulder and maximum section width ⇨ *page 270, fig. 180*.

For example: Tread wear **200**, Traction **AA**, Temperature **A**.

All passenger car tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades.

Tread wear

The *tread wear* grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course.

For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one half (1 1/2) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100.

The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction

The *traction* grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B and C. Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance ⇨ ⚠.

Temperature

The *temperature* grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure ⇨ ⚠.

The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

⚠ WARNING

The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning or peak traction characteristics.

⚠ WARNING

The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

⚠ WARNING

Temperature grades apply to tires that are properly inflated and not over or underinflated.

Tire pressure monitoring system

General notes

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires).

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

If the tire pressure monitoring indicator appears

The tire pressure indicator in the instrument cluster informs you if the tire pressure is too low or if there is a system malfunction.

Using the ABS sensors, the tire pressure monitoring system compares the tire tread circumference and vibration characteristics of the individual tires. If the pressure changes in one or more tires, this is indicated in the instrument cluster display with an indicator light and a message. If only one tire is affected, the location of that tire will be indicated.

The tire pressures must be stored again each time you change the pressures (switching between partial and full load pressure) or after changing or replacing a tire on your vehicle ⇨ *page 288*. The tire pressure monitoring system only monitors the tire pressure you have stored. Refer to the tire pressure label for the recommended tire pressure for your vehicle ⇨ *page 279, fig. 183*.

Tire tread circumference and vibration characteristics can change and cause a tire pressure warning if:

– The tire pressure in one or more tires is too low
– The tires have structural damage
– The tire was replaced or the tire pressure was changed and it was not stored ⇨ *page 288*
– Tires that are only partially used are replaced with new tires

Indicator lights

– Loss of pressure in at least one tire ⇨ ⚠.
Check the tires and replace or repair if necessary. Check and correct the pressures of all four tires and store the pressure again ⇨ *page 288*. ▶

TPMS (Tire Pressure Monitoring System) **Tire pressure: malfunction! See owner's manual**. If TPMS appears after switching the ignition on or while driving and the (!) indicator light in the instrument cluster blinks for approximately one minute and then stays on, there is system malfunction. Try to store the correct tire pressures ⇨ *page 288*. In some cases, you must drive for several minutes after storing the pressures until the indicator light turns off. If the indicator light does turn off or turns on again after a short period of time, drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

WARNING

- If the tire pressure indicator appears in the display, reduce your speed immediately and avoid any hard steering or braking maneuvers. Stop as soon as possible and check the tires and their pressure.
- The driver is responsible for maintaining the correct tire pressure. You must check the tire pressure regularly.
- Under certain conditions (such as a sporty driving style, winter conditions, or unpaved roads), the tire pressure monitoring system indicator may be delayed.

Tips

- The tire pressure monitoring system can also stop working when there is an ESC malfunction.
- Using snow chains may result in a system malfunction.
- The tire pressure monitoring system in your Audi was calibrated with “Audi Original Tires” ⇨ *page 276*. Using these tires is recommended.

Storing tire pressures

If the tire pressure changes or a tire is replaced, it must be confirmed in the MMI.

- Before storing the tire pressures, make sure the tire pressures in all four tires meet the specified values and are adapted to the load ⇨ *page 279*.
- Switch the ignition on.
- Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Settings & Service** > **Tire pressure monitoring** > **Store tire pressure** > **Yes, store now**.

Tips

Do not store the tire pressures if snow chains are installed.

Care and cleaning

General information

Regular, proper care helps to maintain your vehicle's value. It can also be a requirement when submitting warranty claims for corrosion damage and paint defects on the body.

The required cleaning and care products can be obtained from an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Service Facility. Read and follow the instructions for use on the packaging.

WARNING

- Using cleaning and care products incorrectly can be dangerous to your health.
- Always store cleaning and care products out of reach of children to reduce the risk of poisoning.

For the sake of the environment

- Purchase environmentally-friendly cleaning products if possible.
- Do not dispose of cleaning and care products with household trash.

Car washes

The longer that deposits such as insects, bird droppings, tree sap or road salt remain on the vehicle, the more the surface can be damaged. High temperatures such as those caused by sunlight increase the damaging effect.

Before washing, rinse off heavy deposits with plenty of water.

Stubborn deposits such as bird droppings or tree sap are best removed with plenty of water and a microfiber cloth.

Also, wash the underside of your vehicle once road salt stops being used for the season.

Pressure washers

When washing your vehicle with a pressure washer, always follow the operating instructions provided with the pressure washer. This is especially important in regard to the pressure and spraying distance. Do not aim the spray directly at the seals on the side windows, doors, hood, luggage compartment lid, or sunroof*, or at tires, rubber hoses, insulating material, sensors*, camera lenses*, or the laser scanner*. Keep a distance of at least 16 in (40 cm).

Do not remove snow and ice with a pressure washer.

Never use cone nozzles or high pressure nozzles.

The water temperature must not be above 140 °F (60 °C).

Automatic car wash

Spray off the vehicle before washing.

Make sure that the windows and roof* are closed and the windshield wipers are off. Follow instructions from the car wash operator, especially if there are accessories attached to your vehicle.

If possible, use car washes that do not have brushes.

Washing by hand

Clean the vehicle starting from the top and working downward using a soft sponge or cleaning brush. Use solvent-free cleaning products.

Washing vehicles with matte finish paint by hand

To reduce the risk of damaging the paint when washing, first remove dust and large particles from your vehicle. Insects, grease spots, and fingerprints are best removed with a special cleaner for matte finish paint.

Apply the product using a microfiber cloth. To reduce the risk of damaging the paint surface, do not use too much pressure.

Rinse the vehicle thoroughly with water. Then clean using a neutral shampoo and a soft microfiber cloth.

Rinse the vehicle thoroughly again and let it air dry. Remove any water residue using a chamois. ▶

4N0012721BB

WARNING

– To reduce the risk of accidents, only wash the vehicle when the ignition is off and follow the instructions from the car wash operator.
– To reduce the risk of cuts, protect yourself from sharp metal components when washing the underbody or the inside of the wheel housings.
– After washing the vehicle, the braking effect may be delayed due to moisture on the brake rotors or ice in the winter. This increases the risk of an accident. The brakes must be dried with a few careful brake applications.

Note

– If you wash the vehicle in an automatic car wash, you must fold the exterior mirrors in to reduce the risk of damage to the mirrors. Power folding exterior mirrors* must only be folded in and out using the power folding function.
– To reduce the risk of damage to the rims and tires, compare the width between the wheels on your vehicle with the distance between the guide rails in the car wash.
– To reduce the risk of damage, compare the height and width of your vehicle with the height and width of the inside of the car wash.
– To reduce the risk of paint damage, do not wash the vehicle in direct sunlight.
– To reduce the risk of damage, do not wash decorative decals* with a pressure washer.
– To reduce the risk of damage to the surface, do not use insect removing sponges, kitchen sponges, or similar items.
– When washing matte finish painted vehicle components:
  – To reduce the risk of damage to the surface, do not use polishing agents or hard wax.
  – Never use protective wax. It can destroy the matte finish effect.
  – Do not place any stickers or magnetic signs on vehicle components painted with matte finish paint. The paint could be damaged when the stickers or magnets are removed.

For the sake of the environment

Only wash the vehicle in facilities specially designed for that purpose. This will reduce the risk of dirty water contaminated with oil from entering the sewer system.

Cleaning and care information

When cleaning and caring for individual vehicle components, refer to the following tables. The information contained there is simply recommendations. For questions or for components that are not listed, consult an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. Also follow the information found in ⇨ ⚠.

Exterior cleaning

Component	Situation	Solution
Windshield wiper blades	Deposits	Soft cloth with glass cleaner, ⇨ *page 69*
Headlights/ Tail lights	Deposits	Soft sponge with a mild soap solution[a)]
Sensors/ camera lenses	Deposits	Sensors: soft cloth with a solvent-free cleaning solution Camera lenses: soft cloth with an alcohol-free cleaning solution
	Snow/ice	Hand brush/solvent-free de-icing spray

Component	Situation	Solution
Laser scanner	Deposits	Soft sponge with a mild soap solution[a)]
Wheels	Road salt	Water
	Brake dust	Acid-free special cleaning solution
Exhaust tail pipes	Road salt	Water, cleaning solution suitable for stainless steel, if necessary
Decorative parts/ trim	Deposits	Mild soap solution [a)], a cleaning solution suitable for stainless steel, if necessary
Paint	Paint damage	Refer to the paint number on the vehicle data label, repair with touch up paint ⇨ *page 319*
	Spilled fuel	Rinse with water immediately
	Surface rust	Rust remover, then treat with hard wax; for questions, consult an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
	Corrosion	Have it removed by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
	Water no longer beads on the surface of clean paint	Treat with hard wax (at least twice per year)
	No shine even though paint has been protected/paint looks poor	Treat with suitable polish; then apply paint protectant if the polish that was used does not contain any protectant
	Deposits such as insects, bird droppings, tree sap, and road salt	Dampen with water immediately and remove with a microfiber cloth
	Grease-based contaminants such as cosmetics or sunblock	Remove immediately with a mild soap solution [a)] and a soft cloth
Carbon components	Deposits	Clean the same way as painted components ⇨ *page 289*
Decorative decals	Deposits	Soft sponge with a mild soap solution[a)]

a) Mild soap solution: maximum two tablespoons of neutral soap in 1 quart (1 liter) of water

Interior cleaning

Component	Situation	Solution
Window glass	Deposits	Glass cleaner, then wipe dry
Decorative parts/ trim	Deposits	Mild soap solution[a)]
Plastic parts	Deposits	Damp cloth
	Heavier deposits	Mild soap solution [a)], detergent-free plastic cleaning solution, if necessary

4N0012721BB

Component	Situation	Solution
Displays/instrument cluster	Deposits	Soft cloth with LCD cleaner; dust in the lower area of the instrument cluster can be removed using a soft brush.
Controls	Deposits	Soft brush, then a soft cloth with a mild soap solution[a)]
Safety belts	Deposits	Mild soap solution [a)], allow to dry before letting them retract
Textiles, artificial leather, Alcantara	Deposits adhering to the surface	Vacuum cleaner
	Water-based deposits such as coffee, tea, blood, etc.	Absorbent cloth and mild soap solution[a)]
	Oil-based deposits such as oil, make-up, etc.	Apply a mild soap solution [a)], blot away the dissolved oil or dye, treat afterward with water, if necessary
	Specific types of deposits such as ink, nail polish, latex paint, shoe polish, etc.	Special stain remover, blot with absorbent material, treat afterward with mild soap solution, if necessary[a)]
Natural leather	Fresh stains	Cotton cloth with a mild soap solution[a)]
	Water-based deposits such as coffee, tea, blood, etc.	Fresh stains: absorbent cloth Dried stains: stain remover suitable for leather
	Oil-based deposits such as oil, make-up, etc.	Fresh stains: absorbent cloth and stain remover suitable for leather Dried stains: oil cleaning spray
	Specific types of deposits such as ink, nail polish, latex paint, shoe polish, etc.	Spot remover suitable for leather
	Care	Regularly apply conditioning cream that protects from light and penetrates into the material. Use special colored conditioning cream, if necessary.
Refrigerator	Dust and dirt	Clean the ventilation openings in the luggage compartment
	Deposits	Lukewarm water, mild soap solution if necessary[a)], then dry
	Defrosting	Empty the refrigerator, switch it off, and let it thaw with the door open, then dry
Carbon components	Deposits	Clean the same way as plastic components

a) Mild soap solution: maximum two tablespoons of neutral soap in 1 quart (1 liter) of water

WARNING

The windshield must not be treated with water-repelling windshield coating agents. Unfavorable conditions such as wetness, darkness, or low sun can result in increased glare. Wiper blade chatter is also possible.

Note

– **Headlights and tail lights**
  – Never clean headlights or tail lights with a dry cloth or sponge.
  – Do not use any cleaning products that contain alcohol, because they could cause cracks to form.
– **Wheels**
  – Never use any paint polish or other abrasive materials.
  – Damage to the protective layer on the rims, such as stone chips or scratches, must be repaired immediately.
– **Camera lenses**
  – Never use warm or hot water to remove snow or ice from the camera lens. This could cause the lens to crack.
  – Never use abrasive cleaning materials or alcohol to clean the camera lens. This could cause scratches and cracks.
– **Laser scanner**
  – Never use abrasive cleaning materials to clean the laser scanner. This could cause scratches and cracks.
– **Door windows**
  – Remove snow and ice on windows and exterior mirrors with a plastic scraper. To reduce the risk of scratches, move the scraper only in one direction and not back and forth.
  – Never remove snow or ice from door windows and mirrors using warm or hot water because this could cause cracks to form.
  – To reduce the risk of damage to the rear window defogger, do not apply any stickers on the heating wires on the inside of the window.
– **Decorative parts and trim**
  – Never use chrome care or cleaning products.
– **Paint**
  – To reduce the risk of scratches, the vehicle must be free of dirt and dust before polishing or waxing.
  – To prevent paint damage, do not polish or wax the vehicle in direct sunlight.
  – To reduce the risk of paint damage, do not polish away rust spots.
  – Remove cosmetics and sunscreen immediately because they could damage the paint.
– **Decorative decals**
  – To reduce the risk of damage, do not use any rough powder or abrasive cleaning products.
  – To reduce the risk of damage, do not polish decorative decals that have a matte or printed finish.
  – Due to the risk of damage, do not use an ice scraper to remove snow and ice on windows with decorative decals on them.
– **Displays and instrument cluster**
  – Make sure that the display and instrument cluster are switched off and have cooled down before cleaning. To switch off the upper and lower display, select on the MMI home screen: **SETTINGS** > **Display & brightness** > **MMI** > **Screen cleaning**.
  – Displays, the instrument cluster, and the trim surrounding it must not be cleaned with dry cleaning methods because they could become scratched.
  – Make sure no fluids enter the spaces between the instrument cluster and the trim, because that could cause damage.
– **Controls**
  – Make sure that no fluids enter the controls, because this could cause damage.
– **Safety belts**
  – Do not remove the safety belts to clean them.
  – Never clean safety belts or their components with chemicals or with corrosive fluids or solvents and never allow sharp objects to come into contact with the safety ▶

belts. This could cause damage to the belt webbing.
  – If there is damage to the webbing, the connections, the retractors, or the buckles, have them replaced by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
– **Textiles, artificial leather, and Alcantara**
  – Never treat artificial leather or Alcantara with leather care products, solvents, floor polish, shoe polish, spot remover, or similar products.
  – Have a cleaning specialist remove stubborn stains to reduce the risk of damage.
  – Never use steam cleaners, brushes, hard sponges, etc. when cleaning.
  – Do not turn on the seat heating* to dry the seat.
  – Objects with sharp edges, such as zippers or rivets on clothing or belts, can cause damage to the surface.
  – Open hook and loop fasteners, for example on clothing, can damage seat covers. Make sure hook and loop fasteners are closed.
– **Natural leather**
  – Never treat leather with solvents, floor polish, shoe polish, spot remover or similar products.
  – Objects with sharp edges, such as zippers or rivets on clothing or belts, can cause damage to the surface.
  – Never use steam cleaners, brushes, hard sponges, etc. when cleaning.
  – Do not turn on the seat heating* to dry the seat.
  – To help prevent the leather from fading, do not leave the vehicle in direct sunlight for long periods of time. If leaving the vehicle parked for long periods of time, you should cover the leather to protect it from direct sunlight.
– **Refrigerator**
  – Do not try to speed up the defrosting process by applying heat.
  – To help prevent health risks or damage to the refrigerator, do not use any abrasive cleaners, solvents, wax, or strongly scented or aggressive cleaning products.
  – Do not clean the refrigerator with rough cleaning tools such as steel wool.

Tips

– Insects are easier to remove from paint that has been freshly waxed.
– Regular waxing can prevent rust spots from forming.
– Decorative decals can age due to environmental conditions, which can result in damage such as brittleness. The color may fade if exposed to excessive sunlight.

Taking your vehicle out of service

If you would like to take your vehicle out of service for a long period of time, contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. They will advise you of important measures, such as corrosion protection, service, and storage procedures. Also follow the information about the vehicle battery ⇨ *page 265*.

Emergency assistance

General information

- Park the vehicle as far as possible from moving traffic in the event of a breakdown. In the event of a flat tire, park the vehicle on a level surface. If you are on a steep hill, be especially careful.
- Set the parking brake.
- Switch the emergency flashers on.
- Have the passengers exit the vehicle. They should move to a safe place, for example behind a guard rail.

WARNING

Follow the steps given above. This is for your protection and the for the safety of others on the road.

Equipment

Vehicle tool kit, tire mobility kit, and vehicle jack

Applies to: vehicles with the vehicle tool kit, tire mobility kit, and vehicle jack



Fig. 184 Luggage compartment: cargo floor cover

The vehicle tool kit, vehicle jack*, tire mobility kit*, and compressor* are stored in the luggage compartment under the cargo floor cover.

- Lift the cargo floor up using the plastic handle.
- Hook the handle into the luggage compartment weather strip.
- Applies to: vehicles with spare tire: Turn the handle counter-clockwise and remove the spare tire.
- Unhook the cargo floor cover before closing the luggage compartment lid.

Depending on the equipment, the vehicle tool kit* may be located under the spare tire*, under another cover, or in the tool box.

Tips

The vehicle jack* does not require any maintenance.

Tire mobility kit

Preparation

Applies to: vehicles with tire mobility kit

- Read and follow the important safety precautions ⇨ *page 295*.
- Set the parking brake.
- Select the “P” position.
- Check if a repair with the tire mobility kit is possible ⇨ *page 295*.

Using the tire mobility kit

Applies to: vehicles with tire mobility kit



Fig. 185 Tire: tire damage that cannot be repaired

The tire repair is only meant for temporary use. Change the damaged tire as soon as possible ⇨ ⚠.

If the tire is pierced by an object such as a nail, do not remove the object from the tire.

The tire mobility kit can be used at temperatures as low as -4 °F (-20 °C).

The tire mobility kit must not be used:

– If the tire has cuts or punctures that are larger than 0.16 in (4 mm) ① ⇨ *fig. 185*
– If the rim is damaged ②
– If you have driven with very low tire pressure or without air in the tire ③ ▶

See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance in these situations.

WARNING

- Please note that the tire mobility kit cannot be used in all situations, and that it may only be used temporarily.
- The tire sealant must not come in contact with skin, eyes, or clothing.
- If tire sealant comes into contact with your eyes or your skin, thoroughly rinse the affected area immediately with clean water.
- Do not inhale the fumes.
- If you swallow any of the tire sealant, thoroughly rinse your mouth immediately and drink a lot of water. Do not induce vomiting. Seek medical attention immediately.
- Change your clothing immediately if it comes into contact with tire sealant.
- If an allergic reaction occurs, seek medical attention immediately.
- Keep the tire sealant away from children.

Tips

- If sealant leaks, allow it to dry in place. You can then peel it off like a sticker.
- Note the expiration date on the sealant bottle. Replace the tire sealant at an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
- Radio reception can be interrupted when operating the compressor.
- Follow the legal regulations that are applicable in the country where you are operating the vehicle.

Repairing tires

Applies to: vehicles with tire mobility kit

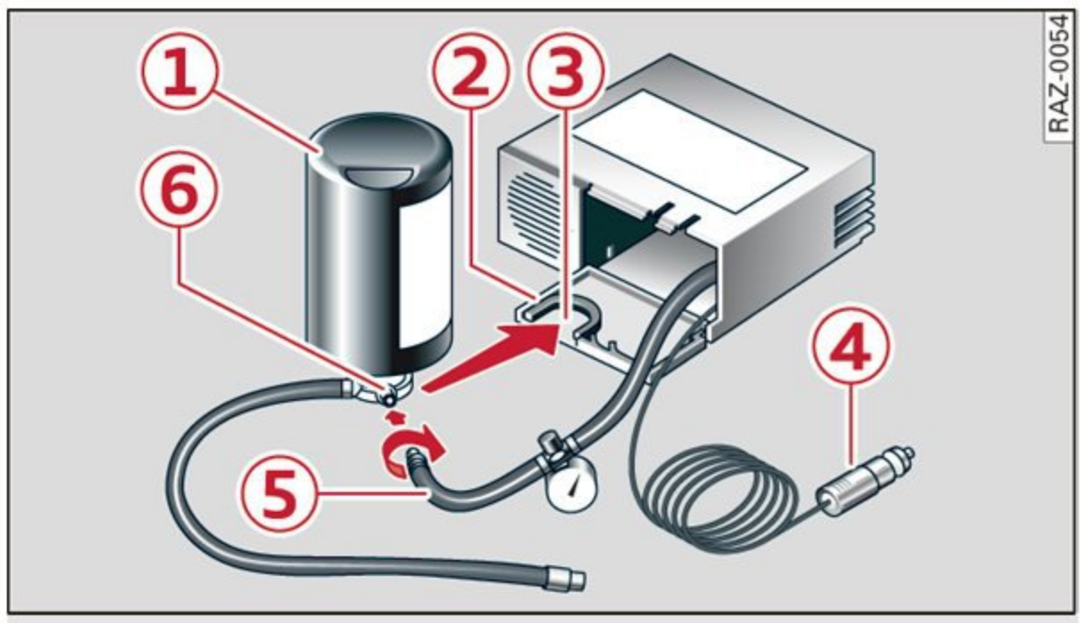


Fig. 186 Diagram: components of the tire mobility kit

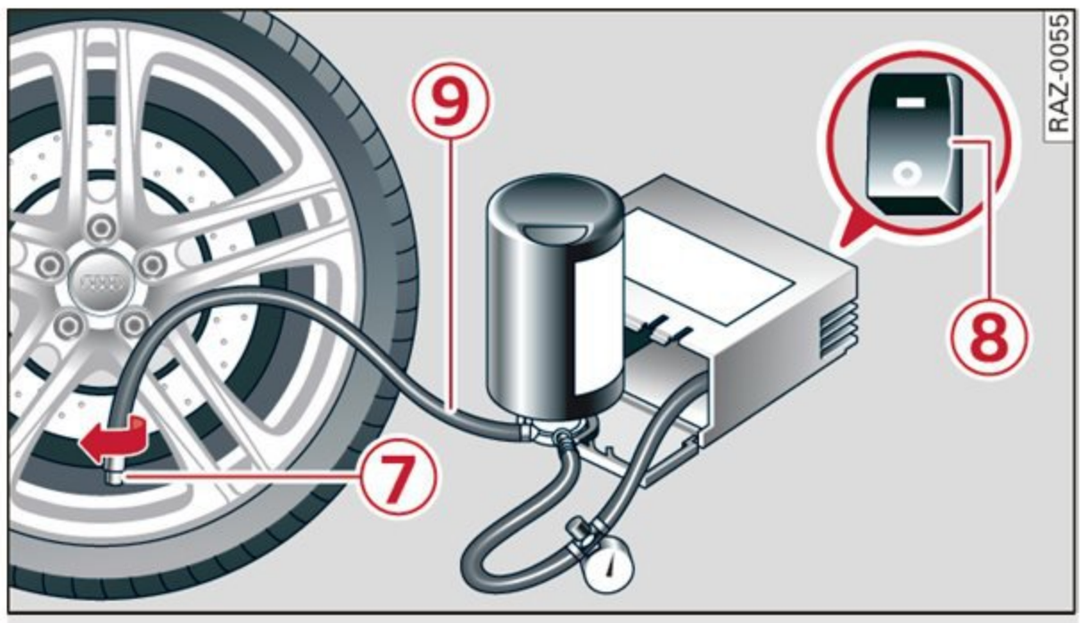


Fig. 187 Diagram: tire mobility kit connection

Requirement: the tire mobility kit must be laid out and ready for use ⇨ *page 295*.

Setting up the tire mobility kit

- ▸ Open the cover (2) on the compressor[1] ⇨ *fig. 186*.
- ▸ Remove the connector (4) and pressure hose (5) from the housing.
- ▸ Connect the compressor pressure hose (5) to the flange (6) on the tire sealant bottle (1).
- ▸ Insert the sealant bottle with the flange at the bottom into the opening (3) on the compressor cover or the top side of the compressor housing.
- ▸ Remove the valve cap from the faulty tire.
- ▸ Install the filler hose (9) on the valve (7) ⇨ *fig. 187*.
- ▸ Connect the plug (4) ⇨ *fig. 186* to an outlet in the vehicle.
- ▸ Switch the ignition on. ▶

[1] The compressor may look different. However, the way it is operated is generally the same.

Inflating a tire

- ▸ Move the switch ⑧ ⇨ *fig. 187* on the compressor into position **I**.
- ▸ Inflate the tire to between 29 psi (200 kPA) and 36 psi (250 kPA) and read the pressure on the gauge.
- ▸ If this tire pressure is not reached, remove the filler hose. Drive slowly approximately 33 feet (10 m) forward or in reverse so that the sealant can be distributed in the tire. Inflate the tire again ⇨ ⚠.

WARNING

- Read and follow the manufacturer's safety precautions on the compressor and in the instructions on the bottle of sealant.
- If a tire pressure of 29 psi (200 kPA) cannot reached after inflating for 6 minutes, then the tire is too severely damaged. Do not continue driving.
- If the tire cannot be repaired with the tire sealant, see an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Tips

Do not operate the compressor for more than six minutes continuously, or it can overheat. Once the compressor has cooled, you can continue to use it.

Completing

Applies to: vehicles with tire mobility kit

- ▸ Affix the sticker that says "max. 50 mph (max. 80 km/h)" that is provided with the tire mobility kit within the driver's field of vision.
- ▸ Stop the vehicle after driving for about 10 minutes and check the tire pressure.
- ▸ If the tire pressure is lower than 19 psi (130 kPA), then the tire is too severely damaged. Do not continue driving.

WARNING

Pay attention to the following after repairing the tire:

- Do not drive faster than 50 mph (80 km/h).
- Avoid hard acceleration or braking and driving fast around curves.
- The vehicle may become more difficult to control.
- If the tire is too severely damaged, see an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

For the sake of the environment

You can give the used tire sealant bottle to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for disposal.

Tips

Remember to obtain a new bottle of sealant from an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility after repairing a tire.

Changing a tire

Preparation

You must complete the preparation before changing a tire.

- ▸ Read and follow the important safety precautions ⇨ *page 295*.
- ▸ Set the parking brake.
- ▸ Select the “P” position.
- ▸ When towing a trailer: disconnect the trailer from your vehicle.
- ▸ Lay out the vehicle tool kit ⇨ *page 295* and the spare tire ⇨ *page 301*.
- ▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Settings & Service** > **Air suspension: wheel change**.
- ▸ Switch the ignition off.

WARNING

When using the vehicle jack* on a road with a steep hill or when offroad, you must take extra precautions to prevent the vehicle from rolling. Use suitable objects to block the front and back of the wheel that is diagonal from the wheel with the flat tire.

Removing the caps



Fig. 188 Wheel: wheel bolts with caps

- ▸ Slide the plastic clip from the vehicle tool kit onto the cap until it engages ⇨ *fig. 188*.
- ▸ Remove the cap with the plastic clip.

Anti-theft wheel bolts

Applies to: vehicles with anti-theft wheel bolts

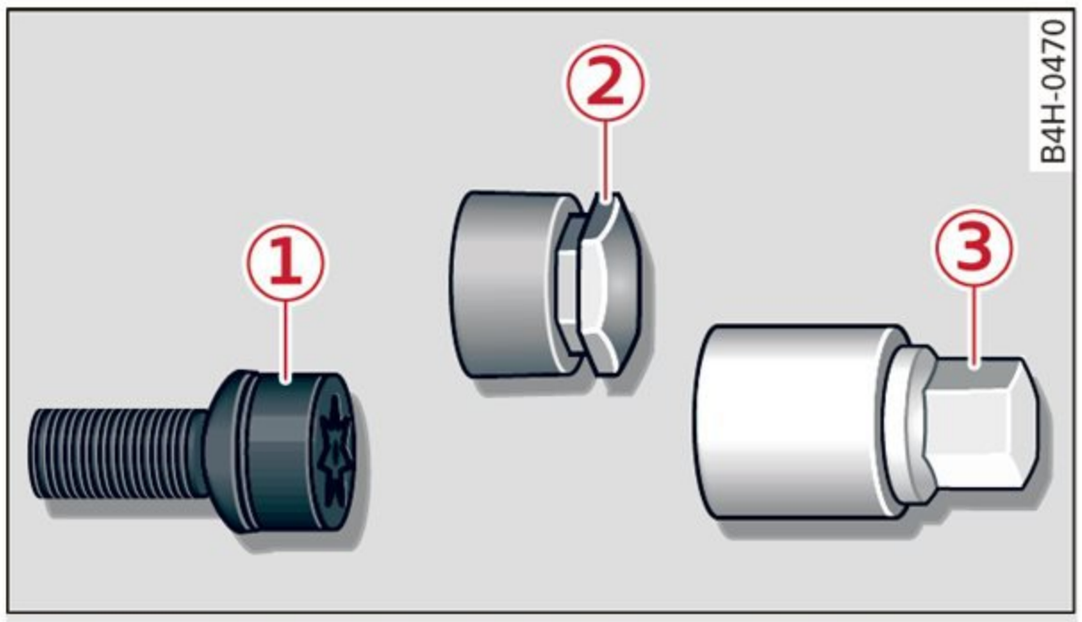


Fig. 189 Anti-theft wheel bolt with cap and adapter

You need a special adapter in the vehicle tool kit to remove the anti-theft wheel bolts.

- ▸ Remove the cap ②.
- ▸ Slide the adapter ③ all the way onto the anti-theft wheel bolt ①.
- ▸ Slide the wheel wrench from the vehicle tool kit all the way onto the adapter ③.
- ▸ Loosen the wheel bolt ⇨ *page 298*.

Tips

Note the code number for the wheel bolt adapter and store it in a safe place separate from the vehicle. If you need a replacement adapter, contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility and give them the code number.

Loosening the wheel bolts



Fig. 190 Wheel: loosening the wheel bolt

- ▸ Slide the wheel wrench from the vehicle tool kit all the way onto the wheel bolt[1)].
- ▸ Turn the wheel bolt approximately one turn to the left. To achieve the required torque, hold the end of the wheel wrench. If the wheel bolt will not loosen, press carefully on the wheel wrench with your foot. Hold onto the vehicle securely while doing this and make sure your footing is stable.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of an accident, only loosen the wheel bolts gently one turn before raising the vehicle with the vehicle jack*.

1) You need the matching adapter in order to loosen and tighten anti-theft wheel bolts* ⇨ *page 298*.

Raising the vehicle

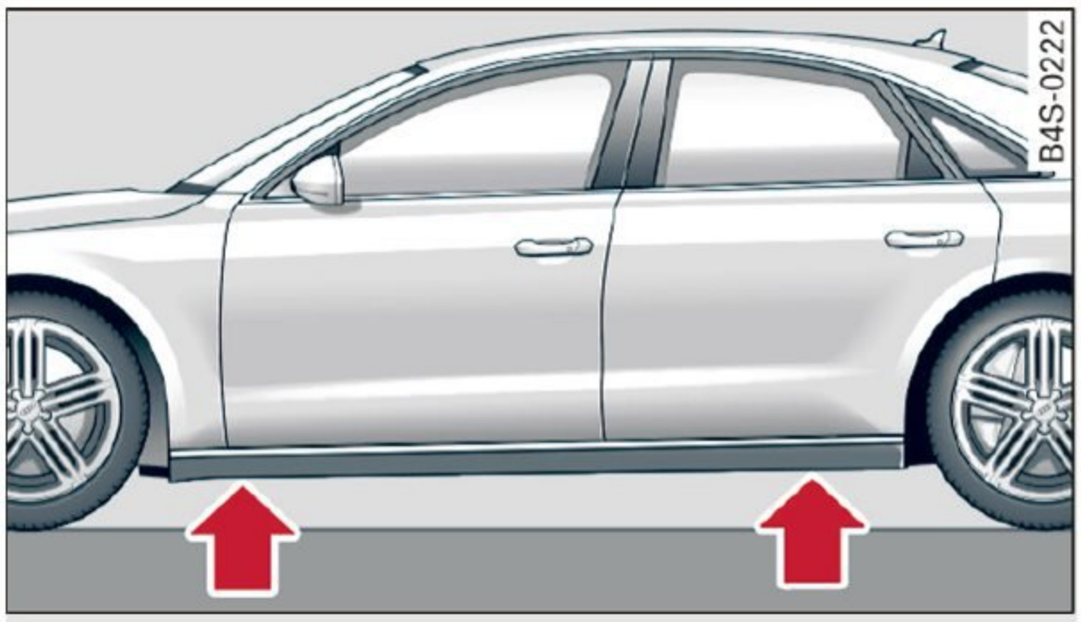


Fig. 191 Sill panels: markings

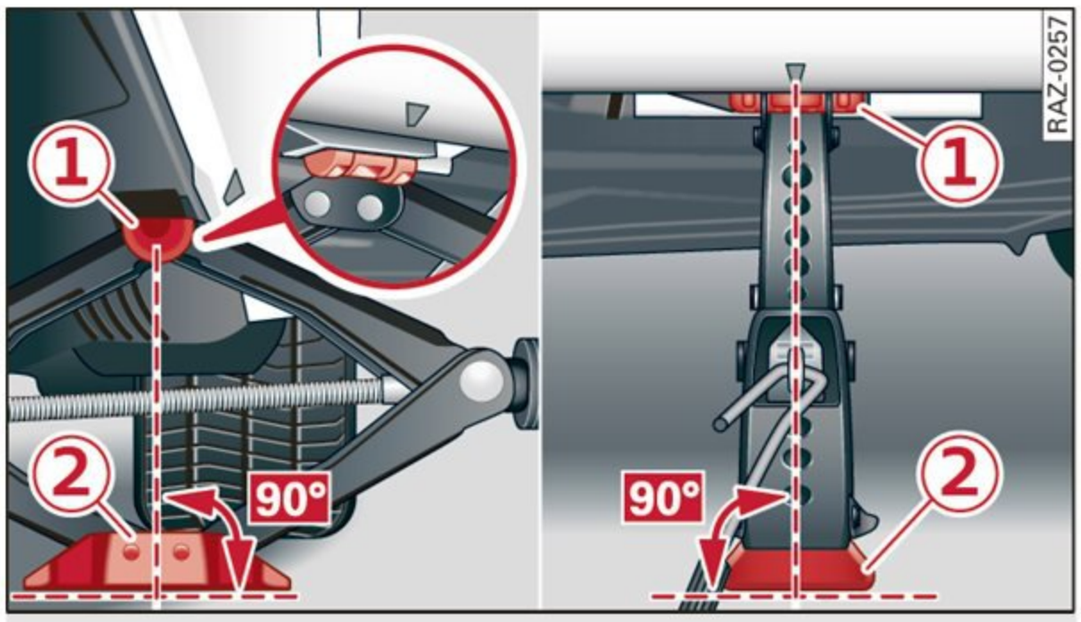


Fig. 192 Sill: positioning the vehicle jack

- ► Place the vehicle jack* from the vehicle tool kit on a firm surface. Use a flat, stable support if necessary. On a slippery surface such as tile, you should use a non-slip pad such as a rubber mat ⇨ ⚠.
- ► Find the marking on the sill that is closest to the tire that will be changed ⇨ *fig. 191*. Behind the marking, there is a lifting point on the side sill for the vehicle jack*.
- ► Turn the vehicle jack* located under the lifting point on the sill to raise the jack until its arm (1) ⇨ *fig. 192* is located under the designated plastic mount.
- ► Align the vehicle jack* so the arm (1) engages in the designated lifting point in the door sill and the movable base (2) lies flat on the ground. The base (2) must be directly under the mounting point (1).
- ► Continue raising the vehicle jack* until the wheel lifts off the ground slightly.

WARNING

– To reduce the risk of injury, make sure no one is in the vehicle before raising it.

– Make sure the vehicle jack* is stable. There is a risk of injury when the ground is slippery or soft, because the vehicle jack* could slide or sink.
– Only raise your vehicle with the vehicle jack* provided by the factory. If you use a vehicle jack designed for another vehicle, your vehicle could slip and cause injury.
– Position the vehicle jack* only at the designated mounting points on the side sill and align the jack. Otherwise, the vehicle jack* could slip and cause an injury if it does not have sufficient hold on the vehicle.
– To reduce the risk of injury, do not raise any other vehicles or other loads using the vehicle jack* provided by the factory.
– Changes in temperature or load can affect the height of the vehicle.
– To reduce the risk of an accident, never start the engine when the vehicle is raised.
– To reduce the risk of injury, support the vehicle securely with suitable stands if work is to be performed underneath the vehicle.

Note

Do not lift the vehicle by the sill. Position the vehicle jack* only at the designated mounting points on the side sill. Otherwise, your vehicle could be damaged.

Removing and installing a wheel

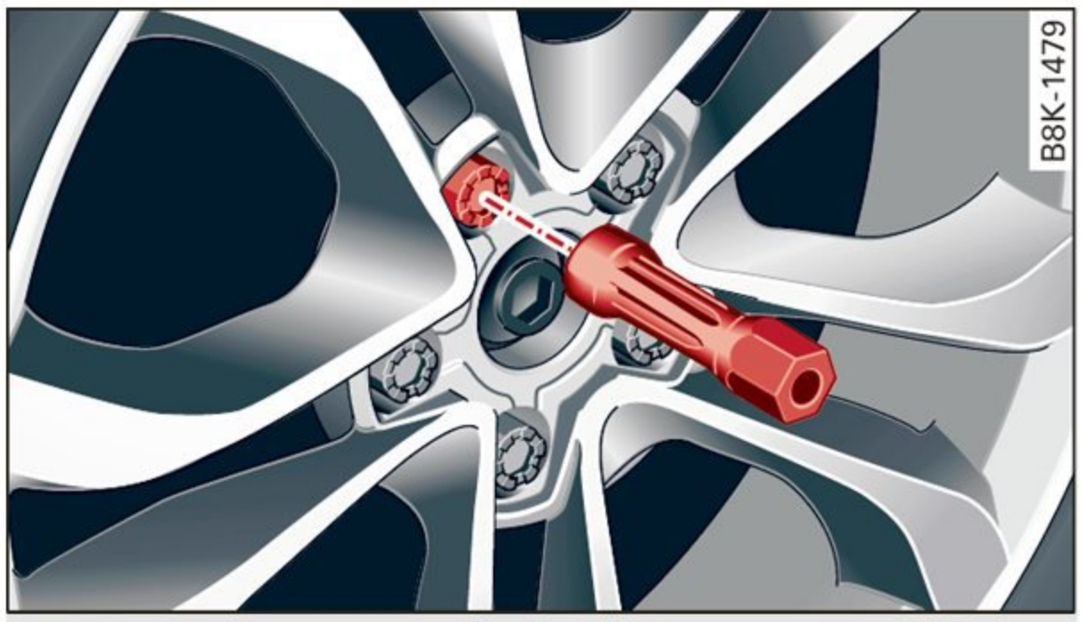


Fig. 193 Wheel: internal hex socket to turn the wheel bolts

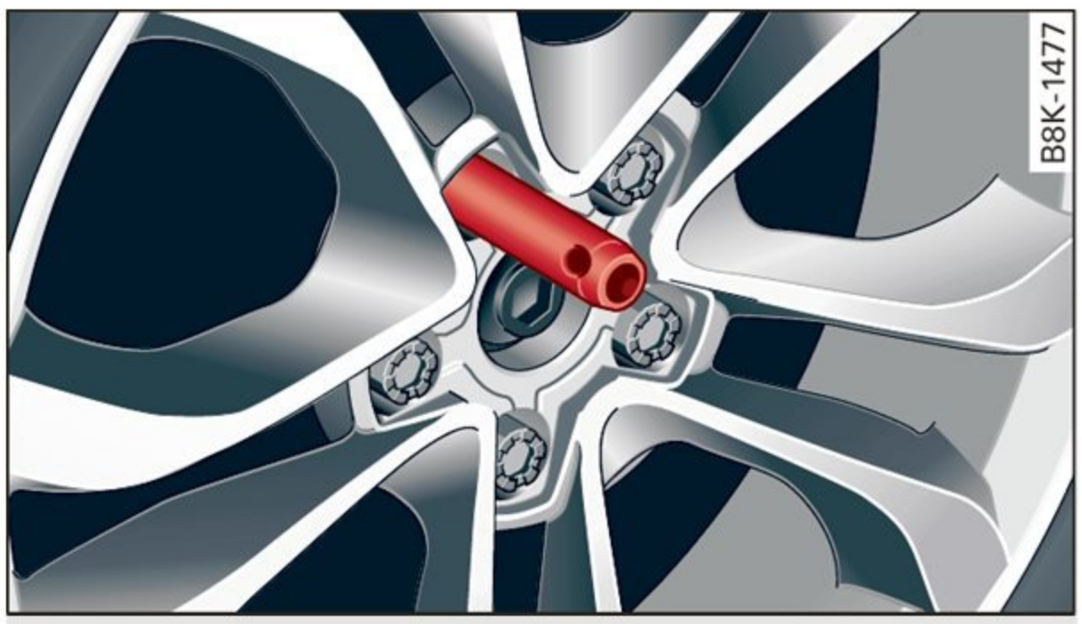


Fig. 194 Wheel: alignment pin in the top hole

Removing a wheel

- ▸ Remove the top wheel bolt completely using the hex socket in the screwdriver handle from the vehicle tool kit ⇨ *fig. 193* and place it on a clean surface.
- ▸ Then install the alignment pin from the vehicle tool kit by hand in the empty wheel bolt hole ⇨ *fig. 194*[1)].
- ▸ Remove the rest of the wheel bolts.
- ▸ Remove the wheel ⇨ (!). The alignment pin remains in the hole while doing this.

Installing a wheel

Read the directions on ⇨ *page 300* when installing unidirectional tires.

- ▸ Slide the wheel on over the alignment pin ⇨ (!).
- ▸ Install the wheel bolts and tighten them gently using the hex socket.
- ▸ Remove the alignment pin and tighten the remaining wheel bolt.
- ▸ Carefully lower the vehicle using the vehicle jack*.
- ▸ Tighten the wheel bolts in a diagonal pattern using the wheel wrench.

The wheel bolts must be clean and loosen and tighten easily. Check the contact surfaces for the wheel and hub. Contaminants on these surfaces must be removed before installing the wheel.

WARNING

– Read and follow the important information and notes under ⇨ *page 276*.
– Never use the hex socket in the screwdriver handle to tighten the wheel bolts. Using the hex socket will not achieve the required tightening torque, which increases the risk of an accident.

Note

When removing or installing the wheel, the rim could hit the brake rotor and damage the rotor. Work carefully and have a second person help you.

Unidirectional tires

A unidirectional tire profile is identified by arrows on the tire sidewall that point in the running direction. You must always maintain the specified running direction. This is necessary to ensure the tire's optimum performance in regard to adhesion, running noise, and friction, and to reduce the risk of hydroplaning.

To benefit fully from the advantages of the unidirectional tire design, you should replace faulty tires as soon as possible and restore the correct running direction on all of the tires.

Finishing

- ▸ Reinstall the caps on the wheel bolts if necessary. ▶

1) Applies to: vehicles with ceramic brake rotors*: use a second alignment pin* from the vehicle tool kit for the lowest hole according to the steps described for the first alignment pin.

- ▸ Store the vehicle tool kit in its designated place.
- ▸ If the removed wheel does not fit in the spare wheel well, store it securely in the luggage compartment ⇨ *page 101*.
- ▸ Check the tire pressure on the installed wheel as soon as possible.
- ▸ Correct the tire pressure and store it in the MMI ⇨ *page 288*.
- ▸ The wheel bolt tightening specification must be 90 ft lbs (120 Nm). Have it checked it as soon as possible with a torque wrench. Drive carefully until then.
- ▸ Have the faulty wheel replaced as quickly as possible.

Space-saving spare tire

Applies to: vehicles with space-saving spare tire (compact spare tire)

The spare tire is intended for short-term use only. Have the damaged tire checked and replaced if necessary by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility as soon as possible.

There are some restrictions on the use of the compact spare tire. The compact spare tire has been designed specifically for your type of vehicle. Do not replace it with the spare tire from another type of vehicle.

The compact spare tire is located in the luggage compartment under the cargo floor cover ⇨ *page 295*.

The tire pressure must be 61 PSI (420 kPA).

Snow chains

For technical reasons, the use of snow chains on the compact spare tire is not permitted.

If you have to drive with snow chains and a front tire fails, mount the spare tire in place of a rear tire. Install the snow chains on the rear tire that you removed, and install that in place of the front tire that failed.

WARNING

– After installing a spare tire, the tire pressure must be checked as soon as possible.
– Do not drive faster than 50 mph (80 km/h) with a compact spare tire. Driving faster than that increases the risk of an accident.
– To reduce the risk of an accident, avoid hard acceleration or braking and driving fast around curves with the compact spare tire.
– To reduce the risk of an accident, never drive with more than one compact spare tire.
– Normal summer or winter tires must not be mounted on the compact spare wheel rim.

Jump starting

Preparation

You should only perform the steps that follow if you have the necessary tools and technical expertise.

If the engine does not start because the vehicle battery is drained, you can jump start your vehicle using another vehicle. Jump start cables are needed to do this.

Both vehicle batteries must have 12 V nominal voltage. The voltage capacity (Ah) of the vehicle battery that is giving power must not be less than the capacity of the drained vehicle battery.

Jump start cable

Only use a jump start cable with a large enough diameter. Note the manufacturer's specifications.

Only use a jump start cable with insulated terminal clamps.

Positive cable - usually red.

Negative cable - usually black.

WARNING

– A drained vehicle battery can freeze at temperatures around 32 °F (0 ºC). If the vehicle battery is frozen, it must be thawed before connecting the jump start cables. If it is not, the risk of an explosion and chemical burns increases. After jump starting the vehicle, drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the vehicle battery checked. ▶

– Read the warnings when working in the engine compartment ⇨ *page 256*.
– Handling the jump start cables incorrectly may cause the vehicle battery to explode and lead to serious injuries.

Note

Jump start cables can cause considerable damage to the vehicle electrical system if they are connected incorrectly.

Tips

– There must be no contact between the vehicles, or else voltage could flow when connecting the positive terminal and drain the vehicle battery of the vehicle providing the jump start.
– The drained vehicle battery must be connected correctly to the electrical system.
– Switch off electrical equipment that is not needed.

Starting the engine

Both jump start cables must be connected in the correct order.

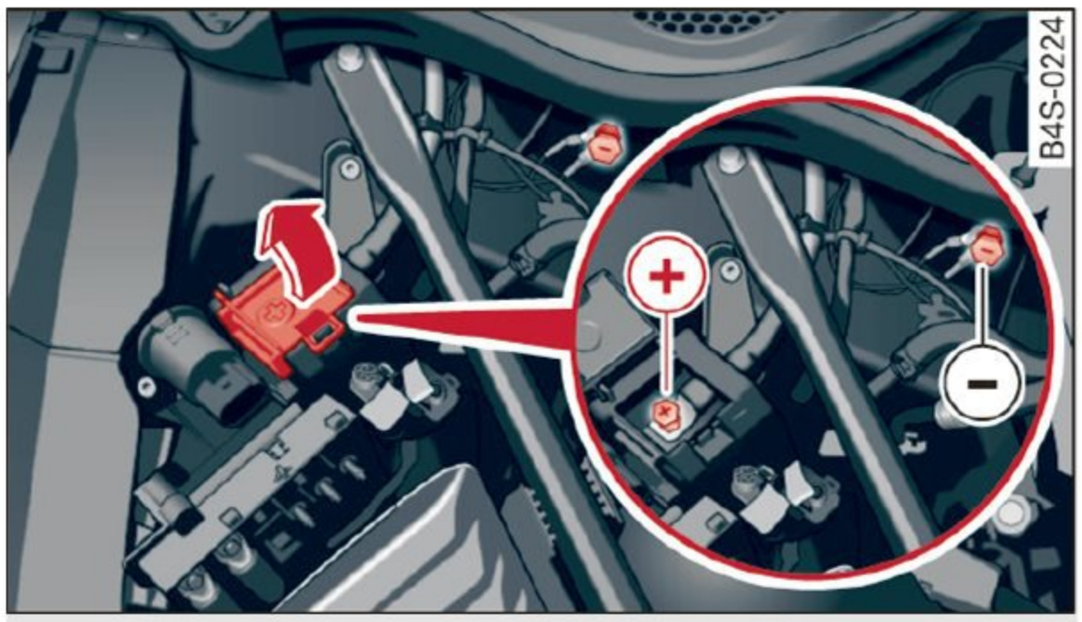


Fig. 195 Engine compartment: connectors for jump start cables or a charger

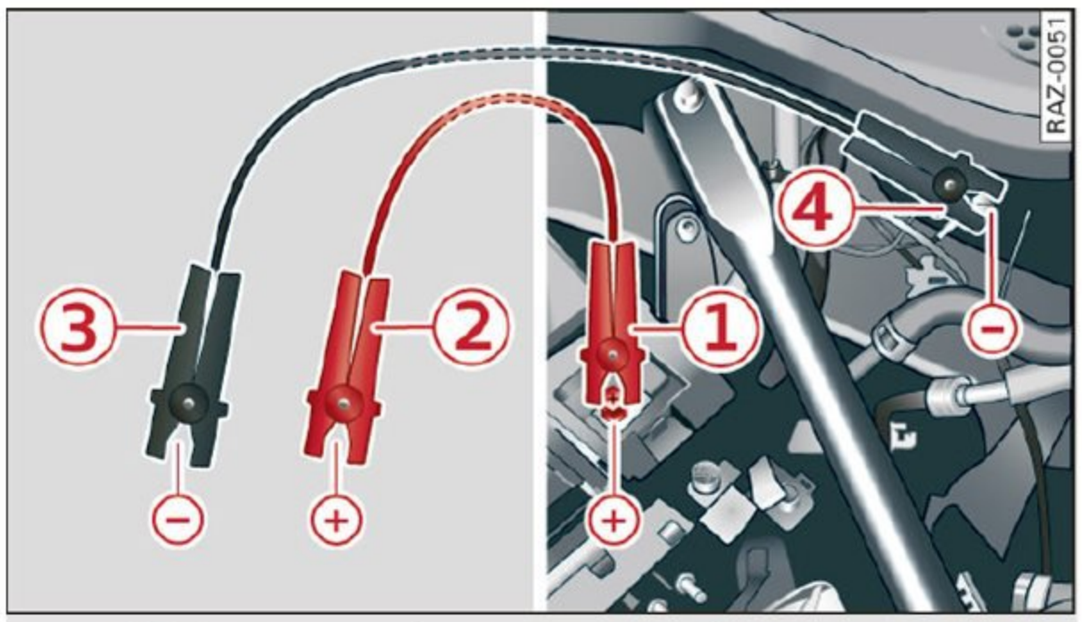


Fig. 196 Connecting the jump start cables

The jump start cable connections are located in the engine compartment.

Follow the information about the vehicle battery ⇨ *page 265*.

Connecting the positive cable (red) to the positive terminal

▸ Open the red cover on the positive terminal ⇨ *fig. 195*.

1. Attach one end of the positive cable (red) to the jump-start pin ① ⇨ *fig. 196* on your vehicle.
2. Attach the other end of the positive cable (red) to the positive terminal ② on the power source.

Connecting the negative cable (black) to the negative terminal

3. Attach one end of the negative cable (black) to the negative terminal ③ on the power source.
4. Attach the other end of the negative cable (black) to the jump-start pin ④ on the vehicle.

Starting the engine

▸ Start the engine in the vehicle giving the charge and let it run at idle.
▸ Now start the engine in your vehicle, which has the drained battery.
▸ If the engine does not start, stop the starting procedure after 10 seconds and then repeat it after approximately 30 seconds.
▸ Turn on the rear window defogger in your vehicle in order to reduce any voltage peaks that may occur when disconnecting the jump start cables. The headlights must be switched off.
▸ With the engines running, remove the cables in reverse order of the way they were installed.
▸ Close the red cover on the positive terminal.

WARNING

– Never connect the jump start cable directly to your vehicle battery. Only use the connections in the engine compartment.
– Do not touch the non-insulated parts of the terminal clamps. The cable must also not come into contact with vehicle components ▶

that conduct electricity when it is connected to the positive vehicle battery terminal. This can cause a short circuit.
– The plugs on the battery cells must not be opened.
– Keep ignition sources (such as open flames, burning cigarettes, etc.) away from the vehicle batteries to reduce the risk of an explosion.
– Route the jump start cables so they cannot get caught in the moving parts in the other vehicle's engine compartment.

Note

Please note that the connecting process previously described for the jump start cables is intended for when your vehicle is being jump started. If you are jump starting another vehicle, connect the negative cable (–) to a large metal component that is bolted securely to the engine block, or to the engine block itself. If the vehicle battery in the vehicle being jump started is not vented to the outside, there is a risk of explosion due to hydrogen gas.

Tips

Make sure that the connected jump start cables have sufficient contact with metal.

Towing

General information

You should only perform the steps that follow if you have the necessary tools and technical expertise.

Towing requires a certain amount of practice. Audi recommends contacting a towing company to have the vehicle transported.

You should only have your vehicle towed by another vehicle when disabled in exceptional circumstances. Inexperienced drivers should not tow.

Notes on towing

When the engine is stopped, the transmission will not be sufficiently lubricated if traveling at high speeds and long distances:

– The maximum permitted towing speed is 30 mph (50 km/h).
– The maximum permitted towing distance is 30 miles (50 km).

Additional information on towing with a tow truck

The vehicle may only be towed with the front axle raised. Do not wrap any chains or cables around the brake lines.

Tow bar and towing cable

The vehicle can be towed with a tow bar or towing cable. Both drivers should be familiar with the special considerations when towing, especially when using a towing cable.

Always make sure the traction force does not exceed the permitted level and there are no shock loading conditions. There is always the risk of the coupling becoming overloaded when driving off-road.

For the most safety and security, drive with a tow bar. You should use a towing cable only if a tow bar is not available. Use a towing cable made of synthetic elastic cable similar elastic material.

WARNING

– Towing highly increases the risk of an accident, for example from colliding with the towing vehicle.
– To reduce the risk of an accident, do not allow anyone to remain inside the vehicle when it is being transported by a tow truck or a special transporter.

Note

– If normal towing is not possible, for example if the transmission is faulty or if the towing distance is greater than 30 miles (50 km), then transport the vehicle on a special carrier.

– If the vehicle is towed by a tow truck at the axle that is not permitted, this can cause severe damage to the transmission.
– The vehicle must not be tow started for technical reasons.

Tips

– If the power supply is interrupted, then it will not be possible to move the selector lever out of the "P" position. The parking lock must be released using the emergency release before towing the vehicle ⇨ *page 113*.
– Switch Audi pre sense* off ⇨ *page 164* when loading the vehicle onto a vehicle carrier, train, ship, or other type of transportation, or when towing the vehicle. This can prevent an undesired intervention from the pre sense* system.
– Follow the local legal regulations for towing.

Towing

Read and follow the important information under ⇨ *page 303*.

Preparations

► Only secure the towing cable or tow bar at the designated towing loops ⇨ *page 304*, ⇨ *page 305*.
► Make sure the towing cable is not twisted. Otherwise it could disconnect from the towing loop while towing.
► Switch the emergency flashers on in both vehicles ⇨ *page 63*. However, do not do this if it prohibited by law.

Towing vehicle (front)

► Only start to drive when the towing cable is taut.
► Press the brake pedal very carefully.
► Avoid sudden braking or driving maneuvers.

Vehicle being towed (rear)

► Make sure the ignition is switched on so that the steering wheel is not locked and so that you can use the turn signals, the horn, and the windshield wipers if needed ⇨ ⚠.
► The brake booster only works when the engine is running. Power steering only works when the ignition is switched on and the vehicle is rolling [1]. If the brake booster and power steering are not functioning, you must press the brake pedal much harder and use more force to steer.
► Release the parking brake ⇨ *page 119*.
► Select the “N” selector lever position.
► Make sure the towing cable is always taut.

WARNING

Never tow a vehicle using a tow bar or towing cable if the vehicle does not have electrical power.

Front towing loop

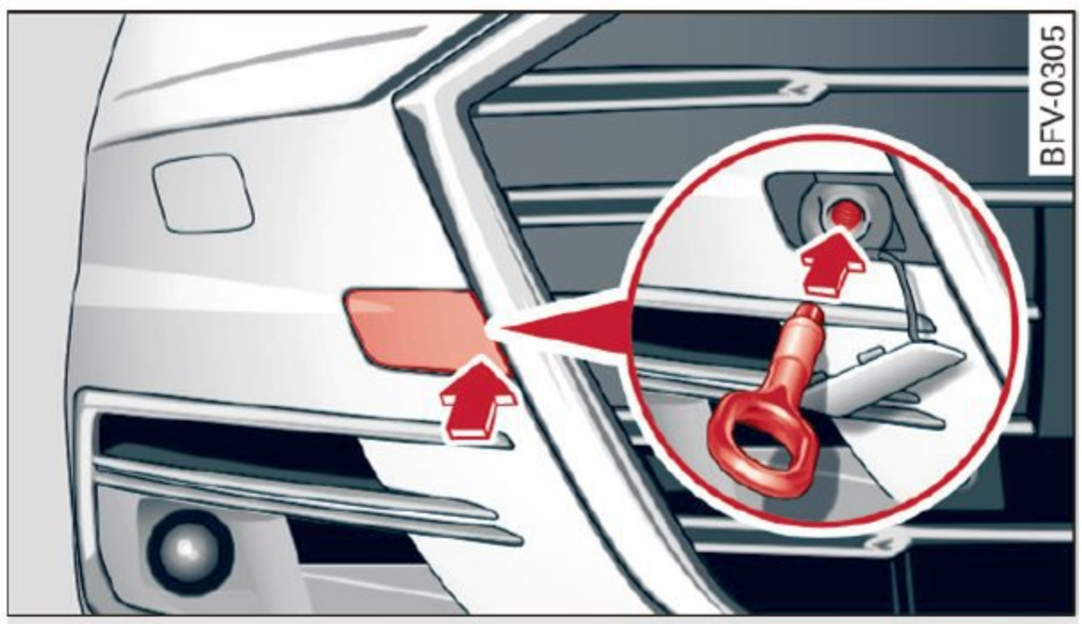


Fig. 197 Front bumper: installing the towing loop

The threaded opening for the towing loop is located on the right side of the front bumper.

► Remove the towing loop from the vehicle tool kit ⇨ *page 295*.
► Press the cap inward with brief, strong pressure ⇨ *fig. 197*. The cap will loosen from the bumper.
► Tighten the towing loop in the threaded opening until it stops and then tighten it with a wheel wrench. ▶

[1] Requirement: the vehicle battery must have a sufficient charge level.

► After using, place the towing loop back in the vehicle tool kit.

WARNING

If the towing loop is not tightened until it stops when installing, the threads may be pulled out when towing the vehicle and result in an accident.

Rear towing loop

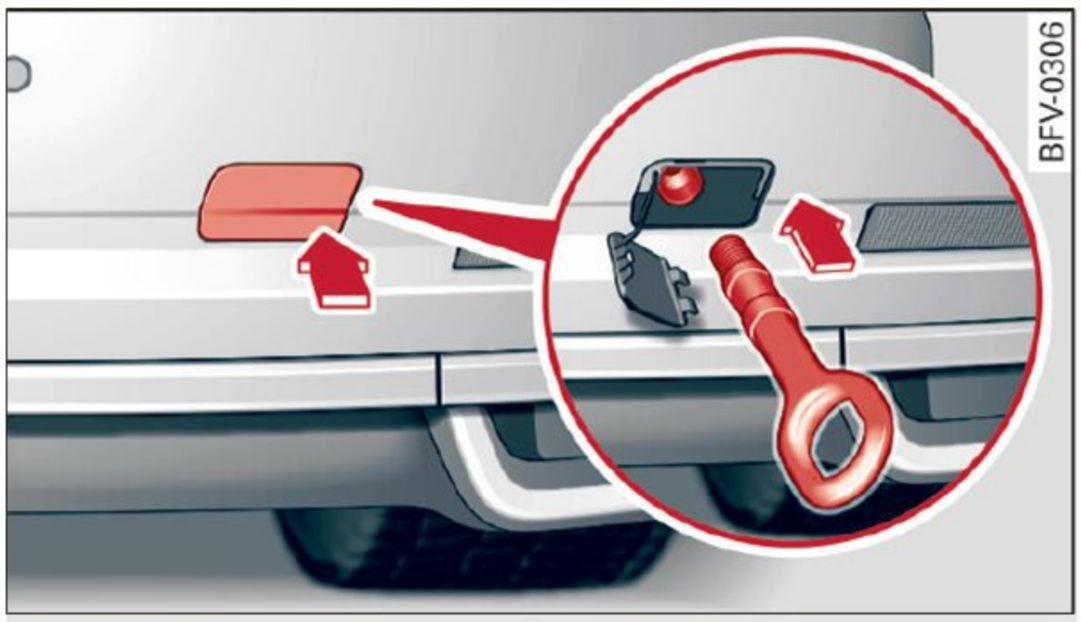


Fig. 198 Rear bumper: installing the towing loop

The threaded opening for the towing loop is located on the right rear of the bumper.

► Remove the towing loop from the vehicle tool kit ⇨ *page 295*.
► Press the cap inward with brief, strong pressure ⇨ *fig. 198*. The cap will loosen from the bumper.
► Tighten the towing loop in the threaded opening until it stops and then tighten it with a wheel wrench.
► After using, place the towing loop back in the vehicle tool kit.

WARNING

If the towing loop is not tightened until it stops when installing, the threads may be pulled out when towing the vehicle and result in an accident.

Fuses and bulbs

Fuses

Replacing fuses

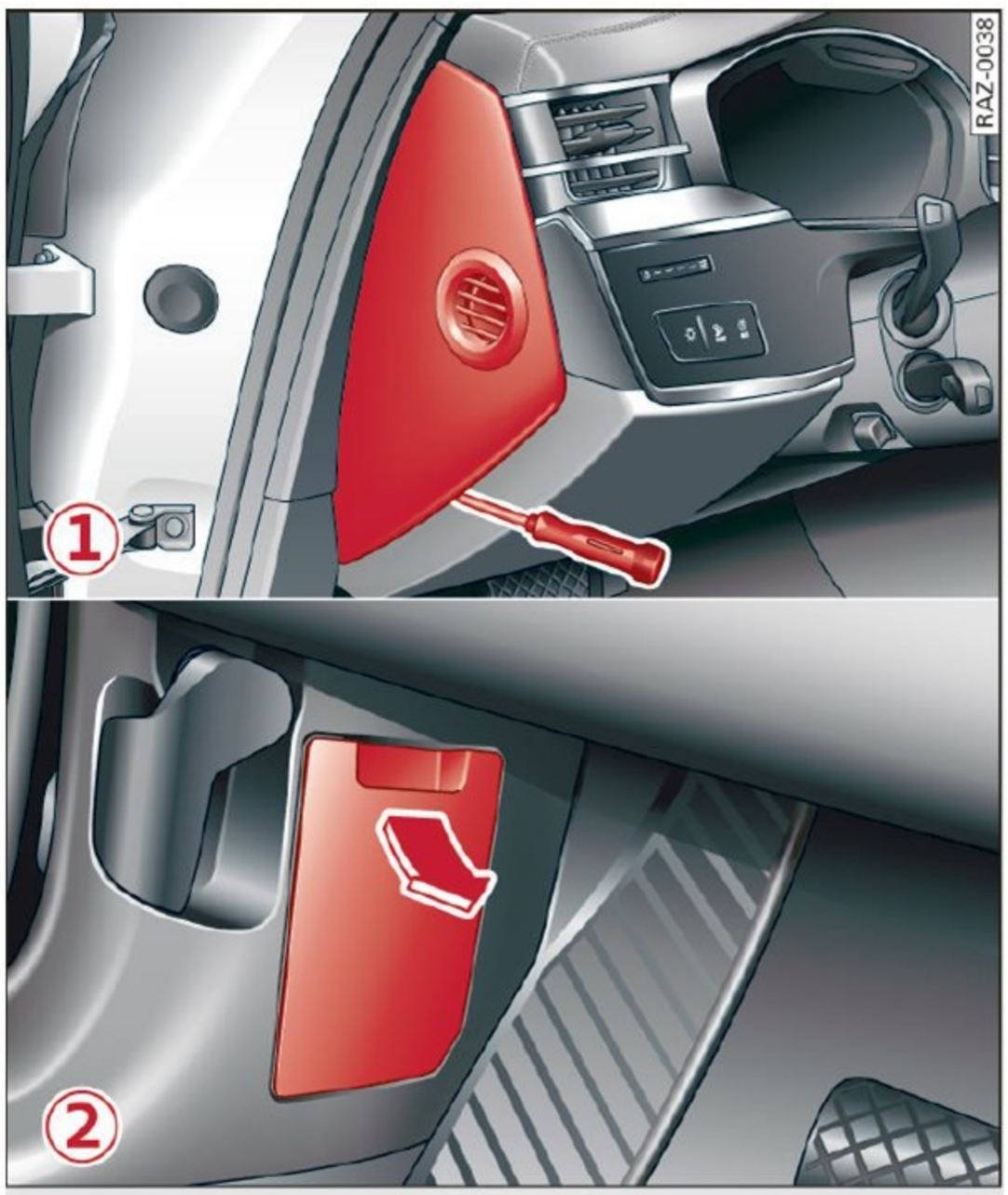


Fig. 199 Left side of the cockpit: fuse panel cover ①, left footwell: fuse panel cover ②

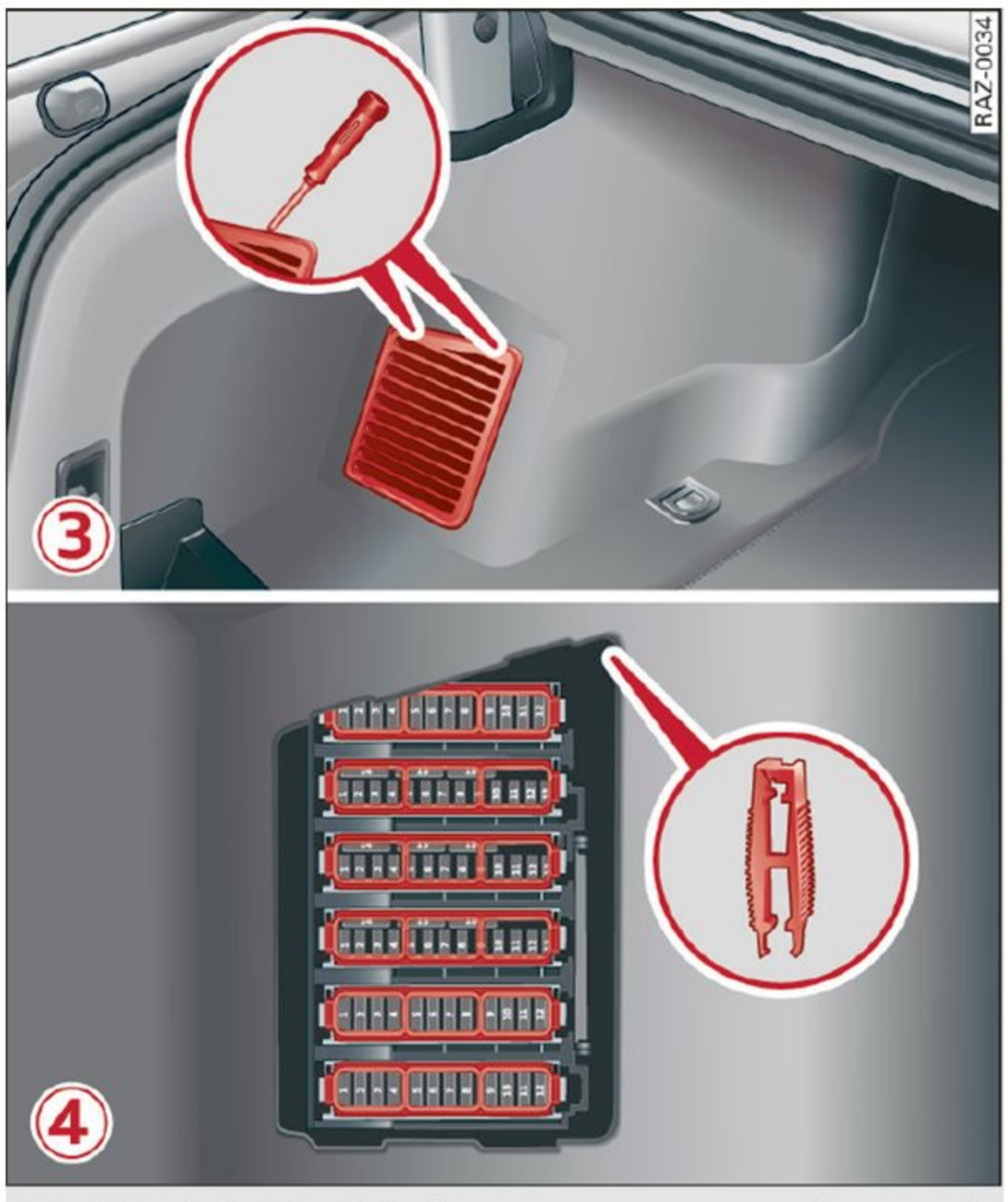


Fig. 200 Left side of the luggage compartment: fuse panel cover ③ and clip ④

A fuse that has blown will have metal strips that have burned through.

The fuses are located on the left front side of the cockpit ①, in the left footwell ②, and in the left side of the luggage compartment ③ behind the side trim panel.

- ▸ Switch the ignition and all electrical equipment off.
- ▸ Check the table that follows to see which fuse belongs to the equipment.
- ▸ Remove the screwdriver from the vehicle tool kit ⇨ *page 295*.
- ▸ Remove the appropriate cover.
- ▸ Remove the colored plastic clip from the fuse panel, if necessary.
- ▸ Remove the clip from the upper right fuse panel in the luggage compartment ④.
- ▸ Remove the fuse using the clip.
- ▸ Replace the blown fuse only with a fuse that has the same current rating.
- ▸ Reinstall the plastic bracket.
- ▸ Install the cover.

Fuse color identification

Color	Current rating in amps
Black	1
Gray	2
Purple	3
Pink	4
Light brown	5
Brown	7.5
Red	10
Light blue	15
Yellow	20
White or transparent	25
Light green	30
Teal	35
Orange	40

WARNING

Do not repair fuses and never replace a blown fuse with one that has a higher amp rating. ▶

This can cause damage to the electrical system and a fire.

Note

If a new fuse burns out again shortly after you have installed it, have the electrical system checked as soon as possible by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Tips

– The following table does not list fuse locations that are not used.
– Some of the equipment listed in the following tables applies only to certain model versions or certain optional equipment.

Fuse assignment - left side of cockpit

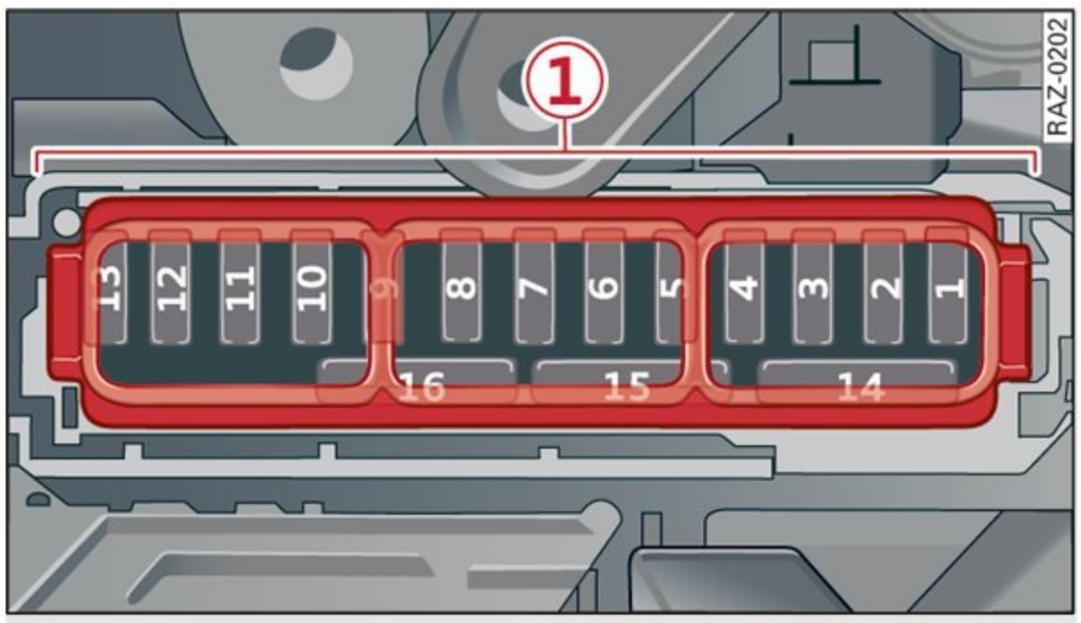


Fig. 201 Left side of the cockpit: fuse panel with plastic clip

Fuse panel ① (black)	
No.	**Equipment**
1	Climate control system
2	Phone, roof antenna
3	Climate control system, fragrance system, ionizer
4	Head-up display
5	Audi music interface
7	Steering column lock
8	Front MMI display
9	Instrument cluster
10	Volume control
11	Light switch, switch panels
12	Steering column electronics

Fuse panel ① (black)	
14	MMI Infotainment system control module
15	Steering column adjustment
16	Steering wheel heating

Fuse assignment - left footwell

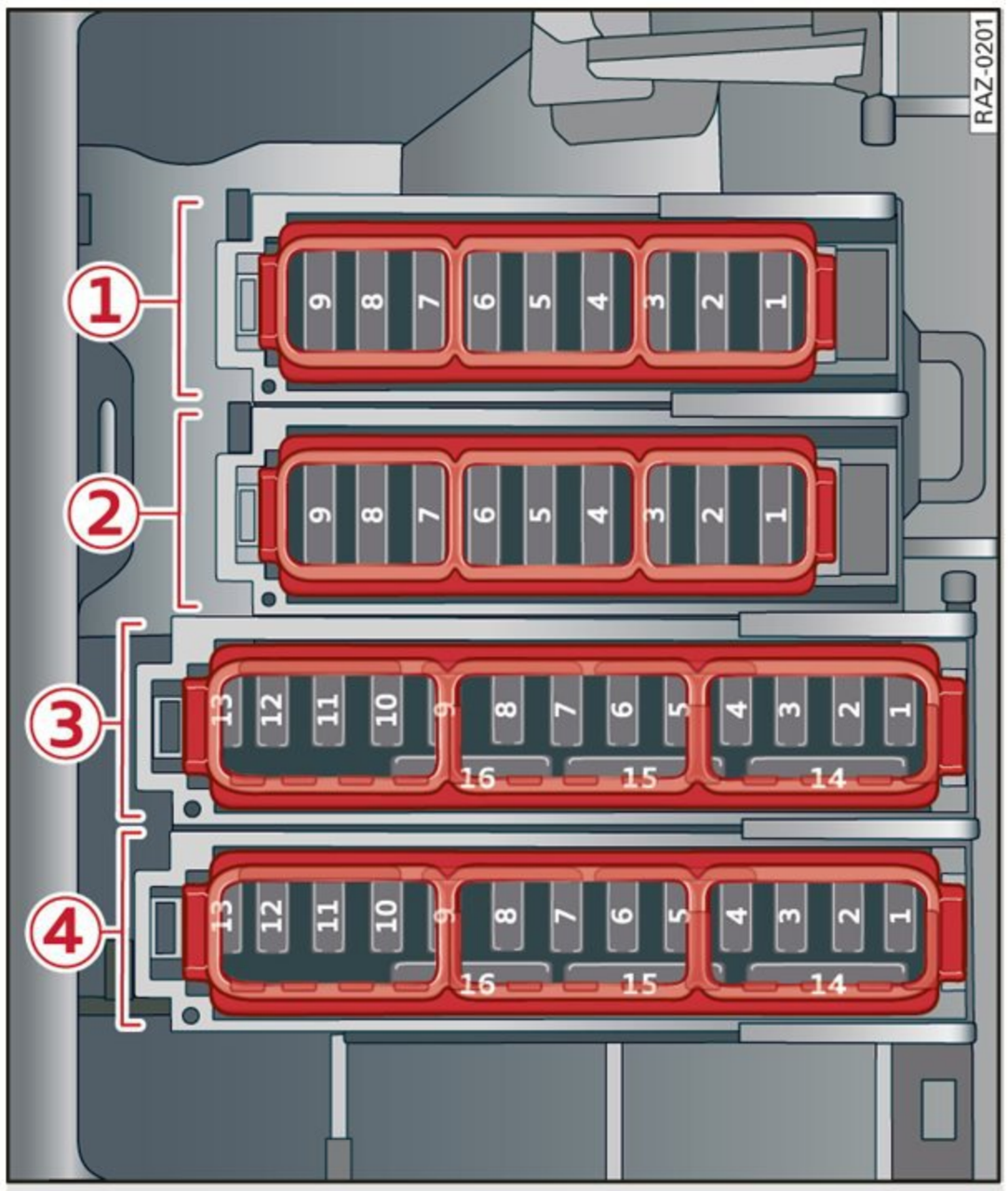


Fig. 202 Left footwell: fuse panel with plastic clip

Fuse panel ① (brown)	
No.	**Equipment**
1	Engine ignition coils
2	Engine start
3	Windshield wiper control module
4	Left headlight electronics
5	Climate control system blower
6	Instrument panel
7	Windshield wipers
9	Panoramic glass roof

Fuse panel ② (black)	
No.	**Equipment**
1	Engine mount
2	Left rear door control module
3	Windshield washer system/headlight washer system

Fuse panel ② (black)	
4	Right headlight electronics
5	Front seat heating
6	Right rear door control module
7	Sockets
8	Left front door control module

Fuse panel ③ (red)	
No.	**Equipment**
1	Anti-theft alarm system
2	Engine control module
5	Horn
6	Parking brake
7	Gateway control module (diagnosis)
8	Interior headliner lights
9	Driver assist systems control module
10	Airbag control module
11	Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC)
12	Diagnostic connector, light/rain sensor
13	Climate control system
14	Right front door control module
15	Climate control system, body electronics

Fuse panel ④ (black)	
No.	**Equipment**
2	Engine components
3	Engine components
4	Engine components
5	Brake light sensor
6	Engine components
7	Engine components
8	Engine components
9	Engine components
10	Oil pressure sensor, oil temperature sensor
11	Engine start
12	Engine components
13	Radiator fan
14	Engine control module
15	Engine sensors
16	Fuel pump

Fuse assignment - luggage compartment

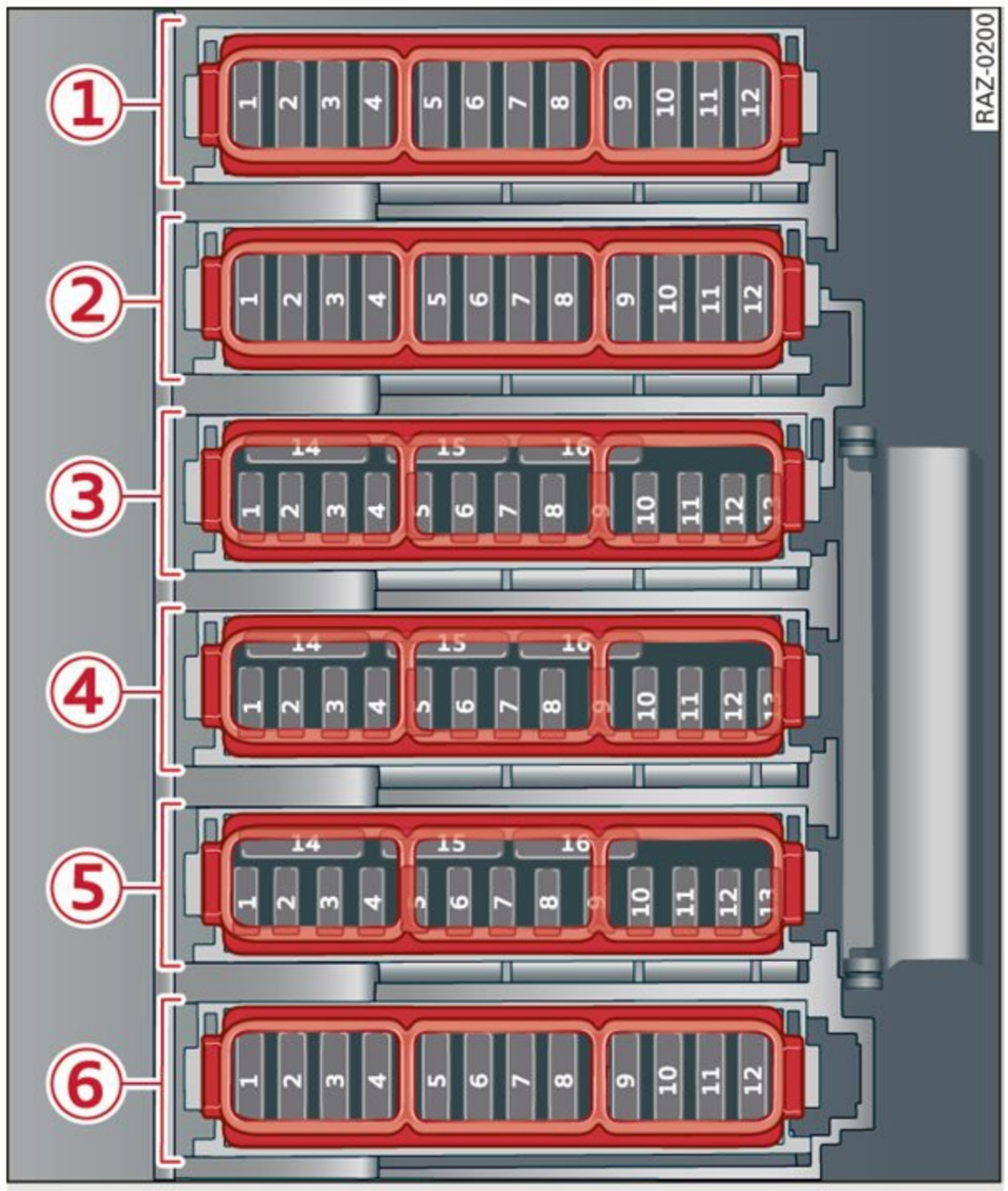


Fig. 203 Luggage compartment: fuse panel with plastic bracket

Fuse panel ① (black)	
No.	**Equipment**
5	Air suspension
6	Automatic transmission
7	Right rear seat adjustment
8	Rear seat heating
9	Central locking, tail lights
10	Front belt tensioner on driver's side
11	Central locking, rear blind
12	Luggage compartment lid

Fuse panel ② (red)	
No.	**Equipment**
1	Rear climate control system blower
4	Rear climate control system control panel
5	Right trailer hitch light
6	Trailer hitch positioning motor
7	Trailer hitch
8	Left trailer hitch light
9	Trailer hitch socket
10	Sport differential

Fuse panel ③ (brown)	
No.	**Equipment**
1	Driver assist systems control module
2	Rear Audi phone box
3	Rear seat adjustment
4	Side assist
5	Rear Seat Entertainment (Audi tablet)
6	Tire pressure monitoring system
7	Emergency call system
8	Fuel tank monitoring
9	Automatic transmission selector lever
10	TV tuner
11	Vehicle opening/start (NFC)
12	Garage door opener
13	Rearview camera, peripheral cameras
14	Central locking, tail lights
15	Left rear seat adjustment
16	Front belt tensioner on front passenger's side

Fuse panel ④ (black)	
No.	**Equipment**
1	Seat ventilation, seat heating, rearview mirror, climate control system, rear climate control system controls
2	Gateway control module (communication)
3	Sound actuator
4	Transmission heating valve
5	Engine start
8	Night vision assist
9	Adaptive cruise assist
11	Intersection assistant, driver assist systems
14	Right headlight
15	Left headlight

Fuse panel ⑤ (red)	
No.	**Equipment**
3	Refrigerator
5	Brake system
9	Auxiliary battery control module

Fuse panel ⑥ (white)	
No.	**Equipment**
1	Rear center armrest heating
2	Rear sliding sunroof
3	CD/DVD player
5	AC socket
6	Passenger's side rear safety belt tensioner
7	Front center armrest heating
8	Rear footrest heating
11	Rear Seat Remote
12	Driver's side rear safety belt tensioner

Bulbs

Note

Your vehicle is equipped with maintenance-free headlights and tail lights. However, if a light bulb needs to be replaced, please contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

4N0012721BB

Data privacy

Image recording

Surrounding area monitoring

Applies to: vehicles with surrounding area monitoring

Some vehicle functions require the vehicle's path to be detected and evaluated. This is done by cameras installed permanently on the vehicle that detect objects in the vehicle's surroundings (such as obstacles or guard rails). The live images from the cameras are transmitted to the applicable control module.

The camera images are transmitted to the applicable control module and stored for processing. The control module analyzes the current camera image using image evaluation software. This image evaluation software detects anonymized technical measurements, such as distances to objects. The control module evaluates these technical measurements and makes it possible for the assist systems to control the vehicle, if necessary.

Tips

The live camera images and anonymous technical measurements are stored in a short-term memory for a few seconds. They do not provide any information about the identity of people or vehicles.

Data memories

General information

Many electronic components in your vehicle contain a data memory. These data memories store technical information temporarily or permanently.

Vehicle control modules

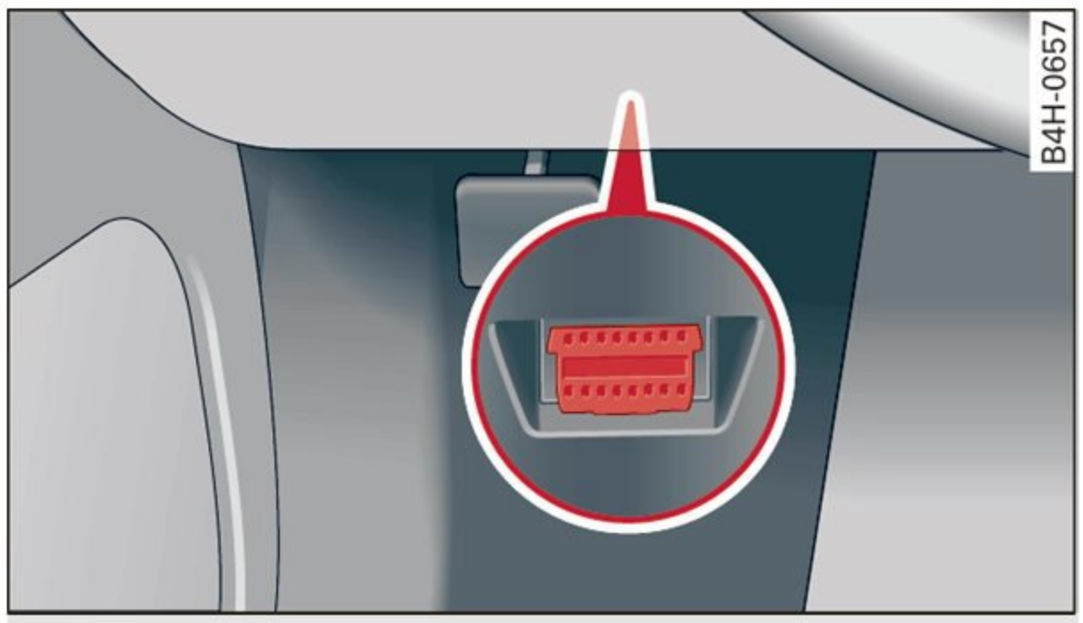


Fig. 204 Driver's side footwell: connection port for the On Board Diagnostic System (OBD)

Your vehicle is equipped with electronic control modules for various vehicle systems such as the airbags. These vehicle control modules store data while driving normally that is required by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for diagnosis and repair purposes. Only certain types of data are recorded for a very short period of time if a control module has detected a system event. No noises, conversations, or images will be recorded in the vehicle.

The data may include information such as the vehicle speed, the direction of travel, and information about the brake system, or also the behavior of the restraint system in the event of an accident. The stored data can be exported and downloaded with special devices, which must be connected directly to the vehicle.

On Board Diagnostic System (OBD)

There is a diagnostic connector socket in the driver's side footwell to read out the various control modules and the event data recorder. Data regarding the function and condition of the electronic control modules is stored in the event memory. Only have an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility read out and delete the event memory.

WARNING

– Incorrect use of the connection port for the On Board Diagnostic System can cause malfunctions, which can then result in accidents and serious injuries.

– Only allow an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to read out the engine data.

Crash data recorder

Event Data Recorder

This vehicle is equipped with an Event Data Recorder (EDR). The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's system performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less. The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

– How various systems in your vehicle were operating;
– Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were buckled/fastened;
– How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal; and,
– How fast the vehicle was traveling.

These data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur. NOTE: EDR data are recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data are recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data (e.g. name, gender, age, and crash location) are recorded. However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

Assist system monitor

This vehicle is equipped with an Assist System Monitor (ASM). The ASM collects data that is not stored by the EDR in the event of an accident. The main task of the ASM is to make it possible to understand the role and the behavior of the assist systems in these accident situations. In addition to the data that the EDR stores, the ASM records data related to the assist systems starting several seconds before the accident or near-accident. The data collected by ASM depends on the equipment and may include the following information: status information of the assist systems (for example, if they are switched on or off, system events, etc.), control interventions (for example, by ESC, ABS, Audi pre sense*, etc.), and assist systems settings (such as speed settings).

Special devices and access to the vehicle or to the ASM are necessary in order to read the data from the ASM memory. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, third parties such as law enforcement authorities can also read and analyze the stored data if they have access to the vehicle or to the ASM.

Data usage

Audi can read out the information stored in the data memories or similar data, or give this information to third parties, especially in the following situations:

– If the vehicle owner or lessee agrees
– If there is an official request from the police
– If a court or authorities request it

If legally permitted, Audi can also use the data for analysis of vehicle operation and safety performance or provide this data to third parties for research purposes.

Transmitted information

Start/Stop system

Statistical information may be recorded and transmitted to Audi in order to develop and optimize the Start/Stop system. Additional information can be found in the data privacy policy.

Privacy settings

▸ Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > (**Data management**) > **Privacy settings** ▶

4N0012721BB

Requirement: the ignition must be switched on.

Location, vehicle, and personal data are transmitted when using Audi connect services.

Allowing sending of data

When this function is switched on, the data module for using all Audi connect services is active.

When this function is switched off, the data connection will be limited or deactivated depending on vehicle equipment. The majority of Audi connect services will not be available.

The following interfaces are not affected by this setting: Bluetooth, Bluetooth Low Energy (BLE), Wi-Fi connection, Audi smartphone interface (ASI), Near Field Communication (NFC), charging communication (e-tron), Electronic Toll Collect (ETC), if equipped.

Note

You are responsible for all precautions taken for data protection, anti-virus protection, and protection against loss of data on mobile devices that are used to access the Internet through the Wi-Fi hotspot.

Tips

- If the transmission of data is limited, data will still be transmitted to verify subscriptions.
- If the transmission of data is limited, it will have the following effects on the exchange of data for Audi connect services and emergency calls, if equipped:
  - The emergency call function will remain available without restrictions and will continue to transmit data.
  - If an online roadside assistance call is initiated, no data will be transmitted, but a call will be made.
  - If an Audi connect key is already assigned to a user, data will still be transmitted to maintain data security.
  - If the Geofencing Alert, Speed Alert, and/or Valet Alert services have been activated by the key user, then they will remain available without restrictions and continue to transmit data.
  - Stored destinations (favorites, last destinations) are only stored in the vehicle. If you allow transmission of data again, these destinations will be synchronized via the myAudi account. To prevent synchronization of destinations, delete the destinations before you allow data to be transmitted again.

Audi connect

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect Infotainment

AUDI AG collects, uses, stores and shares your personal information, such as contact data, vehicle data, usage data, driving data and precise geolocation, in order to provide you with the products and services you have purchased or requested, and for a number of other purposes, for example, to track quality issues, to performance and safety, to meet our internal compliance or legal requirements and to market to customers and potential customers. For a more complete list of the data we collect, how we use it and with whom we share it, please visit your Audi national/sales region website at www.audi.com.

The collection, use and sharing may vary depending on your model and model year, your subscription status, or the service offering. For example, collection, use and sharing may vary between Audi connect services, if you have designated a key user, or if you are driving a model equipped with persistent data logging. Please review the complete Privacy Statement to understand our data handling practices with respect to a particular service.

You can find additional information about our data privacy practices in your MMI.

▸ Applies to: MMI: On the home screen, select: **SETTINGS** > **General** > **Legal notes** > **About Audi connect**.

Information about our privacy practices in conjunction with the mobile Audi connect application can be found in the Application's Privacy Statement. ▶

For additional information about the privacy practices relating to Audi connect, myAudi, or other websites, applications or online services as well as your obligations with respect to using these services, and for additional information regarding Audi connect terms and conditions, please visit your Audi national/sales region website at www.audi.com.

Accessories and technical changes

Warranty

Your vehicle is covered by various warranties:

– New Vehicle Limited Warranty
– Limited Warranty Against Corrosion Perforation
– Emissions Control System Warranties: *Federal Emissions Control System Defect Warranty, Federal Emissions Performance Warranty*
– Applies to: USA models: Kansas Safety Belt Limited Warranty
– Applies to: USA models: California Emissions Control Warranties: *Short-term Emissions Defects Warranty, Long-term Emissions Defects Warranty, TZEV models Emissions Defects Warranty, California Emissions Performance Warranty*

You can find detailed information in your Warranty & Maintenance Booklet and in the California Emissions Booklet*.

Audi Literature Shop

Service information is made available as soon as possible after a model is introduced and can be ordered in the Audi Literature Shop: http://literature.audiusa.com

Driving in other countries

Government regulations in the United States and Canada require motor vehicles to comply with emissions regulations and safety standards. Therefore, vehicles that were produced for the U.S. and Canadian markets are different from vehicles produced for other countries.

If you plan to use your vehicle outside of the United States or Canada, it is possible that:

– Fuel may have a significantly lower octane rating. Unsuitable fuels can cause engine damage.
– Proper maintenance and repair work may not be possible because special service equipment, tools, or measuring devices needed for your vehicle may not be available.
– Replacement parts may not always be available.
– Navigation systems for vehicles built for the U.S.A. and Canada will not necessarily work in Europe, and may not work in other countries.

Note

Audi is not liable for damage to the vehicle resulting from these country-specific differences.

Maintenance, repairs, and technical modifications

Note the safety precautions ⇨ *page 256, General information* and ⇨ *page 299, Raising the vehicle*.

General information

Due to the increasing complexity of technology in these vehicles, as well as the safety and environmental standards that apply, you can only perform a very limited amount of repairs and modifications to the vehicle yourself.

Proof of maintenance work may be required to submit a claim within the warranty period.

We recommend that you have your vehicle serviced by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility and that Audi Genuine Parts and Audi Genuine Accessories are used. This helps to ensure that your vehicle's functionality, performance, and safety are not impaired.

Maintenance and repairs

Your vehicle was designed to help keep maintenance requirements to a minimum. Some regular maintenance is required to help ensure that your vehicle runs in a safe, economical, and reliable manner. Please refer to your Warranty & Maintenance Booklet for more detailed information about vehicle maintenance.

When operating the vehicle under more extreme operating conditions, for example when outside temperatures are very low or in very dusty environments, certain maintenance should be performed between the specified intervals. ▶

Usually maintenance and repair work requires special tools, measuring devices, and other equipment that is available to trained vehicle technicians in order to help ensure that your vehicle and all of its systems operate correctly, reliably, and safely. Performing work on the vehicle incorrectly can impair the operation and reliability of your vehicle and may void one or more of your vehicle's warranties.

Technical Modifications

Interference with electronic components, their software, the wiring, and data transfer may cause malfunctions. Because of the way electronic components are interconnected, such malfunctions can also impair systems that are not directly involved. This means that you risk both a substantial reduction in the operational safety of your vehicle and increased wear of vehicle components.

Some convenience functions, such as the convenience turn signal function, individual door opening function, and displays, can be reprogrammed using special workshop equipment. If functions are reprogrammed, the information and descriptions about these functions in this Owner's Manual may no longer apply to the changed functions. Audi recommends that an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility perform and verify any reprogramming procedures.

WARNING

Maintenance procedures, repairs, or technical modifications that are performed incorrectly increase the risk of an accident and can lead to serious injuries.

WARNING

The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a potentially dangerous area and can cause serious personal injury.

- Always use extreme caution when doing any work in the engine compartment. Always follow commonly accepted safety practices and use common sense. Never risk personal injury.
- Never perform any work in the engine compartment unless you know exactly how to carry out the job and have the correct technical information and the correct tools.
- If you are uncertain about what to do, have the work performed by an authorized Audi dealer, an authorized Audi Service Facility, or another qualified workshop. Serious personal injury may result from improperly performed work.

Note

- Maintenance procedures, repairs or technical modifications that are performed incorrectly can cause damage to the vehicle, such as corrosion.
- If emergency repairs must be performed, take your vehicle to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility as soon as possible.
- Audi is not liable for damage to the vehicle resulting from failure to comply with these guidelines.

For the sake of the environment

- Regular maintenance can help protect the environment.
- Technical modifications to the vehicle can have a negative impact on fuel consumption and vehicle emissions.

For the sake of the environment

Undeployed airbag modules and pretensioners are classified as Perchlorate Material – special handling may apply, See www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate. When the vehicle or parts of the restraint system including airbag modules and safety belts with pretensioners are scrapped, all applicable laws and regulations must be observed. Your authorized Audi dealer is familiar with these requirements and we recommend that you have your dealer perform this service for you.

Tips

Because of your vehicle's aluminum body design, all service and repair procedures affecting the body should be performed by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi ▶

Service Facility, who will perform the work according to Audi factory specifications. Only Audi Genuine Parts are used when Audi experts perform repair or service procedures. Failure to use Audi Genuine Parts or Audi Genuine Accessories or performing repairs incorrectly may result in severe vehicle damage, such as corrosion.

Accessories and parts

Consult with an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility before purchasing accessories or replacement parts. We recommend that you have your vehicle serviced by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility and that Audi Genuine Parts and Audi Genuine Accessories are used.

Audi does not endorse the use of products and accessories that it has not evaluated, even if the product is approved by a certified testing agency or government agency.

WARNING

- Installing unapproved accessories or incorrect replacement parts can cause vehicle damage and can increase the risk of an accident.
- Never attach accessories, such as telephone holders or cup holders, to the airbag covers or within the airbag deployment zone, because this increases the risk of injury if the airbag deploys.
- Do not use a license plate bracket on the front bumper that is different from the bracket installed at the factory, and do not attach any additional brackets.

Note

A correctly-installed exterior antenna is required for operating radio equipment in the vehicle. Otherwise, the increased electromagnetic waves can cause malfunctions in the vehicle. Observe the regulations in the country where the vehicle is being operated and the instructions from the radio equipment manufacturer.

Reporting Safety Defects

Applicable to U.S.A.

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying

Audi of America, Inc.
2200 Ferdinand Porsche Drive
Herndon, VA 20171

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or Audi of America, Inc.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1–888–327–4236 (TTY: 1–800–424–9153); go to http://www.safercar.gov; ▶

or write to:

Administrator NHTSA
1200 New Jersey Ave.,
S.E. West Building
Washington, DC
20590.

You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.safercar.gov.

Applicable to Canada

If you live in Canada and you believe that your vehicle has a defect that could cause a crash, injury or death, you should immediately inform Transport Canada, Defect Investigations and Recalls. You should also notify Audi Canada.

Canadian customers who wish to report a safety-related defect to Transport Canada, Defect Investigations and Recalls, may either call Transport Canada toll-free at:

Tel.: 1-800-333-0510 or
Tel.: 1-819-994-3328 (Ottawa region and from other countries)
TTY for hearing impaired:
1-888-675-6863

or contact Transport Canada by mail at:

Motor Vehicle Safety Investigations Laboratory
80 Noel Street
Gatineau, QC
J8Z 0A1

For additional road safety information, please visit the Road Safety website at:

English:
http://www.tc.gc.ca/eng/motorvehiclesafety/menu.htm

French:
http://www.tc.gc.ca/fra/securiteautomobile/menu.htm

Declaration of compliance for telecommunications equipment and electronic systems

The manufacturer is not liable for radio malfunctions that are caused by unauthorized changes to the equipment.

Equipment

The following equipment complies with FCC section 15 and RSS-Gen:

– Adaptive cruise assist*
– Audi tablet*
– Remote control key
– Garage door opener (HomeLink)*
– Intersection assistant*
– Side assist*
– Exit warning*
– Rear cross traffic assist*

FCC Part 15.19

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful ▶

4N0012721BB

interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

FCC Part 15.21

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

RSS-Gen

This device complies with Industry Canada's licence-exempt RSSs. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) This device may not cause interference; and

(2) This device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Long Range Radar* – Additional declarations of compliance

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class A digital device, pursuant to part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference when the equipment is operated in a commercial environment. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instruction manual, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. Operation of this equipment in a residential area is likely to cause harmful interference in which case the user will be required to correct the interference at his own expense.

Radiofrequency radiation exposure Information: This equipment complies with FCC and IC radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment. This equipment should be installed and operated with minimum distance of 20 cm between the radiator and your body. This transmitter must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

Audi tablet* – Additional conformity declarations and statements

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

– Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
– Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
– Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
– Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

This Class B digital apparatus complies with Canadian ICES-003.

Technical data

Identification data

Vehicle identification label

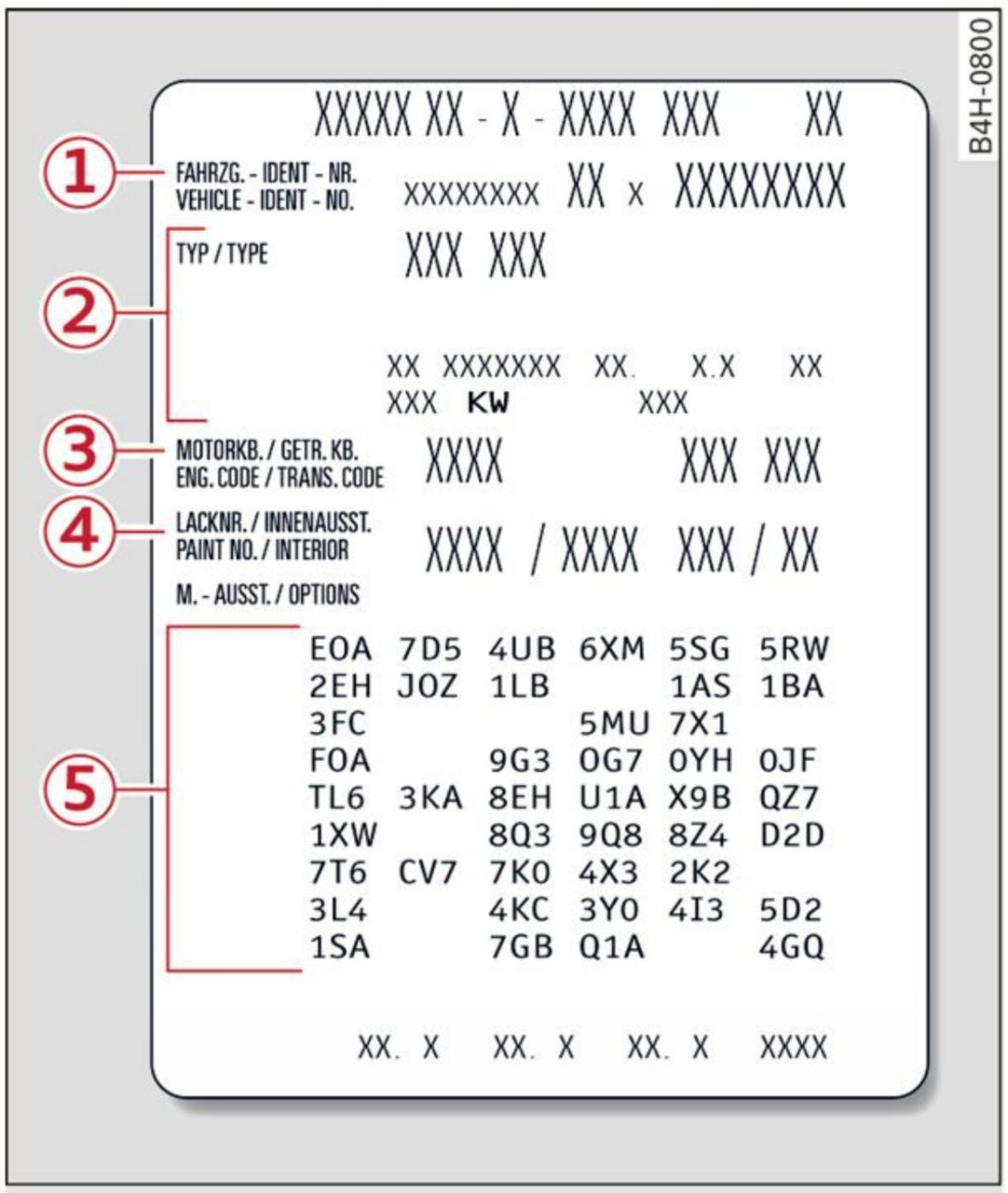


Fig. 205 Vehicle identification label

The vehicle identification label ⇨ *fig. 205* is located in the luggage compartment behind the rear bench seat cover.

The vehicle identification label information can also be found in the Warranty & Maintenance booklet.

The sticker contains the following vehicle data:

1. Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)
2. Vehicle type, engine output, transmission
3. Engine and transmission codes
4. Paint and interior codes
5. Optional equipment numbers

Vehicle identification number (VIN)

The VIN is located in the following areas:

- Applies to: MMI: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Settings & Service** > **Vehicle info**.
- Applies to: Audi tablet: Select on the home screen: **VEHICLE** > **Settings**.
- On the vehicle identification label
- At the front behind the windshield
- Under the carpet under the right front seat

Notes about technical data

The values may vary based on special equipment as well as market-specific equipment and measuring methods.

Please note that the specifications listed in the vehicle documentation always take precedence.

Tips

Any technical data that is missing was not available at the time of printing.

Vehicle data

Dimensions

	Length (in (mm))	Width (in (mm))	Width across the mirrors (in (mm))	Height at curb weight (in (mm))
A8 L	208.7 (5,302)	76.6 (1,945)	83.9 (2,130)	58.5 (1,485)

Capacities

	Approximate capacities
Fuel tank	21.7 gal (82 L)
Windshield and headlight washer system*	6.1 qt (5.8 L)

4N0012721BB

Weights

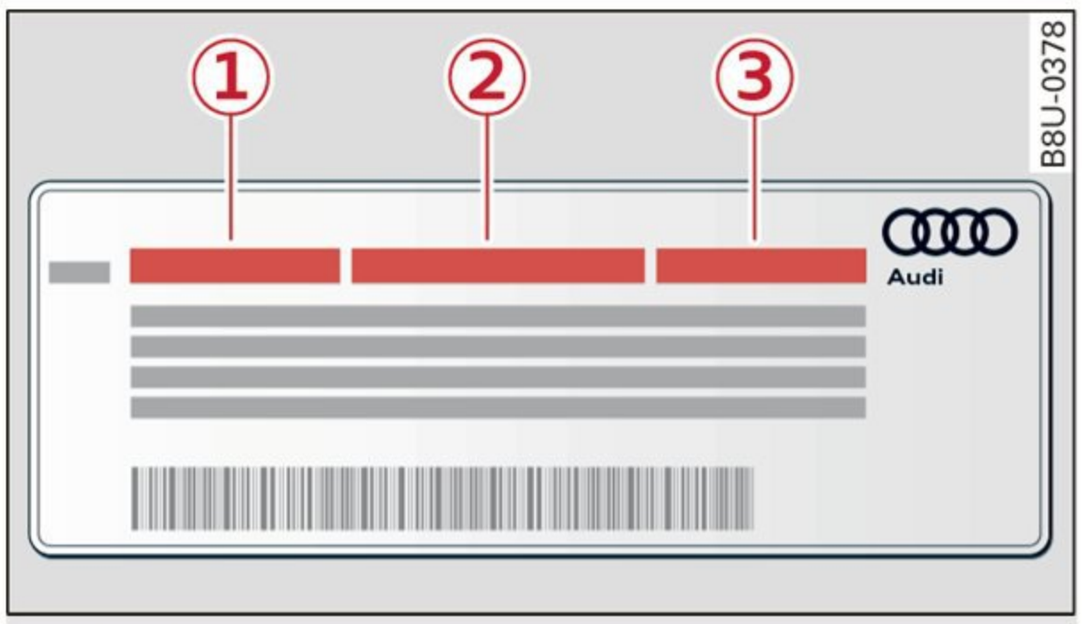


Fig. 206 Safety certificate

Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR)

The maximum permitted total weight (1) of the vehicle is listed on the safety certificate on the side area of the door or on the driver's door pillar.

Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR)

The maximum permitted load on the front axle (2) or the rear axle (3) is listed on the safety certificate on the side area of the door or on the driver's door pillar.

Load

The maximum permitted load is listed on the tire pressure label on the driver's door pillar.

Roof load

The maximum permissible roof load is 220 lbs (100 kg).

A

A/C cooling mode 105
Accelerator pedal 113
also refer to Accelerator pedal 113
Accessories 316
Active lane assist
refer to Lane departure warning 159
refer to Lane guidance 159
Active suspension 125
Adaptive cruise assist 150
Cleaning the sensors 290
Predictive control 149
Adaptive cruise control
refer to Adaptive cruise assist 150
Adjusting the air distribution 105
Adjusting the brightness 65
Adjusting the sound 248
Adjusting the temperature 105
Adjusting the volume 39
Adjusting the volume (announcements) 248
Adjusting the welcome sound 248
Airbag system 87
Air quality display 108
Air suspension 125
Alarm system
refer to Anti-theft alarm system 45
Alignment pin (changing the wheel) 295
All-weather lights 60
All season tires 285
All wheel drive
refer to quattro 128
AMI
refer to Audi music interface 235, 236
Android Auto
refer to Audi smartphone interface 246
Anti-freeze
Windshield washer system 267
Anti-lock braking system 129
Anti-Slip Regulation 129
Anti-theft alarm system 45
Anti-theft wheel bolts 298
Apple CarPlay
refer to Audi smartphone interface 246
Ashtray 97
Aspect ratio (video) 240, 242
ASR
refer to Anti-Slip Regulation 129
Audi adaptive light 60
Audi connect
refer to connect 198
Audi connect key 42, 48
Audi connect key card 42, 46, 49
Audi drive select 124
Audi music interface 235
Audio files 237
Audi phone box 182
Audi pre sense 161
Messages 164
Audi side assist
refer to Side assist 165
Audi smartphone interface 246
Legal information 251
Audi tablet 28
Device setup 29
Device test 34
Menus and symbols 32
Operating 17, 32
Audi virtual cockpit
refer to Instrument cluster 12
AUTO
Automatic headlights 60
Climate control system 105
Auto Lock (central locking) 42
Automatic climate control
refer to Climate control system 104
Automatic luggage compartment lid 51, 52
Automatic transmission 111
Parking lock emergency release 113
Automatic wipe/wash system 67
Average consumption 15
Average speed 15

B

Bag hooks 101
Battery
Charging (12 Volt vehicle battery) 266
Vehicle battery (12 Volt) 265
Winter operation (12 Volt vehicle battery) . 265
Blinds
refer to Sunshade (roof) 55
Block route 216

4N0012721BB

Blower 105
Bluetooth
Audio player 234
Connecting a mobile device 180
Deleting a device 250
Device overview 249
Disconnecting a device 250
Displaying profiles 250
Searching for a device 250
Selecting a device 250
Specifying a favorite 250
Brake fluid
Checking the brake fluid level 264
Brakes 117
Brake assist 129
Brake fluid 264
Emergency braking function 120
New brake pads 118
Break-in security feature 45
Breaking in
New brake pads 118
New tires 276
Browser
refer to Media center 238
Bulb replacement 309
Business address 216

C

California Proposition 65 Warning 257
Battery specific 265
Call list 184
Capacities
Fuel tank 319
Washer fluid reservoir 319
Cargo net 102
Car key 46
Car phone
Serial number (IMEI) 192
Switching on 191
Using the car phone function 179
Car wash 289
Catalytic converter 255
Cell phone
refer to Telephone 179
Cell phone compartment
refer to Audi phone box 182
Central locking 42
Auto Lock 42
Convenience key 47
Convenience opening and closing 54
Luggage compartment lid 50
Mechanically unlocking and locking 45
Messages 44
Remote control key 47
Setting 43
Vehicle key 47
Central locking switch 44
Ceramic brakes 118
Certification 317
Changing light bulbs 309
Charging
refer to Power sources 97
Charging the battery (mobile devices) . 182, 236
Child safety lock
Climate control system controls in the rear . 53
Power windows 53
Rear doors 53
Child safety seats 91
Securing to the top tether anchor 94
Securing with a safety belt 95
Securing with LATCH 94
Cigarette lighter 97
Cleaning 289
Cleaning Alcantara 292
Cleaning artificial leather 292
Cleaning carbon components 291, 292
Cleaning controls 292
Cleaning decorative parts/trim 291
Cleaning exhaust tail pipes 291
Cleaning plastic parts 291
Cleaning textiles 292
Climate control system 104
Climate control system controls in the rear
Child safety lock 53
Closing
Automatic luggage compartment lid 51
Convenience closing 54
Hood 257
Luggage compartment lid 50
Luggage compartment lid with foot motion . 52
Panoramic glass roof 55
Rear window sunshade 56
Sunshade (roof) 55

Sunshade (windows) 54
Windows 54
Closing aid (power closing doors) 42
Cockpit dimming 65
Cockpit (overview) 6
Color number 319
Coming home/Leaving home
refer to Entry/exit lighting 63
Compact spare tire 301
Compartments 99
Compass in the mirror 69
Compliance 317
Configuration wizard 19
connect 198
Data plans 203
Data Privacy 312
Emergency call 205
Infotainment 198
Infotainment services 199
Online roadside assistance 206
Vehicle control services 200
Connected devices
Device overview 249
Connections
refer to Media 232, 237
Connect key
refer to Audi connect key 48
Consumer information 314
Consumption
Reducing 115
Consumption (fuel) 15
Contacts
Add destination 217
Importing and exporting 192
Memory capacity 192
Opening (business card) 185
Updating in the MMI 192
Convenience key 42
Convenience closing 54
also refer to Vehicle key 46
Convenience opening and closing
Sunshade 54
Windows or panoramic glass roof 54
Coolant temperature display 14
Cooling mode 105
Cooling system
Adding coolant 263
Coolant 262
Coolant level checking 263
Cornering light 60
Cross traffic assist (intersection assistant) . . 168
Cruise control system
refer to Speed control systems 146
Cup holders 98
Current consumption 15

D

Data plans 203
Data Privacy 312
Date 15
Daytime running lights 60
Declaration of compliance 317
DEF (instrument cluster) 12
Demo mode
refer to Presentation mode 221
Destination on the map 212
Details 212
Determining correct load limit 283
Digital compass 69
Dimensions 319
Dimming the exterior mirrors 66
Dimming the rearview mirror 66
Directory
Settings 192
also refer to Contacts 185
Display
Cleaning 292
Disposal 314
Distance 15
Distance warning 158
Doors
Child safety lock 53
Door contact switch 64
Mechanically unlocking and locking 45
Power closing/closing aid 42
Driver information system 13
Drives
refer to Media 232, 237
Drive select
refer to Audi drive select 124

4N0012721BB

Drive system 115, 117
Audi drive select 124
Driving down hills 122
Driving program 112, 157
Driving through water 122
Driving time 15
Driving tips
Driving through water 122
Efficient driving 115
Uphill and downhill 122
Driving up hills 122
Dust filter
refer to Pollutant filter 108
DVD changer (media drives) 233
DVD drive (media drives) 233
Dynamic all-wheel steering 127

E

E-mail
Message options 190
Settings 190
EDL
refer to Electronic Differential Lock 129
EDR
Event Data Recorder 311
Efficiency assist 147
Electrical system 264
Electromechanical parking brake 119
Electronic Differential Lock 129
Electronic immobilizer 46
Electronic Stabilization Control 129
Embedded SIM card 198
Emergency assist 169
Emergency assistance 295
Emergency braking function 120
Emergency call 187, 205
Emergency flashers 63
Emergency mode 114
Emergency operation
Doors 45
Fuel filler door 255
Luggage compartment lid 52
Panoramic glass roof 56
Emissions control systems 255
Energy consumers 16
Energy management 116
Engine
Breaking in 115
Coolant 262
Emergency stop 109
Jump starting 301
Start/Stop system 116
Starting/stopping 109
Engine compartment
Opening and closing the hood 257
Overview 258
Safety precautions 256
Engine oil
Adding 259
Changing 261
Checking oil level 259
Consumption 259
Indicator light 259
Replacement interval 268
Temperature display 15
Engine Start/Stop mode
refer to Start/Stop system 116, 117
Engine start system 110
Engine stop
refer to Start/Stop system 116, 117
Entry/exit lighting 63
Entry assistance 75
also refer to Exit assistance 75
Environment
Unleaded gasoline 252
eSIM
refer to Embedded SIM card 198
Evasive steering assist 163
Event Data Recorder (EDR) 311
Exit assistance 75
Exit warning 167
Exterior lighting 60
Exterior mirrors 65
Folding settings 43
External voice operation 38

F

Factory settings
Audi tablet 249
Multi Media Interface 249
Fast forwarding and rewinding (media file) . 237

Fast forwarding (media files) 237
Fast route 209
Favorites
Bluetooth 250
Navigation 210
Telephone 185
Federal Communications Commission (FCC) . 317
File formats (media drives) 244
Fog (windows) 105
Folding tray table 100
Foot heating 106
Footrests in rear 80
Footwell temperature 107
For the sake of the environment
Disposing of engine oil 261
Fueling 253
Leaks 257
Forward gear
refer to Gears 111
Fragrance 106, 107
Free text search
Media 241
Radio 226
also refer to Intelligent search 209
Freeze protection
Coolant 262
Front center armrest 76
Front passenger's seat adjustment
Rear 79
Front passenger’s seat adjustment
Front 75
Rear 75
Fuel 252
Additives 253
Current consumption 15
Fuel gauge 12
Fuel tank capacity 319
Gasoline 252
Reducing fuel consumption 115
Fueling
Fuel filler door 253
Fuel filler door emergency release 255
Fuel tank capacity 319

G

Garage door opener 57
Garment hooks 101
Gasoline 252
Additives 253
Gasoline mixture 252
GAWR
refer to Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR) . 320
Gears 111
Glossary of tire and loading terminology . . . 272
Glove compartment 99, 101
Valet parking 56
Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR) 320
Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) 320
GVWR
refer to Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) 320

H

Handset
refer to Rear Seat Remote 24
Handsfree 179
Head-up display
Adjusting 36
Adjusting the brightness 65
Operating 36
Headlight range control 60
Headlights
Cleaning 290
Headlight range control 60
Washer system 67
Head restraints
Adjusting 82
Removing and installing 82
Heated rear window 106
Heated steering wheel 106
Heating 104
High beams
High beam assistant 61
Highway lights 60
Hill descent control 122
Hill hold assist 121
also refer to Hill hold assist 121
Home
refer to Home address 216
Home address 216
HomeLink
refer to Garage door opener 57

4N0012721BB

Home screen 18
Horn 6
Hotspot
refer to Wi-Fi 202

I

Idle
refer to Gears 111
Ignition
Switching on and off 109
Imbalance (wheels) 278
Immobilizer
refer to Electronic immobilizer 46
Indicator lights 7
Inspection interval 268
Instrument cluster 12
Cleaning 292
Engine code 251
On-board computer 15
Operating 13
Personal profile 12
Service interval display 268
Software information 251
Switching tabs 13
Switching views 13
Vehicle functions 15
Version information 251
Instrument illumination 65
Integrated assistance 19
Intelligent search
Navigation 209
Interference-Causing Equipment Standard (ICES) 318
Interior lighting 64, 65
Intermittent mode (windshield wipers) 67
Internet
refer to connect 198
Internet radio
refer to Online radio 227
Intersection assistant 168
Ionizer 106
iPhone
refer to Audi music interface 235, 236

J

Jump starting 301

K

Key 42, 46
Audi connect key 46, 48
Audi connect key card 46, 49
Convenience opening and closing 54
Key replacement 46
Mechanical key 46
Not recognized 110
PANIC key 46
Replacing the battery 48
Unlocking and locking 47
Vehicle code 46
Key card
refer to Audi connect key card 49
Key user 41
Kick-down 113

L

Lane assist
refer to Lane departure warning 159
refer to Lane guidance 159
Lane departure warning 159
Cleaning the camera area 290
Lane guidance 154
Laser lighting 62
Laser scanner 137
Cleaning 291
LATCH (securing child safety seats) 94
Leather care and cleaning 292
Legal information
License subscriptions 250
Software information 250
Software licenses 250
Version information 250
Leg support 79
License plate bracket 316
Lifting points (vehicle jack) 299
Light/rain sensor
Headlights 60
Intermittent mode (windshield wipers) 67

Lighting
Exterior 60
Interior 64
Lights 60
Listening to music
refer to Media 232, 237
Load 320
Locking and unlocking
By remote control 47
Using the lock cylinder 45
With the convenience key 47
Low beam headlights 60
Luggage compartment 101
Valet parking 56
also refer to Luggage compartment 101
Luggage compartment lid 53
Closing button 51
Emergency releasing 52
General information 50
Opening and closing 50
Opening and closing with foot motion 52
Opening from the inside in an emergency . . 53
Power opening and closing 51
Lumbar support 77

M

Maintenance 314
Maintenance intervals 268
Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) 256
Manual shifting 113
Map
Changing the scale 212
Display 214
Operating 213
Setting the destination 212
Map preview 212
Map update 218
Online 218
SD card/USB connection 219
Massage function 73, 77
Front 75
Matrix LED headlamps 61
Mechanical key 46
Media 232, 237
Drives 232
Supported formats 244
Media center 238
Memory card
Audi tablet 30
SD card reader (MMI) 232
Supported types and formats 244
Memory function 86
Menu language
refer to Setting the language 248
Messages 188
microSD card reader (Audi tablet) 30
Mirror compass 69
Mirrors
Adjusting exterior mirrors 65
Dimming 66
Vanity mirror 67
MMI
refer to Multi Media Interface 19
Mobile device
refer to Telephone 179
Mobile phone network
Connection settings 193
Mountain passes 122
Mountain roads 122
Multifunction steering wheel
Buttons 13, 39
Operating 13
Programming buttons 39
Voice recognition system 37
Multi Media Interface 19
Menus and symbols 20
Operating 17, 20
Switching the displays on or off 19
Muting (mute) 39
myAudi 40
myAudi navigation 208, 211

N

Narrow area 158
Natural leather care and cleaning 292
Navigation 207
Better route 220
Calling 212
Changing the scale 212
also refer to Map 213
Navigation (instrument cluster) 215
NHTSA 316

4N0012721BB

Night vision assist 144
Cleaning the camera 290
Notification center 21

O

Octane rating (gasoline) 252
Odometer 14
Resetting 14
Office address
refer to Business address 216
OFF (climate control system) 105
Oil
refer to Engine oil 259
On-board computer 15
On Board Diagnostic System (OBD) . . . 256, 310
Online destination
refer to Point of interest 210
Online map
refer to Satellite map 218
Online media 234
Online radio 227
also refer to Online radio 227
Online roadside assistance 206
Online services
refer to connect 198
Online system update 249
Opening 42
Automatic luggage compartment lid 51
Convenience opening 54
Fuel filler door 253
Hood 257
Luggage compartment lid 50
Luggage compartment lid with foot motion . 52
Panoramic glass roof 55
Rear window sunshade 56
Sunshade (roof) 55
Sunshade (windows) 54
Windows 54
Opening and closing
refer to Unlocking and locking 42, 47
Operating
Audi tablet 17, 32
Head-up display 36
Instrument cluster 13
Multifunction steering wheel 13
Multi Media Interface 17, 20
Rear Seat Remote 17, 26
Text input 23
Touch display 17
Voice recognition system 37
Optional equipment number 319
Options
Media 242
Navigation 221
Radio 229
Overview (cockpit) 6

P

Paint damage 291
Paint number 319
Panic button 46
PANIC button 46
Panic function 46
Panoramic glass roof 55
Convenience opening and closing 54
Emergency closing 56
Quick opening and closing 56
Parental control
Audi tablet 34
DVD 243
Rear Seat Remote 27
Parking aid 171
Cleaning the sensors and camera 290
Peripheral cameras 173
Rearview camera 173
Parking aids
Adjusting 178
Parking and maneuvering 171
Parking brake
refer to Electromechanical parking brake . 119
Parking lights 60
Parking lock
refer to Gears 111
Parking lock emergency release 113
Parking systems
Parking system plus 171
Pass-through 102
Paths 18
Pause (media files) 237
Pedals 113

Pedestrian detection 144
Perchlorate 314
Peripheral cameras 173
Personal route assistance 215
Phone
Answering/ending a call 187
Audi phone box 182
Connecting a cell phone 180
Connecting a second mobile device 181
Connecting with the MMI 193
Disconnecting a mobile device 181
Settings 191
Phonebook
refer to Contacts 185
Playback (media) 237
Point of interest 210
Point of interest search 210
also refer to Point of interest 210
Polishing 291
Pollen filter
refer to Pollutant filter 108
Pollutant filter 108
Power closing (doors) 42
Power sources 97, 236
Power window malfunction 54
Power windows 54
Malfunction 54
pre sense
refer to Audi pre sense 161
Presentation mode 222
Presets 227
Presets list
refer to Presets 227
Pressure
Tire pressure monitoring system 287
Tires 279
Protecting 291
Pyrotechnic elements 314

Q

quattro 128
Selective wheel torque control 129

R

Radio 224, 227
Radio text 228
Station list 224
Radio communications equipment 316
Radio equipment 316
Radio Standards Specification (RSS) 317
Rail carrier 125
Rain/light sensor
Headlights 60
Intermittent mode (windshield wipers) 67
Range 15
Reading lights 64
Rear cross-traffic assist 177
Rear fog lights 60
Rear lid
refer to Luggage compartment lid 50
Rear seat entertainment
refer to Audi tablet 28
Rear Seat Remote 24
Device setup 25
Legal information 250
Menus and symbols 26
Operating 17, 26
Software information 250
Rear seats 76
Rear shelf
refer to Storage area behind the rear head restraints 100
Rearview camera 173
Rear window defogger 106
REAR (climate control system) 105
Reception range 224
Recirculation mode 106
Reclining rear seats 77
Recuperation 16
Refrigerator 103
Cleaning 292
Refueling 253
Remote control
Garage door opener 57
Remote control key 42, 46
Convenience opening and closing 54
Key replacement 46
LED 48
Replacing the battery 48

4N0012721BB

Unlocking and locking 47
also refer to Vehicle key 46
Removing the caps (wheel bolts) 298
Repairs 314
Replacement key 46
Replacement parts 316
Replacing fuses 306
Reporting Safety Defects 316
Reverse gear
refer to Gears 111
Rewinding (media files) 237
Rims 284
Cleaning 291
Road carrier 125
Roof
refer to Panoramic glass roof 55
Roof load 99, 320
Roof rack 99
also refer to Roof rack 99
Route guidance
Stopping 213
also refer to Navigation 207
Running direction (tires) 300

S

Safety belts 83
Cleaning 292
Locking 95
Securing child safety seats 95
Satellite map 218
Saving fuel
Energy consumers 16
Recuperation 16
Screen
refer to Touch display 17
Screwdriver 295
SD card reader (MMI) 232
Search area (point of interest) 210
Search function
refer to Free text search 241
Seat heating 106
Seats
Adjusting the front seats 73
Adjusting the rear seats 76, 77
Cleaning 292
Front passenger's seat adjustment 79
Front passenger's seat adjustment 75
Head restraints 81
Massage function 73
Memory function 86
Resetting the position 75
Storing a seat profile 86
Seat ventilation 106
Selecting a source (media) 237
Selector lever 111
Self-learning navigation
refer to Personal route assistance 215
Sensor view 137
Service interval display 268
Setting measurement units 248
Settings 248
Announcements and tones 248
Bluetooth 249
Date and time 248
Language 248
Measurement units 248
Media 243
Navigation 221
Radio 230
Sound 248
Time zone 248
Wi-Fi hotspot 202
Setting the date 248
Setting the language 248
Setting the time 248
Shift paddles 113
Ship carrier 125
Shortcut
refer to Shortcuts 22
Shortcuts 22
Shuffle 240
also refer to Shuffle 240
Side assist 165
Cleaning the sensors 290
SIM card 198
SiriusXM alert notifications 229
Sliding/tilting sunroof
refer to Panoramic glass roof 55
Smart favorites 227
Smartphone
refer to Telephone 179
Snow chains 285

Socket 97
Software
Update 249
Sound
refer to Adjusting the sound 248
Space-saving spare tire (compact spare tire) . 301
Spare tire 301
Speed control systems 146
Speed limiter
refer to Speed control systems 146
Speed limit information
refer to Traffic sign recognition 141
Speed limits
refer to Traffic sign recognition 141
Speedometer 12
Speed warning system 141
Sport differential 128
Start/Stop system 116
Messages 117
Switching off and on 117
Starting to drive 111, 121
Starting (engine) 116
Steering 127
Audi drive select 124
also refer to Steering 127
Steering lock 109, 127
Steering wheel
Adjusting 81
Shift paddles 113
also refer to Multifunction steering wheel . . 13
Steering wheel heating 106
Steps for determining correct load limit . . . 283
Stopover (navigation) 213
Stopping (engine) 116
Storage 99
Storage area behind the rear head restraints . 100
Storage compartment 101
Storage net 101
Stored stations
refer to Presets 227
Streaming
refer to Online media 234
Subtitles (DVD) 242
Sunshade
refer to Sunshade (roof) 55
Sunshade (roof) 55
Sunshade (windows)
Opening and closing 54
Rear side windows 54
Rear window 56
Sun visors 67
Surface heating 107
Suspension 125
Audi drive select 124
Swap call 187
Symbols
Navigation 213
Traffic 219
also refer to Indicator lights 7
SYNC (climate control system) 105
System settings 248

T

Tachometer 12, 14
Tail lights
Cleaning 290
Technical data 319
Audi tablet 34
Rear Seat Remote 27
Technical modifications 314
Telephone 179
Dialing a number 187
Options during a phone call 187
Playing music 234
Temperature display
Coolant 12
Temperature display (outside temperature) . . 15
Text input 23
Text messages
Message options 188
Settings 188
also refer to Text messages 188
Tie-downs 102
Tightening specification
Wheel bolts 300
Tightening specification (wheel bolts) 300
Time 15
tiptronic
refer to Manual shifting 113
Tire Mobility System (tire repair set) 295

4N0012721BB

Tires 269
Changing 297
Loose wheel warning 284
Low-profile tires 285
Repair set 295
Service life 278
Tire pressure 279
Tire pressure monitoring system 287
Tire pressure table 280
Tire pressure (trailer towing) 132
Treadwear indicators 278
Unidirectional 271, 300
Uniform tire quality grading 286
Tires and wheels
Glossary of tire and loading terminology . . 272
Tires and vehicle load limits 281
Tool 295
Tool tips 19
Top tether anchor (securing the child safety seat) 94
Touch display
Adjusting feedback 19
Operating 17
Towing 303
Towing loop 304, 305
Towing protection monitor 45
TPMS
Tire pressure monitoring system 287
Traffic information 219, 220
Traffic jam assist
refer to Adaptive cruise assist 150
Traffic light information 143
Traffic sign recognition 141
Trailer mode
Trailer mode (navigation) 222
Trailer towing 132
Air suspension 132
Trailer load 132
Turn assist 163
Turn signal 61

U

Unable to pass 158
Uniform tire quality grading 286
Unlocking and locking 42
By remote control 47
Using the lock cylinder 45
With the Audi connect key 49
With the Audi connect key card 49
With the central locking switch 44
With the convenience key 47
Update (software) 249
Updating stations (radio) 224
USB
Adapter 182
Connecting a mobile device 180
USB charging port 97
USB stick
refer to Audi music interface 235, 236
Using residual heat 106

V

Valet parking 56
Vanity mirror 67
Vehicle
Care/cleaning 289
Dimensions 319
Identification data 319
Out of service 294
Raising 299
Starting 109
Transport 125
Vehicle care 289
Vehicle identification number 319
Vehicle jack 295
Lifting points 299
Tire change mode 297
Vehicle key 42, 46
Vehicle start system 117
Vehicle tool kit 295
Ventilation 104
VIEW button 13
Voicemail 186
Voice recognition system 37
External 38
Operating 37

W

Warning lights
refer to Indicator lights 7

Washing matte finish paint 289
Weights 320
Wheel bolts 284
  Changing a tire 297
Wheels 269
  Cleaning 291
  Glossary of tire and loading terminology . . 272
  Loose wheel warning 284
  Replacing 297
  Tire pressure monitoring system 287
  Tires and vehicle load limits 281
Wheel wrench 295
Wi-Fi
  Hotspot settings 202
  Online media 234
  Using a hotspot 198
Wild animal recognition 144
Windows
  Child safety lock 53
  Cleaning and removing ice 291
  Convenience opening and closing 54
  Defrosting 105
  Opening and closing 54
  Power windows 54
Windshield
  Cleaning 67
  also refer to Windshield 67
Windshield washer system 67, 267
  Reservoir capacity 319
Windshield wipers 67
Winter operation
  Car washes 289
  Cooling system 262
  Defrosting the windows 105
  Rear window defogger 106
  Removing ice from windows 291
  Seat heating 106
  Snow chains 285
  Steering wheel heating 106
  Surface heating 107
  Tires 285
  Vehicle battery (12 Volt) 265
  Windshield washer system 267
Winter tires 285
Wiper blades 68

4N0012721BB

It has always been Audi's policy to continuously improve its products. AUDI AG reserves the right to make changes in design and specifications, and to make additions or improvements in its products without incurring any obligation to install them on products previously manufactured. This owner's manual is based on the current data available when it was printed. Text, illustrations, and specifications in this owner's manual are based on the most current information available at the time of printing, and shall not constitute a basis for liability claims.

These instructions may not be reproduced or translated in whole or in part without written consent of AUDI AG. All rights reserved by AUDI AG.

For the sake of the environment

Printed on eco-friendly paper (bleached without chlorine, recyclable).

Owner's Manual
Englisch Nordamerika 09.2018
4N0012721BB

4N0012721BB

www.audi.com